

Assembly Language Programming and Organization of the IBM PC

Ytha Yu
Charles Marut



MCGRAW-HILL INTERNATIONAL EDITIONS
Computer Science Series

Assembly Language Programming and Organization of the IBM PC

Ytha Yu

Department of Mathematics and Computer Science
California State University, Hayward, California

Charles Marut

Department of Mathematics and Computer Science
California State University, Hayward, California



Mitchell McGRAW-HILL

New York St. Louis San Francisco Auckland Bogotá Caracas
Lisbon London Madrid Mexico Milan Montreal New Delhi
Paris San Juan Singapore Sydney Tokyo Toronto Watsonville

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAMMING & ORGANIZATION OF THE IBM PC
International Editions 1992

Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Book Co-Singapore for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is consigned by McGraw-Hill.

Copyright © 1992 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

5 6 7 8 9 0 KKP 9 8 7 6 5

ISBN 0-07-072692-2

Sponsoring editor: Stephen Mitchell
Editorial assistant: Denise Nickeson
Director of Production: Jane Somers
Production assistant: Richard De Vitto
Project management: BMR

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 91-66269

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.
Intel is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

When ordering this title, use ISBN 0-07-112896-4

Printed in Singapore

Dedication

In memory of my father, Ping Chau

To my mother, Monica

To my wife, Joanne and our children

Alan, Yolanda, and Brian

For my parents, George and Ruth Marut

For Beth

Contents

Preface *xiii*

Chapter 1 <i>Microcomputer Systems</i>	1.1 The Components of a Microcomputer System 3
3	1.1.1 Memory 4
	1.1.2 The CPU 7
	1.1.3 I/O Ports 9
	1.2 Instruction Execution 9
	1.3 I/O Devices 11
	1.4 Programming Languages 12
	1.5 An Assembly Language Program 14
	Glossary 15
	Exercises 17

Chapter 2 <i>Representation of Numbers and Characters</i>	2.1 Number Systems 19
19	2.2 Conversion Between Number Systems 22
	2.3 Addition and Subtraction 24
	2.4 How Integers Are Represented in the Computer 26
	2.4.1 Unsigned Integers 26
	2.4.2 Signed Integers 26
	2.4.3 Decimal Interpretation 28
	2.5 Character Representation 30
	Summary 33
	Glossary 34
	Exercises 34

Chapter 3 <i>Organization of the IBM Personal Computers</i>	3.1 The Intel 8086 Family of Microprocessors 37
37	3.2 Organization of the 8086/8088 Microprocessors 39
	3.2.1 Registers 39
	3.2.2 Data Registers: AX, BX, CX, DX 39
	3.2.3 Segment Registers: CS, DS, SS, ES 41
	3.2.4 Pointer and Index Registers: SP, BP, SI, DI 44
	3.2.5 Instruction Pointer: IP 45
	3.2.6 FLAGS Register 45
	3.3 Organization of the PC 45
	3.3.1 The Operating System 46
	3.3.2 Memory Organization of the PC 47
	3.3.3 I/O Port Addresses 49
	3.3.4 Start-up Operation 49
	Summary 49
	Glossary 50
	Exercises 51

Chapter 4 <i>Introduction to IBM PC Assembly Language</i> 53	4.1 Assembly Language Syntax 54 4.1.1 Name Field 54 4.1.2 Operation Field 55 4.1.3 Operand Field 55 4.1.4 Comment Field 55
	4.2 Program Data 56
	4.3 Variables 57 4.3.1 Byte Variables 57 4.3.2 Word Variables 57 4.3.3 Arrays 58
	4.4 Named Constants 59
	4.5 A Few Basic Instructions 60 4.5.1 MOV and XCHG 60 4.5.2 ADD, SUB, INC, and DEC 62 4.5.3 NEG 64
	4.6 Translation of High-Level Language to Assembly Language 64
	4.7 Program Structure 65 4.7.1 Memory Models 65 4.7.2 Data Segment 66 4.7.3 Stack Segment 66 4.7.4 Code Segment 66 4.7.5 Putting It Together 67
	4.8 Input and Output Instructions 67 4.8.1 INT 21h 67
	4.9 A First Program 69
	4.10 Creating and Running a Program 70
	4.11 Displaying a String 73
	4.12 A Case Conversion Program 75
	Summary 76
	Glossary 77
	Exercises 78
	Programming Exercises 80

Chapter 5 <i>The Processor Status and the FLAGS Register</i> 81	5.1 The FLAGS Register 81
	5.2 Overflow 83
	5.3 How Instructions Affect the Flags 85
	5.4 The DEBUG Program 87
	Summary 90
	Glossary 91
	Exercises 91

Chapter 6 <i>Flow Control Instructions</i> 93	6.1 An Example of a Jump 93
	6.2 Conditional Jumps 94
	6.3 The JMP Instruction 98
	6.4 High-Level Language Structures 98 6.4.1 Branching Structures 98 6.4.2 Looping Structures 104
	6.5 Programming with High-Level Structures 108
	Summary 112
	Glossary 113
	Exercises 113
	Programming Exercises 115

Chapter 7 <i>Logic, Shift, and Rotate Instructions</i> 117	7.1 Logic Instructions 118 7.1.1 AND, OR, and XOR Instructions 119 7.1.2 NOT Instruction 121 7.1.3 TEST Instruction 122
	7.2 Shift Instructions 122

7.2.1 Left Shift Instructions	123
7.2.2 Right Shift Instructions	125
7.3 Rotate Instructions	127
7.4 Binary and Hex I/O	130
Summary	134
Glossary	135
Exercises	135
Programming Exercises	136

Chapter 8
**The Stack and Introduction
to Procedures**
139.

8.1 The Stack	139
8.2 A Stack Application	144
8.3 Terminology of Procedures	146
8.4 CALL and RET	147
8.5 An Example of a Procedure	150
Summary	157
Glossary	158
Exercises	158
Programming Exercises	159

Chapter 9
**Multiplication and Division
Instructions**
161

9.1 MUL and IMUL	161
9.2 Simple Applications of MUL and IMUL	164
9.3 DIV and IDIV	165
9.4 Sign Extension of the Dividend	166
9.5 Decimal Input and Output Procedures	167
Summary	175
Exercises	176
Programming Exercises	177

Chapter 10
**Arrays and Addressing
Modes**
179

10.1 One-Dimensional Arrays	179
10.2 Addressing Modes	181
10.2.1 Register Indirect Mode	182
10.2.2 Based and Indexed Addressing Modes	184
10.2.3 The PTR Operator and the LABEL Pseudo-op	186
10.2.4 Segment Override	188
10.2.5 Accessing the Stack	189
10.3 An Application: Sorting an Array	189
10.4 Two-Dimensional Arrays	192
10.5 Based Indexed Addressing Mode	194
10.6 An Application: Averaging Test Scores	195
10.7 The XLAT Instruction	197
Summary	200
Glossary	201
Exercises	201
Programming Exercises	203

Chapter 11
The String Instructions
205

11.1 The Direction Flag	205
11.2 Moving a String	206
11.3 Store String	209
11.4 Load String	211
11.5 Scan String	214
11.6 Compare String	217
11.6.1 Finding a Substring of a String	219
11.7 General Form of the String Instructions	223
Summary	224
Glossary	225
Exercises	225
Programming Exercises	226

Chapter 12	12.1 The Monitor 231
Text Display and Keyboard Programming	12.2 Video Adapters and Display Modes 232
231	12.3 Text Mode Programming 234
	12.3.1 The Attribute Byte 235
	12.3.2 A Display Page Demonstration 237
	12.3.3 INT 10H 238
	12.3.4 A Comprehensive Example 243
	12.4 The Keyboard 244
	12.5 A Screen Editor 247
	Summary 252
	Glossary 253
	Exercises 254
	Programming Exercises 254

Chapter 13	13.1 Macro Definition and Invocation 257
Macros	13.2 Local Labels 262
257	13.3 Macros That Invoke Other Macros 263
	13.4 A Macro Library 264
	13.5 Repetition Macros 268
	13.6 An Output Macro 270
	13.7 Conditionals 272
	13.8 Macros and Procedures 276
	Summary 276
	Glossary 277
	Exercises 278

Chapter 14	14.1 .COM Programs 281
Memory Management	14.2 Program Modules 285
281	14.3 Full Segment Definitions 291
	14.3.1 Form of an .EXE Program with Full Segment Definitions 295
	14.3.2 Using the Full Segment Definitions 295
	14.4 More About the Simplified Segment Definitions 299
	14.5 Passing Data Between Procedures 300
	14.5.1 Global Variables 300
	14.5.2 Passing the Addresses of the Data 302
	14.5.3 Using the Stack 303
	Summary 306
	Glossary 306
	Exercises 307
	Programming Exercises 307

Chapter 15	15.1 Interrupt Service 309
BIOS and DOS	15.1.1 Interrupt Vector 310
Interrupts	15.1.2 Interrupt Routines 312
309	15.2 BIOS Interrupts 312
	15.3 DOS Interrupts 316
	15.4 A Time Display Program 316
	15.5 User Interrupt Procedures 318
	15.6 Memory Resident Program 322
	Summary 329
	Glossary 329
	Exercises 330
	Programming Exercises 330

Chapter 16 Color Graphics 331	16.1 Graphics Modes 331 16.2 CGA Graphics 333 16.3 EGA Graphics 339 16.4 VGA Graphics 340 16.5 Animation 341 16.6 An Interactive Video Game 347 16.6.1 Adding Sound 347 16.6.2 Adding a Paddle 350 Summary 355 Glossary 356 Exercises 356 Programming Exercises 356
Chapter 17 Recursion 357	17.1 The Idea of Recursion 357 17.2 Recursive Procedures 358 17.3 Passing Parameters on the Stack 360 17.4 The Activation Record 361 17.5 Implementation of Recursive Procedures 363 17.6 More Complex Recursion 367 Summary 369 Glossary 369 Exercises 370 Programming Exercises 370
Chapter 18 Advanced Arithmetic 371	18.1 Double-Precision Numbers 371 18.1.1 Double-Precision Addition, Subtraction, and Negation 372 18.1.2 Double-Precision Multiplication and Division 374 18.2 Binary-Coded Decimal Numbers 374 18.2.1 Packed and Unpacked BCD 375 18.2.2 BCD Addition and the AAA Instruction 375 18.2.3 BCD Subtraction and the AAS Instruction 377 18.2.4 BCD Multiplication and the AAM Instruction 378 18.2.5 BCD Division and the AAD Instruction 378 18.3 Floating-Point Numbers 379 18.3.1 Converting Decimal Fractions into Binary 379 18.3.2 Floating-Point Representation 380 18.3.3 Floating-Point Operations 380 18.4 The 8087 Numeric Processor 381 18.4.1 Data Types 381 18.4.2 8087 Registers 382 18.4.3 Instructions 382 18.4.4 Multiple-Precision Integer I/O 384 18.4.5 Real-Number I/O 389 Summary 391 Glossary 392 Exercises 393 Programming Exercises 394
Chapter 19 Disk and File Operations 395	19.1 Kinds of Disks 395 19.2 Disk Structure 397 19.2.1 Disk Capacity 398 19.2.2 Disk Access 399 19.2.3 File Allocation 399 19.3 File Processing 402 19.3.1 File Handle 402 19.3.2 File Errors 403 19.3.3 Opening and Closing a File 403 19.3.4 Reading a File 405

19.3.5 <i>Writing a File</i>	406
19.3.6 <i>A Program to Read and Display a File</i>	406
19.3.7 <i>The File Pointer</i>	410
19.3.8 <i>Changing a File's Attribute</i>	414
19.4 Direct Disk Operations	415
19.4.1 <i>INT 25h and INT 26h</i>	415
Summary	418
Glossary	419
Exercises	420
Programming Exercises	420

Chapter 20	
Intel's Advanced Microprocessors	
421	
20.1 The 80286 Microprocessor	421
20.1.1 <i>Extended Instruction Set</i>	422
20.1.2 <i>Real Address Mode</i>	423
20.1.3 <i>Protected Mode</i>	424
20.1.4 <i>Extended Memory</i>	426
20.2 Protected-Mode Systems	429
20.2.1 <i>Windows and OS/2</i>	430
20.2.2 <i>Programming</i>	431
20.3 80386 and 80486 Microprocessors	433
20.3.1 <i>Real Address Mode</i>	433
20.3.2 <i>Protected Mode</i>	433
20.3.3 <i>Programming the 80386</i>	434
Summary	437
Glossary	437
Exercises	438
Programming Exercises	438

Appendices	
439	
Appendix A IBM Display Codes	441
Appendix B DOS Commands	445
Appendix C BIOS and DOS Interrupts	449
Appendix D MASM and LINK Options	461
Appendix E DEBUG and CODEVIEW	471
Appendix F Assembly Instruction Set	489
Appendix G Assembler Directives	517
Appendix H Keyboard Scan Codes	527

Preface

This book is the outgrowth of our experience in teaching assembly language at California State University, Hayward. Our goal is to write a textbook that is easy to read, yet covers the topics fully. We present the material in a logical order and explore the organization of the IBM PC with practical and interesting examples.

Assembly language is really just a symbolic form of machine language; the language of the computer, and because of this, assembly language instructions deal with computer hardware in a very intimate way. As you learn to program in assembly language you also learn about computer organization. Also because of their close connection with the hardware, assembly language programs can run faster and take up less space in memory than high-level language programs—a vital consideration when writing computer game programs, for instance..

While this book is intended to be used in an assembly language programming class taught in a university or community college, it is written in a tutorial style and can be read by anyone who wants to learn about the IBM PC and how to get the most out of it. Instructors will find the topics covered in a pedagogical fashion with numerous examples and exercises.

It is not necessary to have prior knowledge of computer hardware or programming to read this book, although it helps if you have written programs in some high-level language like Basic, Fortran, or Pascal.

Hardware and Software Requirements

To do the programming assignments and demonstrations, you need to own or have access to the following:

1. An IBM PC or compatible.
2. The MS-DOS or PC-DOS operating system.
3. Access to assembler and linker software, such as Microsoft's MASM and LINK, or Borland's TASM and TLINK.
4. An editor or word processing program.

Balanced Presentation

The world of IBM PCs and compatibles consists of many different computer models with different processors and structures. Similarly, there are different versions of assemblers and debuggers. We have taken the following approach to balance our presentation:

1. Emphasis is on the architecture and instruction set for the 8086/8088 processors, with a separate chapter on the advanced processors. The reason is that the methods learned in programming the 8086/8088 are common to all the Intel 8086 family because the instruction set for the advanced processors is largely just an extension of the 8086/8088 instruction set. Programs written for the 8086/8088 will execute without modification on the advanced processors.
2. Simplified segment definitions, introduced with MASM 5.0, are used whenever possible.
3. The DOS environment is used, because it is still the most popular operating system on PCs.
4. DEBUG is used for debugging demonstrations because it is part of DOS and its general features are common to all assembly debuggers. Microsoft's CODEVIEW is covered in Appendix E.

Features of the Book

All the materials have been classroom tested. Some of the features that we believe make this book special are:

Writing programs early

You are naturally eager to start writing programs as soon as possible. However, because assembly language instructions refer to the hardware, you first need to know the essentials of the machine architecture and the basics of the binary and hexadecimal number systems. The first program appears in Chapter 1, and by the end of Chapter 4 you will have the necessary tools to write simple but interesting programs.

Handling input and output

Input and output in assembly language are difficult because the instruction set is so basic. Our approach is to program input and output by using DOS function calls. This enables us to present completely functioning programs early in the book.

Structured code

The advantages of structured programming in high-level languages carry over to assembly language. In Chapter 6, we show how the standard high-level branching and looping structures can be implemented in assembly language; subsequent programs are developed from a high-level pseudocode in a top-down manner.

Definitions

To have a clear understanding of the ideas of assembly language programming, it's important to have a firm grasp of the terminology. To facilitate this, new terms appear in boldface the first time they are used, and are included in a glossary at the end of the chapter.

Advanced applications

One of the fun things that can easily be done in assembly language is manipulating the keyboard and screen. Two chapters are devoted to this topic; the high point is the development of a video game similar to Pong. Another interesting application is the development of a memory resident program that displays and updates the time.

Numeric processor

The operations and instructions of the numeric processor are given detailed treatment.

Advanced processors

The structure and operations of the advanced processors are covered in a separate chapter. Because DOS is still the dominant operating system for the PC, most examples are DOS applications.

Note to Instructors

The book is divided into two parts. Part One covers the topics that are basic to all applications of assembly language; Part Two is a collection of advanced topics. The following table shows how chapters in Part Two depend on material from earlier chapters:

Chapter	Uses material from chapters
12	1-10
13	1-11, 12 (some exercises)
14	1-10
15	1-12, 14
16	1-15
17	1-10
18	1-10, 13
19	1-10
20	1-11, 13, 14

The chapters in Part One should be covered in sequence. If the students have strong backgrounds in computer science, Chapter 1 can be covered lightly or be assigned as independent reading. In a ten-week course that meets four hours a week, we are usually able to cover the first four chapters in two weeks, and make the first programming assignment at the end of the second week or the beginning of the third week. In ten weeks we are usually able to cover chapters 1-12, and then go on to choose topics from chapters 13-16 as time and interest allow.

Exercises

Every chapter ends with numerous exercises to reinforce the concepts and principles covered. The exercises are grouped into practice exercises and programming exercises.

Instructor's Manual

A comprehensive instructor's manual is available. It includes general comments, programming hints, and solutions to the practice exercises. It also includes a set of transparency masters for figures and program listings.

Student Data Disk

A student data disk containing the source code for the programs in the text is available with the accompanying instructor's manual.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank our editor, Raleigh Wilson, and the staff at Mitchell McGraw-Hill, including Stephen Mitchell, Denise Nickeson, Jane Somers, and Richard de Vitto, for their support in this project. We would like to thank the staff at BMR, especially Matt Lusher, Jim Love, and Alex Leason for their outstanding work in producing this book.

We would also like to thank our students for their patience, support, and criticism as the manuscript developed. Finally, our thanks go to the following reviewers, whose insights helped to make this a much better book:

David Hayes, San Jose State University, San Jose, California
Jim Ingram, Amarillo College, Amarillo, Texas
Linda Kieffer, Cheney, Washington
Paul LeCoq, Spokane Falls Community College, Washington
Thom Luce, Ohio University, Ohio
Eric Lundstrom, Diablo Valley College, Pleasant Hill, California
Mike Michaelson, Palomar College, San Marcos, California
Don Myers, Vincennes University, Vincennes, Indiana
Loren Radford, Baptist College, Charleston, South Carolina
Francis Rice, Oklahoma State University, Oklahoma
David Rosenlof, Sacramento City College, California
Paul W. Ross, Millersville State University, Pennsylvania
R.G. Shurtliff, Colorado Technical College, Colorado
Mel Stone, St. Petersburg Jr. College, Clearwater Campus, Florida
James VanSpeyboeck, St. Ambrose College, Davenport, Iowa
Richard Weisgerber, Mankato State University, Mankato, Minnesota

We would appreciate any comments that you, the reader, may offer. Correspondence should be addressed to Ytha Yu or Charles Marut, Department of Mathematics and Computer Science, California State University, Hayward, Hayward California 94542. Internet electronic mail should be addressed to yyu@seq.csuhayward.edu or cmarut@seq.csuhayward.edu.

Part One

***Elements of
Assembly Language
Programming***

Microcomputer Systems

Overview

This chapter provides an introduction to the architecture of microcomputers in general and to the IBM PC in particular. You will learn about the main hardware components: the central processor, memory, and the peripherals, and their relation to the software, or programs. We'll see exactly what the computer does when it executes an instruction, and discuss the main advantages (and disadvantages) of assembly language programming. If you are an experienced microcomputer user, you are already familiar with most of the ideas discussed here; if you are a novice, this chapter introduces many of the important terms used in the rest of the book.

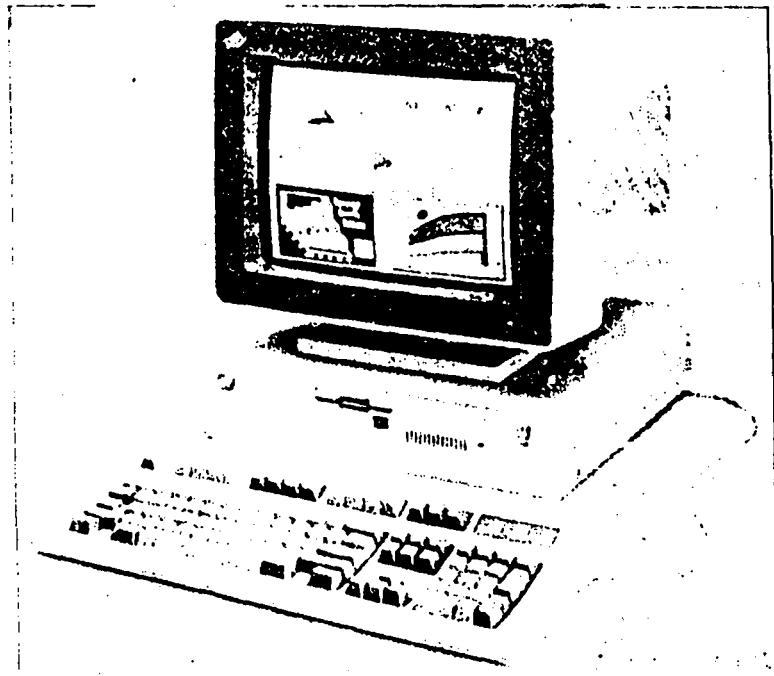
1.1

The Components of a Microcomputer System

Figure 1.1 shows a typical microcomputer system, consisting of a system unit, a keyboard, a display screen, and disk drives. The system unit is often referred to as "the computer," because it houses the circuit boards of the computer. The keyboard, display screen, and disk drives are called **I/O devices** because they perform input/output operations for the computer. They are also called **peripheral devices** or **peripherals**.

Integrated-circuit (IC) chips are used in the construction of computer circuits. Each IC chip may contain hundreds or even thousands of transistors. These IC circuits are known as **digital circuits** because they operate on discrete voltage signal levels, typically, a high voltage and a low voltage. We use the symbols 0 and 1 to represent the low- and high-voltage signals, respectively. These symbols are called **binary digits**, or **bits**. All information processed by the computer is represented by strings of 0's and 1's; that is, by **bit strings**.

Figure 1.1 A Microcomputer System



Functionally, the computer circuits consist of three parts: the **central processing unit (CPU)**, the memory circuits, and the I/O circuits. In a microcomputer, the CPU is a single-chip processor called a **microprocessor**. The CPU is the brain of the computer, and it controls all operations. It uses the memory circuits to store information, and the I/O circuits to communicate with I/O devices.

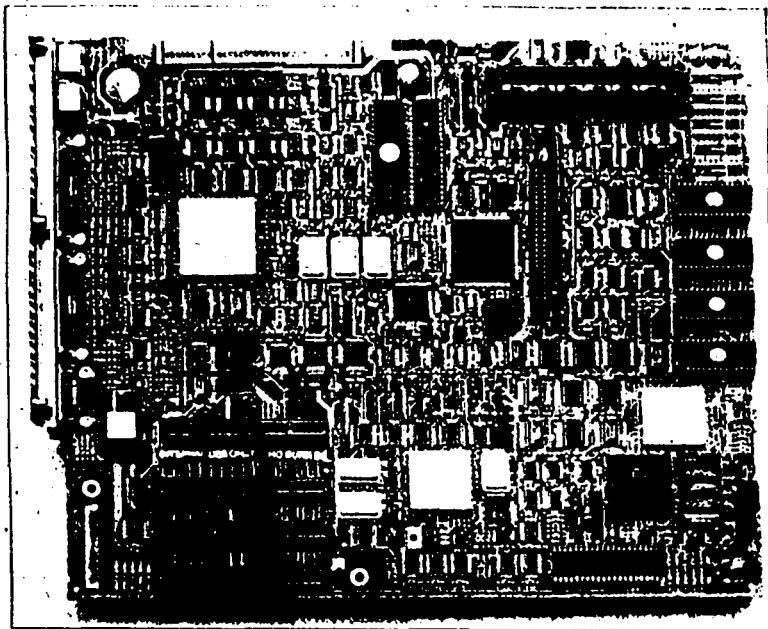
The System Board

Inside the system unit is a main circuit board called the **system board**, which contains the microprocessor and memory circuits. The system board is also called a **motherboard** because it contains **expansion slots**, which are connectors for additional circuit boards called **add-in boards** or **add-in cards**. I/O circuits are usually located on add-in cards. Figure 1.2 shows the picture of a motherboard.

1.1.1 Memory

Bytes and Words

Information processed by the computer is stored in its memory. A **memory circuit element** can store one bit of data. However, the memory circuits are usually organized into groups that can store eight bits of data, and a string of eight bits is called a **byte**. Each **memory byte circuit**—or **memory byte**, for short—is identified by a number that is called its **address**, like the street address of a house. The first memory byte has address

Figure 1.2 A Motherboard

0. The data stored in a memory byte are called its **contents**. When the contents of a memory byte are treated as a single number, we often use the term *value* to denote them.

It is important to understand the difference between address and contents. The address of a memory byte is fixed and is different from the address of any other memory byte in the computer. Yet the contents of a memory byte are not unique and are subject to change, because they denote the data *currently* being stored. Figure 1.3 shows the organization of memory bytes; the contents are arbitrary.

Another distinction between address and contents is that while the contents of a memory byte are always eight bits, the number of bits in an

Figure 1.3 Memory Represented as Bytes

- Address	Contents
.	.
.	.
.	.
7	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1
6	1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0
5	0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1
4	1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1
3	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
2	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
1	0 1 0 1 1 1 1 0
0	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1

address depends on the processor. For example, the Intel 8086 microprocessor assigns a 20-bit address, and the Intel 80286 microprocessor uses a 24-bit address. The number of bits used in the address determines the number of bytes that can be accessed by the processor.

Example 1.1 Suppose a processor uses 20 bits for an address. How many memory bytes can be accessed?

Solution: A bit can have two possible values, so in a 20-bit address there can be $2^{20} = 1,048,576$ different values, with each value being the potential address of a memory byte. In computer terminology, the number 2^{20} is called **1 mega**. Thus, a 20-bit address can be used to address **1 megabyte** or **1 MB**.

In a typical microcomputer, two bytes form a **word**. To accommodate word data, the IBM PC allows any pair of successive memory bytes to be treated as a single unit, called a **memory word**. The lower address of the two memory bytes is used as the address of the memory word. Thus the memory word with the address 2 is made up of the memory bytes with the addresses 2 and 3. The microprocessor can always tell, by other information contained in each instruction, whether an address refers to a byte or a word.

In this book, we use the term **memory location** to denote either a memory byte or a memory word.

Bit Position✓

Figure 1.4 shows the bit positions in a microcomputer word and a byte. The positions are numbered from right to left, starting with 0. In a word, the bits 0 to 7 form the *low byte* and the bits 8 to 15 form the *high byte*. For a word stored in memory, its low byte comes from the memory byte with the lower address and its high byte is from the memory byte with the higher address.

Memory Operations .

The processor can perform two operations on memory: **read** (fetch) the contents of a location and **write** (store) data at a location. In a read operation, the processor only gets a copy of the data; the original contents

Figure 1.4 Bit Positions in a Byte and a Word

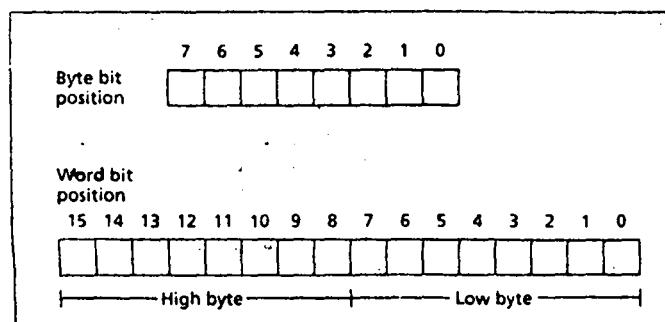
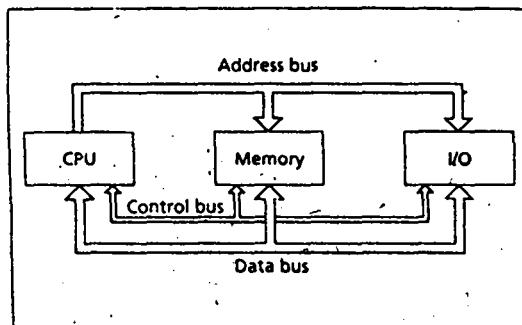


Figure 1.5 Bus Connections of a Microcomputer



of the location are unchanged. In a write operation, the data written become the new contents of the location; the original contents are thus lost.

RAM and ROM

There are two kinds of memory circuits: **random access memory (RAM)** and **read-only memory (ROM)**. The difference is that RAM locations can be read and written, while, as the name implies, ROM locations can only be read. This is because the contents of ROM memory, once initialized, cannot be changed.

Program instructions and data are normally loaded into RAM memory. However, the contents of RAM memory are lost when the machine is turned off, so anything valuable in RAM must be saved on a disk or printed out beforehand. ROM circuits retain their values even when the power is off. Consequently, ROM is used by computer manufacturers to store system programs. These ROM-based programs are known as **firmware**. They are responsible for loading start-up programs from disk as well as for self-testing the computer when it is turned on.

Buses

A processor communicates with memory and I/O circuits by using signals that travel along a set of wires or connections called **buses** that connect the different components. There are three kinds of signals: address, data, and control. And there are three buses: **address bus**, **data bus**, and **control bus**. For example, to read the contents of a memory location, the CPU places the address of the memory location on the address bus, and it receives the data, sent by the memory circuits, on the data bus. A control signal is required to inform the memory to perform a read operation. The CPU sends the control signal on the control bus. Figure 1.5 is a diagram of the bus connections for a microcomputer.

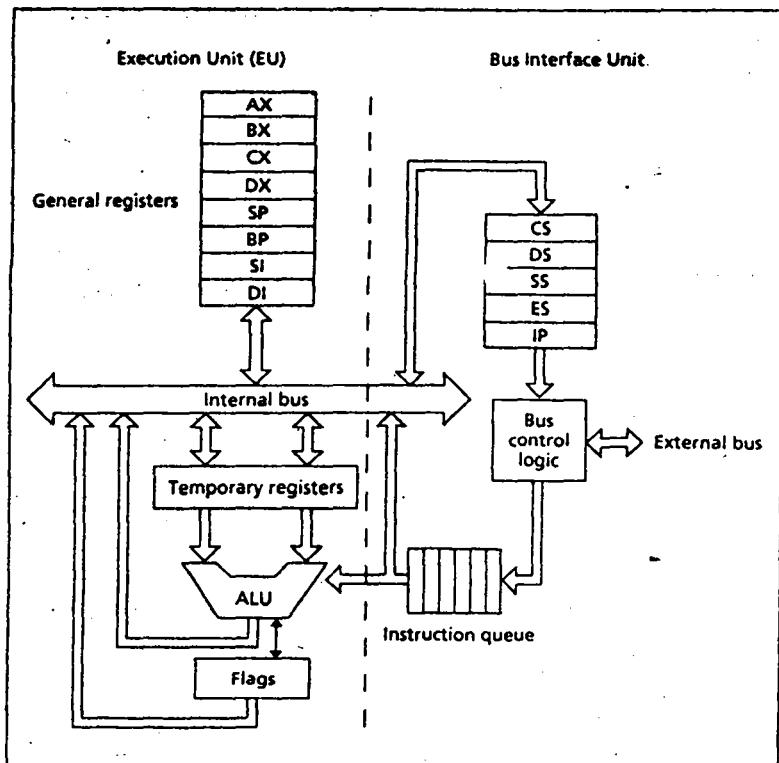
1.1.2

The CPU

As stated, the CPU is the brain of the computer. It controls the computer by executing programs stored in memory. A program might be a system program or an application program written by a user. In any case, each instruction that the CPU executes is a bit string (for the Intel 8086, instructions are from one to six bytes long). This language of 0's and 1's is called **machine language**.

1.1 The Components of a Microcomputer System

Figure 1.6 Intel 8086 Microprocessor Organization



The instructions performed by a CPU are called its **instruction set**, and the instruction set for each CPU is unique. To keep the cost of computers down, machine language instructions are designed to be simple; for example, adding two numbers or moving a number from one location to another. The amazing thing about computers is that the incredibly complex tasks they perform are, in the end, just a sequence of very basic operations.

In the following, we will use the Intel 8086 microprocessor as an example of a CPU. Figure 1.6 shows its organization. There are two main components: the **execution unit** and the **bus interface unit**.

Execution Unit (EU)

As the name implies, the purpose of the execution unit (EU) is to execute instructions. It contains a circuit called the **arithmetic and logic unit (ALU)**. The ALU can perform arithmetic ($+$, $-$, \times , $/$) and logic (AND, OR, NOT) operations. The data for the operations are stored in circuits called **registers**. A register is like a memory location except that we normally refer to it by a name rather than a number. The EU has eight registers for storing data; their names are AX, BX, CX, DX, SI, DI, BP, and SP. We'll become acquainted with them in Chapter 3. In addition, the EU contains temporary registers for holding operands for the ALU, and the FLAGS register whose individual bits reflect the result of a computation.

Bus Interface Unit (BIU)

The bus interface unit (BIU) facilitates communication between the EU and the memory or I/O circuits. It is responsible for transmitting addresses, data, and control signals on the buses. Its registers are named CS, DS, ES, SS, and IP; they hold addresses of memory locations. The IP (instruction pointer) contains the address of the next instruction to be executed by the EU.

The EU and the BIU are connected by an internal bus, and they work together. While the EU is executing an instruction, the BIU fetches up to six bytes of the next instruction and places them in the instruction queue. This operation is called instruction prefetch. The purpose is to speed up the processor. If the EU needs to communicate with memory or the peripherals, the BIU suspends instruction prefetch and performs the needed operations.

1.1.3

I/O Ports

I/O devices are connected to the computer through I/O circuits. Each of these circuits contains several registers called I/O ports. Some are used for data while others are used for control commands. Like memory locations, the I/O ports have addresses and are connected to the bus system. However, these addresses are known as I/O addresses and can only be used in input or output instructions. This allows the CPU to distinguish between an I/O port and a memory location.

I/O ports function as transfer points between the CPU and I/O devices. Data to be input from an I/O device are sent to a port where they can be read by the CPU. On output, the CPU writes data to an I/O port. The I/O circuit then transmits the data to the I/O device.

Serial and Parallel Ports

The data transfer between an I/O port and an I/O device can be 1 bit at a time (serial), or 8 or 16 bits at a time (parallel). A parallel port requires more wiring connections, while a serial port tends to be slower. Slow devices, like the keyboard, always connect to a serial port, and fast devices, like the disk drive, always connect to a parallel port. But some devices, like the printer, can connect to either a serial or a parallel port.

1.2

Instruction Execution

To understand how the CPU operates, let's look at how an instruction is executed. First of all, a machine instruction has two parts: an **opcode** and **operands**. The opcode specifies the type of operation, and the operands are often given as memory addresses to the data to be operated on. The CPU goes through the following steps to execute a machine instruction (the **fetch-execute cycle**):

Fetch

1. Fetch an instruction from memory.
2. Decode the instruction to determine the operation.
3. Fetch data from memory if necessary.

Execute

4. Perform the operation on the data.
5. Store the result in memory if needed.

To see what this entails, let's trace through the execution of a typical machine language instruction for the 8086. Suppose we look at the instruction that adds the contents of register AX to the contents of the memory word at address 0. The CPU actually adds the two numbers in the ALU and then stores the result back to memory word 0. The machine code is

00000001 00000110 00000000 00000000

Before execution, we assume that the first byte of the instruction is stored at the location indicated by the IP.

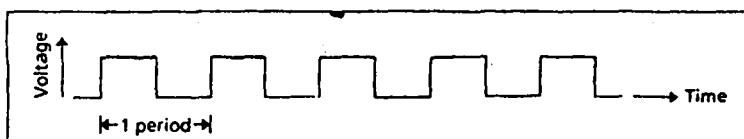
1. Fetch the instruction. To start the cycle, the BIU places a memory read request on the control bus and the address of the instruction on the address bus. Memory responds by sending the contents of the location specified—namely, the instruction code just given—over the data bus. Because the instruction code is four bytes and the 8086 can only read a word at a time, this involves two read operations. The CPU accepts the data and adds four to the IP so that the IP will contain the address of the next instruction.
2. Decode the instruction. On receiving the instruction, a decoder circuit in the EU decodes the instruction and determines that it is an ADD operation involving the word at address 0.
3. Fetch data from memory. The EU informs the BIU to get the contents of memory word 0. The BIU sends address 0 over the address bus and a memory read request is again sent over the control bus. The contents of memory word 0 are sent back over the data bus to the EU and are placed in a holding register.
4. Perform the operation. The contents of the holding register and the AX register are sent to the ALU circuit, which performs the required addition and holds the sum.
5. Store the result. The EU directs the BIU to store the sum at address 0. To do so, the BIU sends out a memory write request over the control bus, the address 0 over the address bus, and the sum to be stored over the data bus. The previous contents of memory word 0 are overwritten by the sum.

The cycle is now repeated for the instruction whose address is contained in the IP.

Timing

The preceding example shows that even though machine instructions are very simple, their execution is actually quite complex. To ensure that the steps are carried out in an orderly fashion, a clock circuit controls the processor

Figure 1.7 Train of Clock Pulses



by generating a train of **clock pulses** as shown in Figure 1.7. The time interval between two pulses is known as a **clock period**, and the number of pulses per second is called the **clock rate or clock speed**, measured in **megahertz (MHz)**. One megahertz is 1 million cycles (pulses) per second. The original IBM PC had a clock rate of 4.77 MHz, but the latest PS/2 model has a clock rate of 33 MHz.

The computer circuits are activated by the clock pulses; that is, the circuits perform an operation only when a clock pulse is present. Each step in the instruction fetch and execution cycle requires one or more clock periods. For example, the 8086 takes four clock periods to do a memory read and a multiplication operation may take more than seventy clock periods. If we speed up the clock circuit, a processor can be made to operate faster. However, each processor has a rated maximum clock speed beyond which it may not function properly.

1.3 I/O Devices

I/O devices are needed to get information into and out of the computer. The primary I/O devices are magnetic disks, the keyboard, the display monitor, and the printer.

Magnetic Disks

We've seen that the contents of RAM are lost when the computer is turned off, so magnetic disks are used for permanent storage of programs and data. There are two kinds of disks: **floppy disks** (also called diskettes) and **hard disks**. The device that reads and writes data on a disk is called a **disk drive**.

Floppy disks come in 5 1/4-inch or 3 1/2-inch diameter sizes. They are lightweight and portable; it is easy to put a diskette away for safekeeping or use it on different computers. The amount of data a floppy disk can hold depends on the type; it ranges from 360 kilobytes to 1.44 megabytes. A **kilobyte (KB)** is 2^{10} bytes.

A hard disk and its disk drive are enclosed in a hermetically sealed container that is not removable from the computer; thus, it is also called a **fixed disk**. It can hold a lot more data than a floppy disk—typically 20, 40, to over 100 megabytes. A program can also access information on a hard disk much faster than a floppy disk.

Disk operations are covered in Chapter 19.

Keyboard

The keyboard allows the user to enter information into the computer. It has the keys usually found on a typewriter, plus a number of control and function keys. It has its own microprocessor that sends a coded signal to the computer whenever a key is pressed or released.

When a key is pressed, the corresponding key character normally appears on the screen. But interestingly enough, there is no direct connection between the keyboard and the screen. The data from the keyboard are received by the current running program. The program must send the data to the screen before a character is displayed. In Chapter 12 you will learn how to control the keyboard.

Display Monitor

The display monitor is the standard output device of the computer. The information displayed on the screen is generated by a circuit in the computer called a **video adapter**. Most adapters can generate both text characters and graphics images. Some monitors are capable of displaying in color.

We discuss text mode operations in Chapter 12, and cover graphics mode in Chapter 16.

Printers

Although monitors give fast visual feedback, the information is not permanent. Printers, however, are slow but provide more permanent output. Printer outputs are known as **hardcopies**.

The three common kinds of printers are *daisy wheel*, *dot matrix*, and *laser* printers. The output of a daisy wheel printer is similar to that of a typewriter. A dot matrix printer prints characters composed of dots; depending on the number of dots used per character, some dot matrix printers can generate near-letter-quality printing. The advantage of dot matrix printers is that they can print characters with different fonts as well as graphics.

The laser printer also prints characters composed of dots; however, the resolution is so high (300 dots per inch) that it has typewriter quality. The laser printer is expensive, but in the field of desktop publishing it is indispensable. It is also quiet compared to the other printers.

1.4 Programming Languages

The operations of the computer's hardware are controlled by its software. When the computer is on, it is always in the process of executing instructions. To fully understand the computer's operations, we must also study its instructions.

Machine Language

A CPU can only execute machine language instructions. As we've seen, they are bit strings. The following is a short machine language program for the IBM PC:

Machine instruction	Operation
10100001 00000000 00000000	Fetch the contents of memory word 0 and put it in register AX.
00000101 00000100 00000000	Add 4 to AX.
10100011 00000000 00000000	Store the contents of AX in memory word 0.

As you can well imagine, writing programs in machine language is tedious and subject to error!

Assembly Language

A more convenient language to use is **assembly language**. In assembly language, we use symbolic names to represent operations, registers, and memory locations. If location 0 is symbolized by A, the preceding program expressed in IBM PC assembly language would look like this:

<i>Assembly language instruction</i>	<i>Comment</i>
MOV AX, A	;fetch the contents of ;location A and ;put it in register AX
ADD AX, 4	;add 4 to AX
MOV A, AX	;move the contents of AX ;into location A

A program written in assembly language must be converted to machine language before the CPU can execute it. A program called the **assembler** translates each assembly language statement into a single machine language instruction.

High-Level Languages

Even though it's easier to write programs in assembly language than machine language, it's still difficult because the instruction set is so primitive. That is why high-level languages such as FORTRAN, Pascal, C, and others were developed. Different high-level languages are designed for different applications, but they generally allow programmers to write programs that look more like natural language text than is possible in assembly language.

A program called a **compiler** is needed to translate a high-level language program into machine code. Compilation is more involved than assembling because it entails the translation of complex mathematical expressions and natural language commands into simple machine operations. A high-level language statement typically translates into many machine language instructions.

Advantages of High-Level Languages

There are many reasons why a programmer might choose to write a program in a high-level language rather than in assembly language.

First, because high-level languages are closer to natural languages, it's easier to convert a natural language algorithm to a high-level language program than to an assembly language program. For the same reason, it's easier to read and understand a high-level language program than an assembly language program.

Second, an assembly language program generally contains more statements than an equivalent high-level language program, so more time is needed to code the assembly language program.

Third, because each computer has its own unique assembly language, assembly language programs are limited to one machine, but a high-level language program can be executed on any machine that has a compiler for that language.

Advantages of Assembly Languages

The main reason for writing assembly language programs is efficiency: because assembly language is so close to machine language, a well-written assembly language program produces a faster, shorter machine language program. Also, some operations, such as reading or writing to specific memory locations and I/O ports, can be done easily in assembly language but may be impossible at a higher level.

Actually, it is not always necessary for a programmer to choose between assembly language and high-level languages, because many high-level languages accept subprograms written in assembly language. This means that

crucial parts of a program can be written in assembly language, with the rest written in a high-level language.

In addition to these considerations, there is another reason for learning assembly language. Only by studying assembly language is it possible to gain a feeling for the way the computer "thinks" and why certain things happen the way they do inside the computer. High-level languages tend to obscure the details of the compiled machine language program that the computer actually executes. Sometimes a slight change in a program produces a major increase in the run time of that program, or arithmetic overflow unexpectedly occurs. Such things can be understood on the assembly language level.

Even though here you will study assembly language specifically for the IBM PC, the techniques you will learn are typical of those used in any assembly language. Learning other assembly languages should be relatively easy after you have read this book.

5

Assembly language Program

To give an idea of what an assembly language program looks like, here is a simple example. The following program adds the contents of two memory locations, symbolized by A and B. The sum is stored in location SUM.

Program Listing PGM1_1.ASM

```
TITLE PGM1_1: SAMPLE PROGRAM
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
A DW 2
B DW 5
SUM DW ?
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;initialize DS
MOV AX,@DATA
MOV DS,AX
;add the numbers
MOV AX,A ;AX has A
ADD AX,B ;AX has A+B
MOV SUM,AX ;SUM = A+B
;exit to DOS
MOV AX,4C00H
INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

Assembly language programs consist of statements. A statement is either an instruction to be executed when the program is run, or a directive for the assembler. For example, `.MODEL SMALL` is an assembler directive that specifies the size of the program. `MOV AX,A` is an instruction. Anything that follows a semicolon is a comment, and is ignored by the assembler.

The preceding program consists of three parts, or segments: the *stack segment*, the *data segment*, and the *code segment*. They begin with the directives .STACK, .DATA, and .CODE, respectively.

The stack segment is used for temporary storage of addresses and data. If no stack segment is declared, an error message is generated, so there must be a stack segment even if the program doesn't utilize a stack.

Variables are declared in the *data segment*. Each variable is assigned space in memory and may be initialized. For example, A DW 2 sets aside a memory word for a variable called A and initializes it to 2 (DW stands for "Define Word"). Similarly, B DW 5 sets aside a word for variable B and initializes it to 5 (these initial values were chosen arbitrarily). SUM DW ? sets aside an uninitialized word for SUM.

A program's instructions are placed in the code segment. Instructions are usually organized into units called *procedures*. The preceding program has only one procedure, called MAIN, which begins with the line MAIN PROC and ends with line MAIN ENDP.

The main procedure begins and ends with instructions that are needed to initialize the DS register and to return to the DOS operating system. Their purpose is explained in Chapter 4. The instructions for adding A and B and putting the answer in SUM are as follows:

```
MOV AX, A           ;AX has A
ADD AX, B           ;AX has A+B
MOV SUM, AX         ;SUM = A+B
```

MOV AX,A copies the contents of word A into register AX. ADD AX,B adds the contents of B to it, so that AX now holds the total. MOV SUM,AX stores the answer in variable SUM.

Before this program could be run on the computer, it would have to be assembled into a machine language program. The steps are explained in Chapter 4. Because there were no output instructions, we could not see the answer on the screen, but we could trace the program's execution in a debugger such as the DEBUG program.

Glossary

add-in board or card

Circuit board that connects to the motherboard, usually contains I/O circuits or additional memory

address

A number that identifies a memory location
The set of electrical pathways for address signals

address bus

CPU circuit where arithmetic and logic operations are done

arithmetic and logic unit

A program that translates an assembly language program into machine language
Symbolic representation of machine language

ALU

A symbol that can have value 0 or 1

assembler

Binary digit

assembly language

A set of wires or connections connecting the CPU, memory, and I/O ports

binary digit

bit

bus

bus interface unit, BIU	Part of the CPU that facilitates communication between the CPU, memory, and I/O ports
byte	8 bits
central processing unit, CPU	The main processor circuit of a computer
clock period	The time interval between two clock pulses
clock pulse	An electrical signal that rises from a low voltage to a high voltage and down again to a low voltage, used to synchronize computer circuit operations
clock rate	The number of clock pulses per second, measured in megahertz (MHz)
clock speed	Clock rate
compiler	A program that translates a high-level language to machine language
contents	The data stored in a register or memory location
control bus	The set of electrical paths for control signals
data bus	The set of electrical paths for data signals
digital circuits	Circuits that operate on discrete voltage levels
disk drive	The device that reads and writes data on a disk
execution unit, EU	Part of the CPU that executes instructions
expansion slots	Connectors in the motherboard where other circuit boards can be attached
fetch-execute cycle	Cycle the CPU goes through to execute an instruction
firmware	Software supplied by the computer manufacturer, usually stored in ROM
fixed disk	Nonremovable disk, made of metal
floppy disk	Removable, flexible disk
hardcopy	Printer output
hard disk	Fixed disk
I/O devices	Devices that handle input and output data of the computer; typical I/O devices are display monitor, disk drive, and printer
I/O ports	Circuits that function as transfer points between the CPU and I/O devices
instruction pointer, IP	A CPU register that contains the address of the next instruction
instruction set	The instructions the CPU is capable of performing
kilobyte, KB	2^{10} or 1024 bytes
machine language	Instructions coded as bit strings: the language of the computer

mega	A unit that usually denotes 1 million, but in computer terminology 1 mega is 2^{20} (or 1,048,576)
megabyte, MB	2^{20} or 1,048,576 bytes
megahertz, MHz	1,000,000 cycles per second
memory byte (circuit)	A memory circuit that can store one byte
memory location	A memory byte or memory word
memory word	Two memory bytes
microprocessor	A processing unit fabricated on a single circuit chip
motherboard	The main circuit board of the computer
opcode	Numeric or symbolic code denoting the type of operation for an instruction
operand	The data specified in an instruction
peripheral (device)	I/O device
random access memory, RAM	Memory circuits that can be read or written
read-only memory, ROM	Memory circuits that can only be read
register	A CPU circuit for storing information
system board	Motherboard
video adapter	Computer circuit that converts computer data into video signals for the display monitor
word	16 bits

Exercises

1. Suppose memory bytes 0–4 have the following contents:

Address	Contents
0	01101010
1	11011101
2	00010001
3	11111111
4	01010101

- a. Assuming that a word is 2 bytes, what are the contents of the memory word at address 2?
 the memory word at address 3?
 • the memory word whose high byte is the byte at address 2?
- b. What is
 • bit 7 of byte 2?
 • bit 0 of word 3?
 • bit 4 of byte 2?
 • bit 11 of word 2?

2. A **nibble** is four bits. Each byte is composed of a high nibble and a low nibble, similar to the high and low bytes of a word. Using the data in exercise 1, give the contents of
 - a. the low nibble of byte 1.
 - b. the high nibble of byte 4.
3. The two kinds of memory are RAM and ROM. Which kind of memory
 - a. holds a user's program?
 - b. holds the program used to start the machine?
 - c. can be changed by the user?
 - d. retains its contents, even when the power is turned off?
4. What is the function of
 - a. the microprocessor?
 - b. the buses?
5. The two parts of the microprocessor are the EU and the BIU.
 - a. What is the function of the EU?
 - b. What is the function of the BIU?
6. In the microprocessor, what is the function of
 - a. the IP?
 - b. the ALU?
7. a. What are the I/O ports used for?
b. How are they different from memory locations?
8. What is the maximum length (in bytes) of an instruction for the 8086-based IBM PC?
9. Consider a machine language instruction that moves a copy of the contents of register AX in the CPU to a memory word. What happens during
 - a. the fetch cycle?
 - b. the execute cycle?
10. Give
 - a. three advantages of high-level language programming.
 - b. the primary advantage of assembly language programming.

2

Representation of Numbers and Characters

Overview

You saw in Chapter 1 that computer circuits are capable of processing only binary information. In this chapter, we show how numbers can be expressed in binary; this is called the **binary number system**. We also introduce a very compact way of representing binary information called the **hexadecimal number system**.

Conversions between binary, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers are covered in section 2.2. Section 2.3 treats addition and subtraction in these number systems.

Section 2.4 shows how negative numbers are represented and what effects the fixed physical size of a byte or word has on number representation.

We conclude the chapter by exploring how characters are encoded and used by the computer.

2.1

Number Systems

Before we look at how numbers are represented in binary, it is instructive to look at the familiar decimal system. It is an example of a *positional number system*; that is, each digit in the number is associated with a power of 10, according to its position in the number. For example, the decimal number 3932 represents 3 thousands, 9 hundreds, 3 tens, and 2 ones. In other words,

$$3,932 = 3 \times 10^3 + 9 \times 10^2 + 3 \times 10^1 + 2 \times 10^0$$

In a positional system, some number b is selected as the base and symbols are assigned to numbers between 0 and $b - 1$. For example, in the decimal system there are ten basic symbols (digits): 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. The base ten is represented as 10.

Binary Number System

In the binary number system, the base is two and there are only two digits, 0 and 1. For example, the binary string 11010 represents the number

$$1 \times 2^4 + 1 \times 2^3 + 0 \times 2^2 + 1 \times 2^1 + 0 \times 2^0 = 26$$

The base two is represented in binary as 10.

Hexadecimal Number System

Numbers written in binary tend to be long and difficult to express. For example, 16 bits are needed to represent the contents of a memory word in an 8086-based computer. But decimal numbers are difficult to convert into binary. When we write assembly language programs we tend to use both binary, decimal, and a third number system called *hexadecimal*, or *hex* for short. The advantage of using hex numbers is that the conversion between binary and hex is easy.

The hexadecimal (hex) system is a base sixteen system. The hex digits are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F. The hex letters A through F denote numbers ten to fifteen, respectively. After F comes the base sixteen, represented in hex by 10.

Because sixteen is 2 to the power of 4, each hex digit corresponds to a unique four-bit number, as shown in Table 2.1. This means that the contents of a byte—eight bits—may be expressed neatly as two hex digits, which makes hex numbers useful with byte-oriented computers.

Table 2.2 shows the relations among binary, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers. It is a good idea to take a few minutes and memorize the first

Table 2.1 Hex Digits and Binary Equivalent

<i>Hex Digits</i>	<i>Binary</i>
0	0000
1	0001
2	0010
3	0011
4	0100
5	0101
6	0110
7	0111
8	1000
9	1001
A	1010
B	1011
C	1100
D	1101
E	1110
F	1111

Table 2.2 Decimal, Binary, and Hexadecimal Numbers

<i>Decimal</i>	<i>Binary</i>	<i>Hexadecimal</i>
0	0	0
1	1	1
2	10	2
3	11	3
4	100	4
5	101	5
6	110	6
7	111	7
8	1000	8
9	1001	9
10	1010	A
11	1011	B
12	1100	C
13	1101	D
14	1110	E
15	1111	F
16	10000	10
17	10001	11
18	10010	12
19	10011	13
20	10100	14
21	10101	15
22	10110	16
23	10111	17
24	11000	18
25	11001	19
26	11010	1A
27	11011	1B
28	11100	1C
29	11101	1D
30	11110	1E
31	11111	1F
32	100000	20
256	100000000	100
1024		400
32767		7FFF
32768		8000
65535		FFFF

1 Kilobyte (1 KB) = 1024 = 400h

64 Kilobytes (64 KB) = 65536 = 10000h

1 Megabyte (1 MB) = 1,048,576 = 100000h

16 or so lines of the table, because you will often need to express small numbers in all three systems.

A problem in working with different number systems is the meaning of the symbols used. For example, as you have seen, 10 means ten in the decimal system, sixteen in hex, and two in binary. In this book, the following convention is used whenever confusion may arise: hex numbers are followed by the letter h; for example, 1A34h. Binary numbers are followed by the letter b; for example, 101b. Decimal numbers are followed by the letter d; for example, 79d.

2.2

Conversion Between Number Systems

In working with assembly language, it is often necessary to take a number expressed in one system and write it in a different system.

Converting Binary and Hex to Decimal

Consider the hex number 82AD. It can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} 8A2Dh &= 8 \times 16^3 + A \times 16^2 + 2 \times 16^1 + D \times 16^0 \\ &= 8 \times 16^3 + 10 \times 16^2 + 2 \times 16^1 + 13 \times 16^0 = 35373d \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the binary number 11101 may be written as

$$11101b = 1 \times 2^4 + 1 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 0 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 = 29d$$

This gives one way to convert a binary or hex number to decimal, but an easier way is to use nested multiplication. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} 8A2D &= 8 \times 16^3 + A \times 16^2 + 2 \times 16^1 + D \times 16^0 \\ &= ((8 \times 16 + A) \times 16 + 2) \times 16 + D \\ &= ((8 \times 16 + 10) \times 16 + 2) \times 16 + 13 \\ &= 35373d \end{aligned}$$

This can be easily implemented with a calculator: Multiply the first hex digit by 16, and add the second hex digit. Multiply that result by 16, and add the third hex digit. Multiply the result by 16, add the next hex digit, and so on.

The same procedure converts binary to decimal. Just multiply each result by 2 instead of 16.

Example 2.1 Convert 11101 to decimal.

Solution:

1	1	1	0	1
$= 1 \times 2 + 1 \rightarrow 3 \times 2 + 1 \rightarrow 7 \times 2 + 0 \rightarrow 14 \times 2 + 1 = 29d$				

Example 2.2 Convert 2BD4h to decimal.

Solution:

2	B	D	4
$= 2 \times 16 + 11 \rightarrow 43 \times 16 + 13 \rightarrow 701 \times 16 + 4 = 11220$			

where we have used the fact that Bh = 11 and Dh = 13.

Converting Decimal to Binary and Hex

Suppose we want to convert 11172 to hex. The answer 2BA4h may be obtained as follows. First, divide 11172 by 16. We get a quotient of 698, and a remainder of 4. Thus

$$11172 = 698 \times 16 + 4$$

The remainder 4 is the unit's digit in hex representation of 11172. Now divide 698 by 16. The quotient is 43, and the remainder is 10 = Ah. Thus

$$698 = 43 \times 16 + Ah$$

The remainder Ah is the sixteen's digit in the hex representation of 11172. We just continue this process, each time dividing the most recent quotient by 16, until we get a 0 quotient. The remainder each time is a digit in the hex representation of 11172. Here are the calculations:

$$\begin{aligned} 11172 &= 698 \times 16 + 4 \\ 698 &= 43 \times 16 + 10(Ah) \\ 43 &= 2 \times 16 + 11(Bh) \\ 2 &= 0 \times 16 + 2 \end{aligned}$$

Now just convert the remainders to hex and put them together in reverse order to get 2BA4h.

This same process may be used to convert decimal to binary. The only difference is that we repeatedly divide by 2.

Example 2.3 Convert 95 to binary.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} 95 &= 47 \times 2 + 1 \\ 47 &= 23 \times 2 + 1 \\ 23 &= 11 \times 2 + 1 \\ 11 &= 5 \times 2 + 1 \\ 5 &= 2 \times 2 + 1 \\ 2 &= 1 \times 2 + 0 \\ 1 &= 0 \times 2 + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Taking the remainders in reverse order, we get $95 = 1011111_b$.

Conversions Between Hex and Binary

To convert a hex number to binary, we need only express each hex digit in binary.

Example 2.4 Convert 2B3Ch to binary.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & 2 & & B & & 3 & C \\ & = 0010 & 1011 & 0011 & 1100 \\ & = 0010101100111100 \end{array}$$

To go from binary to hex, just reverse this process; that is, group the binary digits in fours starting from the right. Then convert each group to a hex digit.

Example 2.5 Convert 1110101010 to hex.

Solution: $1110101010 = 11\ 1010\ 1010 = 3AAh$

2.3

Addition and Subtraction

Sometimes you will want to do binary or hex addition and subtraction. Because these operations are done by rote in decimal, let's review the process to see what is involved.

Addition

Consider the following decimal addition

$$\begin{array}{r} 2546 \\ + 1872 \\ \hline 4418 \end{array}$$

To get the unit's digit in the sum, we just compute $6 + 2 = 8$. To get the ten's digit, compute $4 + 7 = 11$. We write down 1 and carry 1 to the hundred's column. In that column we compute $5 + 8 + 1 = 14$. We write down 4 and carry 1 to the last column. In that column we compute $2 + 1 + 1 = 4$ and write it down, and the sum is complete.

A reason that decimal addition is easy for us is that we memorized the addition table for small numbers a long time ago. Table 2.3A is an addition table for small hex numbers. To compute $B_6 + 9_6$, for example, just intersect the row containing B and the column containing 9, and read 14₆.

By using the addition table, hex addition may be done in exactly the same way as decimal addition. Suppose we want to compute the following hex sum:

Table 2.3A Hexadecimal Addition Table

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10
2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11
3	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12
4	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13
5	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14
6	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15
7	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
8	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
9	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
A	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
B	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A
C	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B
D	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C
E	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D
F	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E

Table 2.3B Binary Addition Table

	0	1
0	0	1
1	1	10

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{SB39h} \\
 + 7\text{AF4h} \\
 \hline
 \text{D62Dh}
 \end{array}$$

In the unit's column, we compute $9h + 4h = 13h = Dh$. In the next column, we get $3h + Fh = 12h$. Write down 2 and carry 1 to the next column. In that column, compute $Bh + Ah + 1 = 16h$. Write 6, and carry 1 to the last column. There we compute $5h + 7h + 1 = Dh$, and we are done.

Binary addition is done the same way as decimal and hex addition, but is a good deal easier because the binary addition table is so small (Table 2.3B). To do the sum:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 100101111 \\
 + 110110 \\
 \hline
 101100101
 \end{array}$$

Compute $1 + 0 = 1$ in the unit's column. In the next column, add $1 + 1 = 10b$. Write down 0 and carry 1 to the next column, where we get $1 + 1 + 1 = 11b$. Write down 1, carry 1 to the next column, and so on.

Subtraction

Let's begin with the decimal subtraction

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{bb} \\
 9145 \\
 - 7283 \\
 \hline
 1862
 \end{array}$$

In the unit's column, we compute $5 - 3 = 2$. To do the ten's, we first borrow 1 from the hundred's column (to remember that we have done this, we may place a "b" above the hundred's column), and compute $14 - 8 = 6$. In the hundred's column, we must again borrow 1 from the next column, and compute $11 - 2 - 1$ (the previous borrow) = 8. In the last column, we get $9 - 7 - 1 = 1$.

Hex subtraction may be done the same way as decimal subtraction. To compute the hex difference

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{bb} \\
 \text{D26F} \\
 - \text{BA94} \\
 \hline
 17DB
 \end{array}$$

we start with $Fh - 4h = Bh$. To do the next (sixteen's) column, we must borrow 1 from the third column, and compute

$$16h - 9h = ?$$

The easy way to figure this is to go to row 9 in Table 2.3A, and notice that 16 appears in column D. This means that $9h + Dh = 16h$, so $16h - 9h = Dh$. In the third column, after borrowing, we must compute $12h - Ah = 11h - Ah$. In row A, 11 appears in column 7 so $11h - Ah = 7h$. Finally in the last column, we have $Ch - Bh = 1$.

Now let us look at binary subtraction, for example,

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{bb} \\
 1001 \\
 - 0111 \\
 \hline
 0010
 \end{array}$$

The unit's column is easy, $1 - 1 = 0$. We must borrow to do the two's column, getting $10 - 1 = 1$. To do the four's column, we must again borrow, computing $10 - 1 - 1$ (since we borrowed from this column) = 0. Finally in the last column, we have $0 - 0 = 0$.

2.4**How Integers Are Represented in the Computer**

The hardware of a computer necessarily restricts the size of numbers that can be stored in a register or memory location. In this section, we will see how integers can be stored in an 8-bit byte or a 16-bit word. In Chapter 18 we talk about how real numbers can be stored.

In the following, we'll need to refer to two particular bits in a byte or word: the **most significant bit**, or **msb**, is the leftmost bit. In a word, the msb is bit 15; in a byte, it is bit 7. Similarly, the **least significant bit**, or **lsb**, is the rightmost bit; that is, bit 0.

2.4.1**Unsigned Integers**

An **unsigned integer** is an integer that represents a magnitude, so it is never negative. Unsigned integers are appropriate for representing quantities that can never be negative, such as addresses of memory locations, counters, and ASCII character codes (see later). Because unsigned integers are by definition nonnegative, none of the bits are needed to represent the sign, and so all 8 bits in a byte, or 16 bits in a word, are available to represent the number.

The largest unsigned integer that can be stored in a byte is 11111111 = FF_h = 255. This is not a very big number, so we usually store integers in words. The biggest unsigned integer a 16-bit word can hold is 1111111111111111 = 1 FFF_h = 65535. This is big enough for most purposes. If not, two or more words may be used.

Note that if the least significant bit of an integer is 1, the number is odd, and it's even if the lsb is 0.

2.4.2**Signed Integers**

A **s signed integer** can be positive or negative. The most significant bit is reserved for the sign: 1 means negative and 0 means positive. Negative integers are stored in the computer in a special way known as **two's complement**. To explain it, we first define **one's complement**, as follows.

One's Complement

The one's complement of an integer is obtained by complementing each bit; that is, replace each 0 by a 1 and each 1 by a 0. In the following, we assume numbers are 16 bits.

Example 2.6 Find the one's complement of $S = 0000000000000010_2$.

Solution:

$$S = 0000000000000010_2$$

$$\text{One's complement of } S = 1111111111111101_2$$

Note that if we add 5 and its one's complement, we get 1111111111111111.

Two's Complement

To get the two's complement of an integer, just add 1 to its one's complement.

Example 2.7 Find the two's complement of 5.

Solution: From above,

$$\text{one's complement of } 5 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}111111111111010$$

+ 1

$$\text{two's complement of } 5 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}111111111111011 = \text{FFFFh}$$

Now look what happens when we add 5 and its two's complement:

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 = 000000000000101 \\ + \text{two's complement of } 5 = 111111111111011 \\ \hline 1000000000000000 \end{array}$$

We end up with a 17-bit number. Because a computer word circuit can only hold 16 bits, the 1 carried out from the most significant bit is lost, and the 16-bit result is 0. As 5 and its two's complement add up to 0, the two's complement of 5 must be a correct representation of -5.

It is easy to see why the two's complement of any integer N must represent $-N$: Adding N and its one's complement gives 16 ones; adding 1 to this produces 16 zeros with a 1 carried out and lost. The result stored is always 0000000000000000.

The following example shows what happens when a number is complemented two times.

Example 2.8 Find the two's complement of the two's complement of 5.

Solution: We would guess that after complementing 5 two times, the result should be 5. To verify this, from above,

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{two's complement of } 5 = 111111111111011 \\ \text{one's complement of } 111111111111011 = 000000000000100 \\ + 1 \\ \hline \text{two's complement of } 111111111111011 = 000000000000101 = 5 \end{array}$$

Example 2.9 Show how the decimal integer -97 would be represented (a) in 8 bits, and (b) in 16 bits. Express the answers in hex.

Solution: A decimal-to-hex conversion using repeated division by 16 yields

$$\begin{array}{r} 97 = 6 \times 16 + 1 \\ 6 = 0 \times 16 + 6 \end{array}$$

Thus $97 = 61\text{h}$. To represent -97, we need to express 61h in binary and take the two's complement.

a. In 8 bits, we get

$$\begin{array}{r}
 61h = 0110\ 0001 \\
 \text{one's complement} = 1001\ 1110 \\
 + 1 \\
 \hline
 \text{two's complement} = 1001\ 1111 = 9Fh
 \end{array}$$

b. In 16 bits, we get

$$\begin{array}{r}
 61h = 0000\ 0000\ 0110\ 0001 \\
 \text{one's complement} = 1111\ 1111\ 1001\ 1110 \\
 + 1 \\
 \hline
 1111\ 1111\ 1001\ 1111 = FF9Fh
 \end{array}$$

Subtraction as Two's Complement Addition

The advantage of two's complement representation of negative integers in the computer is that subtraction can be done by bit complementation and addition, and circuits that add and complement bits are easy to design.

Example 2.10 Suppose AX contains 5ABC_h and BX contains 21FCh. Find the difference of AX minus BX by using complementation and addition.

Solution:

AX contains	5ABC _h = 0101 1010 1011 1100
BX contains	21FCh = 0010 0001 1111 1100
	5ABC _h = 0101 1010 1011 1100
+ one's complement of 21FCh	= 1101 1110 0000 0011
	+ 1
	<hr/>
	Difference = 1001 1000 1100 0000 = 38C0h

A one is carried out of the most significant bit and is lost. The answer stored, 38C0h, is correct, as may be verified by hex subtraction.

2.4.3

Decimal Interpretation

In the last section, we saw how signed and unsigned decimal integers may be represented in the computer. The reverse problem is to interpret the contents of a byte or word as a signed or unsigned decimal integer.

- *Unsigned decimal interpretation:* Just do a binary-to-decimal conversion. It's usually easier to convert binary to hex first, and then convert hex to decimal.
- *Signed decimal interpretation:* If the most significant bit is 0, the number is positive, and the signed decimal is the same as the unsigned decimal. If the msb is 1, the number is negative, so call it $-N$. To find N , just take the two's complement and then convert to decimal as before.

Example 2.11 Suppose AX contains FEOCh. Give the unsigned and signed decimal interpretations.

Table 2.4A Signed and Unsigned Decimal Interpretations of 16-Bit Register/Memory Contents

Hex	Unsigned decimal	Signed decimal
0000	0	0
0001	1	1
0002	2	2
.	.	.
0009	9	9
000A	10	10
.	.	.
7FFE	32766	32766
7FFF	32767	32767
8000	32768	-32768
8001	32769	-32767
.	.	.
FFFFE	65534	-2
FFFFF	65535	-1

Solution: Conversion of FEOCh to decimal yields 65036, which is the unsigned decimal interpretation.

For the signed interpretation, FEOCh = 1111111000001100. Since the sign bit is 1, this is a negative number, call it $-N$. To find N , get the two's complement.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{FEOCh} = 1111\ 1110\ 0000\ 1100 \\
 \text{one's complement} = 0000\ 0001\ 1111\ 0011 \\
 \hline
 + 1 \\
 \hline
 N = 0000\ 0001\ 1111\ 0100 = 01F4h = 500
 \end{array}$$

Thus, AX contains -500.

Tables 2.4A and 2.4B give 16-bit word and 8-bit byte hex values and their signed and unsigned decimal interpretations. Note the following:

1. Because the most significant bit of a positive signed integer is 0, the leading hex digit of a positive signed integer is 0 – 7; integers beginning with 8-9h have 1 in the sign bit, so they are negative.
2. The largest 16-bit positive signed integer is 7FFFh = 32767; the smallest negative integer is 8000h = -32768. For a byte, the largest positive integer is 7Fh = 127 and the smallest is 80h = -128.
3. The following relationship holds between the unsigned and signed decimal interpretations of the contents of a 16-bit word:

Table 2.4B Signed and Unsigned Decimal Interpretations of a Byte

<i>Hex</i>	<i>Unsigned decimal</i>	<i>Signed decimal</i>
00	0	0
01	1	1
02	2	2
.	.	.
09	9	9
0A	10	10
.	.	.
7E	126	126
7F	127	127
80	128	-128
81	129	-127
.	.	.
FE	254	-2
FF	255	-1

For 0000h–7FFFh, signed decimal = unsigned decimal.

For 8000h–FFFFh, signed decimal = unsigned decimal – 65536.

There are similar relations for the contents of an eight-bit byte:

For 00h–7Fh, signed decimal = unsigned decimal.

For 80h–FFh, signed decimal = unsigned decimal – 256.

Example 2.12 Use observation 3, from the above, to rework example 2.11.

Solution: We saw that the unsigned decimal interpretation of FE0Ch is 65036. Because the leading hex digit is Fh, the content is negative in a signed sense. To interpret it, just subtract 65536 from the unsigned decimal. Thus

$$\text{signed decimal interpretation} = 65036 - 65536 = -500$$

2.5 Character Representation

ASCII Code

Not all data processed by the computer are treated as numbers. I/O devices such as the video monitor and printer are character oriented, and programs such as word processors deal with characters exclusively. Like all

data, characters must be coded in binary in order to be processed by the computer. The most popular encoding scheme for characters is **ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) code**. Originally used in communications by teletype, ASCII code is used by all personal computers today.

The ASCII code system uses seven bits to code each character, so there are a total of $2^7 = 128$ ASCII codes. Table 2.5 gives the ASCII codes and the characters associated with them.

Notice that only 95 ASCII codes, from 32 to 126, are considered to be printable. The codes 0 to 31 and also 127 were used for communication control purposes and do not produce printable characters. Most microcomputers use only the printable characters and a few control characters such as LF, CR, BS, and Bell.

Because each ASCII character is coded by only seven bits, the code of a single character fits into a byte, with the most significant bit set to zero. The printable characters can be displayed on the video monitor or printed by the printer, while the control characters are used to control the operations of these devices. For example, to display the character A on the screen, a program sends the ASCII code 41h to the screen; and to move the cursor back to the beginning of the line, a program sends the ASCII code 0Dh, which is the CR character, to the screen.

A computer may assign special display characters to some of the non-printed ASCII codes. As you will see later, the screen controller for the IBM PC can actually display an extended set of 256 characters. Appendix A shows the 256 display characters of the IBM PC.

Example 2. Show how the character string "RG 2z" is stored in memory, starting at address 0.

Solution: From Table 2.5, we have

Character	ASCII Code (hex)	ASCII Code (binary)
R	52	0101 0010
G	47	0100 0111
space	20	0010 0000
2	32	0011 0010
z	7A	0111 1010

So memory would look like this:

Address	Contents
0	01010010
1	01000111
2	00100000
3	00110010
4	01111010

The Keyboard

It's reasonable to guess that the keyboard identifies a key by generating an ASCII code when the key is pressed. This was true for a class of keyboards known as *ASCII keyboards* used by some early microcomputers.

Table 2.5 ASCII Code

Dec	Hex	Char									
0	00	<CC>	32	20	SP	64	40	@	96	60	'
1	01	<CC>	33	21	!	65	41	A	97	61	a
2	02	<CC>	34	22	"	66	42	B	98	62	b
3	03	<CC>	35	23	#	67	43	C	99	63	c
4	04	<CC>	36	24	\$	68	44	D	100	64	d
5	05	<CC>	37	25	%	69	45	E	101	65	e
6	06	<CC>	38	26	&	70	46	F	102	66	f
7	07	<CC>	39	27	'	71	47	G	103	67	g
8	08	<CC>	40	28	(72	48	H	104	68	h
9	09	<CC>	41	29)	73	49	I	105	69	i
10	0A	<CC>	42	2A	*	74	4A	J	106	6A	j
11	0B	<CC>	43	2B	+	75	4B	K	107	6B	k
12	0C	<CC>	44	2C	,	76	4C	L	108	6C	l
13	0D	<CC>	45	2D	-	77	4D	M	109	6D	m
14	0E	<CC>	46	2E	.	78	4E	N	110	6E	n
15	0F	<CC>	47	2F	/	79	4F	O	111	6F	o
16	10	<CC>	48	30	0	80	50	P	112	70	p
17	11	<CC>	49	31	1	81	51	Q	113	71	q
18	12	<CC>	50	32	2	82	52	R	114	72	r
19	13	<CC>	51	33	3	83	53	S	115	73	s
20	14	<CC>	52	34	4	84	54	T	116	74	t
21	15	<CC>	53	35	5	85	55	U	117	75	u
22	16	<CC>	54	36	6	86	56	V	118	76	v
23	17	<CC>	55	37	7	87	57	W	119	77	w
24	18	<CC>	56	38	8	88	58	X	120	78	x
25	19	<CC>	57	39	9	89	59	Y	121	79	y
26	1A	<CC>	58	3A	:	90	5A	Z	122	7A	z
27	1B	<CC>	59	3B	;	91	5B	[123	7B	{
28	1C	<CC>	60	3C	<	92	5C	\	124	7C	
29	1D	<CC>	61	3D	=	93	5D]	125	7D	}
30	1E	<CC>	62	3E	>	94	5E	^	126	7E	-
31	1F	<CC>	63	3F	?	95	5F	_	127	7F	<CC>

<CC> denotes a control character

SP = blank space

Special Control Characters

Dec	Hex	Char	Meaning
7	07	BEL	bell
8	08	BS	backspace
9	09	HT	horizontal tab
10	0A	LF	line feed
12	0C	FF	form feed
13	0D	CR	carriage return

However, modern keyboards have many control and function keys in addition to ASCII character keys, so other encoding schemes are used. For the IBM PC, each key is assigned a unique number called a **scan code**; when a key is pressed, the keyboard sends the key's scan code to the computer. Scan codes are discussed in Chapter 12.

SUMMARY

- Numbers are represented in different ways, according to the basic symbols used. The binary system uses two symbols, 0 and 1. The decimal system uses 0–9. The hexadecimal system uses 0–9, A–F.
- Binary and hex numbers can be converted to decimal by a process of nested multiplication.
- A hex number can be converted to decimal by a process of repeated division by 16; similarly, a binary number can be converted to decimal by a process of repeated division by 2.
- Hex numbers can be converted to binary by converting each hex digit to binary; binary numbers are converted to hex by grouping the bits in fours, starting from the right, and converting each group to a hex digit.
- The process of adding and subtracting hex and binary numbers is the same as for decimal numbers, and can be done with the help of the appropriate addition table.
- Negative numbers are stored in two's complement form. To get the two's complement of a number, complement each bit and add 1 to the result.
- If A and B are stored integers, the processor computes A – B by adding the two's complement of B to A.
- The range of unsigned integers that can be stored in a byte is 0–255; in a 16-bit word, it is 0–65535.
- For signed numbers, the most significant bit is the sign bit; 0 means positive and 1 means negative. The range of signed numbers that can be stored in a byte is –128 to 127; in a word, it is –32768 to 32767.
- The unsigned decimal interpretation of a word is obtained by converting the binary value to decimal. If the sign bit is 0, this is also the signed decimal interpretation. If the sign bit is 1, the signed decimal interpretation may be obtained by subtracting 65536 from the unsigned decimal interpretation.
- The standard encoding scheme for characters is the ASCII code.
- A character requires seven bits to code, so it can be stored in a byte.
- The IBM screen controller can generate a character for each of the 256 possible numbers that can be stored in a byte.

Glossary

ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) codes	The encoding scheme for characters used on all personal computers
binary number system	Base two system in which the digits are 0 and 1
hexadecimal number system	Base sixteen system in which the digits are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F
least significant bit, lsb	The rightmost bit in a word or byte; that is, bit 0
most significant bit, msb	The leftmost bit in a word or byte; that is, bit 15 in a word or bit 7 in a byte
one's complement of a binary number	Obtained by replacing each 0 bit by 1 and each 1 bit by 0
scan code	A number used to identify a key on the keyboard
signed integer	An integer that can be positive or negative
two's complement of a binary number	Obtained by adding 1 to the one's complement
unsigned integer	An integer representing a magnitude; that is, always positive

Exercises

In many applications, it saves time to memorize the conversions among small binary, decimal, and hex numbers. Without referring to Table 2.2, fill in the blanks in the following table:

Binary	Decimal	Hex
1001	9	B
1010	10	C
1100	12	D
1101	13	E
1110	14	
1111		8

2. Convert the following binary and hex numbers to decimal:
 - a. 1110
 - b. 100101011101
 - c. 46Ah
 - d. FAE2Ch
3. Convert the following decimal numbers:
 - a. 97 to binary
 - b. 627 to binary
 - c. 921 to hex
 - d. 6120 to hex
4. Convert the following numbers:

- a. 1001011 to hex
 - b. 100101010101110 to hex
 - c. A2Ch to binary
 - d. B34Dh to binary
5. Perform the following additions:
- a. 100101b + 10111b
 - b. 10011101b + 10001111001b
 - c. B23CDh + 17912h
 - d. FFFFh + FBCADh
6. Perform the following subtractions:
- a. 11011b - 10110b
 - b. 10000101b - 111011b
 - c. SFC12h - 3ABD1h
 - d. F001Eh - 1FF3Fh
7. Give the 16-bit representation of each of the following decimal integers. Write the answer in hex.
- a. 234
 - b. -16
 - c. 31634
 - d. -32216
8. Do the following binary and hex subtractions by two's complement addition.
- a. 10110100 - 10010111
 - b. 10001011 - 11110111
 - c. FEOFh - 12ABh
 - d. 1ABCCh - B3EAh
9. Give the unsigned and signed decimal interpretations of each of the following 16-bit or 8-bit numbers.
- a. 7FFFh
 - b. 8543h
 - c. FEh
 - d. 7Fh
10. Show how the decimal integer -120 would be represented.
- a. in 16 bits.
 - b. in 8 bits.
11. For each of the following decimal numbers, tell whether it could be stored (a) as a 16-bit number (b) as an 8-bit number.
- a. 32767
 - b. -40000
 - c. 65536
 - d. 257
 - e. -128
12. For each of the following 16-bit signed numbers, tell whether it is positive or negative.
- a. 1010010010010100b
 - b. 78E3h

- c. CB33h
 - d. 807Fh
 - e. 9AC4h
13. If the character string "\$12.75" is being stored in memory starting at address 0, give the hex contents of bytes 0-5.
 14. Translate the following secret message, which has been encoded in ASCII as 41 74 74 61 63 6B 20 61 74 20 44 61 77 6E.
 15. Suppose that a byte contains the ASCII code of an uppercase letter. What hex number should be added to it to convert it to lower case?
 16. Suppose that a byte contains the ASCII code of a decimal digit; that is, "0" . . . "9." What hex number should be subtracted from the byte to convert it to the numerical form of the characters?
 17. It is not really necessary to refer to the hex addition table to do addition and subtraction of hex digits. To compute Eh + Ah, for example, first copy the hex digits:

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F

Now starting at Eh, move to the right Ah = 10 places. When you go off the right end of the line, continue on from the left end and attach a 1 to each number you pass:

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 9 A B C D E F
STOP ^ START ^

You get Eh + Ah = 18h. Subtraction can be done similarly. For example, to compute 15h - Ch, start at 15h and move left Ch = 12 places. When you go off the left end, continue on at the right:

10 11 12 13 14 15 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F
^ START ^ STOP

You get 15h - Ch = 9h.

Rework exercises 5(c) and 6(c) by this method.

3

Organization of the IBM Personal Computers

Overview

Chapter 1 described the organization of a typical microcomputer system. This chapter takes a closer look at the IBM personal computers. These machines are based on the Intel 8086 family of microprocessors.

After a brief survey of the 8086 family in section 3.1, section 3.2 concentrates on the architecture of the 8086. We introduce the registers and mention some of their special functions. In section 3.2.3, the important idea of segmented memory is discussed.

In section 3.3, we look at the overall structure of the IBM PC; the memory organization, I/O ports, and the DOS and BIOS routines.

3.1

The Intel 8086 Family of Microprocessors

The IBM personal computer family consists of the IBM PC, PC XT, PC AT, PS/1, and PS/2 models. They are all based on the Intel 8086 family of microprocessors, which includes the 8086, 8088, 80186, 80188, 80286, 80386, 80386SX, 80486, and 80486SX. The 8088 is used in the PC and PC XT; the 80286 is used in the PC AT and PS/1. The 80186 is used in some PC-compatible lap-top models. The PS/2 models use either the 8086, 80286, 80386, or 80486.

The 8086 and 8088 Microprocessors

Intel introduced the 8086 in 1978 as its first 16-bit microprocessor (a 16-bit processor can operate on 16 bits of data at a time). The 8088 was introduced in 1979. Internally, the 8088 is essentially the same as the 8086. Externally, the 8086 has a 16-bit data bus, while the 8088 has an 8-bit data bus. The 8086 also has a faster clock rate, and thus has better performance. IBM chose the 8088 over the 8086 for the original PC because it was less expensive to build a computer around the 8088.

"The 8086 and 8088 have the same instruction set, and it forms the basic set of instructions for the other microprocessors in the family."

The 80186 and 80188 Microprocessors

The 80186 and 80188 are enhanced versions of the 8086 and 8088, respectively. Their advantage is that they incorporate all the functions of the 8086 and 8088 microprocessors plus those of some support chips. They can also execute some new instructions called the *extended instruction set*. However, these processors offered no significant advantage over the 8086 and 8088 and were soon overshadowed by the development of the 80286.

The 80286 Microprocessor

The 80286, introduced in 1982, is also a 16-bit microprocessor. However, it can operate faster than the 8086 (12.5 MHz versus 10 MHz) and offers the following important advances over its predecessors:

1. *Two modes of operation.* The 80286 can operate in either **real address mode** or **protected virtual address mode**. In real address mode, the 80286 behaves like the 8086, and programs for the 8086 can be executed in this mode without modification. In protected virtual address mode, also called **protected mode**, the 80286 supports **multitasking**, which is the ability to execute several programs (tasks) at the same time, and **memory protection**, which is the ability to protect the memory used by one program from the actions of another program.
2. *More addressable memory.* The 80286 in protected mode can address 16 megabytes of physical memory (as opposed to 1 megabyte for the 8086 and 8088).
3. *Virtual memory in protected mode.* This means that the 80286 can treat external storage (that is, a disk) as if it were physical memory, and therefore execute programs that are too large to be contained in physical memory; such programs can be up to 1 gigabyte (2^{30} bytes).

The 80386 and 80386SX Microprocessors

Intel introduced its first 32-bit microprocessor, the 80386 (or 386), in 1985. It is much faster than the 80286 because it has a 32-bit data path, high clock rate (up to 33 MHz), and the ability to execute instructions in fewer clock cycles than the 80286.

Like the 80286, the 386 can operate in either real or protected mode. In real mode, it behaves like an 8086. In protected mode, it can emulate the 80286. It also has a *virtual 8086 mode* designed to run multiple 8086 applications under memory protection. The 386, in protected mode, can address 4 gigabytes of physical memory, and 64 terabytes (2^{46} bytes) of virtual memory.

The 386SX has essentially the same internal structure as the 386, but it has only a 16-bit data bus.

The 80486 and 80486SX Microprocessors

Introduced in 1989, the 80486 (or 486), is another 32-bit microprocessor. It is the fastest and most powerful processor in the family. It incorporates the functions of the 386 together with those of other support chips, including the 80387 numeric processor, which performs floating-point number operations, and an 8-KB cache memory that serves as a fast memory area to buffer data coming from the slower memory unit. With its numeric processor, cache memory, and more advanced design, the 486 is three times faster than a 386 running at the same clock speed. The 486SX is similar to the 486 but without the floating-point processor.

3.2

Organization of the 8086/8088 Microprocessors

In the rest of this chapter we'll concentrate on the organization of the 8086 and 8088. These processors have the simplest structure, and most of the instructions we will study are 8086/8088 instructions. They also provide insight to the organization of the more advanced processors, discussed in Chapter 20.

Because the 8086 and 8088 have essentially the same internal structure, in the following, the name "8086" applies to both 8086 and 8088.

3.2.1

Registers

As noted in Chapter 1, information inside the microprocessor is stored in registers. The registers are classified according to the functions they perform. In general, *data registers* hold data for an operation, *address registers* hold the address of an instruction or data, and a *status register* keeps the current status of the processor.

The 8086 has four general data registers; the *address registers* are divided into *segment*, *pointer*, and *index registers*; and the *status register* is called the *FLAGS register*. In total, there are fourteen 16-bit registers, which we now briefly describe. See Figure 3.1. Note: You don't need to memorize the special functions of these registers at this time. They will become familiar with use.

3.2.2

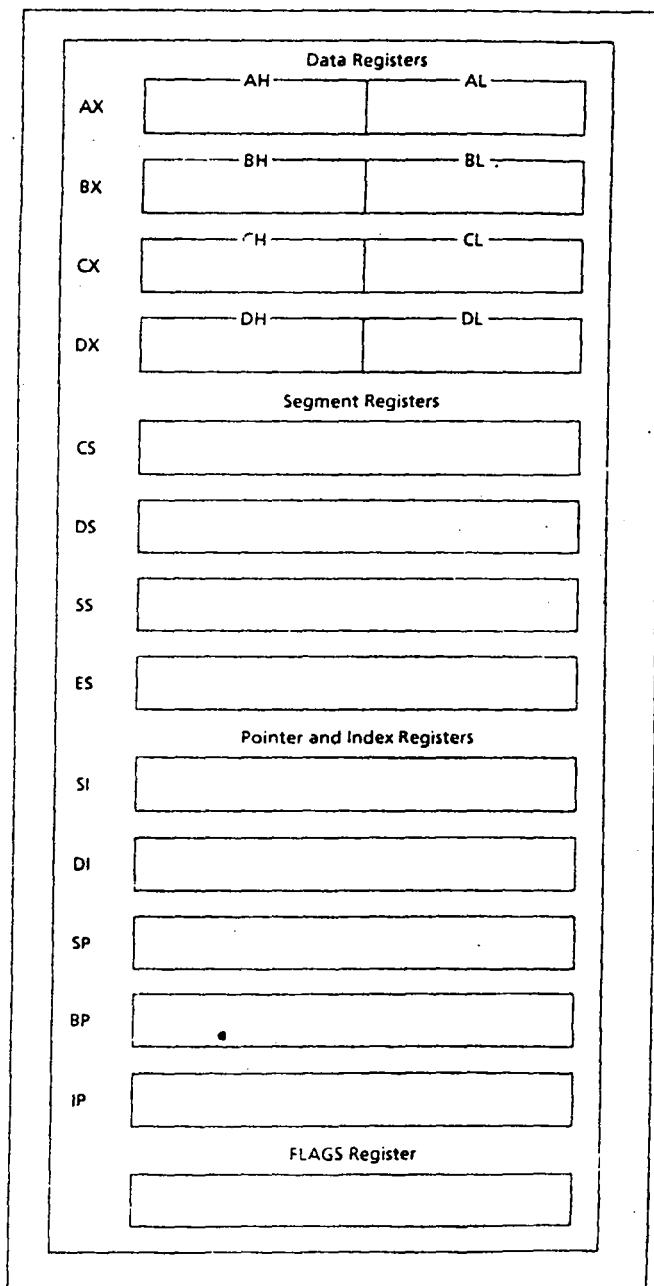
Data Registers: AX, BX, CX, DX

These four registers are available to the programmer for general data manipulation. Even though the processor can operate on data stored in memory, the same instruction is faster (requires fewer clock cycles) if the data are stored in registers. This is why modern processors tend to have a lot of registers.

The high and low bytes of the data registers can be accessed separately. The high byte of AX is called AH, and the low byte is AL. Similarly, the high and low bytes of BX, CX, and DX are BH and BL, CH and CL, DH and DL, respectively. This arrangement gives us more registers to use when dealing with byte-size data.

These four registers, in addition to being general-purpose registers, also perform special functions such as the following.

Figure 3.1 8086 Registers

**AX (Accumulator Register)**

AX is the preferred register to use in arithmetic, logic, and control transfer instructions because its use generates the shortest machine code.

In multiplication and division operations, one of the numbers involved must be in AX or AL. Input and output operations also require the use of AL and AX.

BX (Base Register)

BX also serves as an address register; an example is a table look-up instruction called XLAT (translate).

CX (Count Register)

Program loop constructions are facilitated by the use of CX, which serves as a loop counter. Another example of using CX as counter is REP (repeat), which controls a special class of instructions called *string operations*. CL is used as a count in instructions that shift and rotate bits.

DX (Data Register)

DX is used in multiplication and division. It is also used in I/O operations

3.2.3

Segment Registers: CS, DS, SS, ES

Address registers store addresses of instructions and data in memory. These values are used by the processor to access memory locations. We begin with the memory organization.

Chapter 1 explained that memory is a collection of bytes. Each memory byte has an address, starting with 0. The 8086 processor assigns a 20-bit physical address to its memory locations. Thus it is possible to address $2^{20} = 1,048,576$ bytes (one megabyte) of memory. The first five bytes in memory have the following addresses:

```
00000000000000000000  
00000000000000000001  
00000000000000000010  
00000000000000000011  
000000000000000000100
```

Because addresses are so cumbersome to write in binary, we usually express them as five hex digits, thus

```
00000  
00001  
00002
```

```
00009  
0000A  
0000B
```

and so on. The highest address is FFFFh.

In order to explain the function of the segment registers, we first need to introduce the idea of memory segments, which is a direct consequence of using a 20-bit address in a 16-bit processor. The addresses are too

big to fit in a 16-bit register or memory word. The 8086 gets around this problem by partitioning its memory into segments.

Memory Segment

A **memory segment** is a block of 2^{16} (or 64 K) consecutive memory bytes. Each segment is identified by a **segment number**, starting with 0. A segment number is 16 bits, so the highest segment number is FFFFh.

Within a segment, a memory location is specified by giving an **offset**. This is the number of bytes from the beginning of the segment. With a 64-KB segment, the offset can be given as a 16-bit number. The first byte in a segment has offset 0. The last offset in a segment is FFFFh.

Segment:Offset Address

A memory location may be specified by providing a segment number and an offset, written in the form **segment:offset**; this is known as a **logical address**. For example, A4FB:4872h means offset 4872h within segment A4FBh. To obtain a 20-bit physical address, the 8086 microprocessor first shifts the segment address 4 bits to the left (this is equivalent to multiplying by 10h), and then adds the offset. Thus the physical address for A4FB:4872 is

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{A4FB0h} \\ + 4872h \\ \hline \text{A9822h} \end{array} \quad (\text{20-bit physical address})$$

Location of Segments

It is instructive to see the layout of the segments in memory. Segment 0 starts at address 0000:0000 = 00000h and ends at 0000:FFFF = OFFFFFh. Segment 1 starts at address 0001:0000 = 00010h and ends at 0001:FFFF = 1000Fh. As we can see, there is a lot of overlapping between segments. Figure 3.2 shows the locations of the first three memory segments. The segments start every 10h = 16 bytes and the starting address of a segment always ends with a hex digit 0. We call 16 bytes a **paragraph**. We call an address that is divisible by 16 (ends with a hex digit 0) a **paragraph boundary**.

Because segments may overlap, the segment:offset form of an address is not unique, as the following example shows.

Example 3.1 For the memory location whose physical address is specified by 1256Ah, give the address in segment:offset form for segments 1256h and 1240h.

Solution: Let X be the offset in segment 1256h and Y the offset in segment 1240h. We have

$$1256Ah = 12560h + X \text{ and } 1256Ah = 12400h + Y$$

and so

$$X = 1256Ah - 12560h = Ah \text{ and } Y = 1256Ah - 12400h = 16Ah$$

thus-

$$1256Ah = 1256:000A = 1240:016A$$

Figure 3.2 Location of Memory Segments

	Address
10021	11010101
10020	01001001
Segment 2 ends → 1001F	11110011
1001E	10011100
...	
10010	01111001
Segment 1 ends → 1000F	11101011
1000E	10011101
...	
10000	01010001
Segment 0 ends → OFFFF	11111110
OFFFF	10011111
...	
00021	01000000
Segment 2 begins → 00020	01101010
0001F	10110101
...	
00011	01011001
Segment 1 begins → 00010	11111111
0000F	10001110
...	
00003	10101011
00002	00000010
00001	10101010
Segment 0 begins → 00000	00111000

It is also possible to calculate the segment number when the physical address and the offset are given.

Example 3.2 A memory location has physical address 80FD2h. In what segment does it have offset BFD2h?

Solution: We know that

$$\text{physical address} = \text{segment} \times 10\text{h} + \text{offset}$$

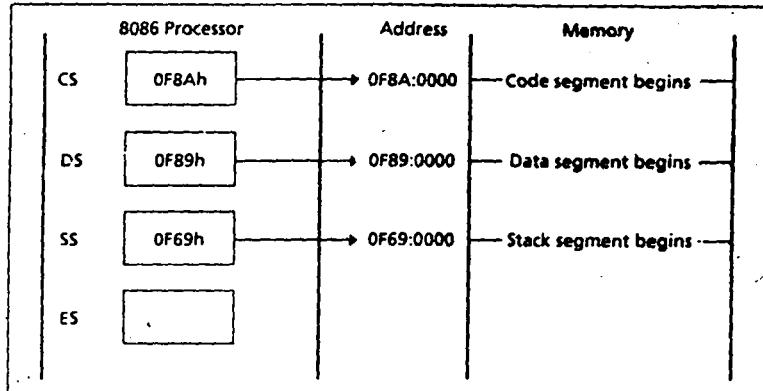
Thus

$$\text{segment} \times 10\text{h} = \text{physical address} - \text{offset}$$

in this example

$$\begin{aligned} \text{physical address} &= 80\text{FD}2\text{h} \\ &\quad - \text{offset} = \text{BFD}2\text{h} \\ \text{segment} \times 10\text{h} &= 75000\text{h} \end{aligned}$$

So the segment must be 7500h.

Figure 3.3 Segment Registers

Program Segments

Now let us talk about the registers CS, DS, SS, and ES. A typical machine language program consists of instructions (code) and data. There is also a data structure called the **stack** used by the processor to implement procedure calls. The program's code, data, and stack are loaded into different memory segments, we call them the **code segment**, **data segment**, and **stack segment**.

To keep track of the various program segments, the 8086 is equipped with **four segment registers to hold segment numbers**. The CS, DS, and SS registers contain the code, data, and stack segment numbers, respectively. If a program needs to access a second data segment, it can use the ES (extra segment) register.

A program segment need not occupy the entire 64 kilobytes in a memory segment. The overlapping nature of the memory segments permits program segments that are less than 64 KB to be placed close together. Figure 3.3 shows a typical layout of the program segments in memory (the segment numbers and the relative placement of the program segments shown are arbitrary).

At any given time, only those memory locations addressed by the four segment registers are accessible; that is, only four memory segments are *active*. However, the contents of a segment register can be modified by a program to address different segments.

3.2.4

Pointer and Index

Registers: SP, BP, SI, DI

The registers SP, BP, SI, and DI normally point to (contain the offset addresses of) memory locations. Unlike segment registers, the pointer and index registers can be used in arithmetic and other operations.

SP (Stack Pointer)

The SP (stack pointer) register is used in conjunction with SS for accessing the stack segment. Operations of the stack are covered in Chapter 8.

BP (Base Pointer)

The BP (base pointer) register is used primarily to access data on the stack. However, unlike SP, we can also use BP to access data in the other segments.

SI (Source Index)

The SI (source index) register is used to point to memory locations in the data segment addressed by DS. By incrementing the contents of SI, we can easily access consecutive memory locations.

DI (Destination Index)

The DI (destination index) register performs the same functions as SI. There is a class of instructions, called *string operations*, that use DI to access memory locations addressed by ES.

3.2.5

Instruction Pointer: IP

The memory registers covered so far are for data access. To access instructions, the 8086 uses the registers CS and IP. The CS register contains the segment number of the next instruction, and the IP contains the offset. IP is updated each time an instruction is executed so that it will point to the next instruction. Unlike the other registers, the IP cannot be directly manipulated by an instruction; that is, an instruction may not contain IP as its operand.

3.2.6

FLAGS Register

The purpose of the FLAGS register is to indicate the status of the microprocessor. It does this by the setting of individual bits called **flags**. There are two kinds of flags: **status flags** and **control flags**. The status flags reflect the result of an instruction executed by the processor. For example, when a subtraction operation results in a 0, the ZF (zero flag) is set to 1 (true). A subsequent instruction can examine the ZF and branch to some code that handles a zero result.

The control flags enable or disable certain operations of the processor; for example, if the IF (interrupt flag) is cleared (set to 0), inputs from the keyboard are ignored by the processor. The status flags are covered in Chapter 5, and the control flags are discussed in Chapters 11 and 15.

3.3

Organization of the PC

A computer system is made up of both hardware and software. It is the software that controls the hardware operations. So, to fully understand the operations of the computer, you also study the software that controls the computer.

3.3.1**The Operating System**

The most important piece of software for a computer is the **operating system**. The purpose of the operating system is to coordinate the operations of all the devices that make up the computer system. Some of the operating system functions are

1. reading and executing the commands typed by the user
2. performing I/O operations
3. generating error messages
4. managing memory and other resources

At present, the most popular operating system for the IBM PC is the **disk operating system (DOS)**, also referred to as PC DOS or MS DOS. DOS was designed for the 8086/8088-based computers. Because of this, it can manage only 1 megabyte of memory and it does not support multitasking. However, it can be used on 80286, 80386, and 80486-based machines when they run in real address mode.

One of the many functions performed by DOS is reading and writing information on a disk. Programs and other information stored on a disk are organized into **files**. Each file has a **file name**, which is made up of one to eight characters followed by an optional **file.extension** of a period followed by one to three characters. The extension is commonly used to identify the type of file. For example, COMMAND.COM has a file name COMMAND and an extension .COM.

There are several versions of DOS, with each new version having more capabilities. Most commercial programs require the use of version 2.1 or later. DOS is not just one program; it consists of a number of service routines. The user requests a service by typing a command. The latest version, DOS 5.0, also supports a **graphical user interface (gui)**, allowing the use of a mouse.

The DOS routine that services user commands is called **COMMAND.COM**. It is responsible for generating the DOS prompt—that is, C>—and reading user commands. There are two types of user commands, **internal** and **external**.

Internal commands are performed by DOS routines that have been loaded into memory, external commands may refer to DOS routines that have not been loaded or to application programs. In normal operations, many DOS routines are not loaded into memory so as to save memory space.

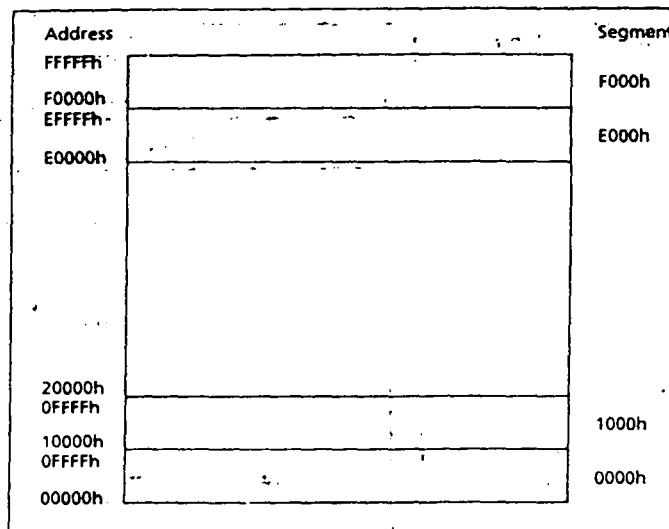
Because DOS routines reside on disk, a program must be operating when the computer is powered up to read the disk. In Chapter 1 we mentioned that there are system routines stored in ROM that are not destroyed when the power is off. In the PC, they are called **BIOS (Basic Input/Output System)** routines.

BIOS

The BIOS routines perform I/O operations for the PC. Unlike the DOS routines, which operate over the entire PC family, the BIOS routines are machine specific. Each PC model has its own hardware configuration and its own BIOS routines, which invoke the machine's I/O port registers for input and output. The DOS I/O operations are ultimately carried out by the BIOS routines.

Other important functions performed by BIOS are circuit checking and loading of the DOS routines. In section 3.3.4, we discuss the loading of DOS routines.

Figure 3.6 - Memory Partitioned into Disjoint Segments



To let DOS and other programs use the BIOS routines, the addresses of the BIOS routines, called **interrupt vectors**, are placed in memory, starting at 00000h. Some DOS routines also have their addresses stored there.

Because IBM has copyrighted its BIOS routines, IBM compatibles use their own BIOS routines. The degree of compatibility has to do with how well their BIOS routines match the IBM BIOS.

3.3.2

Memory Organization of the PC

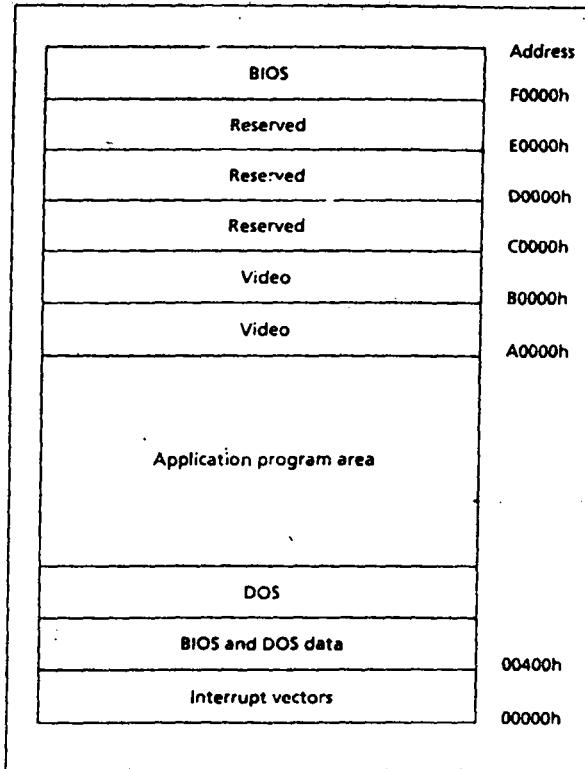
As indicated in section 3.2.3, the 8086/8088 processor is capable of addressing 1 megabyte of memory. However, not all the memory can be used by an application program. Some memory locations have special meaning for the processor. For example, the first kilobyte (00000 to 003FFh) is used for interrupt vectors.

Other memory locations are reserved by IBM for special purposes, such as for BIOS routines and **video display memory**. The display memory holds the data that are being displayed on the monitor.

To show the memory map of the IBM PC, it is useful to partition the memory into disjoint segments. We start with segment 0, which ends at location 0FFFFh, so the next disjoint segment would begin at 10000h = 1000:0000. Similarly, segment 1000h ends at 1FFFFh and the next disjoint segment begins at 20000h = 2000:0000. Therefore the disjoint segments are 0000h, 1000h, 2000h, ..., 1000h, and so memory may be partitioned into 16 disjoint segments. See Figure 3.4.

Only the first 10 disjoint memory segments are used by DOS for loading and running application programs. These ten segments, 0000h to 9000h, give us 640 KB of memory. The memory sizes of 8086/8088-based PCs are given in terms of these memory segments. For example, a PC with a 512-KB memory has only eight of these memory segments.

Figure 3.5 Memory Map of the PC



Segments A000h and B000h are used for video display memory. Segments C000h to E000h are reserved. Segment F000h is a special segment because its circuits are ROM instead of RAM, and it contains the BIOS routines and ROM BASIC. Figure 3.5 shows the memory layout.

Table 3.1 Some Common I/O Ports for the PC

Port Address	Description
20h-21h	interrupt controller
60h-63h	keyboard controller
200h-20Fh	game controller
2F8h-2FFh	serial port (COM 2)
320h-32Fh	hard disk
378h-37Fh	parallel printer port 1
3C0h-3CFh	EGA
3D0h-3DFh	CGA
3F8h-3FFh	serial port (COM1)

3.3.3

I/O Port Addresses

The 8086/8088 supports 64 KB of I/O ports. Some common port addresses are given in Table 3.1. In general, direct programming of I/O ports is not recommended because I/O port address usage may vary among computer models.

3.3.4

Start-up Operation

When the PC is powered up, the 8086/8088 processor is put in a reset state, the CS register is set to FFFFh, and IP is set to 0000h. So the first instruction it executes is located at FFFF0h. This memory location is in ROM, and it contains an instruction that transfers control to the starting point of the BIOS routines.

The BIOS routines first check for system and memory errors, and then initialize the interrupt vectors and BIOS data area. Finally, BIOS loads the operating system from the system disk. This is done in two steps; first, the BIOS loads a small program, called the **boot program**, then the boot program loads the actual operating system routines. The boot program is so named because it is part of the operating system; having it load the operating system is like the computer pulling itself up by the bootstraps. Using the boot program isolates the BIOS from any changes made to the operating system and lets it be smaller in size. After the operating system is loaded into memory, COMMAND.COM is then given control.

Summary

- The IBM personal computer family consists of the PC, PC XT, PC AT, PS/1, and the PS/2 models. They use the Intel 8086 family of microprocessors.
- The 8086 family of microprocessors consists of the 8086, 8088, 80186, 80188, 80286, 80386, 80386SX, 80486, and 80486SX.
- The 8086 and 8088 have the same instruction set, and this forms the basic set of instructions for the other microprocessors.
- The 8086 microprocessor contains 14 registers. They may be classified as data registers, segment registers, pointer and index registers, and the FLAGS register.
- The data registers are AX, BX, CX, and DX. These registers may be used for general purposes, and they also perform special functions. The high and low bytes can be addressed separately.
- Each byte in memory has a 20-bit = 5 hex-digit address, starting with 00000h.
- A segment is a 64-KB block of memory. Addresses in memory may be given in segment:offset form. The physical address is obtained by multiplying the segment number by 10h, and adding the offset.
- The segment registers are CS, DS, SS, and ES. When a machine language program is executing, these registers contain the segment numbers of the code, data, stack, and extra data segments.

- The pointer and index registers are SP, BP, SI, DI, and IP. SP is used exclusively for the stack segment. BP can be used to access the stack segment. SI and DI may be used to access data in arrays.
- The IP contains the offset address of the next instruction to be executed.
- The FLAGS register contains the status and control flags. The status flags are set according to the result of an operation. The control flags may be used to enable or disable certain operations of the microprocessor.
- DOS is a collection of routines that coordinates the operations of the computer. The routine that executes user commands is COMMAND.COM.
- Information stored on disk is organized into files. A file has a name and an optional extension.
- The BIOS routines are used to perform I/O operations. The compatibility of PC clones with the IBM PC depends on how well their BIOS routines match those of the IBM PC.
- The BIOS routines are responsible for system testing and loading the operating system when the machine is turned on.

Glossary

basic input/output system, BIOS	Routines that handle input and output operations
boot program	The routine that loads the operating system during start-up
code segment	Memory segment containing a machine language program's instructions
COMMAND.COM	The command processor for DOS
control flags	Flags that enable or disable certain actions of the processor
data segment	Memory segment containing a machine language program's data
disk operating system, DOS	The operating system for the IBM PC
external commands	Commands that correspond to routines residing on disk
file	An organized, named collection of data items treated as a single unit for storage on devices such as disks
file extension	A period followed by one to three characters; used to identify the kind of file
file name	A one- to eight-character name of a file
flags	Bits of the FLAGS register
graphical user interface, gui	A user interface with pointers and graphical symbols

internal commands	DOS commands that are executed by routines that are present in memory
interrupt vectors	Addresses of the BIOS and DOS routines
logical address	An address given in the form segment:offset
memory protection	The ability of a processor to protect the memory used by one program from being used by another running program
memory segment	A 64-KB block of memory
multitasking	The ability of a computer to execute several programs at the same time
offset (of a memory location)	The number of bytes of the location from the beginning of a segment
operating system	A collection of programs that coordinate the operations of the devices that make up a computer system
paragraph	16 bytes
paragraph boundary	A hex address ending in 0
physical address	Address of a memory location; 8086-based machines have 20-bit addresses
protected (virtual address) mode	A processor mode in which the memory used by one program is protected from the actions of another program
real address mode	A processor mode in which the addresses used in a program correspond to a physical memory address
segment number	Number that identifies a memory segment
stack	A data structure used by the processor to implement procedure calls
stack segment	Memory segment containing a machine language program's stack
status flags	Flags that reflect the actions of the processor
video display memory	Memory used for storing data for display on the monitor
virtual memory	The ability of the advanced processors to treat external storage as if it were real internal memory, and therefore execute programs that are too large to be contained in internal memory

Exercises

1. What are the main differences between the 80286 and the 8086 processors?
2. What are the differences between a register and a memory location?
3. List one special function for each of the data registers AX, BX, CX, and DX.

4. Determine the physical address of a memory location given by 0A\$1:CD90h.
5. A memory location has a physical address 4A37Bh. Compute
 - a. the offset address if the segment number is 40FFh.
 - b. the segment number if the offset address is 123Bh.
6. What is a paragraph boundary?
7. What determines how compatible an IBM PC clone is with an authentic IBM PC?
8. What is the maximum amount of memory that DOS allocates for loading run files? Assume that DOS occupies up to the byte OFFFFh.

For the following exercises, refer to Appendix B.

9. Give DOS commands to do the following. Suppose that A is the logged drive.
 - a. Copy FILE1 in the current directory to FILE1A on the disk in drive B.
 - b. Copy all files with an .ASM extension to the disk in drive B.
 - c. Erase all files with a .BAK extension
 - d. List all file names in the current directory that begin with A.
 - e. Set the date to September 21, 1991.
 - f. Print the file FILE5.ASM on the printer.
10. Suppose that (a) the root directory has subdirectories A, B, and C; (b) A has subdirectories A1 and A2; (c) A1 has a subdirectory A1A.
Give DOS commands to
 - a. Create the preceding directory tree.
 - b. Make A1A the current directory.
 - c. Have DOS display the current directory.
 - d. Remove the preceding directory tree.

4

Introduction to IBM PC Assembly Language

Overview

This chapter covers the essential steps in creating, assembling, and executing an assembly language program. By the chapter's end you will be able to write simple but interesting programs that carry out useful tasks, and run them on the computer.

As with any programming language, the first step is to learn the syntax, which for assembly language is relatively simple. Next we show how variables are declared, and introduce basic data movement and arithmetic instructions. Finally, we cover program organization; you'll see that assembly language programs are comprised of code, data, and the stack, just like a machine language program.

Because assembly language instructions are so basic, input/output is much harder in assembly language than in high-level languages. We use DOS functions for I/O; they are easy to invoke and are fast enough for all but the most demanding applications.

An assembly language program must be converted to a machine language program before it can be executed. Section 4.10 explains the steps. To demonstrate, we'll create sample programs. They illustrate some standard assembly language programming techniques and serve as models for the exercises.

4.1

Assembly Language Syntax

Assembly language programs are translated into machine language instructions by an assembler, so they must be written to conform to the assembler's specifications. In this book we use the Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM). Assembly language code is generally not case sensitive, but we use upper case to differentiate code from the rest of the text.

Statements

Programs consist of statements, one per line. Each statement is either an **instruction**, which the assembler translates into machine code, or an **assembler directive**, which instructs the assembler to perform some specific task, such as allocating memory space for a variable or creating a procedure. Both instructions and directives have up to four fields:

name operation operand(s) comment

At least one blank or tab character must separate the fields. The fields do not have to be aligned in a particular column, but they must appear in the above order.

An example of an instruction is

START: MOV CX,5 ;initialize counter

Here, the name field consists of the label START:. The operation is MOV, the operands are CX and 5, and the comment is ;initialize counter.

An example of an assembler directive is

MAIN PROC

MAIN is the name, and the operation field contains PROC. This particular directive creates a procedure called MAIN.

4.1.1

Name Field

The name field is used for instruction labels, procedure names, and variable names. The assembler translates names into memory addresses.

Names can be from 1 to 31 characters long, and may consist of letters, digits, and the special characters ?, @, \$, %. Embedded blanks are not allowed. If a period is used, it must be the first character. Names may not begin with a digit. The assembler does not differentiate between upper and lower case in a name.

Examples of legal names

```
COUNTER1
?character
SUM_OF_DIGITS
$1000
DONE?
.TEST
```

Examples of illegal names

TWO WORDS	contains a blank
2abc	begins with a digit
A45.28	. not first character
YOU&ME	contains an illegal character

4.1.2**Operation Field**

For an instruction, the operation field contains a symbolic operation code (opcode). The assembler translates a symbolic opcode into a machine language opcode. Opcode symbols often describe the operation's function; for example, MOV, ADD, SUB.

In an assembler directive, the operation field contains a pseudo-operation code (**pseudo-op**). Pseudo-ops are not translated into machine code; rather, they simply tell the assembler to do something. For example, the PROC pseudo-op is used to create a procedure.

4.1.3**Operand Field**

For an instruction, the operand field specifies the data that are to be acted on by the operation. **An instruction may have zero, one, or two operands**. For example,

NOP	no operands, does nothing
INC AX	one operand; adds 1 to the contents of AX
ADD WORD1, 2	two operands; adds 2 to the contents of memory word WORD1

In a two-operand instruction, the first operand is the **destination operand**. It is the register or memory location where the result is stored (note: some instructions don't store the result). The second operand is the **source operand**. The source is usually not modified by the instruction.

For an assembler directive, the operand field usually contains more information about the directive.

4.1.4**Comment Field**

The comment field of a statement is used by the programmer to say something about what the statement does. A **semicolon** marks the beginning of this field, and the assembler ignores anything typed after the semicolon. Comments are optional, but because assembly language is so low-level, it is almost impossible to understand an assembly language program without comments. In fact, good programming practice dictates a comment on almost every line. The art of good commentary is developed through practice. Don't say something obvious, like this:

```
MOV CX, 0 ;move .0 to CX
```

Instead, use comments to put the instruction into the context of the program:

```
MOV CX, 0 ;CX counts terms, initially 0
```

It is also permissible to make an entire line a comment, and to use them to create space in a program:

```
; initialize registers
;
MOV AX,0
MOV BX,0
```

4.2 Program Data

The processor operates only on binary data. Thus, the assembler must translate all data representation into binary numbers. However, in an assembly language program we may express data as binary, decimal, or hex numbers, and even as characters.

Numbers

A binary number is written as a bit string followed by the letter "B" or "b"; for example, 1010B.

A decimal number is a string of decimal digits, ending with an optional "D" or "d".

A hex number must begin with a decimal digit and end with the letter "H" or "h"; for example, 0ABC_H (the reason for this is that the assembler would be unable to tell whether a symbol such as "ABC_H" represents the variable name "ABC_H" or the hex number ABC).

Any of the preceding numbers may have an optional sign.

Here are examples of legal and illegal numbers for MASM:

<i>Number</i>	<i>Type</i>
1011	decimal
11011B	binary
€4223	decimal
-21843D	decimal
1,234	illegal—contains a nondigit character
184DH	hex
184D	illegal hex number—doesn't end in "H"
FFFFH	illegal hex number—doesn't begin with a decimal digit
0FFFFH	hex

Characters

Characters and character strings must be enclosed in single or double quotes; for example, "A" or 'hello'. Characters are translated into their ASCII codes by the assembler, so there is no difference between using "A" and 41h (the ASCII code for "A") in a program.

Table 4.1 Data-Defining Pseudo-ops

<i>Pseudo-op</i>	<i>Stands for</i>
DB	define byte
DW	define word
DD	define doubleword (two consecutive words)
DQ	define quadword (four consecutive words)
DT	define tenbytes (ten consecutive bytes)

4.3

Variables

Variables play the same role in assembly language that they do in high-level languages. Each variable has a data type and is assigned a memory address by the program. The data-defining pseudo-ops and their meanings are listed in Table 4.1. Each pseudo-op can be used to set aside one or more data items of the given type.

In this section we use DB and DW to define byte variables, word variables, and arrays of bytes and words. The other data-defining pseudo-ops are used in Chapter 18 in connection with multiple-precision and noninteger operations.

4.3.1

Byte Variables

The assembler directive that defines a byte variable takes the following form:

```
name DB           initial_value
```

where the pseudo-op DB stands for "Define Byte".

For example,

```
ALPHA DB           4
```

This directive causes the assembler to associate a memory byte with the name ALPHA, and initialize it to 4. A question mark ("?") used in place of an initial value sets aside an uninitialized byte; for example,

```
BYT DB           ?
```

The decimal range of initial values that can be specified is -128 to 127 if a signed interpretation is being given, or 0 to 255 for an unsigned interpretation. These are the ranges of values that fit in a byte.

4.3.2

Word Variables

The assembler directive for defining a word variable has the following form:

```
name DW           initial_value
```

The pseudo-op DW means "Define Word." For example,

```
WORD1 DW -2
```

as with byte variables, a question mark in place of an initial value means an uninitialized word. The decimal range of initial values that can be specified is -32768 to 32767 for a signed interpretation, or 0 to 65535 for an unsigned interpretation.

4.3.3

Arrays

In assembly language, an **array** is just a sequence of memory bytes or words. For example, to define a three-byte array called B_ARRAY, whose initial values are 10h, 20h, and 30h, we can write,

```
B_ARRAY DB 10H, 20H, 30H
```

The name B_ARRAY is associated with the first of these bytes, B_ARRAY+1 with the second, and B_ARRAY+2 with the third. If the assembler assigns the offset address 0200h to B_ARRAY, then memory would look like this:

Symbol	Address	Contents
B_ARRAY	200h	10h
B_ARRAY+1	201h	20h
B_ARRAY+2	202h	30h

In the same way, an array of words may be defined. For example,

```
W_ARRAY DW 1000, 40, 29887, 329
```

sets up an array of four words, with initial values 1000, 40, 29887, and 329. The initial word is associated with the name W_ARRAY, the next one with W_ARRAY + 2, the next with W_ARRAY + 4, and so on. If the array starts at 0300h, it will look like this:

Symbol	Address	Contents
W_ARRAY	0300h	1000d
W_ARRAY+2	0302h	40d
W_ARRAY+4	0304	29887d
W_ARRAY+6	0306h	329d

High and Low Bytes of a Word

Sometimes we need to refer to the high and low bytes of a word variable. Suppose we define

```
WORD1 DW 1234H
```

The low byte of WORD1 contains 34h, and the high byte contains 12h. The low byte has symbolic address WORD1, and the high byte has symbolic address WORD1+1.

Character Strings

An array of ASCII codes can be initialized with a string of characters. For example,

LETTERS DB 'ABC'

is equivalent to

LETTERS DB 41H, 42H, 43H

Inside a string, the assembler differentiates between upper and lower case. Thus, the string "abc" is translated into three bytes with values 61h, 62h, and 63h.

It is possible to combine characters and numbers in one definition; for example,

MSG DB 'HELLO', 0AH, 0DH, '\$'

is equivalent to

MSG DB 48H, 45H, 4CH, 4CH, 4FH, 0AH, 0DH, 24H

4.4

Named Constants

To make assembly language code easier to understand, it is often desirable to use a symbolic name for a constant quantity.

EQU (Equates)

To assign a name to a constant, we can use the EQU (equates) pseudo-op. The syntax is

name EQU constant

For example, the statement

LF EQU 0AH

assigns the name LF to 0Ah, the ASCII code of the line feed character. The name LF may now be used in place of 0Ah anywhere in the program. Thus, the assembler translates the instructions

MOV DL, 0AH

and

MOV DL, LF

into the same machine instruction.

The symbol on the right of an EQU can also be a string. For example,

PROMPT EQU 'TYPE YOUR NAME'

Then instead of

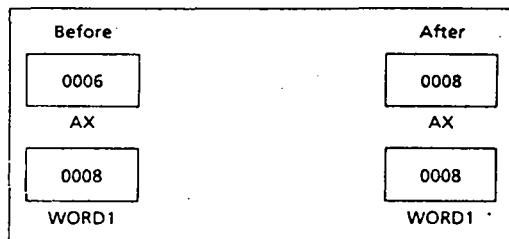
MSG DB 'TYPE YOUR NAME'

we could say

MSG DB PROMPT

Note: no memory is allocated for EQU names.

Figure 4.1 MOV AX,WORD1



4.5

A Few Basic Instructions

There are over a hundred instructions in the instruction set for the 8086 CPU; there are also instructions designed especially for the more advanced processors (see Chapter 20). In this section we discuss six of the most useful instructions for transferring data and doing arithmetic. The instructions we present can be used with either byte or word operands.

In the following, WORD1 and WORD2 are word variables, and BYTE1 and BYTE2 are byte variables. Recall from Chapter 3 that **AH is the high byte of register AX, and BL is the low byte of BX.**

4.5.1

MOV and XCHG

The **MOV** instruction is used to transfer data between registers, between a register and a memory location, or to move a number directly into a register or memory location. The syntax is

MOV destination,source

Here are some examples:

MOV AX,WORD1

This reads "Move WORD1 to AX". The contents of register AX are replaced by the contents of memory location WORD1. The contents of WORD1 are unchanged. In other words, a copy of WORD1 is sent to AX (Figure 4.1).

MOV AX,BX

AX gets what was previously in BX. BX is unchanged.

MOV AH,'A'

Figure 4.2 XCHG AH,BL

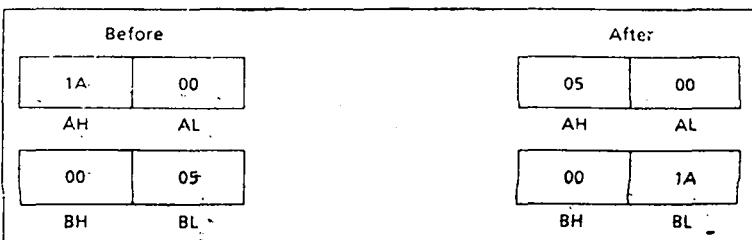


Table 4.2 Legal Combinations of Operands for MOV and XCHG**MOV**

Source Operand	Destination Operand			
	General register	Segment register	Memory location	Constant
<i>General register</i>	yes	yes	yes	no
<i>Segment register</i>	yes	no	yes	no
<i>Memory location</i>	yes	yes	no	no
<i>Constant</i>	yes	no	yes	no

XCHG

Source Operand	Destination Operand	
	General register	Memory location
<i>General register</i>	yes	yes
<i>Memory location</i>	yes	no

This is a move of the number 041h (the ASCII code of "A") into register AH. The previous value of AH is overwritten (replaced by new value).✓

The XCHG (exchange) operation is used to exchange the contents of two registers, or a register and a memory location. The syntax is

XCHG destination, source

An example is

XCHG AH, BL

This instruction swaps the contents of AH and BL, so that AH contains what was previously in BL and BL contains what was originally in AH (Figure 4.2). Another example is

XCHG AX, WORD1

which swaps the contents of AX and memory location WORD1.✓

Restrictions on MOV and XCHG

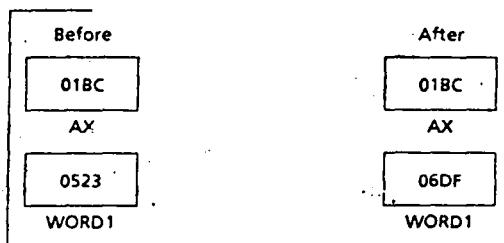
For technical reasons, there are a few restrictions on the use of MOV and XCHG. Table 4.2 shows the allowable combinations. Note in particular that a **MOV or XCHG between memory locations is not allowed**. For example,

ILLEGAL: MOV WORD1, WORD2

but we can get around this restriction by using a register:

MOV AX, WORD2

MOV WORD1, AX

Figure 4.3 ADD WORD1,AX**4.5.2****ADD, SUB, INC, and DEC**

The **ADD** and **SUB** instructions are used to add or subtract the contents of two registers, a register and a memory location, or to add (subtract) a number to (from) a register or memory location. The syntax is

```
ADD destination,source
SUB destination,source
```

For example,

```
ADD WORD1,AX
```

This instruction, "Add AX to WORD1," causes the contents of AX and memory word WORD1 to be added, and the sum is stored in WORD1. AX is unchanged (Figure 4.3).

```
SUB AX,DX
```

In this example, "Subtract DX from AX," the value of DX is subtracted from the value of AX, with the difference being stored in AX. DX is unchanged (Figure 4.4).

Table 4.3 Legal Combinations of Operands for ADD and SUB
Destination Operand

Source Operand	General register	Memory location
General register	yes	yes
Memory location	yes	no
Constant	yes	yes

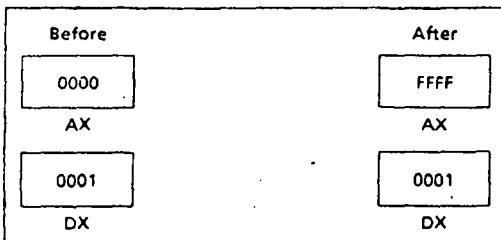
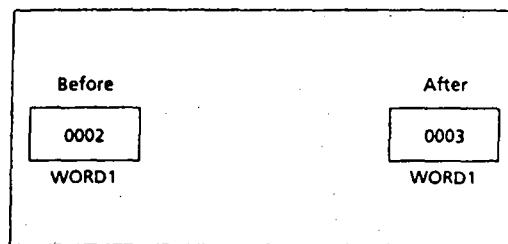
Figure 4.4 SUB AX,DX

Figure 4.5 INC WORD1



```
ADD BL, 5
```

This is an addition of the number 5 to the contents of register BL.

As was the case with MOV and XCHG, there are some restrictions on the combinations of operands allowable with ADD and SUB. The legal ones are summarized in Table 4.3. Direct addition or subtraction between memory locations is illegal; for example,

```
ILLEGAL: ADD BYTE1, BYTE2
```

A solution is to move BYTE2 to a register before adding, thus

```
MOV AL,BYTE2           ;AX gets BYTE2
ADD BYTE1,AL           ;add it to BYTE1
```

INC (increment) is used to add 1 to the contents of a register or memory location and **DEC** (decrement) subtracts 1 from a register or memory location. The syntax is

```
INC destination
DEC destination
```

For example,

```
INC WORD1
```

adds 1 to the contents of WORD1 (Figure 4.5).

```
DEC BYTE1
```

subtracts 1 from variable BYTE1 (Figure 4.6).

Figure 4.6 DEC BYTE1

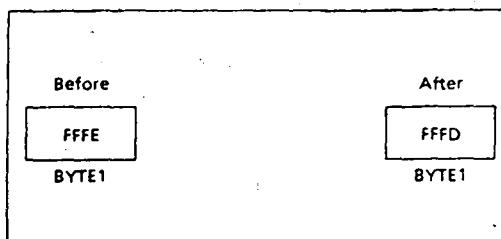
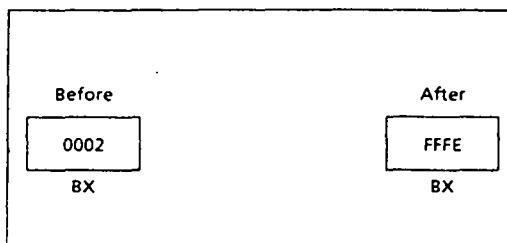


Figure 4.7 NEG BX**4.5.3****NEG**

NEG is used to negate the contents of the destination. NEG does this by replacing the contents by its two's complement. The syntax is

NEG destination

The destination may be a register or memory location. For example,

NEG BX

negates the contents of BX (Figure 4.7).

Type Agreement of Operands

The operands of the preceding two-operand instruction must be of the same type; that is, both bytes or words. Thus an instruction such as

MOV AX, BYTE1 ;illegal

is not allowed. However, the assembler will accept both of the following instructions:

MOV AH, 'A'

and

MOV AX, 'A'

In the former case, the assembler reasons that since the destination AH is a byte, the source must be a byte, and it moves 41h into AH. In the latter case, it assumes that because the destination is a word, so is the source, and it moves 0041h into AX.

4.6

**Translation of
High-Level Language
to Assembly
Language**

To give you a feeling for the preceding instructions, we'll translate some high-level language assignment statements into assembly language. Only MOV, ADD, SUB, INC, DEC, and NEG are used, although in some cases a better job could be done by using instructions that are covered later. In the discussion, A and B are word variables.

Statement	Translation
B = A	MOV AX, A ;move A into AX
	MOV B, AX ;and then into B

As was pointed out earlier, a direct memory-memory move is illegal, so we must move the contents of A into a register before moving it to B.

```
A = 5 - A           MOV AX,5          ;put 5 in AX
                   - SUB AX,A        ;AX contains 5 - A
                   MOV A,AX         ;put it in A
```

This example illustrates one approach to translating assignment statements: do the arithmetic in a register—for example, AX—then move the result into the destination variable. In this case, there is another, shorter way:

```
NEG A             ;A = -A
ADD A,5          ;A = 5 - A
```

The next example shows how to do multiplication by a constant.

```
A = B - 2 x A     MOV AX,B          ;AX has B
                   - SUB AX,A        ;AX has B - A
                   - SUB AX,A        ;AX has B - 2 x A
                   MOV A,AX         ;move result to A
```

4.7

Program Structure

Chapter 3 noted that machine language programs consist of code, data, and stack. Each part occupies a memory segment. The same organization is reflected in an assembly language program. This time, the code, data, and stack are structured as program segments. Each program segment is translated into a memory segment by the assembler.

We will use the simplified segment definitions that were introduced for the Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM), version 5.0. They are discussed further in Chapter 14, along with the full segment definitions.

4.7.1

Memory Models

The size of code and data a program can have is determined by specifying a **memory model** using the .MODEL directive. The syntax is

```
.MODEL      memory_model
```

The most frequently used memory models are SMALL, MEDIUM, COMPACT, and LARGE. They are described in Table 4.4. Unless there is a lot of code or data, the appropriate model is SMALL. The .MODEL directive should come before any segment definition.

Table 4.4 Memory Models

<i>Model</i>	<i>Description</i>
SMALL	code in one segment data in one segment
MEDIUM	code in more than one segment data in one segment
COMPACT	code in one segment data in more than one segment
LARGE	code in more than one segment data in more than one segment no array larger than 64k bytes
HUGE	code in more than one segment data in more than one segment arrays may be larger than 64k bytes

4.7.2**Data Segment**

A program's **data segment** contains all the variable definitions. Constant definitions are often made here as well, but they may be placed elsewhere in the program since no memory allocation is involved. To declare a data segment, we use the directive .DATA, followed by variable and constant declarations. For example,

```
.DATA
WORD1      DW 2
WORD2      DW 5
MSG        DB 'THIS IS A MESSAGE'
MASK       EQU 10010010B
```

4.7.3.**Stack Segment**

The purpose of the **stack segment** declaration is to set aside a block of memory (the stack area) to store the stack. The stack area should be big enough to contain the stack at its maximum size. The declaration syntax is

```
.STACK      size
```

where **size** is an optional number that specifies the stack area size in bytes. For example,

```
.STACK      100H
```

sets aside 100h bytes for the stack area (a reasonable size for most applications). If size is omitted, 1 KB is set aside for the stack area.

4.7.4**Code Segment**

The **code segment** contains a program's instructions. The declaration syntax is

```
.CODE name
```

where **name** is the optional name of the segment (there is no need for a name in a SMALL program, because the assembler will generate an error).

Inside a code segment, instructions are organized as procedures. The simplest procedure definition is

```
name PROC
;body of the procedure
name ENDP
```

where **name** is the name of the procedure; PROC and ENDP are pseudo-ops that delineate the procedure.

Here is an example of a code segment definition:

```
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;main procedure instructions
MAIN ENDP
;other procedures go here
```

4.7.5**Putting It Together**

Now that you have seen all the program segments, we can construct the general form of a .SMALL model program. With minor variations, this form may be used in most applications:

```
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
;data definitions go here
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;instructions go here
MAIN ENDP
;other procedures go here
END MAIN
```

The last line in the program should be the END directive, followed by name of the main procedure.

4.8**Input and Output Instructions**

In Chapter 1, you saw that the CPU communicates with the peripherals through I/O registers called *I/O ports*. There are two instructions, IN and OUT, that access the ports directly. These instructions are used when fast I/O is essential; for example, in a game program. However, most applications programs do not use IN and OUT because (1) port addresses vary among computer models, and (2) it's much easier to program I/O with the service routines provided by the manufacturer.

There are two categories of I/O service routines: (1) the Basic Input/Output System (*BIOS*) routines and (2) the DOS routines. The BIOS routines are stored in ROM and interact directly with the I/O ports. In Chapter 12, we use them to carry out basic screen operations such as moving the cursor and scrolling the screen. The DOS routines can carry out more complex tasks; for example, printing a character string; actually they use the BIOS routines to perform direct I/O operations.

The INT Instruction

To invoke a DOS or BIOS routine, the **INT** (interrupt) instruction is used. It has the format

INT interrupt_number

where *interrupt_number* is a number that specifies a routine. For example, INT 16h invokes a BIOS routine that performs keyboard input. Chapter 15 covers the INT instruction in more detail. In the following, we use a particular DOS routine, INT 21h.

4.8.1**INT 21h**

INT 21h may be used to invoke a large number of DOS functions (see Appendix C); a particular function is requested by placing a function number in the AH register and invoking INT 21h. Here we are interested in the following functions:

Function number	Routine
1	single-key input
2	single-character output✓
9	character string output

INT 21h functions expect input values to be in certain registers and return output values in other registers. These are listed as we describe each function.

**Function 1:
Single-Key Input**

Input: AH = 1
Output: AL = ASCII code if character key is pressed
 = 0 if non-character key is pressed

To invoke the routine, execute these instructions:

```
MOV AH,1           ;input key function
INT 21h           ;ASCII code in AL
```

The processor will wait for the user to hit a key if necessary. If a character key is pressed, AL gets its ASCII code; the character is also displayed on the screen. If any other key is pressed, such as an arrow key, F1-F10, and so on, AL will contain 0. The instructions following the INT 21h can examine AL and take appropriate action.

Because INT 21h, function 1, doesn't prompt the user for input, he or she might not know whether the computer is waiting for input or is occupied by some computation. The next function can be used to generate an input prompt.

**Function 2:
Display a character or execute a control function**

Input: AH = 2
 DL = ASCII code of the display character or control character
Output: AL = ASCII code of the display character or control character

To display a character with this function, we put its ASCII code in DL. For example, the following instructions cause a question mark to appear on the screen:

```
MOV AH,2           ;display character function
MOV DL,'?'        ;character is '?'
INT 21h           ;display character
```

After the character is displayed, the cursor advances to the next position on the line (if at the end of the line, the cursor moves to the beginning of the next line).

Function 2 may also be used to perform control functions. If DL contains the ASCII code of a control character, INT 21h causes the control function to be performed. The principal control characters are as follows:

ASCII code (Hex)	Symbol	Function
7	BEL	beep (sounds a tone)
8	BS	backspace
9	HT	tab
A	LF	line feed (new line)
D	CR	carriage return (start of current line)

On execution, AL gets the ASCII code of the control character.

4.9

4 First Program

Our first program will read a character from the keyboard and display it at the beginning of the next line.

We start by displaying a question mark:

```
MOV AH, 2           ;display character function
MOV DL, '?'        ;character is '?'
INT 21h            ;display character
```

The second instruction moves 3Fh, the ASCII code for "?", into DL.

Next we read a character:

```
MOV AH, 1           ;read character function
INT 21h            ;character in AL
```

Now we would like to display the character on the next line. Before doing so, the character must be saved in another register. (We'll see why in a moment.)

```
MOV BL, AL          ;save it in BL
```

To move the cursor to the beginning of the next line, we must execute a carriage return and line feed. We can perform these functions by putting the ASCII codes for them in DL and executing INT 21h.

```
MOV AH, 2           ;display character function
MOV DL, 0DH         ;carriage return
INT 21h            ;execute carriage return
MOV DL, 0AH         ;line feed
INT 21h            ;execute line feed
```

The reason why we had to move the input character from AL to BL is that the INT 21h, function 2, changes AL.

Finally we are ready to display the character:

```
MOV DL, BL          ;get character
INT 21h            ;and display it
```

Here is the complete program:

Program Listing PGM4_1.ASM

```
TITLE PGM4_1: ECHO PROGRAM
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;display prompt-
    MOV AH, 2           ;display character function
```

```

        MOV DL,'?'           ;character is '?'
        INT 21H              ;display it
;input a character
        MOV AH,1              ;read character function
        INT 21H              ;character in AL
        MOV BL,AL             ;save it in BL
;go to a new line
        MOV AH,2              ;display character function
        MOV DL,0DH             ;carriage return
        INT 21H              ;execute carriage return
        MOV DL,0AH             ;line feed
        INT 21H              ;execute line feed
;display character
        MOV DL,BL             ;retrieve character
        INT 21H              ;and display it
;return to DOS
        MOV AH,4CH             ;DOS exit function
        INT 21H              ;exit to DOS
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

Because no variables were used, the data segment was omitted.

Terminating a Program

The last two lines in the MAIN procedure require some explanation. When a program terminates, it should return control to DOS. This can be accomplished by executing INT 21h, function 4Ch.

4.10

Creating and Running a Program

We are now ready to look at the steps involved in creating and running a program. The preceding program is used to demonstrate the process. The four steps are (Figure 4.8):

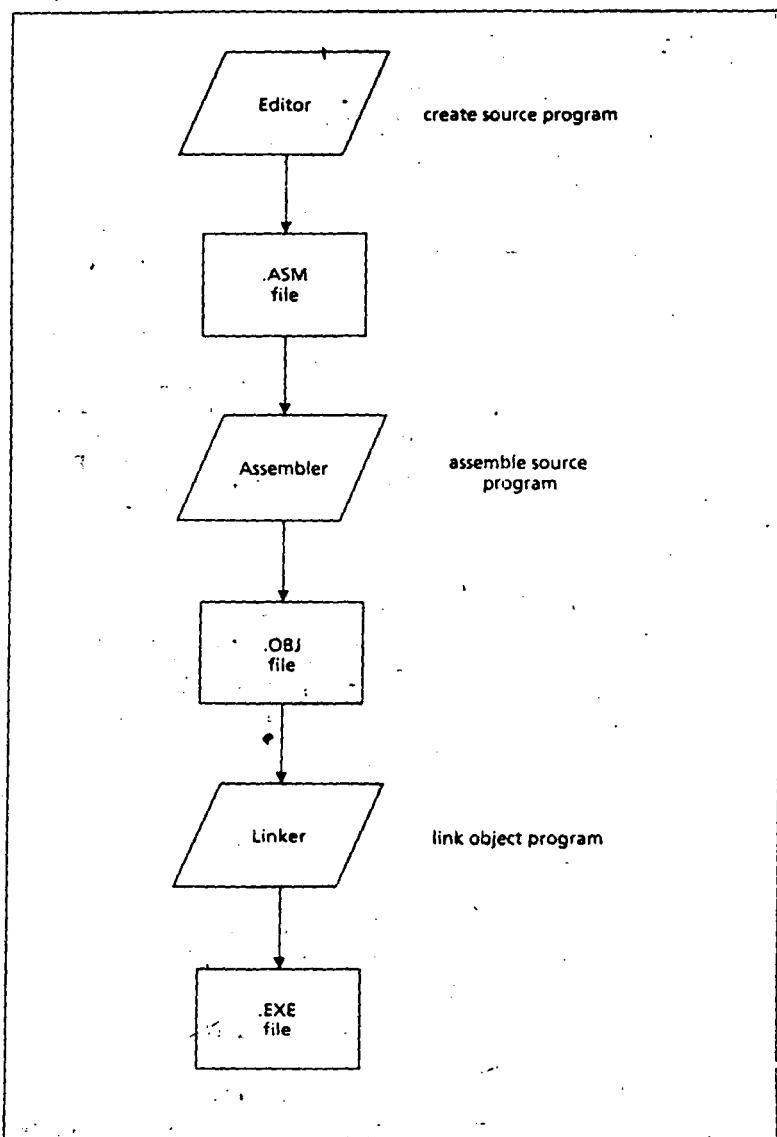
1. Use a text editor or word processor to create a **source program file**.
2. Use an assembler to create a machine language **object file**.
3. Use the LINK program (see description later) to link one or more object files to create a **run file**.
4. Execute the run file.

In this demonstration, the system files we need (assembler and linker) are in drive C and the programmer's disk is in drive A. We make A the default drive so that the files created will be stored on the programmer's disk.

Step 1. Create the Source Program File

We used an editor to create the preceding program, with file name PGM4_1.ASM. The .ASM extension is the conventional extension used to identify an assembly language source file.

Figure 4.8 Programming Steps



Step 2. Assemble the Program

We use the Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM) to translate the source file PGM4_1.ASM into a machine language object file called PGM4_1.OBJ. The simplest command is (user's response appears in boldface):

```
A>C:MASM PGM4_1;
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.
50060 + 418673 Bytes symbol space free
0 Warning Errors
0 Severe Errors
```

After printing copyright information, MASM checks the source file for syntax errors. If it finds any, it will display the line number of each error and a short description. Because there are no errors here, it translates the assembly language code into a machine language object file named PGM4_1.OBJ.

The semicolon after the preceding command means that we *don't* want certain optional files generated. Let's omit it and see what happens:

```
A>C:MASM PGM4_1
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.
Object filename [PGM4_1.CBJ]:
Source listing [NUL.LST]: PGM4_1
Cross-reference [NUL.CRF]: PGM4_1
50060 + 418673 Bytes symbol space free
0 Warning Errors
0 Severe Errors
```

This time MASM prints the names of the files it can create, then waits for us to supply names for the files. The default names are enclosed in square brackets. To accept a name, just press return. The default name NUL means that no file will be created unless the user does specify a name, so we reply with the name PGM4_1.

The Source Listing File

The source listing file (**.LST file**) is a line-numbered text file that displays assembly language code and the corresponding machine code side by side, and gives other information about the program. It is especially helpful for debugging purposes, because MASM's error messages refer to line numbers.

The Cross-Reference File

The cross-reference file (**.CRF file**) is a listing of names that appear in the program and the line numbers on which they occur. It is useful in locating variables and labels in a large program.

Examples of .LST and .CRF files are shown in Appendix D, along with other MASM options.

Step 3. Link the Program

The .OBJ file created in step 2 is a machine language file, but it cannot be executed because it doesn't have the proper run file format. In particular,

1. because it is not known where a program will be loaded in memory for execution, some machine code addresses may not have been filled in.
2. some names used in the program may not have been defined in the program. For example, it may be necessary to create several files for a large program and a procedure in one file may refer to a name defined in another file.

The LINK program takes one or more object files, fills in any missing addresses, and combines the object files into a single executable file (.EXE file). This file can be loaded into memory and run.

To link the program, type

```
A>C:LINK PGM4_1;
```

As before, if the semicolon is omitted, the linker will prompt you for names of the output files generated. See Appendix D.

Step 4. Run the Program

To run it, just type the run file name, with or without the .EXE extension.

```
A>PGM4_1  
?A  
A
```

The program prints a "?" and waits for us to enter a character. We enter "A" and the program echoes it on the next line.

4.11

Displaying a String

In our first program, we used INT 21h, functions 1 and 2, to read and display a single character. Here is another INT 21h function that can be used to display a character string:

**INT 21h, Function 9:
Display a String**

Input: DX = offset address of string.
The string must end with a '\$' character.

The "\$" marks the end of the string and is not displayed. If the string contains the ASCII code of a control character, the control function is performed.

To demonstrate this function, we will write a program that prints "HELLO!" on the screen. This message is defined in the data segment as

```
MSG DB 'HELLO!$'
```

The LEA Instruction

INT 21h, function 9, expects the offset address of the character string to be in DX. To get it there, we use a new instruction:

LEA destination, source

where destination is a general register and source is a memory location. LEA stands for "Load Effective Address." It puts a copy of the source offset address into the destination. For example,

LEA DX, MSG

puts the offset address of the variable MSG into DX.

Because our second program contains a data segment, it will begin with instructions that initialize DS. The following paragraph explains why these instructions are needed.

Program Segment Prefix

When a program is loaded in memory, DOS prefaces it with a 256-byte **program segment prefix (PSP)**. The PSP contains information about the program. So that programs may access this area, DOS places its segment number in both DS and ES before executing the program. The result is that DS does not contain the segment number of the data segment. To correct this, a program containing a data segment begins with these two instructions:

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX
```

— @Data is the name of the data segment defined by .DATA. The assembler translates the name @DATA into a segment number. Two instructions are needed because a number (the data segment number) may not be moved directly into a segment register.

With DS initialized, we may print the "HELLO!" message by placing its address in DX and executing INT 21h:

```
LEA DX, MSG      ;get message
MOV AH, 9        ;display string function
INT 21h          ;display string
```

Here is the complete program:

Program Listing PGM4_2.ASM

```
TITLE PGM4_2: PRINT STRING PROGRAM
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
MSG DB 'HELLO!$'
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;initialize DS
    MOV AX, @DATA
    MOV DS, AX      ;initialize DS
;display message
    LEA DX, MSG    ;get message
    MOV AH, 9        ;display string function
    INT 21h          ;display message
;return to DOS
    MOV AH, 4CH
```

```
INT 21h           ;DOS exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

And here is a sample execution:

```
A> PGM4_2
HELLO!
```

4.12

A Case Conversion Program

We will now combine most of the material covered in this chapter into a single program. This program begins by prompting the user to enter a lowercase letter, and on the next line displays another message with the letter in uppercase. For example,

```
ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER:
IN UPPER CASE IT IS: A
```

We use EQU to define CR and LF as names for the constants 0DH and 0AH.

```
CR EQU 0DH
LF EQU 0AH
```

The messages and the input character can be stored in the data segment like this:

```
MSG1 DB 'ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER: $'
MSG2 DB CR,LF,'IN UPPER CASE IT IS: '
CHAR DB '?,'S'
```

In defining MSG2 and CHAR, we have used a helpful trick: because the program is supposed to display the second message and the letter (after conversion to upper case) on the next line, MSG2 starts with the ASCII codes for carriage return and line feed; when MSG2 is displayed with INT 21h, function 9, these control functions are executed and the output is displayed on the next line. Because MSG2 does not end with '\$', INT 21h goes on and displays the character stored in CHAR.

Our program begins by displaying the first message and reading the character:

```
LEA DX,MSG1      ;get first message
MOV AH,9          ;display string function
INT 21h          ;display first message
MOV AH,1          ;read character function
INT 21h          ;read a small letter into AL
```

Having read a lowercase letter, the program must convert it to upper case. In the ASCII character sequence, the lowercase letters begin at 61h and the uppercase letters start at 41h, so subtraction of 20h from the contents of AL does the conversion:

```
SUB AL,20H        ;convert it to upper case
MOV CHAR,AL       ;and store it
```

Now the program displays the second message and the uppercase letter:

```

LEA DX,MSG2      ;get second message
MOV AH,9          ;display string function
INT 21h          ;display message and uppercase letter

```

Here is the complete program:

Program Listing PGM4_3.ASM

```

TITLE PGM4_3: CASE CONVERSION PROGRAM
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
    CR    EQU      0DH
    LF    EQU      0AH
    MSG1 DB      'ENTER A LOWER CASE LETTER: $'
    MSG2 DB      '0DH,0AH.' IN UPPER CASE IT IS: '
    CHAR DB      ?,'$'
.CODE
MAIN  PROC
;initialize DS
    MOV AX,?DATA    ;get data segment
    MOV DS,AX.        ;initialize DS
;print user prompt
    LEA DX,MSG1      ;get first message
    MOV AH,?          ;display string function
    INT 21H          ;display first message
;input a character and convert to upper case
    MOV AH,1          ;read character function
    INT 21H          ;read a small letter into AL
    SUB AL, 20H       ;convert it to upper case
    MOV CHAR,AL       ;and store it
;display on the next line
    LEA DX, MSG2      ;get second message
    MOV AH,9          ;display string function
    INT 21H          ;display message and upper case
;DOS exit
    MOV AH,4CH         ;letter in front
    INT 21H          ;DOS exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

Summary

- Assembly language programs are made up of statements. A statement is either an instruction to be executed by the computer, or a directive for the assembler.
- Statements have name, operation, operand(s), and comment fields.
- A symbolic name can contain up to 31 characters. The characters can be letters, digits, and certain special symbols.
- Numbers may be written in binary, decimal, or hex.
- Characters and character strings must be enclosed in single or double quotes.

- Directives DB and DW are used to define byte and word variables, respectively. EQU can be used to give names to constants.
- A program generally contains a code segment, a data segment, and a stack segment.
- MOV and XCHG are used to transfer data. There are some restrictions for the use of these instructions; for example, they may not operate directly between memory locations.
- ADD, SUB, INC, DEC, and NEG are some of the basic arithmetic instructions.
- There are two ways to do input and output on the IBM PC: (1) by direct communication with I/O devices, (2) by using BIOS or DOS interrupt routines.
- The direct method is fastest, but is tedious to program and depends on specific hardware circuits.
- Input and output of characters and strings may be done by the DOS routine INT 21h.
- INT 21h, function 1, causes a keyboard character to be read into AL.
- INT 21h, function 2, causes the character whose ASCII code is in DL to be displayed. If DL contains the code of a control character, the control function is performed.
- INT 21h, function 9, causes the string whose offset address is in DX to be displayed. The string must end with a "\$" character.

Glossary

array	A sequence of memory bytes or words
assembler directive	Directs the assembler to perform some specific task
code segment	Part of the program that holds the instructions
.CRF file	A file created by the assembler that lists names that appear in a program and line numbers where they occur
data segment	Part of the program that holds variables
destination operand	First operand in an instruction—receives the result
.EXE file	Same as run file
instruction	A statement that the assembler translates to machine code
.LST file	A line-numbered file created by the assembler that displays assembly language code, machine code, and other information about a program
memory model	Organization of a program that indicates the amount of code and data

object file	The machine language file created by the assembler from the source program file
Program segment prefix, PSP	The 256-byte area that precedes the program in memory—contains information about the program
pseudo-op	Assembler directive
run file	The executable machine language file created by the LINK program
source operand	Second operand in an instruction—usually not changed by the instruction
source program file	A program text file created with a word processor or text editor
stack segment	Part of the program that holds the run-time stack
variable	Symbolic name for a memory location that stores data

New Instructions

ADD	INT	NEG
DEC	LEA	SUB
INC	MOV	XCHG

New Pseudo-Ops

.CODE	.MODEL	EQU
.DATA	.STACK	

Exercises

1. Which of the following names are legal in IBM PC assembly language?
 - a. TWO_WORDS
 - b. ?1
 - c. Two words
 - d. .@?
 - e. \$145
 - f. LET'S_GO
 - g. T = .
2. Which of the following are legal numbers? If they are legal, tell whether they are binary, decimal, or hex numbers.
 - a. 246
 - b. 246h
 - c. 1001
 - d. 1,101
 - e. 2A3h
 - f. FFFEh

- g. 0Ah
 - h. Bh
 - i. 1110b
3. If it is legal, give data definition pseudo-ops to define each of the following.
- a. A word variable A initialized to 52
 - b. A word variable WORD1, uninitialized
 - c. A byte variable B, initialized to 25h
 - d. A byte variable C1, uninitialized
 - e. A word variable WORD2, initialized to 65536
 - f. A word array ARRAY1, initialized to the first five positive integers (i.e. 1-5)
 - g. A constant BELL equal to 07h
 - h. A constant MSG equal to 'THIS IS A MESSAGES'
4. Suppose that the following data are loaded starting at offset 0000h:
- | | | |
|---|----|-------------------|
| A | DB | 7 |
| B | DW | 1ABC _h |
| C | DB | 'HELLO' |
- a. Give the offset address assigned to variables A, B, and C.
 - b. Give the contents of the byte at offset 0002h in hex.
 - c. Give the contents of the byte at offset 0004h in hex.
 - d. Give the offset address of the character "O" in "HELLO."
5. Tell whether each of the following instructions is legal or illegal. W1 and W2 are word variables, and B1 and B2 are byte variables.
- a. MOV DS, AX
 - b. MOV DS, 1000h
 - c. MOV CS, ES
 - d. MOV W1, DS
 - e. XCHG W1, W2
 - f. SUB 5, B1
 - g. ADD B1, B2
 - h. ADD AL, 25_h
 - i. MOV W1, B1
6. Using only MOV, ADD, SUB, INC, DEC, and NEG, translate the following high-level language assignment statements into assembly language. A, B, and C are word variables.
- a. A = B - A
 - b. A = -(A + 1)
 - c. C = A + B
 - d. B = 3 × B + 7
 - e. A = B - A - 1
7. Write instructions (not a complete program) to do the following.
- a. Read a character, and display it at the next position on the same line.
 - b. Read an uppercase letter (omit error checking), and display it at the next position on the same line in lower case.

Programming Exercises

8. Write a program to (a) display a "?", (b) read two decimal digits whose sum is less than 10, (c) display them and their sum on the next line, with an appropriate message.

Sample execution:

```
?27  
THE SUM OF 2 AND 7 IS 9
```

9. Write a program to (a) prompt the user, (b) read first, middle, and last initials of a person's name, and (c) display them down the left margin.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER THREE INITIALS: JFK  
J  
F  
K
```

10. Write a program to read one of the hex digits A-F, and display it on the next line in decimal.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER A HEX DIGIT: C  
IN DECIMAL IT IS 12
```

11. Write a program to display a 10×10 solid box of asterisks.
Hint: declare a string in the data segment that specifies the box, and display it with INT 21h, function 9h.

12. Write a program to (a) display "?", (b) read three initials, (c) display them in the middle of an 11×11 box of asterisks, and (d) beep the computer.

5

The Processor Status and the FLAGS Register

Overview

One important feature that distinguishes a computer from other machines is the computer's ability to make decisions. The circuits in the CPU can perform simple decision making based on the current state of the processor. For the 8086 processor, the processor state is implemented as nine individual bits called **flags**. Each decision made by the 8086 is based on the values of these flags.

The flags are placed in the FLAGS register and they are classified as either status flags or control flags. The status flags reflect the result of a computation. In this chapter, you will see how they are affected by the machine instructions. In Chapter 6, you will see how they are used to implement jump instructions that allow programs to have multiple branches and loops. The control flags are used to enable or disable certain operations of the processor; they are covered in later chapters.

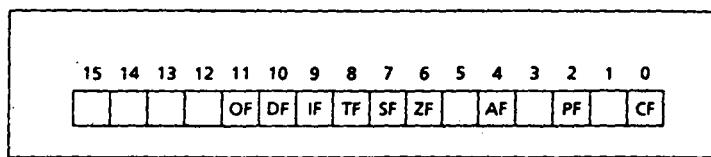
In section 5.4 we introduce the DOS program DEBUG. We'll show how to use DEBUG to trace through a user program and to display registers, flags, and memory locations.

5.1

The FLAGS Register

Figure 5.1 shows the **FLAGS register**. The **status flags** are located in bits 0, 2, 4, 6, 7, and 11 and the **control flags** are located in bits 8, 9, and 10. The other bits have no significance. Note: it's not important to remember

Figure 5.1 The FLAGS Register



which bit is which flag—Table 5.1 gives the names of the flags and their symbols. In this chapter, we concentrate on the status flags.

The Status Flags

As stated earlier, the processor uses the status flags to reflect the result of an operation. For example, if SUB AX,AX is executed, the zero flag becomes 1, thereby indicating that a zero result was produced. Now let's get to know the status flags.

Carry Flag (CF)

CF = 1 if there is a carry out from the most significant bit (msb) on addition, or there is a borrow into the msb on subtraction; otherwise, it is 0. CF is also affected by shift and rotate instructions (Chapter 7).

Parity Flag (PF)

PF = 1 if the low byte of a result has an even number of one bits (even parity). It is 0 if the low byte has odd parity. For example, if the result of a word addition is FFFEh, then the low byte contains 7 one bits, so PF = 0.

Table 5.1 Flag Names and Symbols

Status Flags

Bit	Name	Symbol
0	Carry flag	CF
2	Parity flag	PF
4	Auxiliary carry flag	AF
6	Zero flag	ZF
7	Sign flag	SF
11	Overflow flag	OF

Control Flags

Bit	Name	Symbol
8	Trap flag	TF
9	Interrupt flag	IF
10	Direction flag	DF

Auxiliary Carry Flag (AF)

$AF = 1$ if there is a carry out from bit 3 on addition, or a borrow into bit 3 on subtraction. AF is used in binary-coded decimal (BCD) operations (Chapter 18).

Zero Flag (ZF)

$ZF = 1$ for a zero result, and $ZF = 0$ for a nonzero result.

Sign Flag (SF)

$SF = 1$ if the msb of a result is 1; it means the result is negative if you are giving a signed interpretation. $SF = 0$ if the msb is 0.

Overflow Flag (OF)

$OF = 1$ if signed overflow occurred, otherwise it is 0. The meaning of overflow is discussed next.

5.2**Overflow**

The phenomenon of overflow is associated with the fact that the range of numbers that can be represented in a computer is limited.

Chapter 2 explained that the (decimal) range of signed numbers that can be represented by a 16-bit word is -32768 to 32767; for an 8-bit byte the range is -128 to 127. For unsigned numbers, the range for a word is 0 to 65535; for a byte, it is 0 to 255. If the result of an operation falls outside these ranges, overflow occurs and the truncated result that is saved will be incorrect.

Examples of Overflow

Signed and unsigned overflows are independent phenomena. When we perform an arithmetic operation such as addition, there are four possible outcomes: (1) no overflow, (2) signed overflow only, (3) unsigned overflow only, and (4) both signed and unsigned overflows.

As an example of unsigned overflow but not signed overflow, suppose AX contains FFFFh, BX contains 0001h, and ADD AX,BX is executed. The binary result is

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111 \\
 +\ 0000\ 0000\ 0000\ 0001 \\
 \hline
 1\ 0000\ 0000\ 0000\ 0000
 \end{array}$$

If we are giving an unsigned interpretation, the correct answer is 10000h = 65536, but this is out of range for a word operation. A 1 is carried out of the msb and the answer stored in AX, 0000h, is wrong, so unsigned overflow occurred. But the stored answer is correct as a signed number, for FFFFh = -1, 0001h = 1, and FFFFh + 0001h = -1 + 1 = 0, so signed overflow did not occur.

As an example of signed but not unsigned overflow, suppose AX and BX both contain 7FFFh, and we execute ADD AX,BX. The binary result is

$$\begin{array}{r}
 0111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111 \\
 +\ 0111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111 \\
 \hline
 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1110 = FFFEh
 \end{array}$$

The signed and unsigned decimal interpretation of 7FFFh is 32767. Thus for both signed and unsigned addition, $7FFFh + 7FFFh = 32767 + 32767 = 65534$. This is out of range for signed numbers; the signed interpretation of the stored answer FFFEh is -2, so signed overflow occurred. However, the unsigned interpretation of FFFEh is 65534, which is the right answer, so there is no unsigned overflow.

There are two questions to be answered in connection with overflow: (1) how does the CPU indicate overflow, and (2) how does it know that overflow occurred?

How the Processor Indicates Overflow

The processor sets OF = 1 for signed overflow and CF = 1 for unsigned overflow. It is then up to the program to take appropriate action, and if nothing is done immediately the result of a subsequent instruction may cause the overflow flag to be turned off.

In determining overflow, the processor does not interpret the result as either signed or unsigned. The action it takes is to use both interpretations for each operation and to turn on CF or OF for unsigned overflow or signed overflow, respectively.

It is the programmer who is interpreting the results. If a signed interpretation is being given, then only OF is of interest and CF can be ignored; conversely, for an unsigned interpretation CF is important but not OF.

How the Processor Determines that Overflow Occurred

Many instructions can cause overflow; for simplicity, we'll limit the discussion to addition and subtraction.

Unsigned Overflow

On addition, unsigned overflow occurs when there is a carry out of the msb. This means that the correct answer is larger than the biggest unsigned number; that is, FFFFh for a word and FFh for a byte. On subtraction, unsigned overflow occurs when there is a borrow into the msb. This means that the correct answer is smaller than 0.

Signed Overflow

On addition of numbers with the same sign, signed overflow occurs when the sum has a different sign. This happened in the preceding example when we were adding 7FFFh and 7FFFh (two positive numbers), but got FFFEh (a negative result).

Subtraction of numbers with different signs is like adding numbers of the same sign. For example, $A - (-B) = A + B$ and $-A - (+B) = -A + -B$. Signed overflow occurs if the result has a different sign than expected. See example 5.3, in the next section.

In addition of numbers with different signs, overflow is impossible, because a sum like $A + (-B)$ is really $A - B$, and because A and B are small enough to fit in the destination, so is $A - B$. For exactly the same reason, subtraction of numbers with the same sign cannot give overflow.

Actually, the processor uses the following method to set the OF: If the carries into and out of the msb don't match—that is, there is a carry into the msb but no carry out, or if there is a carry out but no carry in—then signed overflow has occurred, and OF is set to 1. See example 5.2, in the next section.

5.3

How Instructions Affect the Flags

In general, each time the processor executes an instruction, the flags are altered to reflect the result. However, some instructions don't affect any of the flags, affect only some of them, or may leave them undefined. Because the jump instructions studied in Chapter 6 depend on the flag settings, it's important to know what each instruction does to the flags. Let's return to the seven basic instructions introduced in Chapter 4. They affect the flags as follows:

Instruction	Affects flags
MOV/XCHG	none
ADD/SUB	all
INC/DEC	all except CF
NEG	all (CF = 1 unless result is 0, OF = 1 if word operand is 8000h, or byte operand is 80h)

To get you used to seeing how these instructions affect the flags, we will do several examples. In each example, we give an instruction, the contents of the operands, and predict the result and the settings of CF, PF, ZF, SF, and OF (we ignore AF because it is used only for BCD arithmetic).

Example 5.1 ADD AX,BX, where AX contains FFFFh, BX contains FFFFh.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{FFFFh} \\
 + \text{FFFFh} \\
 \hline
 \text{1 FFFEh}
 \end{array}$$

The result stored in AX is FFFEh = 1111 1111 1111 1110.

SF = 1 because the msb is 1.

PF = 0 because there are 7 (odd number) of 1 bits in the low byte of the result.

ZF = 0 because the result is nonzero.

CF = 1 because there is a carry out of the msb on addition.

OF = 0 Because the sign of the stored result is the same as that of the numbers being added (as a binary addition, there is a carry into the msb and also a carry out).

Example 5.2 ADD AL,BL, where AL contains 80h, BL contains 80h.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 80h \\
 + 80h \\
 \hline
 1 00h
 \end{array}$$

The result stored in AL is 00h.

SF = 0 because the msb is 0.

PF = 1 because all the bits in the result are 0.

ZF = 1 because the result is 0.

CF = 1 because there is a carry out of the msb on addition.

OF = 1 because the numbers being added are both negative, but the result is 0 (as a binary addition, there is no carry into the msb but there is a carry out).

Example 5.3 SUB AX,BX, where AX contains 8000h and BX contains 0001h.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{r} 8000h \\ - 0001h \\ \hline 7FFFh \end{array}$$

The result stored in AX is 7FFFh.

SF = 0 because the msb is 0.

PF = 1 because there are 8 (even number) one bits in the low byte of the result.

ZF = 0 because the result is nonzero.

CF = 0 because a smaller unsigned number is being subtracted from a larger one.

Now for OF. In a signed sense, we are subtracting a positive number from a negative one, which is like adding two negatives. Because the result is positive (the wrong sign), OF = 1.

Example 5.4 INC AL, where AL contains FFh.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{r} FFh \\ + 1h \\ \hline 100h \end{array}$$

The result stored in AL is 00h. SF = 0, PF = 1, ZF = 1. Even though there is a carry out, CF is unaffected by INC. This means that if CF = 0 before the execution of the instruction, CF will still be 0 afterward.

OF = 0 because numbers of unlike sign are being added (there is a carry into the msb and also a carry out).

Example 5.5 MOV AX, -5

Solution: The result stored in AX is -5 = FFFFh.

None of the flags are affected by MOV.

Example 5.6 NEG AX, where AX contains 8000h.

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 8000h = 1000\ 0000\ 0000\ 0000 \\
 \text{one's complement} = 0111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111 \\
 +1 \\
 \hline
 1000\ 0000\ 0000\ 0000 = 8000h
 \end{array}$$

The result stored in AX is 8000h.

SF = 1, PF = 1, ZF = 0.

CF = 1, because for NEG CF is always 1 unless the result is 0.

OF = 1, because the result is 8000h; when a number is negated, we would expect a sign change, but because 8000h is its own two's complement, there is no sign change.

In the next section, we introduce a program that lets us see the actual setting of the flags.

5.4

The DEBUG Program

The DEBUG program provides an environment in which a program may be tested. The user can step through a program, and display and change the registers and memory. It is also possible to enter assembly code directly, which DEBUG converts to machine code and stores in memory. A tutorial for DEBUG and CODEVIEW, a more sophisticated debugger, may be found in Appendix E.

We use DEBUG to demonstrate the way instructions affect the flags. To that end, the following program has been created.

Program Listing PGMS_1.ASM

```

TITLE PGMS_1:CHECK FLAGS
;used in DEBUG to check flag settings
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.CODE
MAIN PROC
    MOV AX, 4000H ;AX = 4000h
    ADD AX, AX ;AX = 8000h
    SUB AX, 0FFFFH ;AX = 8001h
    NEG AX ;AX = 7FFFh
    INC AX ;AX = -8000h
    MOV AH, 4CH
    INT 21H ;DOS exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

We assemble and link the program, producing the run file PGMS_1.EXE, which is on a disk in drive A. In the following, the user's responses are in boldface.

The DEBUG program is on the DOS disk, which is in drive C. To enter DEBUG with our demonstration program, we type

C>DEBUG A:PGMS_1.EXE

DEBUG responds by its prompt, "-", and waits for a command to be entered. First, we can view the registers by typing "R".

-R

```

AX=0000 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0ED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=0000 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
0EE6:0000 B80040      MOV     AX, 4000

```

The display shows the contents of the registers in hex. On the third line of the display, we see

```
OEE6:0000 B80040      MOV     AX, 4000
```

OEE6:0000 is the address of the next instruction to be executed, in segment:offset form. B80040h is the machine code of that instruction. Segment 0EE6h is where DOS decided to load the program; if you try this demonstration, you will probably see a different segment number.

The eight pairs of letters appearing on the second line at the right are the current flag settings. The flags appear in this order: OF, DF, IF, SF, ZF, AF, PF, and CF. Table 5.2 gives the symbols DEBUG uses for the flags. You can see that they have been cleared by DEBUG. The meaning of the control flag symbols are explained in Chapters 11 and 15.

To step through our program, we use the "T" (trace) command. Before doing so, let's display the registers again.

-R

```

AX=0000 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0ED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=0000 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
0EE6:0000 B80040      MOV     AX, 4000

```

The first instruction is MOV AX,4000h.

-T

```

AX=4000 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0ED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IF=0003 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
0EE6:0003 03C0      ADD     AX, AX

```

Execution of MOV AX,4000h puts 4000h in AX. The flags are unchanged since a MOV doesn't affect them. Now let's execute ADD AX,AX:

-T

```

AX=8000 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0ED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=0005 OV UP DI NG NZ NA PE NC
0EE6:0005 2DFFFF      SUB     AX, FFFF

```

Table 5.2 DEBUG Flag Symbols

Status Flag	Set (1) Symbol	Clear (0) Symbol
CF	CY (carry)	NC (no carry)
PF	PE (even parity)	PO (odd parity)
AF	AC (auxiliary carry)	NA (no auxiliary carry)
ZF	ZR (zero)	NZ (nonzero)
SF	NG (negative)	PL (plus)
OF	OV (overflow)	NV (no overflow)
Control Flag		
DF	DN (down)	UP (up)
IF	EI (enable interrupts)	DI (disable interrupts)

AX now contains $4000\text{h} + 4000\text{h} = 8000\text{h}$. SF becomes 1 (NG) to indicate a negative result. Signed overflow is indicated by OF = 1 (OV) because we added two positive numbers and got a negative result. PF = 1 (PE) because the low byte of AX contains no 1's.

Next we trace SUB AX,0FFFFh:

```
-T
AX=8001 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=CED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=0008 NV UP DI NG NZ AC PO CY
0EE6:0008 F7D8 NEG AX
```

AX gets $8000\text{h} - \text{FFFFh} = 8001\text{h}$. OF changes back to 0 (NV), because we are subtracting numbers of like sign, so signed overflow is impossible. However, CF = 1 (CY) indicates that we got unsigned overflow, because we have subtracted a bigger unsigned number from a smaller one, which requires a borrow into the msb. PF = 0 (PO) because the low byte of AX has a single 1.

Now let's trace NEG AX:

```
-T
AX=7FFF BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=CED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=000A NV UP DI PL NZ AC PE CY
0EE6:000A 40 INC AX
```

AX gets the two's complement of $8001\text{h} = 7FFFh$. For NEG, CF = 1 (CY) unless the result is 0, which is not the case here. OF = 0 (NV) because the result is not -8000h .

Finally, we execute INC AX:

-T

```

AX=8000 BX=0000 CX=001F DX=0000 SP=000A BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0ED5 ES=0ED5 SS=0EE5 CS=0EE6 IP=000B OV UP DI NG NZ AC PE CY
0EE6:000B B44C    MOV     AH, 4C

```

OF changes back to 1 (OV) because we added two positives (7FFFh and 1), and got a negative result. Even though there was no carry out of the msb, CF stays 1 because INC doesn't affect this flag.

To complete execution of the program, we can type "G" (go):

-G

```
Program terminated normally
```

and to exit DEBUG, type "Q" (quit)

-Q

```
C>
```

Summary

- The FLAGS register is one of the registers in the 8086 microprocessor. Six of the bits are called status flags, and three are control flags.
- The status flags reflect the result of an operation. They are the carry flag (CF), parity flag (PF), auxiliary carry flag (AF), zero flag (ZF), sign flag (SF), and overflow flag (OF).
- CF is 1 if an add or subtract operation generates a carry out or borrow into the most significant bit position; otherwise, it is 0.
- PF is 1 if there is an even number of 1 bits in the result; otherwise, it is 0.
- AF is 1 if there is a carry out or borrow into bit 3 in the result; otherwise, it is 0.
- ZF is 1 if the result is 0; otherwise, it is 0.
- SF is 1 if the most significant bit of the result is 1; otherwise, it is 0.
- OF is 1 if the correct signed result is too big to fit in the destination; otherwise, it is 0.

- Overflow occurs when the correct result is outside the range of values represented by the computer. Unsigned overflow occurs if an unsigned interpretation is being given to the result, and signed overflow happens if a signed interpretation is being given.
- The processor uses CF and OF to indicate overflow: CF = 1 means that unsigned overflow occurred, and OF = 1 indicates signed overflow.
- The processor sets CF if there is a carry out of the msb on addition, or a borrow into the msb on subtraction. In the latter case, this means that a larger unsigned number is being subtracted from a smaller one.
- The processor sets OF if there is a carry into the msb but no carry out, or if there is a carry out of the msb but no carry in.
- There is another way to tell whether signed overflow occurred on addition and subtraction. On addition of numbers of like sign, signed overflow occurs if the result has a different sign; subtraction of numbers of different sign is like adding numbers of the same sign, and signed overflow occurs if the result has a different sign.
- On addition of numbers of different sign, or subtraction of numbers of the same sign, signed overflow is impossible.
- Generally the execution of each instruction affects the flags, but some instructions don't affect any of the flags, and some affect only some of the flags.
- The settings of the flags is part of the DEBUG display.
- The DEBUG program may be used to trace a program. Some of its commands are "R", to display registers; "T", to trace an instruction; and "G", to execute a program.

Glossary

control flags	Flags that are used to enable or disable certain operations of the CPU
flags	Bits of the FLAGS register that represent a condition of the CPU
FLAGS register	Register in the CPU whose bits are flags
status flags	Flags that reflect the result of an instruction executed by the CPU

Exercises

1. For each of the following instructions, give the new destination contents and the new settings of CF, SF, ZF, PF, and OF. Suppose that the flags are initially 0 in each part of this question.
 - a. ADD AX, BX where AX contains 7FFFh and BX contains 0001h
 - b. SUB AL, BL where AL contains 01h and BL contains FFh
 - c. DEC AL where AL contains 00h

- d. NEG AL where AL contains 7Fh
 e. XCHG AX,BX where AX contains 1ABCh and BX contains 712Ah
 f. ADD AL,BL where AL contains 80h and BL contains Ffh
 g. SUB AX,BX where AX contains 0000h and BX contains 8000h
 h. NEG AX where AX contains 0001h
2. a. Suppose that AX and BX both contain positive numbers, and ADD AX,BX is executed. Show that there is a carry into the msb but no carry out of the msb if, and only if, signed overflow occurs.
 b. Suppose AX and BX both contain negative numbers, and ADD AX,BX is executed. Show that there is a carry out of the msb but no carry into the msb if, and only if, signed overflow occurs.
3. Suppose ADD AX,BX is executed. In each of the following parts, the first number being added is the contents of AX, and the second number is the contents of BX. Give the resulting value of AX and tell whether signed or unsigned overflow occurred.
- a. 512Ch
+ 4185h
 - b. FE12h
+ 1ACBh
 - c. E1E4h
+ DAB3h
 - d. 7132h
+ 7000h
 - e. 6389h
+ 1176h
4. Suppose SUB AX,BX is executed. In each of the following parts, the first number is the initial contents of AX and the second number is the contents of BX. Give the resulting value of AX and tell whether signed or unsigned overflow occurred.
- a. 2143h
- 1986h
 - b. 81FEh
- 1986h
 - c. 19BCh
- 81FEh
 - d. 0002h
- FEOFh
 - e. 8BCDh
- 71ABh

6

Flow Control Instructions

Overview

For assembly language programs to carry out useful tasks, there must be a way to make decisions and repeat sections of code. In this chapter we show how these things can be accomplished with the jump and loop instructions.

The jump and loop instructions transfer control to another part of the program. This transfer can be unconditional or can depend on a particular combination of status flag settings.

After introducing the jump instructions, we'll use them to implement high-level language decision and looping structures. This application will make it much easier to convert a pseudocode algorithm to assembly code.

6.1

In Example of Jump

To get an idea of how the jump instructions work, we will write a program to display the entire IBM character set.

Program Listing PGM6_1.ASM

```
1: TITLE PGM6_1: IBM CHARACTER DISPLAY
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .CODE
5: MAIN PROC
6:     MOV AH, 2          ;display char function
7:     MOV CX, 256         ;no. of chars to display
8:     MOV DL, 0            ;DL has ASCII code of null cha
9: PRINT_LOOP:
```

```
10:     INT    21h      ;display a char
11:     INC    DL       ;increment ASCII code
12:     DEC    CX       ;decrement counter
13:     JNZ    PRINT_LOOP ;keep going if CX not 0
14: ;DOS exit
15:     MOV    AH, 4CH
16:     INT    21h
17: MAIN    ENDP
18: END    MAIN
```

There are 256 characters in the IBM character set. Those with codes 32 to 127 are the standard ASCII display characters introduced in Chapter 2. IBM also provides a set of graphics characters with codes 0 to 31 and 128 to 255.

To display the characters, we use a loop (lines 9 to 13). Before entering the loop, AH is initialized to 2 (single-character display) and DL is set to 0, the initial ASCII code. CX is the loop counter; it is set to 256 before entering the loop and is decremented after each character is displayed.

The instruction that controls the loop is JNZ (Jump if Not Zero). If the result of the preceding instruction (DEC CX) is not zero, then the JNZ instruction transfers control to the instruction at label PRINT_LOOP. When CX finally contains 0, the program goes on to execute the DOS return instructions. Figure 6.1 shows the output of the program. Of course, the ASCII codes of backspace, carriage return, and so on cause a control function to be performed, rather than displaying a symbol.

Note: PRINT_LOOP is the first statement label we've used in a program. Labels are needed in situations where one instruction refers to another, as is the case here. Labels end with a colon, and to make labels stand out, they are usually placed on a line by themselves. If so, they refer to the instruction that follows.

6.2 Conditional Jumps

JNZ is an example of a **conditional jump instruction**. The syntax is

Jxxx destination label

Figure 6.1 Output of PGM6.1

If the condition for the jump is true, the next instruction to be executed is the one at destination_label, which may precede or follow the jump instruction itself. If the condition is false, the instruction immediately following the jump is done next. For JNZ, the condition is that the result of the previous operation is not zero.

Range of a Conditional Jump

The structure of the machine code of a conditional jump requires that destination_label must precede the jump instruction by no more than 126 bytes, or follow it by no more than 127 bytes (we'll show how to get around this restriction later).

How the CPU Implements a Conditional Jump

To implement a conditional jump, the CPU looks at the FLAGS register. You already know it reflects the result of the last thing the processor did. If the conditions for the jump (expressed as a combination of status flag settings) are true, the CPU adjusts the IP to point to the destination label, so that the instruction at this label will be done next. If the jump condition is false, then IP is not altered; this means that the next instruction in line will be done.

In the preceding program, the CPU executes JNZ PRINT_LOOP by inspecting ZF. If ZF = 0, control transfers to PRINT_LOOP; if ZF = 1, the program goes on to execute MOV AH,4CH.

Table 6.1 shows the conditional jumps. There are three categories: (1) the **signed jumps** are used when a signed interpretation is being given to results, (2) the **unsigned jumps** are used for an unsigned interpretation, and (3) the **single-flag jumps**, which operate on settings of individual flags. Note: the jump instructions themselves do not affect the flags.

The first column of Table 6.1 gives the opcodes for the jumps. Many of the jumps have two opcodes; for example, JG and JNLE. Both opcodes produce the same machine code. Use of one opcode or its alternate is usually determined by the context in which the jump appears.

The CMP Instruction

The jump condition is often provided by the **CMP (compare)** instruction. It has the form

CMP destination, source

This instruction compares destination and source by computing destination contents minus source contents. The result is not stored, but the flags are affected. The operands of CMP may not both be memory locations. Destination may not be a constant. Note: CMP is just like SUB, except that destination is not changed?

For example, suppose a program contains these lines:

```
CMP AX, BX  
JG BELOW
```

where AX = 7FFFh, and BX = 0001. The result of CMP AX,BX is 7FFFh - 0001h = FFEh. Table 6.1 shows that the jump condition for JG is satisfied, because ZF = SF = OF = 0, so control transfers to label BELOW.

Table 6.1 Conditional Jumps**Signed Jumps**

Symbol	Description	Condition for Jumps
JG/JNLE	jump if greater than jump if not less than or equal to	ZF = 0 and SF = OF
JGE/JNL	jump if greater than or equal to jump if not less than or equal to	SF = OF
JL/JNGE	jump if less than jump if not greater than or equal	SF <> OF
JLE/JNG	jump if less than or equal jump if not greater than	ZF = 1 or SF <> OF

Unsigned Conditional Jumps

Symbol	Description	Condition for Jumps
JAV/JNBE	jump if above jump if not below or equal	CF = 0 and ZF = 0
JAE/JNB	jump if above or equal jump if not below	CF = 0
JB/JNAE	jump if below jump if not above or equal	CF = 1
JBE/JNA	jump if equal jump if not above	CF = 1 or ZF = 1

Single-Flag Jumps

Symbol	Description	Condition for Jumps
JE/JZ	jump if equal - jump if equal to zero	ZF = 1
JNE/JNZ	jump if not equal jump if not zero	ZF = 0
JC	jump if carry	CF = 1
JNC	jump if no carry	CF = 0
JO	jump if overflow	OF = 1
JNO	jump if no overflow	OF = 0
JS	jump if sign negative	SF = 1
JNS	jump if nonnegative sign	SF = 0
JP/JPE	jump if parity even	PF = 1
JNP/JPO	jump if parity odd	PF = 0

Interpreting the Conditional Jumps

In the example just given, we determined by looking at the flags after CMP was executed that control transfers to label BELOW. This is how the CPU implements a conditional jump. But it's not necessary for a programmer to think about the flags; you can just use the name of the jump to decide if control transfers to the destination label. In the following,

```
CMP AX, BX
JG BELOW
```

if AX is greater than BX (in a signed sense), then JG (jump if greater than) transfers to BELOW.

Even though CMP is specifically designed to be used with the conditional jumps, they may be preceded by other instructions, as in PGM6_1. Another example is

```
DEC AX
JL THERE
```

Here, if the contents of AX, in a signed sense, is less than 0, control transfers to THERE.

Signed Versus Unsigned Jumps

Each of the signed jumps corresponds to an analogous unsigned jump; for example, the signed jump JG and the unsigned jump JA. Whether to use a signed or unsigned jump depends on the interpretation being given. In fact, Table 6.1 shows that these jumps operate on different flags: the signed jumps operate on ZF, SF, and OF, while the unsigned jumps operate on ZF and CF. Using the wrong kind of jump can lead to incorrect results.

For example, suppose we're giving a signed interpretation. If AX = 7FFFh, BX = 8000h, and we execute

```
CMP AX, BX
JA BELOW
```

then even though 7FFFh > 8000h in a signed sense, the program does not jump to BELOW. The reason is that 7FFFh < 8000h in an unsigned sense, and we are using the unsigned jump JA.

Working with Characters

In working with the standard ASCII character set, either signed or unsigned jumps may be used, because the sign bit of a byte containing a character code is always zero. However, unsigned jumps should be used when comparing extended ASCII characters (codes 80h to FFh).

Example 6.1 Suppose AX and BX contain signed numbers. Write some code to put the biggest one in CX.

Solution:

```
MOV CX, AX          ;put AX in CX
CMP BX, CX          ;is BX bigger?
JLE NEXT           ;no, go on
MOV CX, BX          ;yes, put BX in CX
NEXT:
```

6.3

The JMP Instruction

The **JMP** (*jump*) instruction causes an unconditional transfer of control (**unconditional jump**). The syntax is

JMP destination

where **destination** is usually a **label** in the same segment as the **JMP** itself (see Appendix F for a more general description).

JMP can be used to get around the range restriction of a conditional jump. For example, suppose we want to implement the following loop:

TOP:

```
;body of the loop
DEC CX          ;decrement counter
JNZ TOP         ;keep looping if CX > 0
MOV AX,BX
```

and the loop body contains so many instructions that label **TOP** is out of range for **JNZ** (more than 126 bytes before **JMP TOP**). We can do this:

TOP:

```
;body of the loop
```

```
DEC CX          ;decrement counter
JNZ BOTTOM      ;keep looping if CX > 0
JMP EXIT
BOTTOM:
JMP TOP
EXIT:
MOV AX,BX
```

6.4

High-Level Language Structures

We've shown that the jump instructions can be used to implement branches and loops. However, because the jumps are so primitive, it is difficult, especially for beginning programmers, to code an algorithm with them without some guidelines.

Because you have probably had some experience with high-level language constructs—such as the **IF-THEN-ELSE** decision structure or **WHILE** loops—we'll show how these structures can be simulated in assembly language. In each case, we will first express the structure in a high-level pseudocode.

6.4.1

Branching Structures

In high-level languages, branching structures enable a program to take different paths, depending on conditions. In this section, we'll look at three structures.

IF-THEN

The **IF-THEN** structure may be expressed in pseudocode as follows:

```

IF condition is true
THEN
  execute true-branch statements
END_IF

```

See Figure 6.2.

The *condition* is an expression that is true or false. If it is true, the true-branch statements are executed. If it is false, nothing is done, and the program goes on to whatever follows.

Example 6.2 Replace the number in AX by its absolute value.

Solution: A pseudocode algorithm is

```

IF AX < 0
THEN
  replace AX by -AX
END_IF

```

It can be coded as follows:

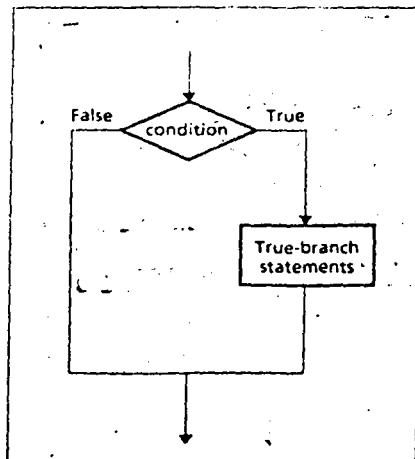
```

;if AX < 0
      CMP AX,0      ;AX < 0 ?
      JNL END_IF    ;no, exit
;then
      NEG AX        ;yes, change sign
END_IF:

```

The condition $AX < 0$ is expressed by $CMP AX, 0$. If AX is not less than 0, there is nothing to do, so we use a JNL (jump if not less) to jump around the $NEG AX$. If condition $AX < 0$ is true, the program goes on to execute $NEG AX$.

Figure 6.2 IF-THEN



IF-THEN-ELSE

```
IF condition is true
THEN
  execute true-branch statements
ELSE
  execute false-branch statements
END_IF
```

See Figure 6.3.

In this structure, if *condition* is true, the true-branch statements are executed. If *condition* is false, the false-branch statements are done.

Example 6.3 Suppose AL and BL contain extended ASCII characters. Display the one that comes first in the character sequence.

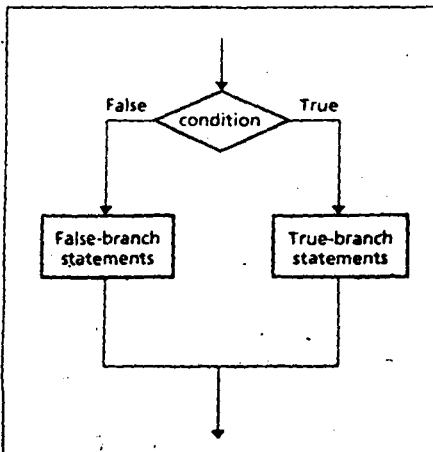
Solution:

```
IF AL <= BL
THEN
  display the character in AL
ELSE
  display the character in BL
END_IF
```

It can be coded like this:

```
MOV AH,2      ;prepare to display
;if AL <= BL
    CMP AL,BL      ;AL <= BL?
    JNBE ELSE_     ;no, display char in BL
;then
    MOV DL,AL      ;AL <= BL
    JMP DISPLAY    ;move char to be displayed
;go to display
ELSE_:
    MOV DL,BL      ;BL < AL
```

Figure 6.3 IF-THEN-ELSE



```

DISPLAY:           INT 21h      ;display it
END_IF

```

Note: the label ELSE_ is used because ELSE is a reserved word.

The condition AL <= BL is expressed by CMP AL,BL. If it's false, the program jumps around the true-branch statements to ELSE_. We use the unsigned jump JNBE (jump if not below or equal), because we're comparing extended characters.

If AL <= BL is true, the true-branch statements are done. Note that JMP DISPLAY is needed to skip the false branch. This is different from the high-level language IF-THEN-ELSE, in which the false-branch statements are automatically skipped if the true-branch statements are done.

CASE

A CASE is a multiway branch structure that tests a register, variable, or expression for particular values or a range of values. The general form is as follows:

```

CASE expression
  values_1: statements_1
  values_2: statements_2
  .
  .
  .
  values_n: statements_n
END_CASE

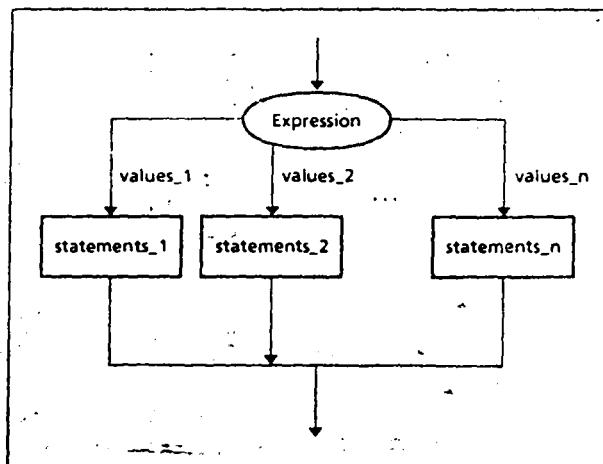
```

See Figure 6.4.

In this structure, expression is tested; if its value is a member of the set values_i, then statements_i are executed. We assume that sets values_1,...,values_n are disjoint.

Example 6.4 If AX contains a negative number, put -1 in BX; if AX contains 0, put 0 in BX; if AX contains a positive number, put 1 in BX.

Figure 6.4 CASE



Solution:

```
CASE AX
    <0: put -1 in BX
    =0: put 0 in BX
    >0: put 1 in BX
END_CASE
```

It can be coded as follows:

```
;case AX
        CMP AX, 0      ;test ax
        JL NEGATIVE   ;AX < 0
        JE ZERO       ;AX = 0
        JG POSITIVE   ;AX > 0
NEGATIVE:
        MOV BX,-1      ;put -1 in BX
        JMP END_CASE  ;and exit
ZERO:
        MOV BX,0       ;put 0 in BX
        JMP END_CASE  ;and exit
POSITIVE:
        MOV BX,1       ;put 1 in BX
END_CASE:
```

Note: only one CMP is needed, because jump instructions do not affect the stack.

Example 6.5 If AL contains 1 or 3, display "o"; if AL contains 2 or 4, display "e".

Solution:

```
CASE AL
    1,3: display 'c'
    2,4: display 'e'
END_CASE
```

The code is

```
;case AL
; 1,3:
        CMP AL,1      ;AL = 1?
        JE CDE       ;yes, display 'o'
        CMP AL,3      ;AL = '3'
        JE CDD       ;yes, display 'o'
; 2,4:
        CMP AL,2      ;AL = 2?
        JE EVEN      ;yes, display 'e'
        CMP AL,4      ;AL = 4?
        JE EVEN      ;yes, display 'e'
        JMP END_CASE ;not 1..4
CDD:
        MOV DL,'o'    ;display 'o'
        MOV AL,0       ;get 'o'
EVEN:
        JMP DISPLAY   ;go to display
DISPLAY:
        MOV DL,'e'    ;display 'e'
        MOV AL,1       ;get 'e'
```

```

MOV AH, 2
INT 21H ;display char
END_CASE:.
```

Branches with Compound Conditions

Sometimes the branching condition in an IF or CASE takes the form
 condition_1 AND condition_2

or

condition_1 OR condition_2

where condition_1 and condition_2 are either true or false. We will refer to the first of these as an **AND condition** and to the second as an **OR condition**.

AND Conditions

An AND condition is true if and only if condition_1 and condition_2 are both true. Likewise, if either condition is false, then the whole thing is false.

Example 6.6 Read a character, and if it's an uppercase letter, display it.

Solution:

```

Read a character (into AL)
IF ('A' <= character) and (character <= 'Z')
  THEN
    display character
END_IF
```

To code this, we first see if the character in AL follows "A" (or is "A") in the character sequence. If not, we can exit. If so, we still must see if the character precedes "Z" (or is "Z") before displaying it. Here is the code:

```

;read a character
      MOV AH, 1      ;prepare to read
      INT 21H      ;char in AL
;if ('A' <= char) and (char <= 'Z')
      CMP AL, 'A'   ;char >= 'A'?
      JNGE END_IF   ;no, exit
      CMP AL, 'Z'   ;char <= 'Z'?
      JNLE END_IF   ;no, exit
;then display char
      MOV DL, AL    ;get char
      MOV AH, 2      ;prepare to display
      INT 21H      ;display char
END_IF:
```

OR Conditions

Condition_1 OR condition_2 is true if at least one of the conditions is true; it is only false when both conditions are false.

Example 6.7 Read a character. If it's "y" or "Y", display it; otherwise, terminate the program.

Solution:

```

Read a character (into AL)
IF (character = 'y') OR (character = 'Y')
  THEN
    display it
  ELSE
    terminate the program
END_IF

```

To code this, we first see if character = "y". If so, the OR condition is true and we can execute the THEN statements. If not, there is still a chance the OR condition will be true. If character = "Y", it will be true, and we execute the THEN statements; if not, the OR condition is false and we do the ELSE statements. Here is the code:

```

;read a character
      MOV AH,1      ;prepare to read.
      INT 21H      ;char in AL
;if (character = 'y') or (character = 'Y')
      CMP AL,'y'   ;char = 'y'?
      JE  THEN     ;yes, go to display it
      CMP AL,'Y'   ;char = 'Y'?
      JE  THEN     ;yes, go to display it
      JMP ELSE_    ;no, terminate
;THEN:
      MOV AH,2      ;prepare to display
      MOV DL,AL    ;get char
      INT 21H      ;display it
      JMP END_IF   ;and exit
;ELSE_:
      MOV AH,4CH    ;DOS exit
      INT 21H
;END_IF:

```

6.4.2**Looping Structure:**

A **loop** is a sequence of instructions that is repeated. The number of times to repeat may be known in advance, or it may depend on conditions.

FOR LOOP

This is a loop structure in which the loop statements are repeated a known number of times (a count-controlled loop). In pseudocode,

```

FOR loop_count times DO
  statements
END_FOR

```

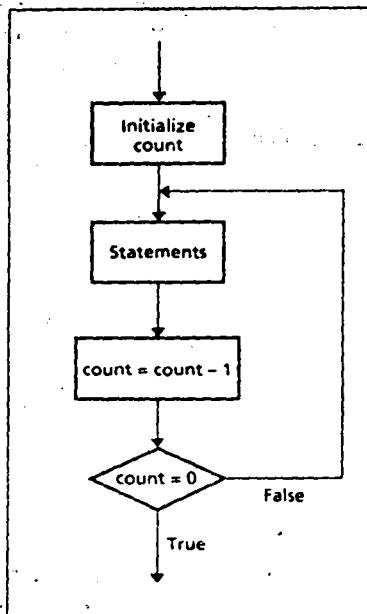
See Figure 6.5.

The **LOOP** instruction can be used to implement a FOR loop. It has the form

```
LOOP destination_label
```

The counter for the loop is the register CX which is initialized to loop_count. Execution of the LOOP instruction causes CX to be decremented automatically,

Figure 6.5 FOR LOOP



and if CX is not 0, control transfers to destination_label. If CX = 0, the next instruction after LOOP is done. Destination_label must precede the LOOP instruction by no more than 126 bytes.

Using the instruction LOOP, a FOR loop can be implemented as follows:

```

;initialize CX to loop_count
TOP:           ;body of the loop
    LOOP TOP
  
```

Example 6.8 Write a count-controlled loop to display a row of 80 stars.

Solution:

```

FOR 80 times DO
    display '**'
END FOR
  
```

The code is

```

MOV CX, 80      ;number of stars to display
MOV AH, 2        ;display character function
MOV DL, '*'      ;character to display
TCP:
    INT 21h      ;display a star
    LOOP TOP     ;repeat 80 times
  
```

You may have noticed that a FOR loop, as implemented with a LOOP instruction, is executed at least once. Actually, if CX contains 0 when the loop is entered, the LOOP instruction causes CX to be decremented to FFFFh, and

the loop is then executed FFFF = 65535 more times! To prevent this, the instruction **JCXZ** (*jump if CX is zero*) may be used before the loop. Its syntax

```
JCXZ destination_label
```

If CX contains 0, control transfers to the destination label. So a loop implemented as follows is bypassed if CX is 0:

```
JCXZ SKIP
TOP:
;body of the loop
LOOP TOP
SKIP:
```

WHILE LOOP

This loop depends on a condition. In pseudocode,

```
WHILE condition DO
    statements
END WHILE
```

See Figure 6.6.

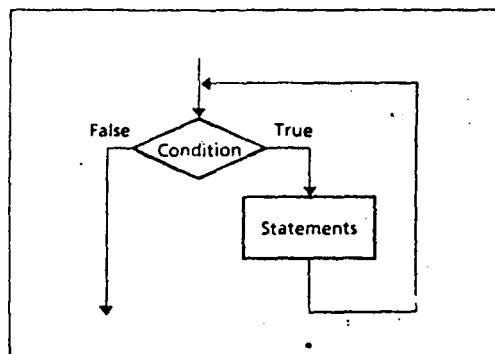
The *condition* is checked at the top of the loop. If true, the *statements* are executed; if false, the program goes on to whatever follows. It is possible that the *condition* will be false initially, in which case the loop body is not executed at all. The loop executes as long as the *condition* is true.

Example 6.9 Write some code to count the number of characters in an input line.

Solution:

```
initialize count to 0
read a character
WHILE character <> carriage_return DO
    count = count + 1
    read a character
END WHILE
```

Figure 6.6 WHILE LOOP



The code is

```

        MOV  DX, 0      ;DX counts characters
        MOV  AH, 1      ;prepare to read
        INT  21H        ;character in AL
WHILE_:
        CMP  AL, 0DH    ;CR?
        JE   END WHILE ;yes, exit
        INC  DX         ;not CR, increment count
        INT  21H        ;read a character
        JMP  WHILE_     ;loop back!
END WHILE:

```

Note that because a WHILE loop checks the terminating condition at the top of the loop, you must make sure that any variables involved in the condition are initialized before the loop is entered. So you read a character before entering the loop, and read another one at the bottom. The label WHILE_ is used because WHILE is a reserved word.

REPEAT LOOP

Another conditional loop is the REPEAT LOOP. In pseudocode,

```

REPEAT
statements
UNTIL condition

```

See Figure 6.7.

In a REPEAT...UNTIL loop, the statements are executed, and then the condition is checked. If true, the loop terminates; if false, control branches to the top of the loop.

Example 6.10 Write some code to read characters until a blank is read.

Solution:

```

REPEAT
  read a character
UNTIL character is a blank

```

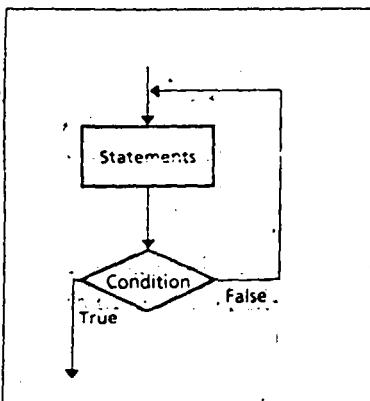


Figure 6.7 REPEAT-LOOP

The code is

```

        MOV  AH,1      ;prepare to read
REPEAT:
        INT  21H      ;char in AL
;until
        CMP  AL,' '
        JNE  REPEAT   ;a blank?
                ;no, keep reading

```

WHILE Versus REPEAT

In many situations where a conditional loop is needed, use of a WHILE loop or a REPEAT loop is a matter of personal preference. The advantage of a WHILE is that the loop can be bypassed if the terminating condition is initially false, whereas the statements in a REPEAT must be done at least once. However, the code for a REPEAT loop is likely to be a little shorter because there is only a conditional jump at the end, but a WHILE loop has two jumps: a conditional jump at the top and a JMP at the bottom.

6.5

Programming with High-Level Structures

To show how a program may be developed from high-level pseudo-code to assembly code, let's solve the following problem.

Problem

Prompt the user to enter a line of text. On the next line, display the capital letter entered that comes first alphabetically and the one that comes last. If no capital letters are entered, display "No capital letters". The execution should look like this:

Type a line of text:
THE QUICK BROWN FOX JUMPED.
First capital = B Last capital = X

To solve this problem, we will use the method of **top-down program design** that you may have encountered in high-level language programming. In this method, the original problem is solved by solving a series of subproblems, each of which is easier to solve than the original problem. Each subproblem is in turn broken down further until we reach a level of subproblems that can be coded directly. The use of procedures (Chapter 8) may enhance this method.

First refinement

1. Display the opening message.
2. Read and process a line of text.
3. Display the results.

Step 1. Display the opening message.

This step can be coded immediately

```
MOV AH, 9          ;display string function
LEA DX, PROMPT    ;get opening message
INT 21H           ;display it
```

The message will be stored in the data segment as

```
PROMPT DB      'Type a line of text:', 0DH, 0AH, '$'
```

We include a carriage return and line feed to move the cursor to the next line so the user can type a full line of text.

Step 2. Read and process a line of text.

This step does most of the work in the program. It takes input from the keyboard, and returns the first and last capital letters read (it should also indicate if no capitals were read). Here is a breakdown:

```
Read a character
WHILE character is not a carriage return DO
  IF character is a capital letter (*)
    THEN
      IF character precedes first capital
        THEN
          first capital = character
        END_IF
      IF character follows last capital
        THEN
          last capital = character
        END_IF
    END_IF
  Read a character
END WHILE
```

Line (*) is actually an AND condition:

```
IF ('A' <= character) AND (character <= 'Z')
```

Step 2 can be coded as follows:

```
MOV AH, 1          ;read char function
INT 21H           ;char in AL
WHILE_:
;while character is not a carriage return do
  CMP AL, 0DH ;CR?
  JE END WHILE ;yes, exit
;if character is a capital letter
  CMP AL, 'A' ;char >= 'A'?
  JNGE END_IF ;not a capital letter
  CMP AL, 'Z' ;char <= 'Z'?
  JNLE END_IF ;not a capital letter
;then
; if character precedes first capital
  CMP AL, FIRST ;char < FIRST?
  JNL CHECK_LAST ;no, >=
;then first capital = character
  MOV FIRST, AL ;FIRST = char
; end_if
CHECK_LAST:
```

```

.; if character follows last capital
    CMP AL, LAST ;char > LAST?
    " JNG END_IF ;no, <
;then last capital = character
    MOV LAST, AL ;LAST = char
; end_if
END_IF:
;read a character
    INT 21H ;char in AL
    JMP WHILE_ ;repeat loop
END WHILE:

```

Variables FIRST and LAST must have values before the WHILE loop is executed the first time. They can be initialized in the data segment as follows:

FIRST	DB	'J'
LAST	DB	'@'

The initial values "J" and "@" were chosen because "J" follows "Z" in the ASCII sequence, and "@" precedes "A". Thus the first capital entered will replace both of these values.

With step 2 coded, we can proceed to the final step.

Step 3. Display the results.

```

IF no capitals were typed,
THEN
    display "No capitals"
ELSE
    display first capital and last capital
END_IF

```

This step will display one of two possible messages; NOCAP_MSG if no capitals are entered, and CAP_MSG if there are capitals. We can declare them in the data segment as follows:

NOCAP_MSG	DB	'No capitals \$'
CAP_MSG	DB	'First capital = '
FIRST	DB	'J'
	DB	'Last capital = '
LAST	DB	'@ \$'

When CAP_MSG is displayed, it will display "First capital =", then the value of FIRST, then "Last capital =", then the value of LAST. We used this same technique in the last program of Chapter 4.

The program decides, by inspecting FIRST, whether any capitals were read. If FIRST contains its initial value "J", then no capitals were read.

Step 3 may be coded as follows:

```

MOV AH, 9 ;display string function
;if no capitals were typed
    CMP FIRST, 'J' ;FIRST = 'J'?
    JNE CAPS ;no, display results
;then
    LEA DX, NOCAP_MSG
    JMP DISPLAY
CAPS:
    LEA DX, CAP_MSG
DISPLAY:
    INT 21H ;display message
;end_if

```

Here is the complete program:

```

Program Listing PGM6_2.ASM
TITLE PGM6_2: FIRST AND LAST CAPITALS
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
.PROMPTDB    'Type a line of text',0DH,0AH,'$'
.NCCAP_MSG   DB 0DH,0AH,'No capitals $'
.CAP_MSG     DB      0DH,0AH,'First capital = '
FIRST DB      ')'
                DB      ' Last capital = '
LAST  DB      '@ $' '

.CODE
MAIN  PROC
;initialize DS
    MOV  AX,@DATA
    MOV  DS,AX
;display opening message
    MOV  AH,9      ;display string function
    LEA  DX,PROMPT ;get opening message
    INT  21H       ;display it
;read and process a line of text
    MOV  AH,1      ;read char function
    INT  21H       ;char in AL
WHILE_:""
;while character is not a carriage return do
    CMP  AL,0DH    ;CR?
    JE   END WHILE ;yes, exit
;if character is a capital letter
    CMP  AL,'A'    ;char >= 'A'?
    JNGE END_IF    ;not a capital letter
    CMP  AL,'Z'    ;char <= 'Z'?
    JNLE END_IF    ;not a capital letter
;then
;if character precedes first capital
    CMP  AL,FIRST  ;char < first capital?
    JNL  CHECK_LAST ;no, >=
; then first capital = character
    MOV  FIRST,AL   ;FIRST = char
;end_if
CHECK_LAST:
;: if character follows last capital
    CMP  AL,LAST    ;char > last capital?
    JNG  END_IF    ;no, <=
; then last capital = character
    MOV  LAST,AL    ;LAST = char
; end_if
END_IF:
;read a character
    INT  21H       ;char in AL
    JMP  WHILE_    ;repeat loop
END WHILE:
;display results

```

```

        MOV AH,9          ;display string function
;if no capitals were typed
        CMP FIRST,']'    ;first = ']'
        JNE CAPS         ;no, display results
;then
        LEA DX,NOCAP_MSG ;no capitals
        JMP DISPLAY
CAPS:
        LEA DX,CAP_MSG   ;capitals
DISPLAY:
        INT 21H          ;display message
;end_if
;dos exit
        MOV AH,4CH
        INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

Summary

- The jump instructions may be divided into unconditional and conditional jumps. The conditional jumps may be classified as signed, unsigned, and single-flag jumps.
- The conditional jumps operate on the settings of the status flags. The CMP (compare) instruction is often used to set the flags just before a jump instruction.
- The destination label of a conditional jump must be less than 126 bytes before or 127 bytes after the jump. A JMP can often be used to get around this restriction.
- In an IF-THEN decision structure, if the test condition is true, then the true-branch statements are done; otherwise, the next statement in line is done.
- In an IF-THEN-ELSE decision structure, if the test condition is true, then the true-branch statements are done; otherwise the false-branch statements are done. A JMP must follow the true-branch statements so that the false-branch will be bypassed.
- In a CASE structure, branching is controlled by an expression; the branches correspond to the possible values of the expression.
- A FOR loop is executed a known number of times. It may be implemented by the LOOP instruction. Before entering the loop, CX is initialized to the number of times to repeat the loop statements.
- In a WHILE loop, the loop condition is checked at the top of the loop. The loop statements are repeated as long as the condition is true. If the condition is initially false, the loop statements are not done at all.
- In a REPEAT loop, the loop condition is checked at the bottom of the loop. The statements are repeated until the condition is true. Because the condition is checked at the bottom of the loop, the statements are done at least once.

Glossary

AND condition	A logical AND of two conditions
conditional jump instruction	A jump instruction whose execution depends on status flag settings
loop	A sequence of instructions that is repeated
OR condition	A logical OR of two conditions
signed jump	A conditional jump instruction used with signed numbers
single-flag jump	A conditional jump that operates on the setting of an individual status flag
top-down program design	Program development by breaking a large problem into a series of smaller problems
unconditional jump	An unconditional transfer of control
unsigned jump	A conditional jump instruction used with unsigned numbers

New Instructions

CMP	JCXZ	JLE/JNG
JA/JNBE	JE/JZ	JMP
JAE/JNB	JG/JNLE	JNC
JB/JNAE	JGE/JNL	JNE/JNZ
JBE/JNA	JL/JNLE	LOOP
JC		

Exercises

1. Write assembly code for each of the following decision structures.

a. IF AX < 0
THEN
 PUT -1 IN BX
END_IF

b. IF AL < 0
THEN
 put FFh in AH
ELSE
 put 0 in AH
END_IF

c. Suppose DL contains the ASCII code of a character.

```
(IF DL >= "A") AND (DL <= 'Z')
THEN
  display DL
END_IF
```

d. IF AX < BX
THEN
 IF BX < CX
 THEN

```

        put 0 in AX
ELSE
    put 0 in BX
END_IF
END_IF

e. IF (AX < BX) OR (BX < CX)
THEN
    put 0 in DX
ELSE
    put 1 in DX
END_IF

f. IF AX < BX
THEN
    put 0 in AX
ELSE
    IF BX < CX
    THEN
        put 0 in BX
    ELSE
        put 0 in CX
    END_IF
END_IF

```

2. Use a CASE structure to code the following:

Read a character.

If it's "A", then execute carriage return.

If it's "B", then execute line feed.

If it's any other character, then return to DOS.

Write a sequence of instructions to do each of the following:

a. Put the sum $1 + 4 + 7 + \dots + 148$ in AX.

b. Put the sum $100 + 95 + 90 + \dots + 5$ in AX.

Employ LOOP instructions to do the following:

a. put the sum of the first 50 terms of the arithmetic sequence
1, 5, 9, 13, ... in DX.

b. Read a character and display it 80 times on the next line.

c. Read a five-character password and overprint it by executing
a carriage return and displaying five X's. You need not store
the input characters anywhere.

The following algorithm may be used to carry out division of two
nonnegative numbers by repeated subtraction:

```

initialize quotient to 0
WHILE dividend >= divisor DO
increment quotient
subtract divisor from dividend
END_WHILE

```

Write a sequence of instructions to divide AX by BX, and put the
quotient in CX.

6. The following algorithm may be used to carry out multiplication of two positive numbers M and N by repeated addition:

```
initialize product to 0
REPEAT
    add M to product
    decrement N
UNTIL N = 0
```

Write a sequence of instructions to multiply AX by BX, and put the product in CX. You may ignore the possibility of overflow.

7. It is possible to set up a count-controlled loop that will continue to execute as long as some condition is satisfied. The instructions

```
LOOPE label      ;loop while equal
```

and

```
LOOPZ label      ;loop while zero
```

cause CX to be decremented, then if CX <> 0 and ZF = 1, control transfers to the instruction at the destination label; if either CX = 0 or ZF = 0, the instruction following the loop is done. Similarly, the instructions

```
LOOPNE label     ;loop while not equal
```

and

```
LOOPNZ label     ;loop while not zero
```

cause CX to be decremented, then if CX <> 0 and ZF = 0, control transfers to the instruction at the destination label; if either CX = 0 or ZF = 1, the instruction following the loop is done.

- Write instructions to read characters until either a nonblank character is typed, or 80 characters have been typed. Use LOOPE.
- Write instructions to read characters until either a carriage return is typed or 80 characters have been typed. Use LOOPNE.

Programming Exercises

- Write a program to display a "?", read two capital letters, and display them on the next line in alphabetical order.
- Write a program to display the extended ASCII characters (ASCII codes 80h to FFh). Display 10 characters per line, separated by blanks. Stop after the extended characters have been displayed once.
- Write a program that will prompt the user to enter a hex digit character ("0" . . . "9" or "A" . . . "F"), display it on the next line in decimal, and ask the user if he or she wants to do it again. If the user types "y" or "Y", the program repeats; if the user types anything else, the program terminates. If the user enters an illegal character, prompt the user to try again.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER A HEX DIGIT: 9
IN DECIMAL IS IT 9
DO YOU WANT TO DO IT AGAIN? y
ENTER A HEX DIGIT: c
ILLEGAL CHARACTER - ENTER 0..9 OR A..F: C
IN DECIMAL IT IS 12
DO YOU WANT TO DO IT AGAIN? n
```

11. Do programming exercise 10, except that if the user fails to enter a hex-digit character in three tries, display a message and terminate the program.
12. (hard) Write a program that reads a string of capital letters, ending with a carriage return, and displays the longest sequence of consecutive alphabetically increasing capital letters read.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER A STRING OF CAPITAL LETTERS:
FGHADEFGHC
THE LONGEST CONSECUTIVELY INCREASING STRING IS:
DEFGH
```

Logic, Shift, and Rotate Instructions

Overview

In this chapter we discuss instructions that can be used to change the bit pattern in a byte or word. The ability to manipulate bits is generally absent in high-level languages (except C), and is an important reason for programming in assembly language.

In section 7.1, we introduce the logic instructions AND, OR, XOR, and NOT. They can be used to clear, set, and examine bits in a register or variable. We use these instructions to do some familiar tasks, such as converting a lowercase letter to upper case, and some new tasks, such as determining if a register contains an even or odd number.

Section 7.2 covers the shift instructions. Bits can be shifted left or right in a register or memory location; when a bit is shifted out, it goes into CF. Because a left shift doubles a number and a right shift halves it, these instructions give us a way to multiply and divide by powers of 2. In Chapter 9, we'll use the MUL and DIV instructions for doing more general multiplication and division; however, these latter instructions are much slower than the shift instructions.

In section 7.3, the rotate instructions are covered. They work like the shifts, except that when a bit is shifted out one end of an operand it is put back in the other end. These instructions can be used in situations where we want to examine and/or change bits or groups of bits.

In section 7.4, we use the logic, shift, and rotate instructions to do binary and hexadecimal I/O. The ability to read and write numbers lets us solve a great variety of problems.

7.1 Logic Instructions

As noted earlier, the ability to manipulate individual bits is one of the advantages of assembly language. We can change individual bits in a computer by using logic operations. The binary values of 0 and 1 are treated as *false* and *true*, respectively. Figure 7.1 shows the truth tables for the logic operators AND, OR, XOR (exclusive OR), and NOT.

When a logic operation is applied to 8- or 16-bit operands, the result is obtained by applying the logic operation at each bit position.

Example 7.1 Perform the following logic operations:

1. 10101010 AND 11110000
2. 10101010 OR 11110000
3. 10101010 XOR 11110000
4. NOT 10101010

Solutions:

$$\begin{array}{r} 10101010 \\ \text{AND } 11110000 \\ \hline = 10100000 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10101010 \\ \text{OR } 11110000 \\ \hline = 11111010 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10101010 \\ \text{XOR } 11110000 \\ \hline = 01011010 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{NOT } 10101010 \\ = 01010101 \end{array}$$

Figure 7.1 Truth Tables for AND, OR, XOR, and NOT (0 = false, 1 = true)

a	b	a AND b	a OR b	a XOR b
0	0	0	0	0
0	1	0	1	1
1	0	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0

a	NOT a
0	1
1	0

7.1.1**AND, OR, and XOR Instructions**

The **AND**, **OR**, and **XOR** instructions perform the named logic operations. The formats are

AND	destination,source
OR	destination,source
XOR	destination,source

The result of the operation is stored in the destination, which must be a register or memory location. The source may be a constant, register, or memory location. However, memory-to-memory operations are not allowed.

Effect on flags:

SF, ZF, PF reflect the result

AF is undefined

CF, OF = 0

One use of AND, OR, and XOR is to selectively modify the bits in the destination. To do this, we construct a source bit pattern known as a **mask**. The mask bits are chosen so that the corresponding destination bits are modified in the desired manner when the instruction is executed.

To choose the mask bits, we make use of the following properties of AND, OR, and XOR. From Figure 7.1, if b represents a bit (0 or 1)

$$b \text{ AND } 1 = b \quad b \text{ OR } 0 = b \quad b \text{ XOR } 0 = b$$

$$b \text{ AND } 0 = 0 \quad b \text{ OR } 1 = 1 \quad b \text{ XOR } 1 = \sim b \text{ (complement of } b\text{)}$$

From these, we may conclude that

1. The AND instruction can be used to **clear** specific destination bits while preserving the others. A 0 mask bit clears the corresponding destination bit; a 1 mask bit preserves the corresponding destination bit.
2. The OR instruction can be used to **set** specific destination bits while preserving the others. A 1 mask bit sets the corresponding destination bit; a 0 mask bit preserves the corresponding destination bit.
3. The XOR instruction can be used to **complement** specific destination bits while preserving the others. A 1 mask bit complements the corresponding destination bit; a 0 mask bit preserves the corresponding destination bit.

Example 7.2 Clear the sign bit of AL while leaving the other bits unchanged.

Solution: Use the AND instruction with $01111111b = 7Fh$ as the mask. Thus,

AND AL, 7Fh

Example 7.3 Set the most significant and least significant bits of AL while preserving the other bits.

Solution: Use the OR instruction with $10000001b = 81h$ as the mask. Thus,

```
OR AL, 81h
```

Example 7.4 Change the sign bit of DX.

Solution: Use the XOR instruction with a mask of 8000h. Thus,

```
XOR DX, 8000h
```

Note: to avoid typing errors, it's best to express the mask in hex rather than binary, especially if the mask would be 16 bits long.

The logic instructions are especially useful in the following frequently occurring tasks.

Converting an ASCII Digit to a Number

We've seen that when a program reads a character from the keyboard, AL gets the ASCII code of the character. This is also true of digit characters. For example, if the "5" key is pressed, AL gets 35h instead of 5. To get 5 in AL, we could do this:

```
SUB AL, 30h
```

Another method is to use the AND instruction to clear the high nibble (high four bits) of AL:

```
AND AL, 0Fh
```

Because the codes of "0" to "9" are 30h to 39h, this method will convert any ASCII digit to a decimal value.

By using the logic instruction AND instead of SUB, we emphasize that we're modifying the bit pattern of AL. This is helpful in making the program more readable.

The reverse problem of converting a stored decimal digit to its ASCII code is left as an exercise.

Converting a Lowercase Letter to Upper Case

The ASCII codes of "a" to "z" range from 61h to 7Ah; the codes of "A" to "Z" go from 41h to 5Ah. Thus for example, if DL contains the code of a lowercase letter, we could convert to upper case by executing

```
SUB DL, 20h
```

This method was used in Chapter 4. However, if we compare the binary codes of corresponding lowercase and uppercase letters

Character	Code	Character	Code
a	01100001	A	01000001
b	01100010	B	01000010

01111010	Z	01011010
----------	---	----------

it is apparent that to convert lower to upper case we need only clear bit 5. This can be done by using an AND instruction with the mask 1101111b, or 0DFh. So if the lowercase character to be converted is in DL, execute

```
AND DL, 0DFh
```

The reverse problem of conversion from upper to lower case is left as an exercise.

Clearing a Register

We already know two ways to clear a register. For example, to clear AX we could execute

```
MOV AX, 0
```

or

```
SUB AX, AX
```

Using the fact that 1 XOR 1 = 0 and 0 XOR 0 = 0, a third way is

```
XOR AX, AX
```

The machine code of the first method is three bytes, versus two bytes for the latter two methods, so the latter are more efficient. However, because of the prohibition on memory-to-memory operations, the first method must be used to clear a memory location.

Testing a Register for Zero

Because 1 OR 1 = 1, 0 OR 0 = 0, it might seem like a waste of time to execute an instruction like

```
OR CX, CX
```

because it leaves the contents of CX unchanged. However, it affects ZF and SF, and in particular if CX contains 0 then ZF = 1. So it can be used as an alternative to

```
CMP CX, 0
```

to test the contents of a register for zero, or to check the sign of the contents.

7.1.2

NOT Instruction

The NOT instruction performs the one's complement operation on the destination. The format is

```
NOT destination
```

There is no effect on the status flags.

Example 7.5 Complement the bits in AX.

Solution:

```
NOT AX
```

7.1.3**TEST Instruction**

The TEST instruction performs an AND operation of the destination with the source but does not change the destination contents. The purpose of the TEST instruction is to set the status flags. The format is

TEST destination, source

Effect on flags

SF, ZF, PF reflect the result

AF is undefined

CF, OF = 0

Examining Bits

The TEST instruction can be used to examine individual bits in an operand. The mask should contain 1's in the bit positions to be tested and 0's elsewhere. Because $1 \text{ AND } b = b$, $0 \text{ AND } b = 0$, the result of

TEST destination, mask

will have 1's in the tested bit positions if and only if the destination has 1's in these positions; it will have 0's elsewhere. If destination has 0's in all the tested position, the result will be 0 and so ZF = 1.

Example 7.6 Jump to label BELOW if AL contains an even number.

Solution: Even numbers have a 0 in bit 0. Thus, the mask is 00000001_b = 1.

```
TEST AL,1           ;is AL even?
JZ    BELOW          ;yes, go to BELOW
```

7.2**Shift Instructions**

The shift and rotate instructions shift the bits in the destination operand by one or more positions either to the left or right. For a shift instruction, the bits shifted out are lost; for a rotate instruction, bits shifted out from one end of the operand are put back into the other end. The instructions have two possible formats. For a single shift or rotate, the form is

Opcode destination,1

For a shift or rotate of N positions, the form is

Opcode destination,CL

where CL contains N . In both cases, destination is an 8- or 16-bit register or memory location. Note that for Intel's more advanced processors, a shift or rotate instruction also allows the use of an 8-bit constant.

As we'll see presently, these instructions can be used to multiply and divide by powers of 2, and we will use them in programs for binary and hex I/O.

7.2.1**Left Shift Instructions****The SHL Instruction**

The **SHL** (shift left) instruction shifts the bits in the destination to the left. The format for a single shift is

SHL destination, 1

A 0 is shifted into the rightmost bit position and the msb is shifted into CF (Figure 7.2). If the shift count N is different from 1, the instruction takes the form

SHL destination, CL

where CL contains N . In this case, N single left shifts are made. The value of CL remains the same after the shift operation.

Effect on flags

SF, PF, ZF reflect the result

AF is undefined

CF = last bit shifted out

OF = 1 if result changes sign on last shift

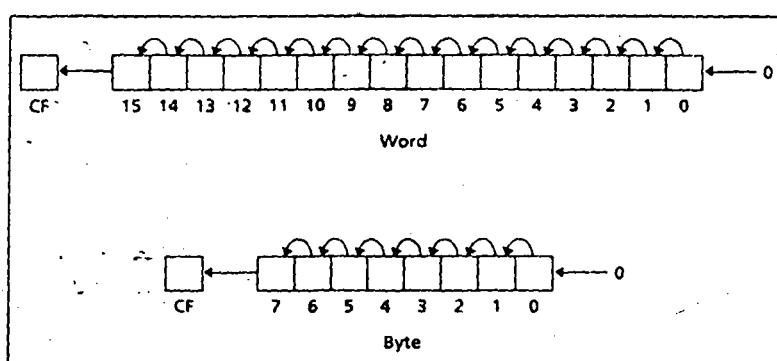
Example 7.7 Suppose DH contains 8Ah and CL contains 3. What are the values of DH and of CF after the instruction **SHL DH, CL** is executed?

Solution: The binary value of DH is 10001010. After 3 left shifts, CF will contain 0. The new contents of DH may be obtained by erasing the leftmost three bits and adding three zero bits to the right end, thus 01010000_b = 50h.

Multiplication by Left Shift

Consider the decimal number 235. If each digit is shifted left one position and a 0 attached to the right end, we get 2350; this is the same as multiplying 235 by ten.

Figure 7.2 SHL and SAL



In the same way, a left shift on a binary number multiplies it by 2. For example, suppose that AL contains $S = 00000101_b$. A left shift gives $00001010_b = 10_d$, thus doubling its value. Another left shift yields $00010100 = 20_d$, so it is doubled again.

The SAL instruction

Thus, the SHL instruction can be used to multiply an operand by multiples of 2. However, to emphasize the arithmetic nature of the operation the opcode **SAL** (shift arithmetic left) is often used in instances where numeric multiplication is intended. Both instructions generate the same machine code.

Negative numbers can also be multiplied by powers of 2 by left shifts. For example, if AX is FFFFh (-1), then shifting three times will yield AX = FFF8h (-8).

Overflow

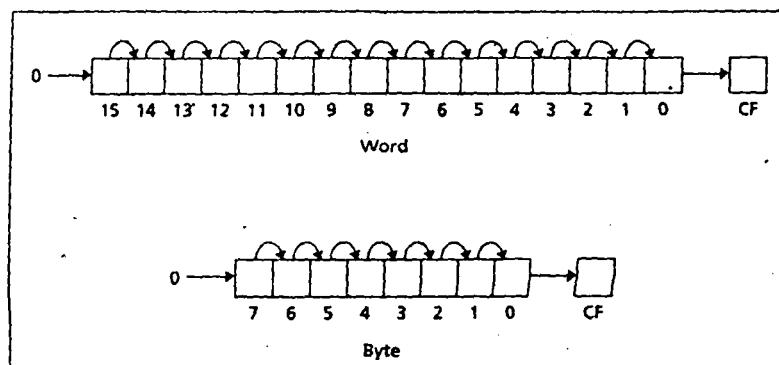
When we treat left shifts as multiplication, overflow may occur. For a single left shift, CF and OF accurately indicate unsigned and signed overflow, respectively. However, the overflow flags are not reliable indicators for a multiple left shift. This is because a multiple shift is really a series of single shifts, and CF, OF only reflect the result of the last shift. For example, if BL contains 80h, CL contains 2 and we execute SHL BL,CL, then CF = OF = 0 even though both signed and unsigned overflow occur.

Example 7.8 Write some code to multiply the value of AX by 8. Assume that overflow will not occur.

Solution: To multiply by 8, we need to do three left shifts.

```
MOV CL,3           ;number of shifts to do
SAL AX,CL         ;multiply by 8
```

Figure 7.3 SHR



7.2.2**Right Shift Instructions****The SHR Instruction**

The instruction **SHR** (shift right) performs right shifts on the destination operand. The format for a single shift is

SHR destination, 1

A 0 is shifted into the msb position, and the rightmost bit is shifted into CF. See Figure 7.3. If the shift count N is different from 1, the instruction takes the form

SHR destination, CL

where CL contains N . In this case N single right shifts are made.

The effect on the flags is the same as for SHL.

Example 7.9 Suppose DH contains 8Ah and CL contains 2. What are the values of DH and CF after the instruction **SHR DH, CL** is executed?

Solution: The value of DH in binary is 10001010. After two right shifts, CF = 1. The new value of DH is obtained by erasing the rightmost two bits and adding two 0 bits to the left end, thus DH = 00100010_b = 22h.

The SAR Instruction

The **SAR** instruction (shift arithmetic right) operates like SHR, with one difference: the msb retains its original value. See Figure 7.4. The syntax is

SAR destination, 1

and

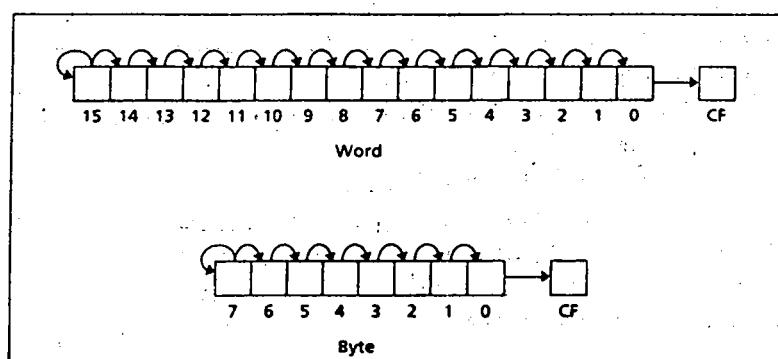
SAR destination, CL

The effect on flags is the same as for SHR.

Division by Right Shift

Because a left shift doubles the destination's value, it's reasonable to guess that a right shift might divide it by 2. This is correct for even numbers.

Figure 7.4 SAR



For odd numbers, a right shift halves it and rounds down to the nearest integer. For example, if BL contains $00000101_b = 5$, then after a right shift, BL will contain $00000010 = 2$.

Signed and Unsigned Division

In doing division by right shifts, we need to make a distinction between signed and unsigned numbers. If an unsigned interpretation is being given, SHR should be used. For a signed interpretation, SAR must be used, because it preserves the sign.

Example 7.10 Use right shifts to divide the unsigned number 65143 by 4. Put the quotient in AX.

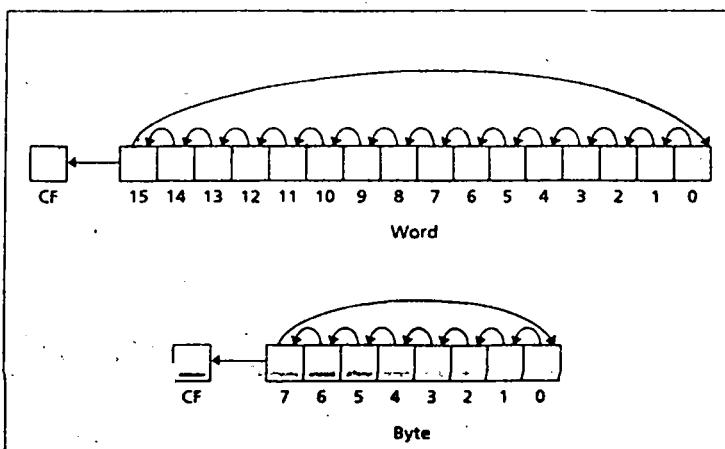
Solution: To divide by 4, two right shifts are needed. Since the dividend is unsigned, we use SHR. The code is

```
MOV AX, 65143      ;AX has number
MOV CL, 2          ;CL has number of right shifts
SHR AX, CL         ;divide by 4
```

Example 7.11 If AL contains -15, give the decimal value of AL after SAR AL,1 is performed.

Solution: Execution of SAR AL,1 divides the number by 2 and rounds down. Dividing -15 by 2 yields -7.5, and after rounding down we get -8. In terms of the binary contents, we have $-15 = 11110001_b$. After shifting, we have $11111000_b = -8$.

Figure 7.5 ROL



More General Multiplication and Division

We've seen that multiplication and division by powers of 2 can be accomplished by left and right shifts. Multiplication by other numbers, such as 10d, can be done by a combination of shifting and addition (see Chapter 8).

In Chapter 9, we cover the MUL and IMUL, DIV and IDIV instructions. They are not limited to multiplication and division by powers of 2, but are much slower than the shift instructions.

7.3

Rotate Instructions

Rotate Left

The instruction **ROL** (rotate left) shifts bits to the left. The msb is shifted into the rightmost bit. The CF also gets the bit shifted out of the msb. You can think of the destination bits forming a circle, with the least significant bit following the msb in the circle. See Figure 7.5. The syntax is

ROL destination, 1

and

ROL destination, CL

Rotate Right

The instruction **ROR** (rotate right) works just like ROL, except that the bits are rotated to the right. The rightmost bit is shifted into the msb, and also into the CF. See Figure 7.6. The syntax is

ROR destination, 1

and

ROR destination, CL

Figure 7.6 ROR

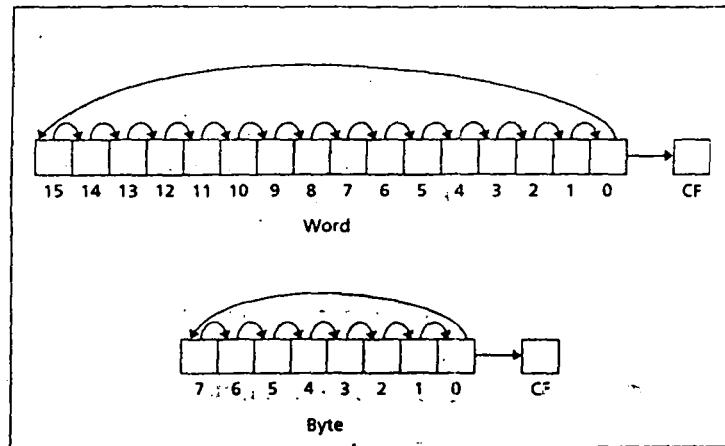
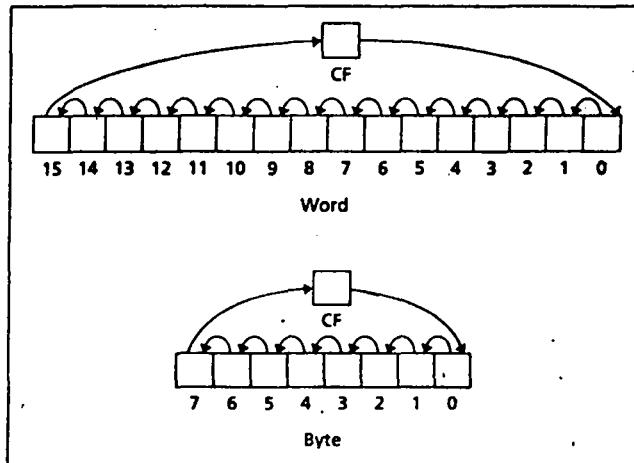


Figure 7.7 RCL



In ROL and ROR, CF reflects the bit that is rotated out. The next example shows how this can be used to inspect the bits in a byte or word, without changing the contents.

Example 7.12 Use ROL to count the number of 1 bits in BX, without changing BX. Put the answer in AX.

Solution:

```

XOR AX,AX      ;AX counts bits
MOV CX,16      ;loop counter
TOP:
ROL BX,1       ;C F = bit rotated out
JNC NEXT       ;0 bit
INC AX         ;1 bit, increment total
NEXT:
LOOP TOP       ;loop until done

```

In this example, we used JNC (Jump if No Carry), which causes a jump if CF = 0. In section 7.4, we use ROL to output the contents of a register in binary.

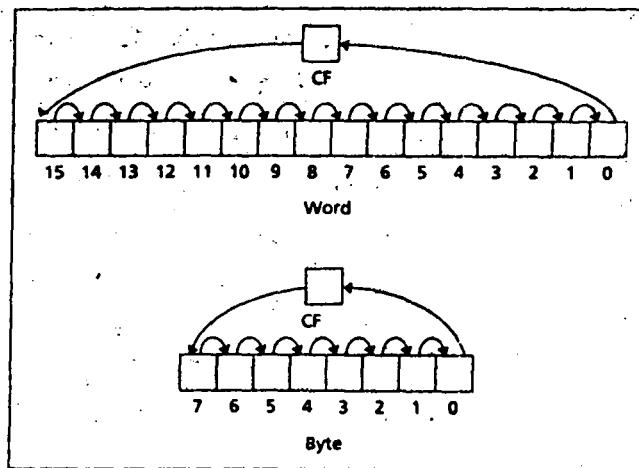
Rotate Carry Left

The instruction **RCL** (Rotate through Carry Left) shifts the bits of the destination to the left. The msb is shifted into the CF, and the previous value of CF is shifted into the rightmost bit. In other words, RCL works like just like ROL, except that CF is part of the circle of bits being rotated. See Figure 7.7. The syntax is

RCL destination,*n*

and

RCL destination,CL

Figure 7.8. RCR

Rotate Carry Right

The instruction **RCR** (Rotate through Carry Right) works just like RCL, except that the bits are rotated to the right. See Figure 7.8. The syntax is

```
RCR destination,1  
and  
RCR destination,CL
```

Example 7.13 Suppose DH contains 8Ah, CF = 1, and CL contains 3. What are the values of DH and CF after the instruction RCR DH,CL is executed?

Solution:

	CF	DH
initial values	1	10001010
after 1 right rotation	0	11000101
after 2 right rotations	1	01100010
after 3 right rotations	0	10110001 = B1h

Effect of the rotate instructions on the flags

- SF, PF, ZF reflect the result
- AF is undefined
- CF = last bit shifted out
- OF = 1 if result changes sign on the last rotation

An Application: Reversing a Bit Pattern

As an application of the shift and rotate instructions, let's consider the problem of reversing the bit pattern in a byte or word. For example, if AL contains 11011100, we want to make it 00111011.

An easy way to do this is to use SHL to shift the bits out the left end of AL into CF, and then use RCR to move them into the left end of another register; for example, BL. If this is done eight times, BL will contain the reversed bit pattern and it can be copied back into AL. The code is

```
MOV CX, 8      ;number of operations to do
REVERSE:
    SHL AL, 1    ;get a bit into CF
    RCR BL, 1    ;rotate it into BL
    LOOP REVERSE ;loop until done
    MOV AL, BL   ;AL gets reversed pattern
```

7.4

Binary and Hex I/O

One useful application of the shift and rotate instructions is in binary and hex I/O.

Binary Input

For binary input, we assume a program reads in a binary number from the keyboard, followed by a carriage return. The number actually is a character string of 0's and 1's. As each character is entered, we need to convert it to a bit value, and collect the bits in a register. The following algorithm reads a binary number from the keyboard and stores its value in BX.

Algorithm for Binary Input

```
Clear BX /* BX will hold binary value */
Input a character /* '0' or '1' */
WHILE character <> CR DO
    Convert character to binary value
    Left shift BX
    Insert value into lsb of BX
    Input a character
END WHILE
```

Demonstration (for input 110)

```
Clear BX
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0000
Input character '1', convert to 1
Left shift BX
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0000
Insert value into lsb
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0001
Input character '1', convert to 1
Left shift BX
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0010
Insert value into lsb
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0011
```

```

Input character '0', convert to 0
Left shift BX
  BX = 0000 0000 0000 0110
Insert value into lsb
  BX = 0000 0000 0000 0110
BX contains 110b.

```

The algorithm assumes (1) input characters are either "0", "1", or CR, and (2) at most 16 binary digits are input. As a new digit is input, the previous bits in BX must be shifted to the left to make room; then an OR operation can be used to insert the new bit into BX. The assembly instructions are

```

XOR BX,BX      ;clear BX
MOV AH,1        ;input char function
INT 21H         ;read a character
WHILE_:
    CMP AL,0DH   ;CR?
    JE END WHILE ;yes, done
    AND AL,0FH    ;no, convert to binary value
    SHL BX,1      ;make room for new value
    OR BL,AL      ;put value into BX
    INT 21H       ;read a character
    JMP WHILE_    ;loop back
END WHILE:

```

Binary Output

Outputting the contents of BX in binary also involves the shift operation. Here we only give an algorithm; the assembly code is left to be done as an exercise.

Algorithm for Binary Output

```

FOR 16 times DO
    Rotate left BX /* BX holds output value,
                    put msb into CF */
    IF CF = 1
        THEN
            output '1'
        ELSE
            output '0'
    END_IF.
END_FOR

```

Hex Input

Hex input consists of digits ("0" to "9") and letters ("A" to "F") followed by a carriage return. For simplicity, we assume that (1) only uppercase letters are used, and (2) the user inputs no more than four hex characters. The process of converting characters to binary values is more involved than it was for binary input, and BX must be shifted four times to make room for a hex value.

Algorithm for Hex Input

```

Clear BX /* BX will hold input value */
input hex character
WHILE character <> CR DO
    convert character to binary value
    left shift BX 4 times
    insert value into lower 4 bits of BX
    input a character
END WHILE

```

Demonstration (for input 6AB)

```

Clear BX
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0000
Input '6', convert to 0110
Left shift BX 4 times
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0000
Insert value into lower 4 bits of BX
BX = 0000 0000 0000 0110
Input 'A', convert to Ah = 1010
Left shift BX 4 times
BX = 0000 0000 0110 0000
Insert value into lower 4 bits of BX
BX = 0000 0000 0110 1010
Input 'B', convert to 1011
Left shift BX 4 times
BX = 0000 0110 1010 0000
Insert value into lower 4 bits of BX
BX = 0000 0110 1010 1011
BX contains 06ABh.

```

Here is the code:

```

        XOR  BX,BX      ;clear BX
        MOV  CL,4       ;counter for 4 shifts
        MOV  AH,1       ;input character function
        INT  21H       ;input a character

WHILE_:
        CMP  AL,0DH     ;CR?
        JE   END_WHILE ;yes, exit
;convert character to binary value
        CMP  AL,39H     ;a digit?
        JG   LETTER.   ;no, a letter
;input is a digit
        AND  AL,0FH     ;convert digit to binary value
        JMP  SHIFT      ;go to insert in BX

LETTER:
        SUB  AL,37H     ;convert letter to binary value

SHIFT:
        SHL  BX,CL      ;make room for new value
;insert value into BX
        OR   BL,AL      ;put value into low 4 bits
                           ;of BX
        INT  21H       ;input a character
        JMP  WHILE_.   ;loop until CR

END WHILE:

```

Note that the program does not check for valid input characters.

Hex Output

BX contains 16 bits, which equal four hex digit values. To output the contents of BX, we start from the left and get hold of each digit, convert it to a hex character, and output it. The algorithm which follows is similar to that for binary output.

Algorithm for Hex Output

```

FOR 4 times DO
    Move BH to DL /* BX holds output value */
    shift DL 4 times to the right
    IF DL < 10
        THEN
            convert to character in '0'.. '9'
        ELSE
            convert to character in 'A'.. 'F'
    END_IF
    output character
    Rotate BX left 4 times
END_FOR

```

Demonstration (BX Contains 4CA9h)

```

BX = '4CA9h' = 0100 1100 1010 1001
Move BH to DL
    DL = 0100 1100
    Shift DL 4 times to the right
        DL = 0000 0100
    Convert to character and output
        DL = '0011 0100' = 34h = '4'
    Rotate BX left 4 times
        BX = 1100 1010 1001 0100
    Move BH to DL
        DL = 1100 1010
        Shift DL 4 times to the right
            DL = 0000 1100
        Convert to character and output
            DL = 0100 0011 = 43h = 'C'
    Rotate BX left 4 times
        BX = 1010 1001 0100 1100
    Move BH to DL
        DL = 1010 1001
        Shift DL 4 times to the right
            DL = 0000 1010
        Convert to character and output
            DL = 0100 0010 = 42h = 'B'
    Rotate BX left 4 times
        BX = 1001 0100 1100 1010
    Move BH to DL
        DL = 1001 0100
        Shift DL 4 times to the right

```

DL = 0000 1001
Convert to character and output
DL = 0011 1001 = 39h = '9'
Rotate BX 4 times to the left
BX = 0100 1100 1010 1001 = original contents

Coding the algorithm is left to be done as an exercise.

Summary

- The five logic instructions are AND, OR, NOT, XOR, and TEST.
- The AND instruction can be used to clear individual bits in the destination.
- The OR instruction is useful in setting individual bits in the destination. It can also be used to test the destination for zero.
- The XOR instruction can be used to complement individual bits in the destination. It can also be used to zero out the destination.
- The NOT instruction performs the one's complement operation on the destination.
- The TEST instruction can be used to examine individual bits of the destination. For example, it can determine if the destination contains an even or odd number.
- SAL and SHL shift each destination bit left one place. The most significant bit goes into CF, and a 0 is shifted into the least significant bit.
- SHR shifts each destination bit right one place. The least significant bit goes into CF, and a 0 is shifted into the most significant bit.
- SAR operates like SHR, except that the value of the most significant bit is preserved.
- The shift instructions can be used to do multiplication and division by 2. SHL and SAL double the destination's value unless overflow occurs. SHR and SAR halve the destination's value if it is even; if odd, they halve the destination's value and round down to the nearest integer. SHR should be used for unsigned arithmetic, and SAR for signed arithmetic.
- ROL shifts each destination bit left one position; the most significant bit is rotated into the least significant bit. For ROR, each bit goes right one position, and the least significant bit rotates into the most significant bit. For both instructions, CF gets the last bit rotated out.
- RCL and RCR operate like ROL and ROR, except that a bit rotated out goes into CF, and the value of CF rotates into the destination.
- Multiple shifts and rotates can be performed. CL must contain the number of times the shift or rotate is to be executed.
- The shift and rotate instructions are useful in doing binary and hex I/O.

Glossary

clear	Change a value to 0
complement	Change from a 0 to a 1 or from a 1 to a 0
mask	A bit pattern used in logical operations to clear, set, or test specific bits in an operand
set	Change a bit value to a 1

New Instructions

AND	RCR	SAR
NOT	ROL	SHR
OR	ROR	TEST
RCL	SAL/SHL	XOR

Exercises

1. Perform the following logic operations
 - a. 10101111 AND 10001011
 - b. 10110001 OR 01001001
 - c. 00111100 XOR 11011010
 - d. NOT 01011110
2. Give a logic instruction to do each of the following.
 - a. Clear the even-numbered bits of AX, leaving the other bits unchanged.
 - b. Set the most and least significant bits of BL, leaving the other bits unchanged.
 - c. Complement the msb of DX, leaving the other bits unchanged.
 - d. Replace the value of the word variable WORD1 by its one's complement.
3. Use the TEST instruction to do each of the following.
 - a. Set ZF if the contents of AX is zero.
 - b. Clear ZF if BX contains an odd number.
 - c. Set SF if DX contains a negative number.
 - d. Set ZF if DX contains a zero or positive number.
 - e. Set PF if BL contains an even number of 1 bits.
4. Suppose AL contains 11001011b and CF = 1. Give the new contents of AL after each of the following instructions is executed. Assume the preceding initial conditions for each part of this question.
 - a. SHL AL,1
 - b. SHR AL,1
 - c. ROL AL,CL if CL contains 2
 - d. ROR AL,CL if CL contains 3
 - e. SAR AL,CL if CL contains 2
 - f. RCL AL,1
 - g. RCR AL,CL if CL contains 3

5. Write one or more instructions to do each of the following.
Assume overflow does not occur.
 - a. Double the value of byte variable BS.
 - b. Multiply the value of AL by 8.
 - c. Divide 32142 by 4 and put the quotient in AX.
 - d. Divide -2145 by 16 and put the quotient in BX.
6. Write instructions to do each of the following:
 - a. Assuming AL has a value less than 10, convert it to a decimal character.
 - b. Assuming DL contains the ASCII code of an uppercase letter, convert it to lower case.
7. Write instructions to do each of the following.
 - a. Multiply the value of BL by 10d. Assume overflow does not occur.
 - b. Suppose AL contains a positive number. Divide AL by 8, and put the remainder in AH. (*Hint:* use ROR.)

Programming Exercises

8. Write a program that prompts the user to enter a character, and on subsequent lines prints its ASCII code in binary, and the number of 1 bits in its ASCII code.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A CHARACTER: A
THE ASCII CODE OF A IN BINARY IS 01000001
THE NUMBER OF 1 BITS IS 2
```

9. Write a program that prompts the user to enter a character and prints the ASCII code of the character in hex on the next line. Repeat this process until the user types a carriage return.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A CHARACTER: Z
THE ASCII CODE OF Z IN HEX IS 5A
TYPE A CHARACTER:
```

10. Write a program that prompts the user to type a hex number of four hex digits or less, and outputs it in binary on the next line. If the user enters an illegal character, he or she should be prompted to begin again. Accept only uppercase letters.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A HEX NUMBER (0 TO FFFF): 1A
ILLEGAL HEX DIGIT, TRY AGAIN: 1ABC
IN BINARY IT IS 0001101010111100
```

Your program may ignore any input beyond four characters.

11. Write a program that prompts the user to type a binary number of 16 digits or less, and outputs it in hex on the next line. If the user enters an illegal character, he or she should be prompted to begin again.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A BINARY NUMBER, UP TO 16 DIGITS: 11100001
IN HEX IT IS E1
```

Your program may ignore any input beyond 16 characters.

12. Write a program that prompts the user to enter two binary numbers of up to 8 digits each, and prints their sum on the next line in binary. If the user enters an illegal character, he or she should be prompted to begin again. Each input ends with a carriage return.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A BINARY NUMBER, UP TO 8 DIGITS:11001010
TYPE A BINARY NUMBER, UP TO 8 DIGITS:10011100
THE BINARY SUM IS 101100110
```

13. Write a program that prompts the user to enter two unsigned hex numbers, 0 to FFFFh, and prints their sum in hex on the next line. If the user enters an illegal character, he or she should be prompted to begin again. Your program should be able to handle the possibility of unsigned overflow. Each input ends with a carriage return.

Sample execution:

```
TYPE A HEX NUMBER, 0 - FFEF: 21AB
TYPE A HEX NUMBER, 0 - FFFF: FE03
THE SUM IS 11FAE
```

14. Write a program that prompts the user to enter a string of decimal digits, ending with a carriage return, and prints their sum in hex on the next line. If the user enters an illegal character, he or she should be prompted to begin again.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER A DECIMAL DIGIT STRING: 1299843
THE SUM OF THE DIGITS IN HEX IS 0024
```

8

The Stack and Introduction to Procedures

Overview

The stack segment of a program is used for temporary storage of data and addresses. In this chapter we show how the stack can be manipulated, and how it is used to implement procedures.

In section 8.1, we introduce the PUSH and POP instructions that add and remove words from the stack. Because the last word to be added to the stack is the first to be removed, a stack can be used to reverse a list of data; this property is exploited in section 8.2.

Procedures are extremely important in high-level language programming, and the same is true in assembly language. Sections 8.3 and 8.4 discuss the essentials of assembly language procedures. At the machine level, we can see exactly how a procedure is called and how it returns to the calling program. In section 8.5, we present an example of a procedure that performs binary multiplication by bit shifting and addition. This example also gives us an excuse to learn a little more about the DEBUG program.

8.1 The Stack

A *stack* is one-dimensional data structure. Items are added and removed from one end of the structure; that is, it is processed in a "last-in, first-out" manner. The most recent addition to the stack is called the **top of the stack**. A familiar example is a stack of dishes; the last dish to go on the stack is the top one, and it's the only one that can be removed easily.

A program must set aside a block of memory to hold the stack. We have been doing this by declaring a stack segment; for example,

```
.STACK 100H.
```

When the program is assembled and loaded in memory, SS will contain the segment number of the stack segment. For the preceding stack declaration, SP, the stack pointer, is initialized to 100h. This represents the empty stack position: When the stack is not empty, SP contains the offset address of the top of the stack.

PUSH and PUSHF

To add a new word to the stack we **PUSH** it on. The syntax is

```
PUSH source
```

where source is a 16-bit register or memory word. For example,

```
PUSH AX
```

Execution of PUSH causes the following to happen:

1. SP is decreased by 2.
2. A copy of the source content is moved to the address specified by SS:SP. The source is unchanged.

The instruction **PUSHF**, which has no operands, pushes the contents of the FLAGS register onto the stack.

Initially, SP contains the offset address of the memory location immediately following the stack segment; the first PUSH decreases SP by 2, making it point to the last word in the stack segment. Because each PUSH

Figure 8.1A Empty Stack

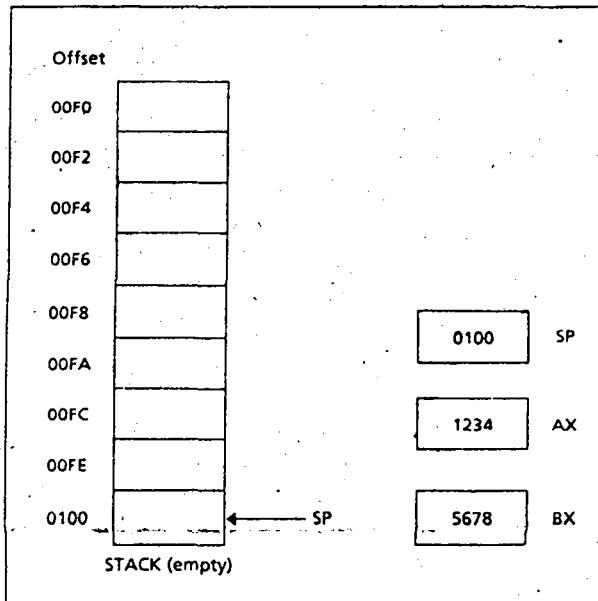
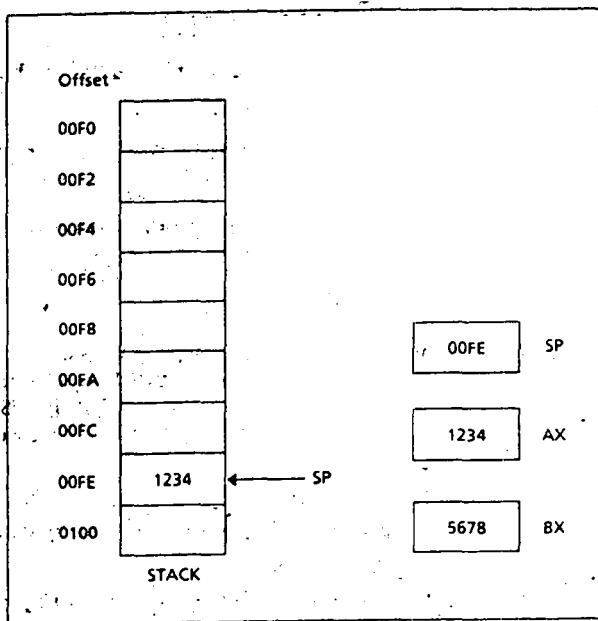
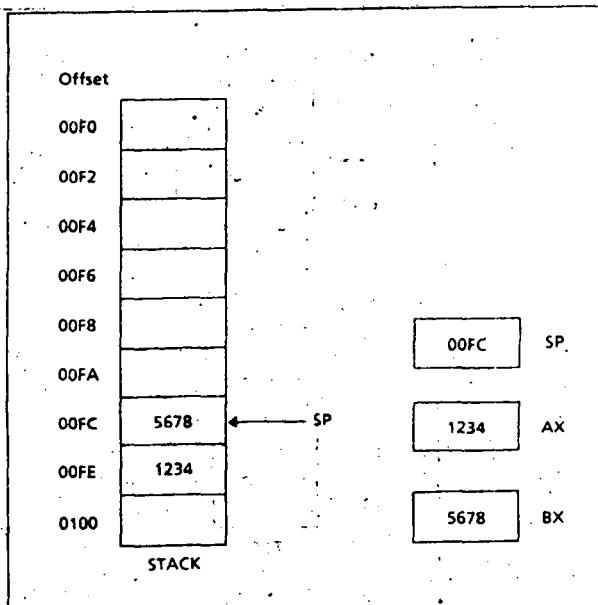


Figure 8.1B After PUSH AX

decreases SP, the stack grows toward the beginning of memory. Figure 8.1 shows how PUSH works.

1C After PUSH BX

8.1 The Stack

POP and POPF

To remove the top item from the stack, we **POP** it. The syntax is

POP destination

where destination is a 16-bit register (except IP) or memory word. For example,

POP BX

Executing POP causes this to happen:

1. The content of SS:SP (the top of the stack) is moved to the destination.
2. SP is increased by 2.

Figure 8.2 shows how POP works.

The instruction **POPF** pops the top of the stack into the FLAGS register. There is no effect of PUSH, PUSHF, POP, POPF on the flags.

Note that PUSH and POP are word operations, so a byte instruction such as

Illegal: **PUSH DL**

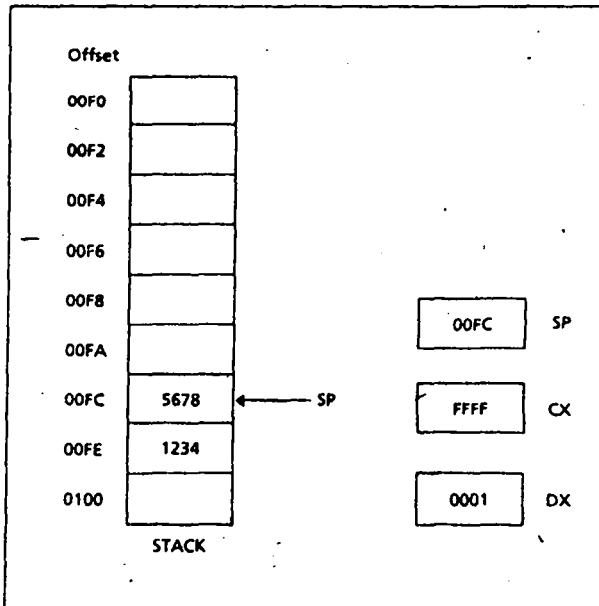
is illegal. So is a push of immediate data, such as

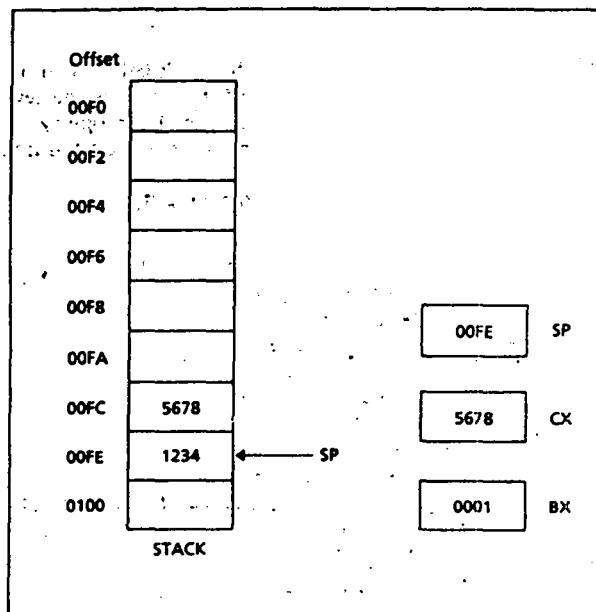
Illegal: **PUSH 2**

Note: an immediate data push is legal for the 80186/80486 processors. These processors are discussed in Chapter 20.

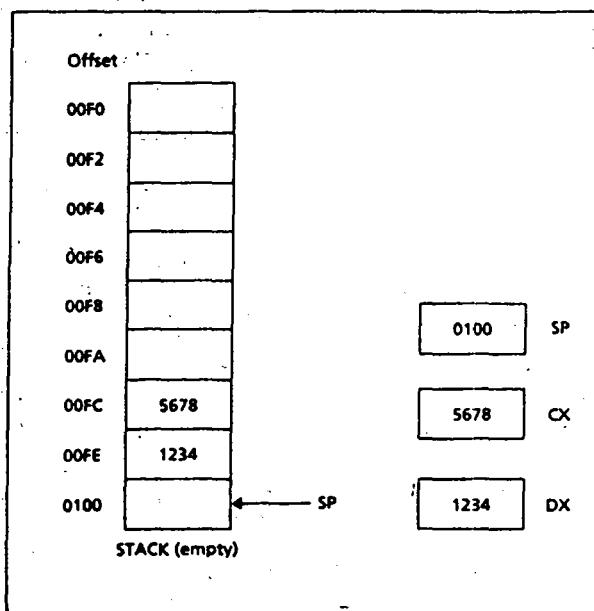
In addition to the user's program, the operating system uses the stack for its own purposes. For example, to implement the INT 21h functions, DOS saves any registers it uses on the stack and restores them when the interrupt routine is completed. This does not cause a problem for the user

8.2A Before POP



8.2B After POP CX

because any values DOS pushes onto the stack are popped off by DOS before it returns control to the user's program.

8.2C After POP DX

8.2

A Stack Application

Because the stack behaves in a last-in, first-out manner, the order that items come off the stack is the reverse of the order they enter it. The following program uses this property to read a sequence of characters and display them in reverse order on the next line.

Algorithm to Reverse Input.

```

Display a '?'
Initialize count to 0
Read a character
WHILE character is not a carriage return DO
    push character onto the stack
    increment count
    read a character
END WHILE;
Go to a new line
FOR count times DO
    pop a character from the stack;
    display it;
END FOR

```

Here is the program:

Program Listing PGM8_1.ASM

```

1: TITLE PGM8_1:REVERSE INPUT
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .CODE
5: MAIN PROC
6: ;display user prompt
7:     MOV AH,2          ;prepare to display
8:     MOV DL,'?'        ;char to display
9:     INT 21H           ;display '?'
10: ;initialize character count
11:    XOR CX,CX        ;count = 0
12: ;read a character
13:    MOV AH,1           ;prepare to read
14:    INT 21H           ;read a char
15: ;while character is not a carriage return do
16: WHILE_:
17:     CMP AL,0DH        ;CR?
18:     JE END WHILE      ;yes, exit loop
19:     ;save character on the stack and increment count
20:     PUSH AX           ;push it on stack
21:     INC CX            ;count = count + 1
22: ;read a character
23:     INT 21H           ;read a char
24:     JMP WHILE_         ;loop back
25: END WHILE:
26: ;go to a new line
27:     MOV AH,2           ;display char fcn
28:     MOV DL,0DH          ;CR
29:     INT 21H           ;execute
30:     MOV DL,0AH          ;LF

```

```

31:      INT    21H      ;execute
32:      JCXZ   EXIT      ;exit if no characters read
33: ;for count times do
34: TOP: .
35: ;pop a character from the stack
36:     POP    DX      ;get a char from stack
37: ;display it
38:     INT    21H      ;display it
39:     LOOP   TOP .+
40: ;end_for
41: EXIT:
42:     MOV    AH,4CH
43:     INT    21H
44: MAIN  ENDP
45: END  MAIN

```

Because the number of characters to be entered is unknown, the program uses CX to count them. CX controls the FOR loop that displays the characters in reverse order.

In lines 16–24, the program executes a WHILE loop that pushes characters on the stack and reads new ones, until a carriage return is entered. Even though the input characters are in AL, it's necessary to save all of AX on the stack, because the operand of PUSH must be a word.

When the program exits the WHILE loop (line 25), all the characters are on the stack, with the low byte of the top of the stack containing the last character to be entered. AL contains the ASCII code of the carriage return.

At line 32, the program checks to see if any characters were read. If not, CX contains 0 and the program jumps to the DOS exit. If any characters were read, the program enters a FOR loop that repeatedly pops the stack into DX (so that DL will get a character code), and displays a character.

Sample executions:

```

C>PGM8_1
?THIS IS A TEST
TSET A SI SIHT

C>PGM8_1
?A
A

C>PGM8_1
?      (only carriage return typed)
      (no output)
C>

```

8.3

Terminology of Procedures

In Chapter 6, we mentioned the idea of top-down program design. The idea is to take the original problem and decompose it into a series of subproblems that are easier to solve than the original problem. High-level languages usually employ procedures to solve these subproblems, and we can do the same thing in assembly language. Thus an assembly language program can be structured as a collection of procedures.

One of the procedures is the main procedure, and it contains the entry point to the program. To carry out a task, the main procedure **calls** one of the other procedures. It is also possible for these procedures to call each other, or for a procedure to call itself.

When one procedure calls another, control transfers to the called procedure and its instructions are executed; the called procedure usually returns control to the caller at the next instruction after the call statement (Figure 8.3). For high-level languages, the mechanism by which call and return are implemented is hidden from the programmer, but in assembly language we can see how it works (see section 8.4).

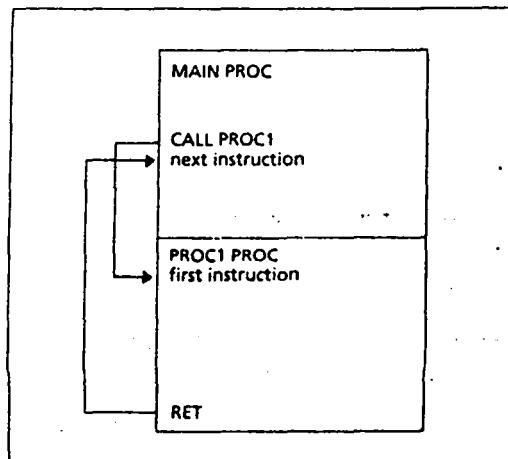
Procedure Declaration

The syntax of procedure declaration is the following:

```
name PROC type
;body of the procedure
    RET
name ENDP
```

Name is the user-defined name of the procedure. The optional operand type is **NFAR** or **FAR** (if type is omitted, NEAR is assumed). NEAR means that the statement that calls the procedure is in the same segment as the procedure itself; FAR means that the calling statement is in a different segment. In the following, we assume all procedures are NEAR; FAR procedures are discussed in Chapter 14.

Figure 8.3 Procedure Call and Return



RET

The **RET** (return) instruction causes control to transfer back to the calling procedure. Every procedure (except the main procedure) should have a RET someplace; usually it's the last statement in the procedure.

Communication Between Procedures

A procedure must have a way to receive values from the procedure that calls it, and a way to return results. Unlike high-level language procedures, assembly language procedures do not have parameter lists, so it's up to the programmer to devise a way for procedures to communicate. For example, if there are only a few input and output values, they can be placed in registers. The general issue of procedure communication is discussed in Chapter 14.

• **Procedure Documentation**

In addition to the required procedure syntax, it's a good idea to document a procedure so that anyone reading the program listing will know what the procedure does, where it gets its input, and where it delivers its output. In this book, we generally document procedures with a comment block like this:

```
; (describe what the procedure does)
; input: (where it receives information from
;         the calling program)
; output: (where it delivers results to
;          the calling program)
; uses:  (a list of procedures that it calls)
```

3.4**CALL and RET**

To invoke a procedure, the **CALL** instruction is used. There are two kinds of procedure calls, **direct** and **indirect**. The syntax of a direct procedure call is

CALL name

where **name** is the name of a procedure. The syntax of an indirect procedure call is

CALL address_expression

where **address_expression** specifies a register or memory location containing the address of a procedure.

Executing a **CALL** instruction causes the following to happen

1. The return address to the calling program is saved on the stack. This is the offset of the next instruction after the **CALL** statement. The segment:offset of this instruction is in CS:IP at the time the call is executed.

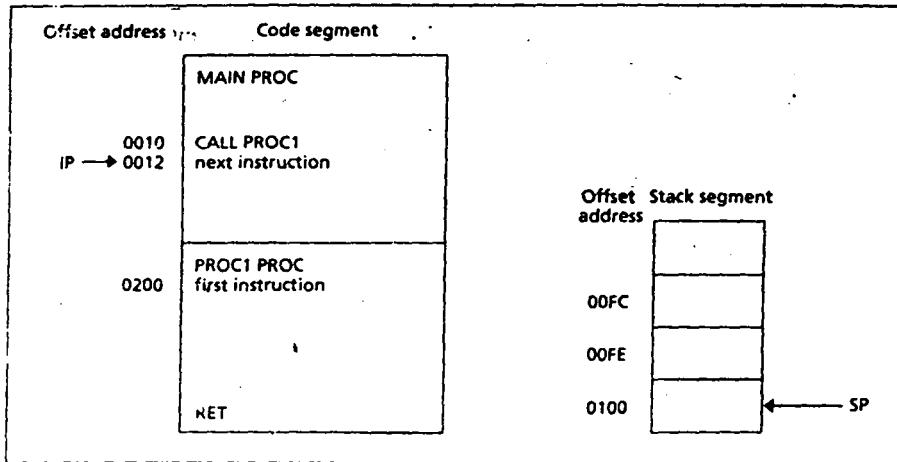


Figure 8.4A - Before CALL

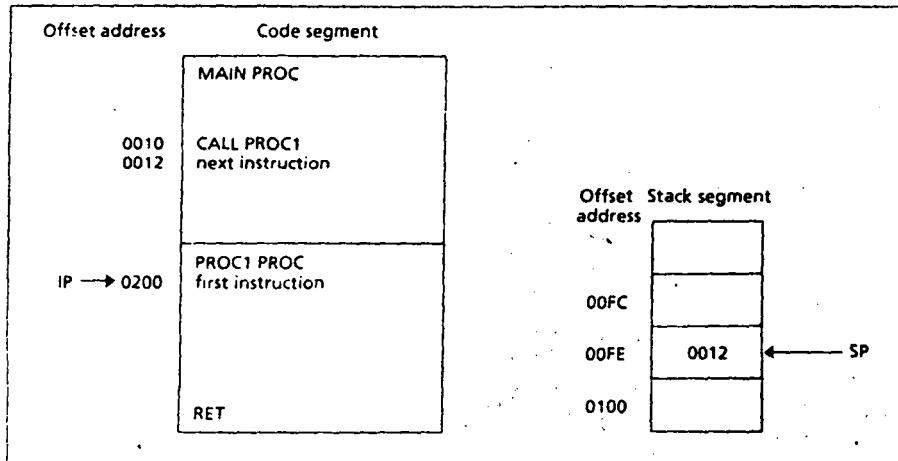


Figure 8.4B - After CALL

- 2. IP gets the offset address of the first instruction of the procedure. This transfers control to the procedure. See Figures 8.4A and 8.4B.

To return from a procedure, the instruction

`RET` `pop_value`

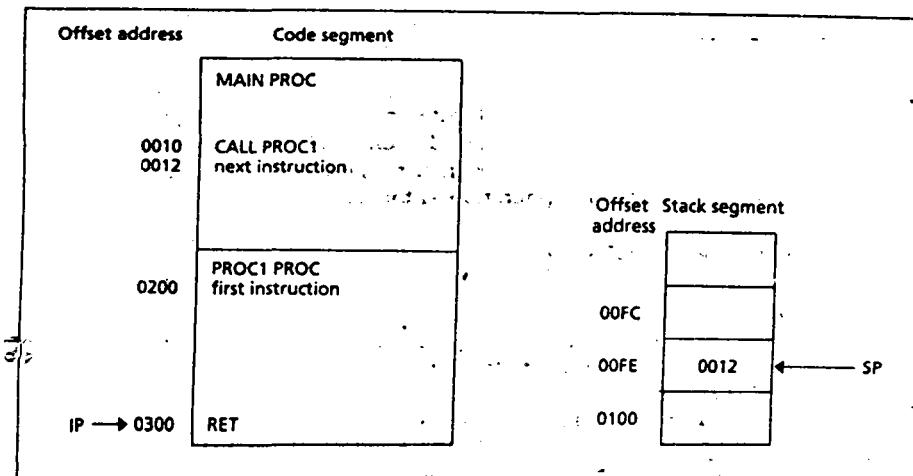


Figure 8.5A Before RET

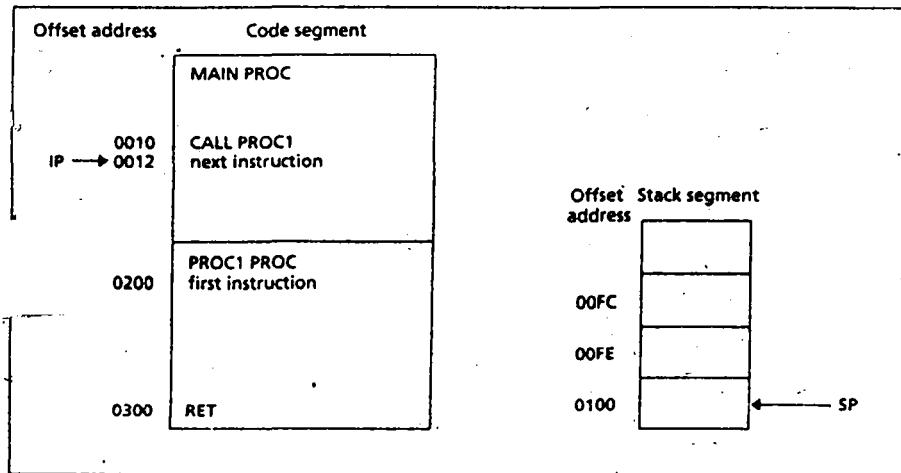


Figure 8.5B After RET

is executed. The integer argument `pop_value` is optional. For a NEAR procedure, execution of `RET` causes the stack to be popped into IP. If a `pop_value N` is specified, it is added to SP, and thus has the effect of removing N additional bytes from the stack. CS:IP now contains the segment:offset of the return address, and control returns to the calling program. See Figures 8.5A and 8.5B.

8.5

An Example of a Procedure

As an example, we will write a procedure for finding the product of two positive integers A and B by addition and bit shifting. This is one way unsigned multiplication may be implemented on the computer (in Chapter 9 we introduce the multiplication instructions).

Multiplication algorithm:

```
Product = 0
REPEAT
    IF lsb of B is 1  (Recall lsb = least
                       significant bit)
    THEN
        Product = Product + A
    END_IF
    Shift left A
    Shift right B
UNTIL B = 0
```

For example, if $A = 111_b = 7$ and $B = 1101_b = 13$

```
Product = 0
Since lsb of B is 1, Product = 0 + 111b = 111b
Shift left A: A = 1110b
Shift right B: B = 110b
```

```
Since lsb of B is 0,
Shift left A: A = 11100b
Shift right B: B = 11b
```

```
Since lsb of B is 1
Product = 111b + 11100b = 100011b
Shift left A: A = 111000b
Shift right B: B = 1
```

```
Since lsb of B is 1
Product = 100011b + 111000b = 1011011b
Shift left A: A = 1110000b
Shift right B: B = 0
```

```
Since lsb of B = 0
Return Product = 1011011b = 91d
```

Note that we get the same answer by performing the usual decimal multiplication process on the binary numbers:

$$\begin{array}{r} 111b \\ \times 1101b \\ \hline 111 \\ 000 \\ 111 \\ \hline 1011011b \end{array}$$

In the following program, the algorithm is coded as a procedure MULTIPLY. The main program has no input or output; we will use DEBUG for the I/O.

Program Listing PGM8_2.ASM

```

1: TITLE   PGM8_2: MULTIPLICATION BY ADD AND SHIFT
2: .MODEL  SMALL
3: .STACK  100H
4: .CODE
5: ~MAIN  PROC;
6: ;execute in DEBUG. Place A in AX and B in BX
7:     CALL  MULTIPLY
8: ;DX will contain the product
9:     MOV   AH,4CH
10:    INT   21H
11: MAIN  ENDP
12: MULTIPLY PROC
13: ;multiplies two nos. A and B by shifting and addition
14: ;input: AX = A, BX = B. Nos. in range 0 - FFh
15: ;output: DX = product
16:     PUSH  AX
17:     PUSH  BX
18:     XOR   DX,DX      ;product = 0
19: REPEAT:
20: ;if B is odd
21:     TEST  BX,1      ;is B odd?
22:     JZ    END_IF      ;no, even
23: ;then
24:     ADD   DX,AX      ;prod = prod + A
25: END_IF:
26:     SHL   AX,1       ;shift left A
27:     SHR   BX,1       ;Shift right B
28: ;until
29:     JNZ   REPEAT
30:     POP   BX
31:     POP   AX
32:     RET
33: MULTIPLY ENDP
34: END  MAIN

```

Procedure MULTIPLY receives its input A and B through registers AX and BX, respectively. Values are placed in these registers by the user inside the DEBUG program; the product is returned in DX in order to avoid overflow. A and B are restricted to range from 0 to FFh.

A procedure usually begins by saving all the registers it uses on the stack and ends by restoring these registers. This is done because the calling program may have data stored in registers, and the actions of the procedure could cause unwanted side effects if the registers are not preserved. Even though it's not really necessary in this program, we illustrate this practice by pushing AX and BX on the stack in lines 16 and 17, and restoring them in lines 30 and 31. The registers are popped off the stack in the reverse order that they were pushed on.

After clearing DX, which will hold the product, the procedure enters a REPEAT loop (lines 19-29). At line 22, the procedure checks BX's least significant bit. If the lsb of BX is 1, then AX is added to the product in DX; if the lsb of BX is 0, the procedure skips to line 26. Here AX is shifted left, and BX is shifted right; the loop continues until BX = 0. The procedure exits with the product in DX.

After assembling and linking the program, we take it into DEBUG (in the following, the user's response appears in boldface):

C> DEBUG PGM8_2.EXE

DEBUG responds with its command prompt "-". To get a listing of the program, we use the U (unassemble) command.

```
-U
177F:0000 E80400      CALL    0007
177F:0003 B44C        MOV     AH,4C
177F:0005 CD21        INT     21
177F:0007 50          PUSH    AX
177F:0008 53          PUSH    BX
177F:0009 33D2        XOR    DX,DX
177F:000B F7C30100    TEST   BX,0001
177F:000F 7402        JZ     0013
177F:0011 03D0        ADD    DX,AX
177F:0013 D1E0        SHL    AX,1
177F:0015 D1EB        SHR    BX,1
177F:0017 75F2        JNZ    000B
177F:0019 5B          POP    BX
177F:001A 58          POP    AX
177F:001B C3          RET
177F:001C E3D1        JCXZ   FFEF
177F:001E E38B        JCXZ   FFAB
```

The U command causes DEBUG to interpret the contents of memory as machine language instructions. The display gives the segment:offset of each instruction, the machine code, and the assembly code. All numbers are expressed in hex. From the first statement, CALL 0007, we can see that procedure MAIN extends from 0000 to 0005; procedure MULTIPLY begins at 0007 and ends at 001B with RET. The instructions after this are garbage.

Before entering the data, let's look at the registers.

```
-R
AX=0000  BX=0000  CX=001C  DX=0000  SP=0100  BP=0000  SI=0000  DI=0000
DS=176F  ES=176F  SS=1781  CS=177F  IP=0000  NV UP EI PL NZ NA PO M
177F:0000 E80400  CALL  0007
```

The initial value of SP = 100h reflects that fact that we allocated 100h bytes for the stack. To have a look at the empty stack, we can dump memory with the D command.

```
DSS:F0 FF
```

```
1781:00F0 00 00 00 00 00 00 6F 17-A4 13 07 00 6F 17 00 00
```

The command DSS:F0 FF means to display the memory bytes from SS:F0 to SS:FF. This is the last 16 bytes in the stack segment. The contents of each byte is displayed as two hex digits. Because the stack is empty, everything in this display is garbage.

Before executing the program, we need to place the numbers A and B in AX and BX, respectively. We will use A = 7 and B = 13 = Dh. To enter A, we use the R command:

```
-RAX
```

```
AX 0000:7
```

The command RAX means that we want to change the content of AX. DEBUG displays the current value (0000), followed by a colon, and waits for us to enter the new value. Similarly we can change the initial value of B in BX:

```
-RBX
```

```
BX 0000:D
```

Now let's look at the registers again.

```
-R
```

```
AX=0007 BX=000D CX=001C DX=0000 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000  
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0000 NV UP EI PL NZ NA PO NC  
177F:0000 E80400 CALL 0007
```

We see that AX and BX now contain the initial values.

To see the effect of the first instruction, CALL 0007, we use the T (trace) command. It will execute a single instruction and display the registers.

```
-T
AX=0007 BX=000D CX=001C DX=0000 SP=00FE BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0007 NV UP EI PL NZ NA PO NC
177F:0007 50 PUSH AX
```

We notice two changes in the registers: (1) IP now contains 0007, the starting offset of procedure MULTIPLY; and (2) because the CALL instruction pushes the return address to procedure MAIN on the stack, SP has decreased from 0100h to 00FEh. Here are the last 16 bytes of the stack segment again:

```
-DSS:F0 FF
1781:00F0 00 00 00 00 07 E0 00 00-07 00 7F 17 A4 13 03 00
```

The return address is 0003, but is displayed as 03 00. This is because DEBUG displays the low byte of a word before the high byte.

The first three instructions of procedure MULTIPLY push AX and BX onto the stack, and clear DX. To see the effect, we use the G (go) command. The syntax is

G offset

It causes the program to execute instructions and stop at the specified offset. From the unassembled listing given earlier, we can see that the next instruction after XOR DX,DX is at offset 000Bh.

```
-GB
AX=0007 BX=000D CX=001C DX=0000 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=000B NV UP EI PL ZR NA PE NC
177F:000B F7C30100 TEST BX,0001
```

We see that the two PUSHes have caused SP to decrease by 4, from 00FEh to 00FAh. Now the stack looks like this:

```
-DSS:F0 FF
1781:00F0 00 00 00 00 07 00 00 17-A4 13 0D 00 07 00 03 00
```

The stack now contains three words; the values of BX (000D), AX (0007), and the return address (0003). These are shown as 0D 00 07 00 03 00.

Now let's watch the procedure in action. To do so, we will execute to the end of the REPEAT loop at offset 0017h:

-G17

```
AX=000E BX=0006 CX=001C DX=0007 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0017 NV UP EI PL NZ AC PE CY
177F:0017 75F2 JNZ 000B
```

Because the initial value of B in BX was 0Dh = 1101b, the lsb of BX is 1, so AX is added to the product in DX, giving 111b = 0007h. AX is shifted left, which doubles A to 14d = 000Eh, and BX is shifted right, which halves BX (and rounds down) to 0006h = 110b.

To get to the top of the loop, we'll use the T command again:

-T

```
AX=000L BX=0006 CX=001C DX=0007 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=000B NV UP EI PL NZ AC PE CY
177F:000B F7C30100 TEST BX,0001
```

and execute again to the bottom:

-G17

```
AX=001C BX=0003 CX=001C DX=0007 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0017 NV UP EI PL NZ AC PE NC
177F:0017 75F2 JNZ 000B
```

Because BX = 0006h = 110b, the lsb of BX is 0, so the product in DX stays the same. AX is shifted left to 1100b = 1Ch and BX is shifted right to 1b = 3h.

After two more trips through the loop, the product is in DX. Watch AX, BX, and DX change:

-T

```
AX=001C BX=0003 CX=001C DX=0007 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=000B NV UP EI PL NZ AC PE NC
177F:000B F7C30100 TEST BX,0001
```

-G17

```
AX=0038 BX=0001 CX=001C DX=0023 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0017 NV UP EI PL NZ AC PO CY
177F:0017 75F2 JNZ 000B
```

```
-T
AX=0038 BX=0001 CX=001C DX=0023 SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=000B NV UP EI PL NZ AC PO CY
177F:000B F7C30100 TEST BX,0001
```

```
-G17
AX=0070 BX=0000 CX=001C DX=005B SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0017 NV UP EI PL ZR AC PE CY
177F:0017 75F2 JNZ 000B
```

The last right shift made BX = 0, ZF = 1, so the loop ends. The product = 91
= 5Bh is in DX.

To terminate the procedure, we trace through the JNZ and the two
POP instructions:

```
-T
AX=0070 BX=0000 CX=001C DX=005B SP=00FA BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0019 NV UP EI PL ZR AC PE CY
177F:0019 5B POP BX
```

```
-T
AX=0070 BX=000D CX=001C DX=005B SP=00FC BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=001A NV UP EI PL ZR AC PE CY
177F:001A 58 POP AX
```

```
-T
AX=0007 BX=000D CX=001C DX=005B SP=00FE BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=001B NV UP EI PL ZR AC PE CY
177F:001B C3 RET
```

The two POPs have restored AX and BX to their original values. Let's look
at the stack:

```
-DSS:FO FF
1781:00FO 70 00 70 00 07 00 00 00-1B 00 7F 17 A4 13 03 00,
```

The values 000D and 0007 are no longer in the display. This is not a result
of the POP instruction; it's because DEBUG is also using the stack.

Finally, we trace the RET.

-T

AX=0007 BX=000D CX=001C DX=005B SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
 DS=176F ES=176F SS=1781 CS=177F IP=0003 NV UP EI PL ZR AC PE CY
 177F:0003 B44C MOV AH,4C

RET causes IP to get 0003, the return address to MAIN. SP goes back to 100h, its original value. To finish executing the program, we just type G:

-G

Program terminated normally

and we exit DEBUG by typing Q (quit).

-Q

>C

Summary

- The stack is a temporary storage area used by both application programs and the operating system.
- The stack is a last-in, first-out data structure. SS:SP points to the top of the stack.
- The stack-altering instructions are PUSH, PUSHF, POP, and POPF. PUSH adds a new top word to the stack, and POP removes the top word. PUSHF saves the FLAGS register on the stack and POPF puts the stack top into the FLAGS register.
- SP decreases by 2 when PUSH or PUSHF is executed, and it increases by 2 when POP or POPF is executed. SP is initialized to the first word after stack segment when the program is loaded.
- A procedure is a subprogram. Assembly language programs are typically broken into two procedures. One of the procedures is the main procedure, which contains the entry point to the program. Procedures may call other procedures, or themselves.
- There are two kinds of procedures, NEAR and FAR. A NEAR procedure is in the same code segment as the calling program, and a FAR procedure is in a different segment.
- The CALL instruction is used to invoke a procedure. For a NEAR procedure, execution of CALL causes the offset address of the next instruction in line after the CALL to be saved on the stack, and the IP gets the offset of the first instruction in the procedure.

- Procedures end with a RET instruction. Its execution causes the stack to be popped into IP, and control returns to the calling program. In order for the return address to be accessible, the procedure must ensure that it is at the top of the stack when RET is executed.
- In assembly language, procedures often pass data through registers.

Glossary

direct procedure call	A procedure call of form CALL name
FAR procedure	A procedure that can be called by procedures residing in any segment
indirect procedure call	A procedure call of form CALL addr_exp
NEAR procedure	A procedure that can only be called by another procedure residing in the same segment
top of the stack	The last word of data added to the stack

New Instructions

CALL	POPF	PUSHF
POP	PUSH	RET

Exercises

1. Suppose the stack segment is declared as follows:

```
.STACK 100h
```

- What is the hex contents of SP when the program begins?
- What is the maximum hex number of words that the stack may contain?

2. Suppose that AX = 1234h, BX = 5678h, CX = 9ABC_h, and SP = 100h. Give the contents of AX, BX, CX, and SP after executing the following instructions:

```
PUSH AX
PUSH BX
XCHG AX, CX
POP CX
PUSH AX
POP BX
```

3. When the stack has completely filled the stack area, SP = 0. If another word is pushed onto the stack, what would happen to SP? What might happen to the program?
4. Suppose a program contains the lines

```
CALL PROC1
MOV AX, BX
```

and (a) instruction MOV AX,BX is stored at 08FD:0203h, (b) PROC1 is a NEAR procedure that begins at 08FD:300h, (c) SP = 010Ah. What are the contents of IP and SP just after CALL PROC1 is executed? What word is on top of the stack?

- S. Suppose SP = 0200h, top of stack = 012Ah. What are the contents of IP and SP?
- after RET is executed, where RET appears in a NEAR procedure?
 - after RET 4 is executed, where RET appears in a NEAR procedure?
6. Write some code to
- place the top of the stack into AX, without changing the stack contents.
 - place the word that is below the stack top into CX, without changing the stack contents. You may use AX.
 - exchange the top two words on the stack. You may use AX and BX.
7. Procedures are supposed to return the stack to the calling program in the same condition that they received it. However, it may be useful to have procedures that alter the stack. For example, suppose we would like to write a NEAR procedure SAVE_REGS that saves BX,CX,DX,SI,DI,BP,DS, and ES on the stack. After pushing these registers, the stack would look like this:

```
ES content
.
.
.
DX content
CX content
BX content
return_address (offset)
```

Now, unfortunately, SAVE_REGS can't return to the calling program, because the return address is not at the top of the stack.

- Devise a way to implement a procedure SAVE_REGS that gets around this problem (you may use AX to do this).
- Write a procedure RESTORE_REGS that restores the registers that SAVE_REGS has saved.

Programming Exercises

8. Write a program that lets the user type some text, consisting of words separated by blanks, ending with a carriage return, and displays the text in the same word order as entered, but with the letters in each word reversed. For example, "this is a test" becomes "siht si a tset". Hint: modify program PGM8_2.ASM in section 8.3.
9. A problem in elementary algebra is to decide if an expression containing several kinds of brackets, such as, [], {}, (), is correctly bracketed. This is the case if (a) there are the same number of left and right brackets of each kind, and (b) when a right bracket appears, the most recent preceding unmatched left bracket should be of the same type. For example,

(a + [b - {c × (d - e)}] + f) is correctly bracketed, but

(a + [b - {c × (d - e)}]] + f) is not

Correct bracketing can be decided by using a stack. The expression is scanned left to right. When a left bracket is encountered, it is pushed onto the stack. When a right bracket is encountered,

the stack is popped (if the stack is empty, there are too many right brackets) and the brackets are compared. If they are of the same type, the scanning continues. If there is a mismatch, the expression is incorrectly bracketed. At the end of the expression, if the stack is empty the expression is correctly bracketed. If the stack is not empty, there are too many left brackets.

Write a program that lets the user type in an algebraic expression, ending with a carriage return, that contains round (parentheses), square, and curly brackets. As the expression is being typed in, the program evaluates each character. If at any point the expression is incorrectly bracketed (too many right brackets or a mismatch between left and right brackets), the program tells the user to start over. After the carriage return is typed, if the expression is correct, the program displays "expression is correct." If not, the program displays "too many left brackets". In both cases, the program asks the user if he or she wants to continue. If the user types 'Y', the program runs again.

Your program does not need to store the input string, only check it for correctness.

Sample execution:

```
ENTER AN ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION:  
(a + b)]TCO MANY RIGHT BRACKETS. BEGIN AGAIN!  
ENTER AN ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION:  
(a + {b - c} x d)  
EXPRESSION IS CORRECT  
TYPE Y IF YOU WANT TO CONTINUE:Y  
ENTER AN ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION:  
[a + b x (c - d) - e]BRACKET MISMATCH. BEGIN AGAIN!  
ENTER AN ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION:  
((a + {b - {c x (d - e)} } ) + f)  
TOO MANY LEFT BRACKETS. BEGIN AGAIN!  
ENTER AN ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION:  
I'VE HAD ENOUGH  
EXPRESSION IS CORRECT  
TYPE Y IF YOU WANT TO CONTINUE:N
```

10. The following method can be used to generate random numbers in the range 1 to 32767.

Start with any number in this range.

Shift left once.

Replace bit 0 by the XOR of bits 14 and 15.

Clear bit 15.

Write the following procedures:

- a. A procedure READ that lets the user enter a binary number and stores it in AX. You may use the code for binary input given in section 7.4.
- b. A procedure RANDOM that receives a number in AX and returns a random number in AX.
- c. A procedure WRITE that displays AX in binary. You may use the algorithm given in section 7.4.

Write a program that displays a '?', calls READ to read a binary number, and calls RANDOM and WRITE to compute and display 100 random numbers. The numbers should be displayed four per line, with four blanks separating the numbers.

9

Multiplication and Division Instructions

Overview

In Chapter 7, we saw how to do multiplication and division by shifting the bits in a byte or word. Left and right shifts can be used for multiplying and dividing by powers of 2. In this chapter, we introduce instructions for multiplying and dividing any numbers.

The process of multiplication and division is different for signed and unsigned numbers, so there are different instructions for signed and unsigned multiplication and division. Also, these instructions have byte and word forms. Sections 9.1 through 9.4 cover the details.

One of the most useful applications of multiplication and division is to implement decimal input and output. In section 9.5, we write procedures to carry out these operations. This application greatly extends our program's I/O capability.

9.1

MUL and IMUL

Signed Versus Unsigned Multiplication

In binary multiplication, signed and unsigned numbers must be treated differently. For example, suppose we want to multiply the eight-bit numbers 10000000 and 11111111. Interpreted as unsigned numbers, they represent 128 and 255, respectively. The product is $32,640 = 0111111100000000_b$. However, taken as signed numbers, they represent -128 and -1, respectively, and the product is $128 = 0000000010000000_b$.

Because signed and unsigned multiplication lead to different results, there are two multiplication instructions: **MUL** (multiply) for unsigned

multiplication and **IMUL** (integer multiply) for signed multiplication. These instructions multiply bytes or words. If two bytes are multiplied, the product is a word (16 bits). If two words are multiplied, the product is a doubleword (32 bits). The syntax of these instructions is

```
MUL    source
and
IMUL   source
```

Byte Form

For byte multiplication, one number is contained in the source and the other is assumed to be in AL. The 16-bit product will be in AX. The source may be a byte register or memory byte, but not a constant.

Word Form

For word multiplication, one number is contained in the source and the other is assumed to be in AX. The most significant 16 bits of the doubleword product will be in DX, and the least significant 16 bits will be in AX (we sometimes write this as DX:AX). The source may be a 16-bit register or memory word, but not a constant.

For multiplication of positive numbers (0 in the most significant bit), MUL and IMUL give the same result.

Effect of MUL/IMUL on the status flags

SF, ZF, AF, PF:	undefined
CF/OF:	
After MUL, CF/OF	= 0 if the upper half of the result is zero. = 1 otherwise.
After IMUL, CF/OF	= 0 if the upper half of the result is the sign extension of the lower half (this means that the bits of the upper half are the same as the sign bit of the lower half). = 1 otherwise.

For both MUL and IMUL, CF/OF = 1 means that the product is too big to fit in the lower half of the destination (AL for byte multiplication, AX for word multiplication).

Examples

To illustrate MUL and IMUL, we will do several examples. Because hex multiplication is usually difficult to do, we'll predict the product by converting the hex values of multiplier and multiplicand to decimal, doing decimal multiplication, and converting the product back to hex.

Example 9.1 Suppose AX contains 1 and BX contains FFFFh:

Instruction	Decimal product	Hex product	DX	AX	CF/OF
MUL BX	65535	0000FFFF	0000	FFFF	0
IMUL BX	-1	FFFFFFF	FFFF	FFFF	0

For MUL, DX = 0, so CF/OF = 0.

For IMUL, the signed interpretation of BX is -1, and the product is also -1. In 32 bits, this is FFFFFFFFh. CF/OF = 0 because DX is the sign extension of AX.

Example 9.2 Suppose AX contains FFFFh and BX contains FFFFh:

Instruction		Decimal product	Hex product	DX	AX	CF/OF
MUL	BX	4294836225	FFFE0001	FFFE	0001	1
IMUL	BX	1	00000001	0000	0001	0

For MUL, CF/OF = 1 because DX is not 0. This reflects the fact that the product FFFE0001h is too big to fit in AX.

For IMUL, AX and BX both contain -1, so the product is 1. DX has the sign extension of AX, so CF/OF = 0.

Example 9.3 Suppose AX contains 0FFFh:

Instruction		Decimal product	Hex product	DX	AX	CF/OF
MUL	AX	16769025	00FFE001	00FF	E001	1
IMUL	AX	16769025	00FFE001	00FF	E001	1

Because the msb of AX is 0, both MUL and IMUL give the same product. Because the product is too big to fit in AX, CF/OF = 1.

Example 9.4 Suppose AX contains 0100h and CX contains FFFFh:

Instruction		Decimal product	Hex product	DX	AX	CF/OF
MUL	CX	16776960	00FFFF00	00FF	FF00	1
IMUL	CX	-256	FFFFFF00	FFFF	FF00	0

For MUL, the product FFFF00 is obtained by attaching two zeros to the source value FFFFh. Because the product is too big to fit in AX, CF/OF = 1.

For IMUL, AX contains 256 and CX contains -1, so the product is -256, which may be expressed as FF00h in 16 bits. DX has the sign extension of AX, so CF/OF = 0.

Example 9.5 Suppose AL contains 80h and BL contains FFh:

Instruction		Decimal product	Hex product	AH	AL	CF/OF
MUL	BL	128	7F80	7F	80	1
IMUL	BL	128	0080	00	80	1

For byte multiplication, the 16-bit product is contained in AX.

For MUL, the product is 7F80. Because the high eight bits are not 0, CF/OF = 1.

For IMUL, we have a curious situation. 80h = -128, FFh = -1, so the product is 128 = 0080h. AH does not have the sign extension of AL, so CF/OF = 1. This reflects the fact that AL does not contain the correct answer in a signed sense, because the signed decimal interpretation of 80h is -128.

9.2**Simple Applications of MUL and IMUL**

To get used to programming with MUL and IMUL, we'll show how some simple operations can be carried out with these instructions.

Example 9.6 Translate the high-level language assignment statement $A = 5 \times A - 12 \times B$ into assembly code. Let A and B be word variables, and suppose there is no overflow. Use IMUL for multiplication.

Solution:

```
MOV AX, 5           ;AX = 5
IMUL A             ;AX = 5 x A
MOV A, AX          ;A = 5 x A
MOV AX, 12          ;AX = 12
IMUL B             ;AX = 12 x B
SUB A, AX          ;A = 5 x A - 12 x B
```

Example 9.7 Write a procedure FACTORIAL that will compute $N!$ for a positive integer N . The procedure should receive N in CX and return $N!$ in AX. Suppose that overflow does not occur.

Solution: The definition of $N!$ is

$$\begin{aligned}N! &= 1 \text{ if } N = 1 \\&= N \times (N - 1) \times (N - 2) \times \dots \times 1 \text{ if } N > 1\end{aligned}$$

Here is an algorithm:-

```
product = 1
term = N
FOR N times DO
    product = product x term
    term = term - 1
ENDFOR
```

It can be coded as follows:

```
FACTORIAL PROC
;computes N!
;input: CX = N
;output: AX = N!
        MOV AX, 1      ;AX holds product
TOP:
        MUL CX        ;product = product x term
        LOOP TOP
        RET
FACTORIAL ENDP
```

Here CX is both loop counter and term; the LOOP instruction automatically decrements it on each iteration through the loop. We assume the product does not overflow 16 bits.

9.3**DIV and IDIV**

When division is performed, we obtain two results, the quotient and the remainder. As with multiplication, there are separate instructions for unsigned and signed division; **DIV** (divide) is used for unsigned division and **IDIV** (integer divide) for signed division. The syntax is

DIV divisor

and

IDIV divisor

These instructions divide 8 (or 16) bits into 16 (or 32) bits. The quotient and remainder have the same size as the divisor.

Byte Form

In this form, the divisor is an 8-bit register or memory byte. The 16-bit dividend is assumed to be in AX. After division, the 8-bit quotient is in AL and the 8-bit remainder is in AH. The divisor may not be a constant.

Word Form

Here the divisor is a 16-bit register or memory word. The 32-bit dividend is assumed to be in DX:AX. After division, the 16-bit quotient is in AX and the 16-bit remainder is in DX. The divisor may not be a constant.

For signed division, the remainder has the same sign as the dividend. If both dividend and divisor are positive, DIV and IDIV give the same result.

The effect of DIV/IDIV on the flags is that all status flags are undefined.

Divide Overflow

It is possible that the quotient will be too big to fit in the specified destination (AL or AX). This can happen if the divisor is much smaller than the dividend. When this happens, the program terminates (as shown later) and the system displays the message "Divide Overflow".

Example 9.8 Suppose DX contains 0000h, AX contains 0005h, and BX contains 0002h.

Instruction	Decimal quotient	Decimal remainder	AX	DX
DIV BX	2	1	0002	0001
IDIV BX	2	1	0002	0001

Dividing 5 by 2 yields a quotient of 2 and a remainder of 1. Because both dividend and divisor are positive, DIV and IDIV give the same results.

Example 9.9 Suppose DX contains 0000h, AX contains 0005h, and BX contains FFFEh.

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Decimal quotient</i>	<i>Decimal remainder</i>	<i>AX</i>	<i>DX</i>
DIV BX	0	5	0000	0005
IDIV BX	-2	1	FFFE	0001

For DIV, the dividend is 5 and the divisor is FFFEh = 65534; 5 divided by 65534 yields a quotient of 0 and a remainder of 5.

For IDIV, the dividend is 5 and the divisor is FFFEh = -2; 5 divided by -2 gives a quotient of -2 and a remainder of 1.

Example 9.10 Suppose DX contains FFFFh, AX contains FFFBh, and BX contains 0002.

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Decimal quotient</i>	<i>Decimal remainder</i>	<i>AX</i>	<i>DX</i>
IDIV BX	-2	-1	FFFE	FFFF
DIV BX	DIVIDE OVERFLOW			

For IDIV, DX:AX = FFFFFFFFBh = -5, BX = 2. -5 divided by 2 gives a quotient of -2 = FFFEh and a remainder of -1 = FFFFh.

For DIV, the dividend DX:AX = FFFFFFFFBh = 4294967291 and the divisor = 2. The actual quotient is 2147483646 = 7FFFFFFEh. This is too big to fit in AX, so the computer prints DIVIDE OVERFLOW and the program terminates. This shows what can happen if the divisor is a lot smaller than the dividend.

Example 9.11 Suppose AX contains 00FBh and BL contains FFh.

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Decimal quotient</i>	<i>Decimal remainder</i>	<i>AX</i>	<i>AL</i>
DIV BL	0	251	F8	00
IDIV BL	DIVIDE OVERFLOW			

For byte division, the dividend is in AX; the quotient is in AL and the remainder in AH.

For DIV, the dividend is 00FBh = 251 and the divisor is FFh = 256. Dividing 251 by 256 yields a quotient of 0 and a remainder of 251 = F8h.

For IDIV, the dividend is 00FBh = 251 and the divisor is FFh = -1. Dividing 251 by -1 yields a quotient of -251, which is too big to fit in AL, so the message DIVIDE OVERFLOW is printed.

9.4

Sign Extension of the Dividend

Word Division

In word division, the dividend is in DX:AX even if the actual dividend will fit in AX. In this case DX should be prepared as follows:

1. For DIV, DX should be cleared.
2. For IDIV, DX should be made the sign extension of AX. The instruction **CWD** (convert word to doubleword) will do the extension.

Example 9.12 Divide -1250 by 7:**Solution:**

```
MOV AX, -1250      ;AX gets dividend
CWD                 ;Extend sign to DX
MOV BX, 7           ;BX has divisor
IDIV BX            ;AX gets quotient, DX has remainder
```

Byte Division

In byte division, the dividend is in AX. If the actual dividend is a byte, then AH should be prepared as follows:

1. For DIV, AH should be cleared.
2. For IDIV, AH should be the sign extension of AL. The instruction **CBW** (convert byte to word) will do the extension.

Example 9.13 Divide the signed value of the byte variable XBYTE by -7.**Solution:**

```
MOV AL, XBYTE        ;AL has dividend
CBW                 ;Extend sign to AH
MOV BL, -7           ;BL has divisor
IDIV BL             ;AL has quotient, AH has remainder
```

There is no effect of CBW and CWD on the flags.

9.5***Decimal Input and Output Procedures***

Even though the computer represents everything in binary, it's more convenient for the user to see input and output expressed in decimal. In this section, we write procedures for handling decimal I/O.

On input, if we type 21543, for example, then we are actually typing a character string, which must be converted internally to the binary equivalent of the decimal integer 21543. Conversely on output, the binary contents of a register or memory location must be converted to a character string representing a decimal integer before being printed.

Decimal Output

We will write a procedure OUTDEC to print the contents of AX as a signed decimal integer. If AX ≥ 0 , OUTDEC will print the contents in decimal; if AX < 0, OUTDEC will print a minus sign, replace AX by -AX (so that AX now contains a positive number), and print the contents in decimal. Thus in either case, the problem comes down to printing the decimal equivalent of a positive binary number. Here is the algorithm:

Algorithm for Decimal Output

1. IF AX < 0 /* AX holds output value */
2. THEN

3. print a minus sign
4. replace AX by its two's complement
5. END_IF
6. Get the digits in AX's decimal representation
7. Convert these digits to characters and print them

To see what line 6 entails, suppose the content of AX, expressed in decimal, is 24168. To get the digits in the decimal representation, we can proceed as follows:

```
Divide 24618 by 10. Quotient = 2461, remainder = 8
Divide 2461 by 10. Quotient = 246, remainder = 1
Divide 246 by 10. Quotient = 24, remainder = 6
Divide 24 by 10. Quotient = 2, remainder = 4
Divide 2 by 10. Quotient = 0, remainder = 2
```

Thus, the digits we want appear as remainders after repeated division by 10. However, they appear in reverse order; to turn them around, we can save them on the stack. Here's how line 6 breaks down:

Line 6

```
count = 0 /* will count decimal digits */
REPEAT
    divide quotient by 10
    .push remainder on the stack
    count = count + 1
UNTIL quotient = 0
```

where the initial value of quotient is the original contents of AX.

Once the digits are on the stack, all we have to do is pop them off, convert them to characters, and print them. Line 7 may be expressed as follows:

Line 7

```
FOR count times DO
    pop a digit from the stack
    convert it to a character
    output the character
END_FOR
```

Now we can code the procedure as follows:

Program Listing PGM9_1.ASM

```
1: OUTDEC PROC
2: ;prints AX as a signed decimal integer
3: ;input: AX
4: ;output: none
5:     PUSH AX           ;save registers
6:     PUSH BX
7:     PUSH CX
8:     PUSH DX
9:     ;if AX < 0
10:    OR AX,AX        ;AX < 0?
11:    JGE @END_IF1    ;NO, > 0
12:    ;then
```

```

13:      PUSH AX          ; save number
14:      MOV DL,'-'       ; get '-'
15:      MOV AH,2          ; print char function
16:      INT 21H          ; print '-'
17:      POP AX           ; get AX back
18:      NEG AX           ; AX = -AX
19:  @END_IF1:
20:  ;get decimal digits
21:      XOR CX,CX       ; CX counts digits
22:      MOV BX,10D        ; BX has divisor
23:  @REPEAT1:
24:      XOR DX,DX       ; prepare high word of dividend
25:      DIV BX           ; AX = quotient, DX = remainder
26:      PUSH DX           ; save remainder on stack
27:      INC CX            ; count = count + 1
28:  ;until
29:      OR AX,AX          ; quotient = 0?
30:      JNE @REPEAT1      ; no, keep going
31:  ;convert digits to characters and print
32:      MOV AH,2          ; print char function
33:  ;for count times do
34:  @PRINT_LOOP:
35:      POP DX           ; digit in DL
36:      OR DL,30H         ; convert to character
37:      INT 21H          ; print digit
38:      LOOP @PRINT_LOOP ; loop until done
39:  ;end_for
40:      POP DX           ; restore registers
41:      POP CX
42:      POP BX
43:      POP AX
44:      RET
45:  OUTDEC ENDP

```

After saving the registers, at line 10 the sign of AX is examined by ORing AX with itself. If $AX \geq 0$, the program jumps to line 19; if $AX < 0$, a minus sign is printed and AX is replaced by its two's complement. In either case, at line 19, AX will contain a positive number.

At line 21, OUTDEC prepares for division. Because division by a constant is illegal, we must put the divisor 10 in a register.

The REPEAT loop in lines 23–30 will get the digits and put them on the stack. Because we'll be doing unsigned division, DX is cleared. After division, the quotient will be in AX and the remainder in DX (actually it is in DL, because the remainder is between 0 and 9). At line 29, AX is tested for 0 by ORing it with itself; repeated division by 10 guarantees a zero quotient eventually.

The FOR loop in lines 34–38 gets the digits from the stack and prints them. Before a digit is printed, it must first be converted to an ASCII character (line 36).

The INCLUDE Pseudo-op

We can verify OUTDEC by placing it inside a short program and running the program inside DEBUG. To insert OUTDEC into the program without having to type it in, we use the INCLUDE pseudo-op. It has the form

INCLUDE filespec

where filespec identifies a file (with optional drive and path). For example, the file containing OUTDEC is PGM9_1.ASM. We could use

```
INCLUDE A:PGM9_1.ASM
```

When MASM encounters this line during assembly, it retrieves file PGM9_1.ASM from the disk in drive A and inserts it into the program at the position of the INCLUDE directive. This file is on the Student Data Disk that comes with this book.

Here is the testing program:

Program Listing PGM9_2.ASM

```
TITLE PGM9_2: DECIMAL OUTPUT
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.CODE
MAIN PROC
    CALL OUTDEC
    MOV AH, 4CH
    INT 21H      ;DOS exit
MAIN ENDP
INCLUDE A:PGM9_1.ASM
END MAIN
```

To test the program, we'll enter DEBUG and run the program twice, first for AX = -25487 = 9C71h and then for AX = 654 = 28Eh:

```
C>DEBUG PGM9_2.EXE
-RAX
AX 0000
:9C71
-G
-25487          (first output)
Program terminated normally,
-RAX
AX 9C71
:28E
-G
654            (second output)
```

Note that after the first run, DEBUG automatically resets IP to the beginning of the program.

Decimal Input

To do decimal input, we need to convert a string of ASCII digits to the binary representation of a decimal integer. We will write a procedure INDEC to do this.

In procedure OUTDEC, to output the contents of AX in decimal we repeatedly divided AX by 10. For INDEC we need repeated multiplication by 10. The basic idea is the following:

Decimal Input Algorithm (first version)

```

total = 0
read an ASCII digit
REPEAT
    convert character to a binary value
    total = 10 x total + value
    read a character
UNTIL character is a carriage return

```

For example, an input of 123 is processed as follows:

```

total = 0
read '1'
convert '1' to 1
total = 10 x 0 + 1 = 1
read '2'
convert '2' to 2
total = 10 x 1 + 2 = 12
read '3'
convert '3' to 3
total = 10 x 12 + 3 = 123

```

We will design INDEC so that it can handle signed decimal integers in the range -32768 to 32767. The program prints a question mark, and lets the user enter an optional sign, followed by a string of digits, followed by a carriage return. If the user enters a character outside the range "0" . . . "9", the procedure goes to a new line and starts over. With these added requirements, the preceding algorithm becomes the following:

Decimal Input Algorithm (second version)

```

Print a question mark
total = 0
negative = false
Read a character
CASE character OF
    '-': negative = true
    ' ': read a character
    '+': read a character
END_CASE
REPEAT
    IF character is not between '0' and '9'
    THEN
        go to beginning
    ELSE
        convert character to a binary value
        total = 10 x total + value
    END_IF
    read a character
UNTIL character is a carriage return
IF negative = true
THEN
    total = -total
ENDIF

```

Note: A jump like this is not really "structured programming." Sometimes it's necessary to violate structure rules for the sake of efficiency; for example, when error conditions occur.

The algorithm can be coded as follows:

Program Listing PGM9_3.ASM

```

1: INDEC PROC
2: ;reads a number in range -32768 to 32767
3: ;input: none
4: ;output: AX = binary equivalent of number
5:         PUSH BX           ;save registers used
6:         PUSH CX
7:         PUSH DX
8: ;print prompt
9: @BEGIN:
10:        MOV AH,2
11:        MOV DL,'?'
12:        INT 21H          ;print '?'
13: ;total = 0
14:        XOR BX,BX       ;BX holds total
15: ;negative = false
16:        XOR CX,CX       ;CX holds sign
17: ;read a character
18:        MOV AH,1
19:        INT 21H          ;character in AL
20: ;case character of
21:        CMP AL,'-'        ;minus sign?
22:        JE @MINUS        ;yes, set sign
23:        CMP AL,'+'        ;plus sign
24:        JE @PLUS          ;yes, get another character
25:        JMP @REPEAT2       ;start processing characters
26: @MINUS:
27:        MOV CX,1          ;negative = true
28: @PLUS:
29:        INT 21H          ;read a character
30: ;end_case
31: @REPEAT2:
32: ;if character is between '0' and '9'
33:        CMP AL,'0'        ;character >= '0'?
34:        JNGE @NOT_DIGIT   ;illegal character
35:        CMP AL,'9'        ;character <= '9'?
36:        JNLE @NOT_DIGIT   ;no, illegal character
37: ;then convert character to a digit
38:        AND AX,000FH       ;convert to digit
39:        PUSH AX           ;save on stack
40: ;total = total x 10 + digit
41:        MOV AX,10          ;get 10
42:        MUL BX            ;AX = total x 10
43:        POP BX            ;retrieve digit
44:        ADD BX,AX         ;total = total x 10 + digit
45: ;read a character
46:        MOV AH,1
47:        INT 21H
48:        CMP AL,ODH        ;carriage return?
49:        JNE @REPEAT2       ;no, keep going
50: ;until CR
51:        MOV AX,BX          ;store number in AX
52: ;if negative
53:        OR CX,CX          ;negative number

```

```

54:     JE      @EXIT      ;no, exit
55: ;then
56:     NEG    AX          ;yes, negate
57: ;end_if
58: @EXIT:
59:     POP    DX          ;restore registers
60:     POP    CX
61:     POP    BX
62:     RET          ;and return
63: ;here if illegal character entered
64: @NOT_DIGIT:
65:     MOV    AH, 2        ;move cursor to a new line
66:     MOV    DL, 0DH
67:     INT    21H
68:     MOV    DL, 0AH
69:     INT    21H
70:     JMP    @BEGIN      ;go to beginning
71: INDEC    ENDP

```

The procedure begins by saving the registers and printing a "?". BX holds the total; in line 14, it is cleared.

CX is used to keep track of the sign; 0 means a positive number and 1 means negative. We initially assume the number is positive, so CX is cleared at line 16.

The first character is read at lines 18 and 19. It could be "+", "-" or a digit. If it's a sign, CX is adjusted if necessary and another character is read (line 29). Presumably this next character will be a digit.

At line 31, INDEC enters the REPEAT loop, which processes the current character and reads another one, until a carriage return is typed.

At lines 33-36, INDEC checks to see if the current character is in fact a digit. If not, the procedure jumps to label @NOT_DIGIT (line 64), moves the cursor to a new line, and jumps to @BEGIN. This means that the user can't escape from the procedure without entering a legitimate number.

If the current character in AL is a decimal digit, it is converted to a binary value (line 38). Then the value is saved on the stack (line 39), because AX is used when the total is multiplied by 10.

In lines 41 and 42, the total in BX is multiplied by 10. The product will be in DX:AX; however, DX will contain 0 unless the number is out of range (more about this later). At line 43, the value saved is popped from the stack and 10 times total is added to it.

At line 51, INDEC exits the REPEAT loop with the number in BX. After moving it to AX, INDEC checks the sign in CX; if CX contains 1, AX is negated before the procedure exits.

Testing INDEC

We can test INDEC by creating a program that uses INDEC for input and OUTDEC for output.

Program Listing PGM9_4.ASM

```

TITLE PGM9_4: DECIMAL I/O
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK
.CODE
MAIN PROC

```

```

;input a number
CALL INDEC      ;number in AX
PUSH AX          ;save number
;move cursor to a new line
MOV AH, 2
MOV DL, ODH
INT 21H
MOV DL, OAH
INT 21H
;output the number
POP AX          ;retrieve number
CALL OUTDEC
;dos exit
MOV AH, 4CH
INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
INCLUDE A:PGM9_1.ASM ;include OUTDEC
INCLUDE A:PGM9_3.ASM ;include INDEC
END MAIN

```

Sample execution:

```

C>PGM9_4
?21345
21345Overflow

```

Overflow

Procedure INDEC can handle input that contains illegal characters, but it cannot handle input that is outside the range -32768 to 32767. We call this *input overflow*.

Overflow can occur in two places in INDEC: (1) when total is multiplied by 10, and (2) when a value is added to total. As an example of the first overflow, the user could enter 99999; overflow occurs when the total = 9999 is multiplied by 10. As an example of the second overflow, if the user types 32769, then when the total = 32760, overflow occurs when 9 is added. The algorithm can be made to perform overflow checks as follows:

Decimal Input Algorithm (third version)

```

Print a question mark
total = 0
negative = false
Read a character
CASE character OF
  '-': negative = true
    read a character
  '+': read a character
END_CASE
REPEAT
  IF character is not between '0' and '9'

```

```

THEN
...go to beginning
ELSE
    convert character to a value
    total = 10 * total
    IF overflow
        THEN
        ...go to beginning
    ELSE
        ,total = total + value
        IF overflow.. -
            THEN
                go to beginning
            END_IF
        END_IF
    END_IF
    read a character
UNTIL character is a carriage return
IF negative = true
    THEN
        total = -total
END_IF

```

The implementation of this algorithm is left to the student as an exercise.

Summary

- The multiplication instructions are MUL for unsigned multiplication and IMUL for signed multiplication.
- For byte multiplication, AL holds one number, and the other is in an 8-bit register or memory byte. For word multiplication, AX holds one number, and the other is in an 16-bit register or memory word.
- For byte multiplication, the 16-bit product is in AX. For word multiplication, the 32-bit product is in DX:AX.
- The division instructions are DIV for unsigned division and IDIV for signed division.
- The divisor may be a memory or register, byte or word. For division by a byte, the dividend is in AX; for division by a word, the dividend is in DX:AX.
- After byte division, AL has the quotient and AH the remainder. After word division, AX has the quotient and DX the remainder.
- For signed word division, if AX contains the dividend, then CWD can be used to extend the sign into DX. Similarly, for byte division, CBW extends the sign of AL into AH. For unsigned word division, if AX contains the dividend, then DX should be cleared. For unsigned byte division, if AL contains the dividend then AH should be cleared.
- Multiply and divide instructions are useful in doing decimal I/O.
- The INCLUDE pseudo-op provides a way to insert text from an external file into a program.

New InstructionsCBW
CWDDIV
IDIVIIMUL
MUL**New Pseudo-Ops**

INCLUDE

Exercises

1. If it is a legal instruction, give the values of DX, AX, and CF/OF after each of the following instructions is executed.
 - a. MUL BX, if AX contains 0008h and BX contains 0003h
 - b. MUL BX, if AX contains 00FFh and BX contains 1000h
 - c. IMUL CX, if AX contains 0005h and CX contains FFFFh
 - d. IMUL WORD1, if AX contains 8000h and WORD1 contains FFFFh
 - e. MUL 10h, if AX contains FFEOh
2. Give the new values of AX and CF/OF for each of the following instructions.
 - a. MUL BL, if AL contains ABh and BL contains 10h
 - b. IMUL BL, if AL contains ABh and BL contains 10h
 - c. MUL AH, if AX contains 01ABh
 - d. IMUL BYTE1, if AL contains 02h and BYTE1 contains FBh
3. Give the new values of AX and DX for each of the following instructions, or tell if overflow occurs
 - a. DIV BX, if DX contains 0000h, AX contains 0007h, and BX contains 0002h
 - b. DIV BX, if DX contains 0000h, AX contains FFFEh, and BX contains 0010h
 - c. IDIV BX, if DX contains FFFFh, AX contains FFFCh, and BX contains 0003h
 - d. DIV BX, same values as part c.
4. Give the new values of AL and AH for each of the following instructions, or tell if overflow occurs
 - a. DIV BL, if AX contains 000Dh and BL contains 03h
 - b. IDIV BL, if AX contains FFFBh and BL contains FEh
 - c. DIV BL, if AX contains 00FEh and BL contains 10h
 - d. DIV BL, if AX contains FFEOh and BL contains 02h
5. Give the value of DX after executing CWD if AX contains
 - a. 7E02h
 - b. 8ABCh
 - c. 1ABCh

6. Give the value of AX after executing CBW if AL contains
- FOh
 - SFh
 - 80h
7. Write assembly code for each of the following high-level language assignment statements. Suppose that A, B, and C are word variables and all products will fit in 16 bits. Use IMUL for multiplication. It's not necessary to preserve the contents of variables A, B, and C.
- $A = 5 \times A - 7$
 - $B = (A - B) \times (B + 10)$
 - $A = 6 - 9 \times A$
 - $IF A^2 + B^2 = C^2 / * \text{ where } ^ \text{ denotes exponentiation} * /$
- ```

THEN
 set CF
ELSE
 clear CF
END_IF

```

### Programming Exercises

Note: Some of the following exercises ask you to use INDEC and/or OUTDEC for I/O. These procedures are on the student disk and can be inserted into your program by using the INCLUDE pseudo-op (see section 9.5). Be sure not to use the same labels as these procedures, or you'll get a duplicate label assembly error (this should be easy, because all the labels in INDEC and OUTDEC begin with "@").

- Modify procedure INDEC so that it will check for overflow.
- Write a program that lets the user enter time in seconds, up to 65535, and outputs the time as hours, minutes, and seconds. Use INDEC and OUTDEC to do the I/O.
- Write a program to take a number of cents C,  $0 \leq C \leq 99$ , and express C as half-dollars, quarters, dimes, nickels, and pennies. Use INDEC to enter C.
- Write a program to let the user enter a fraction of the form  $M/N$  ( $M < N$ ), and the program prints the expansion to N decimal places, according to the following algorithm:

- Print "."

Execute the following steps N times:

- Divide  $10 \times M$  by  $N$ , getting quotient Q and remainder R.
- Print Q.
- Replace M by R and go to step 2.

Use INDEC to read M and N.

12. Write a program to find the greatest common divisor (GCD) of two integers  $M$  and  $N$ , according to the following algorithm:
1. Divide  $M$  by  $N$ , getting quotient  $Q$  and remainder  $R$ .
  2. If  $R = 0$ , stop.  $N$  is the GCD of  $M$  and  $N$ .
  3. If  $R \neq 0$ , replace  $M$  by  $N$ ,  $N$  by  $R$ , and repeat step 1.

Use INDEC to enter  $M$  and  $N$  and OUTDEC to print the GCD.

# 10

## Arrays and Addressing Modes

### Overview

In some applications, it is necessary to treat a collection of values as a group. For example, we might need to read a set of test scores and print the median score. To do so, we would first have to store the scores in ascending order (this could be done as the scores are entered, or they could be sorted after they are all in memory). The advantage of using an array to store the data is that a single name can be given to the whole structure, and an element can be accessed by providing an index.

In section 10.1 we show how one-dimensional arrays are declared in assembly language. To access the elements, in section 10.2 we introduce new ways of expressing operands—the register Indirect, based and indexed addressing modes. In section 10.3, we use these addressing modes to sort an array.

A two-dimensional array is a one-dimensional array whose elements are also one-dimensional arrays (an array of arrays). In section 10.4, we show how they are stored. These arrays have two indexes, and are most easily manipulated by the based indexed addressing mode of section 10.5. Section 10.6 provides a simple application.

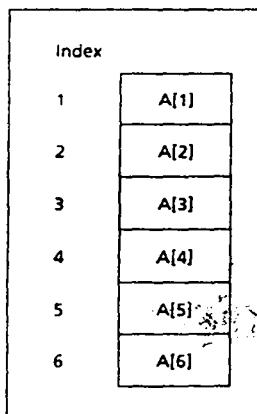
Section 10.7 introduces the XLAT (translate) instruction. This instruction is useful when we want to do data conversion; we use it to encode and decode a secret message.

### 10.1

#### One-Dimensional Arrays

A **one-dimensional array** is an ordered list of elements, all of the same type. By “ordered,” we mean that there is a first element, second element, third element, and so on. In mathematics, if A is an array, the elements

**Figure 10.1 A  
One-Dimensional Array A**



are usually denoted by A[1], A[2], A[3], and so on. Figure 10.1 shows a one-dimensional array A with six elements.

In Chapter 4, we used the DB and DW pseudo-ops to declare byte and word arrays; for example, a five-character string named MSG,

MSG DB 'abcde'

or a word array W of six integers, initialized to 10,20,30,40,50,60.

W DW 10,20,30,40,50,60

The address of the array variable is called the **base address of the array**. If the offset address assigned to W is 0200h, the array looks like this in memory:

| <b>Offset address</b> | <b>Symbolic address</b> | <b>Decimal content</b> |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 0200h                 | W                       | 10                     |
| 0202h                 | W+2h                    | 20                     |
| 0204h                 | W+4h                    | 30                     |
| 0206h                 | W+6h                    | 40                     |
| 0208h                 | W+8h                    | 50                     |
| 020Ah                 | W+Ah                    | 60                     |

### ***The DUP Operator***

It is possible to define arrays whose elements share a common initial value by using the **DUP** (duplicate) operator. It has this form:

repeat\_count DUP (value)

This operator causes value to be repeated the number of times specified by repeat\_count. For example,

GAMMA DW 100 DUP (0)

sets up an array of 100 words, with each entry initialized to 0. Similarly,

DELTA DB 212 DUP (?)

creates an array of 212 uninitialized bytes. DUPs may be nested. For example,

```
LINE DB 5,4, 3 DUP (2, 3 DUP (0), 1)
```

which is equivalent to

```
LINE DB 5,4,2,0,0,0,1,2,0,0,0,1,2,0,0,0,1
```

### *Location of Array Elements*

The address of an array element may be specified by adding a constant to the base address. Suppose A is an array and S denotes the number of bytes in an element (S = 1 for a byte array, S = 2 for a word array). The position of the elements in array A can be determined as follows:

| <i>Position</i> | <i>Location</i>        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1               | A                      |
| 2               | $A + 1 \times S$       |
| 3               | $A + 2 \times S$       |
| $\vdots$        | $\vdots$               |
| $N$             | $A + (N - 1) \times S$ |

**Example 10.1** Exchange the 10th and 25th elements in a word array W.

**Solution:** W[10] is located at address  $W + 9 \times 2 = W + 18$  and W[25] is at  $W + 24 \times 2 = W + 48$ , so we can do the exchange as follows:

```
MOV AX,W+18 ;AX has W[10]
XCHG W+48,AX ;AX has W[25]
MOV W+18,AX ;complete exchange
```

In many applications, we need to perform some operation on each element of an array. For example, suppose array A is a 10-element array, and we want to add the elements. In a high-level language, we could do it like this:

```
sum = 0
N = 1
REPEAT
 sum = sum + A[N]
 N = N + 1
UNTIL N > 10
```

To code this in assembly language, we need a way to move from one array element to the next one. In the next section, we'll see how to accomplish this by indirect addressing.

## 10.2 Addressing Modes

The way an operand is specified is known as its **addressing mode**. The addressing modes we have used so far are (1) **register mode**, which means that an operand is a register; (2) **immediate mode**, when an operand is a constant; and (3) **direct mode**, when an operand is a variable. For example

|               |                                                                    |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MOV AX, 0     | (Destination AX is register mode,<br>source 0 is immediate mode.)  |
| ADD ALPHA, AX | (Destination ALPHA is direct mode,<br>source AX is register mode.) |

There are four additional addressing modes for the 8086: (1) Register Indirect, (2) Based, (3) Indexed, and (4) Based Indexed. These modes are used to address memory operands indirectly. In this section, we discuss the first three of these modes; they are useful in one-dimensional array processing. Based indexed mode can be used with two-dimensional arrays; it is covered in section 10.5.

### 10.2.1

#### **Register Indirect Mode**

In this mode, the offset address of the operand is contained in a register. We say that the register acts as a **pointer** to the memory location. The operand format is

[register]

The register is BX, SI, DI, or BP. For BX, SI, or DI, the operand's segment number is contained in DS. For BP, SS has the segment number.

For example, suppose that SI contains 0100h, and the word at 0100h contains 1234h. To execute

MOV AX, [SI]

the CPU (1) examines SI and obtains the offset address 100h, (2) uses the address DS:0100h to obtain the value 1234h, and (3) moves 1234h to AX. This is not the same as

MOV AX, SI

which simply moves the value of SI, namely 100h, into AX.

#### **Example 10.2** Suppose that

BX contains 1000h

Offset 1000h contains 1BACH

SI contains 2000h

Offset 2000h contains 20FEh

DI contains 3000h

Offset 3000h contains 031Dh

where the above offsets are in the data segment addressed by DS.

Tell which of the following instructions are legal. If legal, give the source offset address and the result or number moved.

- a. MOV BX, [BX]
- b. MOV CX, [SI]
- c. MOV BX, [AX]
- d. ADD [SI], [DI]
- e. INC [DI]

**Solution:**

| Source offset                     | Result                  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| a. 1000h                          | 1BACH                   |
| b. 2000h                          | 20FEh                   |
| c. illegal source register        | (must be BX, SI, or DI) |
| d. illegal memory-memory addition |                         |
| e. 3000h                          | 031Eh                   |

Now let's return to the problem of adding the elements of an array.

**Example 10.3** Write some code to sum in AX the elements of the 10-element array W defined by

```
W DW 10,20,30,40,50,60,70,80,90,100
```

**Solution:** The idea is to set a pointer to the base of the array, and let it move up the array, summing elements as it goes.

```

XOR AX,AX ;AX holds sum
LEA SI,W ;SI points to array W
MOV CX,10 ;CX has number of elements
ADDNOS:
 ADD AX,[SI] ;sum = sum + element
 ADD SI,2 ;move pointer to the next
 ;element
 LOOP ADDNOS ;loop until done

```

Here we must add 2 to SI on each trip through the loop because W is a word array (recall from Chapter 4 that LEA moves the source offset address into the destination).

The next example shows how register indirect mode can be used in array processing.

**Example 10.4** Write a procedure REVERSE that will reverse an array of  $N$  words. This means that the  $N$ th word becomes the first, the  $(N-1)$ st word becomes the second, and so on, and the first word becomes the  $N$ th word. The procedure is entered with SI pointing to the array, and BX has the number of words  $N$ .

**Solution:** The idea is to exchange the 1st and  $N$ th words, the 2nd and  $(N-1)$ st words, and so on. The number of exchanges will be  $N/2$  (rounded down to the nearest integer if  $N$  is odd). Recall from section 10.1 that the  $N$ th element in a word array A has address  $A + 2 \times (N - 1)$ .

**Program Listing PGM10\_1.ASM**

```

REVERSE PROC
;reverses a word array
;input: SI = offset of array
; BX = number of elements
;output: reversed array

```

```

 PUSH AX ;save registers
 PUSH BX
 PUSH CX
 PUSH SI
 PUSH DI
;make DI point to nth word
 MOV DI,SI ;DI pts to 1st word
 MOV CX,BX ;CX = n
 DEC BX ;BX = n-1
 SHL BX,1 ;BX = 2 x (n-1)
 ADD DI,BX ;DX pts to nth word
 SHR CX,1 ;CX = n/2 = no. of swaps to do
;swap elements
XCHG_LOOP:
 MOV AX,[SI] ;get an elt in lower half of array
 XCHG AX,[DI] ;insert in upper half
 MOV [SI],AX ;complete exchange
 ADD SI,2 ;move ptr
 SUB DI,2 ;move ptr
 LOOP XCHG_LOOP ;loop until done
 POP DI ;restore registers
 POP SI
 POP CX
 POP BX
 POP AX
 RET
REVERSE ENDP

```

## 10.2.2

**Based and Indexed Addressing Modes**

In these modes, the operand's offset address is obtained by adding a number called a **displacement** to the contents of a register. Displacement may be any of the following:

- the offset address of a variable
- a constant (positive or negative)
- the offset address of a variable plus or minus a constant

If A is a variable, examples of displacements are:

- A (offset address of a variable)
- 2 (constant)
- A + 4 (offset address of a variable plus a constant)

The syntax of an operand is any of the following equivalent expressions:

```

[register + displacement]
[displacement + register]
[register] + displacement
displacement + [register]
displacement[register]

```

The register must be BX, BP, SI, or DI. If BX, SI, or DI is used, DS contains the segment number of the operand's address. If BP is used, SS has the segment number. The addressing mode is called **based** if BX (base register) or

BP (base pointer) is used; it is called **indexed** if SI (source index) or DI (destination index) is used.

For example, suppose W is a word array, and BX contains 4. In the instruction

```
MOV AX, W[BX]
```

the displacement is the offset address of variable W. The instruction moves the element at address W + 4 to AX. This is the third element in the array. The instruction could also have been written in any of these forms:

```
MOV AX, [W+BX]
MOV AX, [BX+W]
MOV AX, W+[BX]
MOV AX, [BX]+W
```

As another example, suppose SI contains the address of a word array W. In the instruction

```
MOV AX, [SI+2]
```

the displacement is 2. The instruction moves the contents of W + 2 to AX. This is the second element in the array. The instruction could also have been written in any of these forms:

```
MOV AX, [2+SI]
MOV AX, 2+[SI],
MOV AX, [SI]+2
MOV AX, 2(SI)
```

#### **Example 10.5** Rework example 10.3 by using based mode.

**Solution:** The idea is to clear base register BX, then add 2 to it on each trip through the summing loop.

```

XOR AX, AX ;AX holds sum
XOR BX, BX ;clear base register
MOV CX, 10 ;CX has number of elements
ADDNOS:
 ADD AX, W[BX] ;sum = sum + element
 ADD BX, 2 ;index next element
 LOOP ADDNOS ;loop until done

```

#### **Example 10.6** Suppose that ALPHA is declared as

```
ALPHA DW 0123h, 0456h, 0789h, 0ABCDh
```

in the segment addressed by DS. Suppose also that

BX contains 2

Offset 0002 contains 1084h

SI contains 4

Offset 0004 contains 2BACh

DI contains 1

Tell which of the following instructions are legal. If legal, give the source offset address and the number moved.

- a. MOV AX, [ALPHA+BX].
- b. MOV BX, [BX+2]
- c. MOV CX, ALPHA[SI]
- d. MOV AX, -2[SI]
- e. MOV BX, [ALPHA+3+DI]
- f. MOV AX, [BX]2
- g. ADD BX, [ALPHA+AX]

**Solution:**

| <i>Source offset</i>              | <i>Number moved</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| a. ALPHA+2                        | 0456h               |
| b. 2+2 = 4                        | 2BACh               |
| c. ALPHA+4                        | 0789h               |
| d. -2+4 = 2                       | 1084h               |
| e. ALPHA+3+1 = ALPHA+4            | 0789h               |
| f. Illegal form of source operand |                     |
| g. Illegal source register        |                     |

The next two examples illustrate array processing by based and indexed modes.

**Example 10.7** Replace each lowercase letter in the following string by its upper case equivalent. Use index addressing mode.

```
MSG DB 'this is a message'
```

**Solution:**

```
MOV CX,17 ;no. of chars in string
XOR SI,SI ;SI indexes a char
TOP:
 CMP MSG[SI], ' ' ;blank?
 JE NEXT ;yes, skip over
 AND MSG[SI], 0DFh ;no, convert to upper case
NEXT:
 INC SI ;index next byte
 LOOP TOP ;loop until done
```

**10.2.3*****The PTR Operator and the LABEL Pseudo-op***

You saw in Chapter 4 that the operands of an instruction must be of the same type; for example, both bytes or both words. If one operand is a constant, the assembler attempts to infer the type from the other operand. For example, the assembler treats the instruction

```
MOV AX,1
```

as a word instruction, because AX is a 16-bit register. Similarly, it treats

```
MOV BH,5
```

as a byte instruction. However, it can't assemble

```
MOV [BX],1 ;illegal
```

because it can't tell whether the destination is the byte pointed to by BX or the word pointed to by BX. If you want the destination to be a byte, you can say,

```
MOV BYTE PTR [BX], 1
```

and if you want the destination to be a word, you say,

```
MOV WORD PTR [BX], 1
```

**Example 10.8** In the string of example 10.7, replace the character "t" by "T".

**Solution 1:** Using register indirect mode,

```
LEA SI,MSG ;SI points to MSG
MOV BYTE PTR [SI], 'T' ;replace 't' by 'T'
```

**Solution 2:** Using index mode

```
XOR SI,SI ;clear SI
MOV MSG[SI], 'T' ;replace 't' by 'T'
```

Here it is not necessary to use the PTR operator, because MSG is a byte variable.

### **Using PTR to Override a Type**

In general, the PTR operator can be used to override the declared type of an address expression. The syntax is

```
type PTR address_expression
```

where the type is BYTE, WORD, or DWORD (doubleword), and the address expression has been typed as DB, DW, or DD.

For example, suppose you have the following declaration:

```
DOLLARS DB 1Ah
CENTS DB 52h
```

and you'd like to move the contents of DOLLARS to AL and CENTS to AH with a single MOV instruction. Now

```
MOV AX,DOLLARS ;illegal
```

is illegal because the destination is a word and the source has been typed as a byte variable. But you can override the type declaration with WORD PTR as

```
MOV AX, WORD PTR DOLLARS ;AL = dollars, AH = cents
```

and the instruction will move 521Ah to AX.

### **The LABEL Pseudo-Op**

Actually, there is another way to get around the problem of type conflict in the preceding example. Using the **LABEL** pseudo-op, we could declare

| MONEY   | LABEL | WORD |
|---------|-------|------|
| DOLLARS | DB    | 1Ah  |
| CENTS   | DB    | 52h  |

This declaration types MONEY as a word variable, and the components DOLLARS and CENTS as byte variables, with MONEY and DOLLARS being assigned the same address by the assembler. The instruction

```
MOV AX, MONEY ;AL = dollars, AH = cents
```

is now legal. So are the following instructions, which have the same effect:

```
MOV AL, DOLLARS
MOV AH, CENTS
```

**Example 10.9** Suppose the following data are declared:

```
.DATA
A DW 1234h
B LABEL BYTE
 DW 5678h
C LABEL WORD
C1 DB 9Ah
C2 DB 0BCCh
```

Tell whether the following instructions are legal, and if so, give the number moved.

**Instruction**

- MOV AX,B
- MOV AH,B
- MOV CX,C
- MOV BX, WORD PTR B
- MOV DL, WORD PTR C
- MOV AX, WORD PTR C1

**Solution:**

- illegal—type conflict
- legal, 78h
- legal, 0BC9Ah
- legal, 5678h
- legal, 9Ah
- legal, 0BC9Ah

#### 10.2.4

#### Segment Override

In register indirect mode, the pointer register BX, SI, or DI specifies an offset address relative to DS. It is also possible to specify an offset relative to one of the other segment registers. The form of an operand is

```
segment_register:[pointer_register]
```

For example,

```
MOV AX,ES:[SI]
```

If SI contains 0100h, the source address in this instruction is ES:0100h. You might want to do this in a program with two data segments, where ES contains the segment number of the second data segment.

Segment overrides can also be used with based and indexed modes.

### 10.2.5

#### **Accessing the Stack**

We mentioned earlier that when BP specifies an offset in register indirect mode, SS supplies the segment number. This means that BP may be used to access items on the stack.

**Example 10.10** Move the top three words on the stack into AX, BX, and CX without changing the stack.

**Solution:**

```
MOV BP, SP ;BP points to stacktop
MOV AX, [BP] ;move stacktop to AX
MOV BX, [BP+2] ;move second word to BX
MOV CX, [BP+4] ;move third word to CX
```

A primary use of BP is to pass values to a procedure (see Chapter 14).

### 10.3

#### **An Application: Sorting an Array**

It is much easier to locate an item in an array if the array has been sorted. There are dozens of sorting methods; the method we will discuss here is called *selectsort*. It is one of the simplest sorting methods.

To sort an array A of N elements, we proceed as follows:

*Pass 1.* Find the largest element among A[1] . . . A[N]. Swap it and A[N]. Because this puts the largest element in position N, we need only sort A[1] . . . A[N-1] to finish.

*Pass 2.* Find the largest element among A[1] . . . A[N-1]. Swap it and A[N-1]. This places the next-to-largest element in its proper position.

*Pass N-1.* Find the largest element among A[1], A[2]. Swap it and A[2]. At this point A[2] . . . A[N] are in their proper positions, so A[1] is as well, and the array is sorted.

For example, suppose the array A consists of the following integers:

| Position     | 1  | 2 | 3  | 4  | 5  |
|--------------|----|---|----|----|----|
| initial data | 21 | 5 | 16 | 40 | 7  |
| pass 1       | 21 | 5 | 16 | 7  | 40 |
| pass 2       | 7  | 5 | 16 | 21 | 40 |
| pass 3       | 7  | 5 | 16 | 21 | 40 |
| pass 4       | 5  | 7 | 16 | 21 | 40 |

**Selectsort algorithm**

```

i = N
FOR N-1 times DO
 Find the position k of the largest element
 among A[1]..A[i]
 (*) Swap A[k] and A[i]
 i = i-1
END_FOR

```

Step (\*) will be handled by a procedure SWAP. The code for the procedures is the following (we'll suppose the array to be sorted is a byte array):

**Program Listing PGM10\_2.ASM**

```

1: SELECT PROC
2: ;sorts a byte array by the selectsort method
3: ;input: SI = array offset address
4: ; BX = number of elements
5: ;output: SI = offset of sorted array
6: ;uses: SWAP
7: PUSH BX
8: PUSH CX
9: PUSH DX
10: PUSH SI
11: DEC BX ;N = N-1
12: JE END_SORT ;exit if 1-elt array
13: MOV DX,SI ;save array offset
14: ;for N-1 times do
15: SORT_LOOP:
16: MOV SI,DX ;SI pts to array
17: MOV CX,BX ;no. of comparisons to make
18: MOV DI,SI ;DI pts to largest element
19: MOV AL,[DI] ;AL has largest element
20: ;locate biggest of remaining elts
21: FIND_BIG:
22: INC SI ;SI pts to next element
23: CMP [SI],AL ;is new element > largest?
24: JNC NEXT ;no, go on
25: MOV DI,SI ;yes, move DI
26: MOV AL,[DI] ;AL has largest element
27: NEXT:
28: LOOP FIND_BIG ;loop until done
29: ;swap biggest elt with last elt
30: CALL SWAP ;Swap with last elt
31: DEC BX ;N = N-1
32: JNE SORT_LOOP ;repeat if N <> 0
33: END_SORT:
34: POP SI
35: POP DX
36: POP CX
37: POP BX
38: RET
39: SELECT ENDP
40: SWAP PROC
41: ;swaps two array elements
42: ;input: SI = one element
43: ; DI = other element

```

```

44: ;output: exchange-elements
45: PUSH AX ;save AX
46: MOV AL,[SI] ;get A[i]
47: XCHG AL,[DI] ;place in A[k]
48: MOV [SI],AL ;put A[k] in A[i]
49: POP AX ;restore AX
50: RET
51: SWAP ENDP

```

Procedure SELECT is entered with the array offset address in SI, and the number of elements  $N$  in BX. The algorithm sorts the array in  $N - 1$  passes so BX is decremented; if it contains 0, then we have a one-element array and there is nothing to do, so the procedure exits.

In the general case, the procedure enters as the main processing loop (lines 15–32). Each pass through this loop places the largest of the remaining unsorted elements in its proper place.

In lines 21–28, a loop is entered to find the largest of the remaining unsorted elements; the loop is exited with DI pointing to the largest element and SI pointing to the last element in the array. At line 30, procedure SWAP is called to exchange the elements pointed to by SI and DI.

The procedure can be tested by inserting them in a testing program.

#### Program Listing PGM10\_3.ASM

```

TITLE PGM10_3: TEST SI
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
A DB 5,2,1,3,4
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX
 LEA SI,A
 MOV BX,5
 CALL SELECT,
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
;select goes here
END MAIN

```

After assembling and linking, we enter DEBUG and execute down to the procedure call (the addresses in the following demonstration were determined in a previous DEBUG session):

-GC

```

AX=100D BX=0005 CX=0049 DX=0000 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0004 DI=0000
DS=100D ES=0FF9 SS=100E CS=1009 IP=000C NV UP EI PL NZ NA PO NC
1009:000C E80400 CALL 0013

```

Before calling the procedure, let's look at the unsorted array:

```
-D4 8
100D:0000 05 02 01 03-04
```

The data appear in the order 5, 2, 1, 3, 4. Now let's execute SELECT:

```
-GF
AX=1002 BX=0005 CX=0049 DX=0000 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0004 DI=0005
DS=100D ES=0FF9 SS=100E CS=1009 IP=000F NV UP EI PL ZR NA PE NC
1009:000F B44C MOV AH,4C
```

and look at the array again:

```
-D4 8
100D:0000 01 02 03 04-05
```

It is now in ascending order.

## 10.4 Two-Dimensional Arrays

A **two-dimensional array** is an array of arrays; that is, a one-dimensional array whose elements are one-dimensional arrays. We can picture the elements as being arranged in rows and columns. Figure 10.2 shows a two-dimensional array B with three rows and four columns (a  $3 \times 4$  array);  $B[i,j]$  is the element in row i and column j.

### How Two-Dimensional Arrays Are Stored

Because memory is one-dimensional, the elements of a two-dimensional array must be stored sequentially. There are two commonly used ways: In **row-major order**, the row 1 elements are stored, followed by the row 2 elements, then the row 3 elements, and so on. In **column-major order**, the elements of the first column are stored, followed by the second column, third column, and so on. For example, suppose array B has 10, 20, 30, and 40 in the first row, 50, 60, 70, and 80 in the second row, and 90, 100, 110, and 120 in the third row. It could be stored in row-major order as follows:

**Figure 10.2 A Two-Dimensional Array B**

| Row | Column |        |        |        |
|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|     | 1      | 2      | 3      | 4      |
| 1   | B[1,1] | B[1,2] | B[1,3] | B[1,4] |
| 2   | B[2,1] | B[2,2] | B[2,3] | B[2,4] |
| 3   | B[3,1] | B[3,2] | B[3,3] | B[3,4] |

B DW 10,20,30,40  
 DW 50,60,70,80  
 DW 90,100,110,120

or in column-major order as follows:

B DW 10,50,90  
 DW 20,60,100  
 DW 30,70,110  
 DW 40,80,120

Most high-level language compilers store two-dimensional arrays in row-major order. In assembly language, we can do it either way. If the elements of a row are to be processed together sequentially, then row-major order is better, because the next element in a row is the next memory location. Conversely, column-major order is better if the elements of a column are to be processed together.

### Locating an Element in a Two-Dimensional Array

Suppose an  $M \times N$  array A is stored in row-major order, where the size of the elements is S ( $S = 1$  for a byte array,  $S = 2$  for a word array). To find the location of  $A[i, j]$ ,

1. Find where row i begins.
2. Find the location of the  $j$ th element in that row.

Here is the first step. Row 1 begins at location A. Because there are  $N$  elements in each row, each of size  $S$  bytes, Row 2 begins at location  $A + N \times S$ , Row 3 begins at location  $A + 2 \times N \times S$ , and in general, Row i begins at location  $A + (i - 1) \times N \times S$ .

Now for the second step. We know from our discussion of one-dimensional arrays that the  $j$ th element in a row is stored  $(j - 1) \times S$  bytes from the beginning of the row.

Adding the results of steps 1 and 2, we get the final result:

If A is an  $M \times N$  array, with element size S bytes, stored in row-major order, then

$$(1) \quad A[i, j] \text{ has address } A + ((i - 1) \times N + (j - 1)) \times S$$

There is a similar expression for column-major ordered arrays:

If A is an  $M \times N$  array, with element size S, stored in column-major order, then

$$(2) \quad A[i, j] \text{ has address } A + ((i - 1) + (j - 1) \times M) \times S$$

**Example 10.12** Suppose A is an  $M \times N$  word array stored in row-major order.

1. Where does row i begin?
2. Where does column j begin?
3. How many bytes are there between elements in a column?

**Solution:**

1. Row i begins at  $A[i, 1]$ ; by formula (1) its address is  $A + (i - 1) \times N \times 2$ .
2. Column j begins at  $A[1, j]$ ; by formula (1) the address is  $A + (j - 1) \times 2$ .
3. Because there are  $N$  columns, there are  $2 \times N$  bytes between elements in any given column.

## 10.5

### Based Indexed Addressing Mode

In this mode, the offset address of the operand is the sum of

1. the contents of a base register (BX or BP)
2. the contents of an index register (SI or DI)
3. optionally, a variable's offset address
4. optionally, a constant (positive or negative)

If BX is used, DS contains the segment number of the operand's address; if BP is used, SS has the segment number. The operand may be written several ways; four of them are

1. variable[base\_register][index\_register]
2. [base\_register + index\_register + variable + constant]
3. variable[base\_register + index\_register + constant]
4. constant[base\_register + index\_register + variable]

The order of terms within these brackets is arbitrary.

For example, suppose W is a word variable, BX contains 2, and SI contains 4. The instruction

`MOV AX, W[BX][SI]`

moves the contents of  $W+2+4 = W+6$  to AX. This instruction could also have been written in either of these ways:

`MOV AX, [W+BX+SI]`

or

`MOV AX, W[BX+SI]`

Based indexed mode is especially useful for processing two-dimensional arrays, as the following example shows.

**Example 10.13** Suppose A is a  $5 \times 7$ -word array stored in row-major order. Write some code to (1) clear row 3, (2) clear column 4. Use based indexed mode.

**Solution:**

- From example 10.12, we know that in an  $M \times N$ -word array A, row i begins at  $A + (i - 1) \times N \times 2$ . Thus in a  $5 \times 7$  array, row 3 begins at  $A + (3 - 1) \times 7 \times 2 = A + 28$ . So we can clear row 3 as follows:

```

MOV BX,28; BX indexes row 3
XOR SI,SI; ;SI will index columns
MOV CX,7; ;number of elements in a row
CLEAR:
MOV A[BX][SI],0 ;clear A[3,j]
ADD SI,2 ;go to next column
LOOP CLEAR ;loop until done

```

- Again from example 10.12, column j begins at  $A + (j - 1) \times 2$  in an  $M \times N$ -word array. Thus column 4 begins at  $A + (4 - 1) \times 2 = A + 6$ . Since A is a seven-column word array stored in row-major order, to get to the next element in column 4 we need to add  $7 \times 2 = 14$ . We can clear column 4 as follows:

```

MOV SI,6 ;SI will index column 4
XOR BX,BX ;BX will index rows
MOV CX,5 ;number of elements in a column
CLEAR:
MOV A[BX][SI],0 ;clear A[i,4]
ADD BX,1 ;go to next row
LOOP CLEAR ;loop until done

```

## 10.6

### An Application: Averaging Test Scores

Suppose a class of five students is given four exams. The results are recorded as follows:

|              | Test 1 | Test 2 | Test 3 | Test 4 |
|--------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| MARY ALLEN   | 67     | 45     | 98     | 33     |
| SCOTT BAYLIS | 70     | 56     | 87     | 44     |
| GEORGE FRANK | 82     | 72     | 89     | 40     |
| BETH HARRIS  | 80     | 67     | 95     | 50     |
| SAM WONG     | 78     | 76     | 92     | 60     |

We will write a program to find the class average on each exam. To do this, we sum the entries in each column and divide by 5.

#### Algorithm

- j = 4
- REPEAT
- sum the scores in column j
- divide sum by 5 to get the average in column j
- j = j-1
- UNTIL j = 0

We choose to start summing in column 4 because it makes the code a little shorter. Step 3 may be broken down further as follows:

```
sum[j] = 0
i = 1
FOR 5 times DO
 sum[j] = sum[j] + score[i,j]
 i = i+1
END_FOR
```

#### Program Listing PGM10\_4.ASM

```
0: TITLE PGM10_4: CLASS AVERAGE
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: FIVE DW 5
5: SCORES DW 67,45,98,33 ;Mary Allen
6: DW 70,56,87,44 ;Scott Baylis
7: DW 82,72,89,40 ;George Frank
8: DW 80,67,95,50 ;Beth Harris
9: DW 78,76,92,60 ;Sam Wong
10: AVG DW 5 DUP (0)
11: .CODE
12: MAIN PROC
13: MOV AX,@DATA
14: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
15: ;j=4
16: MOV SI,6 ;col index, initially col
17: REPEAT:
18: MOV CX,5 ;no. of rows
19: XOR BX,BX ;row index, initially 1.
20: XOR AX,AX ;col_sum, initially 0
21: ;sum scores in column j
22: FOR:
23: ADD AX,SCORES[BX+SI];col_sum=col_sum + score
24: ADD BX,8 ;index next row
25: LOOP FOR ;keep adding scores
26: ;endfor
27: ;compute average in column j
28: XOR DX,DX ;clear high part of divnd
29: DIV FIVE ;AX = average
30: MOV AVG[SI],AX ;store in array
31: SUB SI,2 ;go to next column
32: ;until j=0
33: JNL REPEAT ;unless SI < 0
34: ;dos exit
35: MOV AH,4CH
36: INT 21H
37: MAIN ENDP
38: END MAIN
```

The test scores are stored in a two-dimensional array (lines 5-9).

In lines 22-25, a column is summed and the total placed in the array AVG. In lines 28-30, this total is divided by 5 to compute the column average.

Rows and columns of array SCORE are indexed by BX and SI, respectively. We choose to begin summing column 4; this column begins in SCORES+6, so SI is initialized to 6 (line 16). After a column is summed, SI is decreased by 2, until it is 0.

The execution of the program may be seen in DEBUG. We execute down to the DOS exit, then dump the array AVG (the addresses in this demonstration were determined in a previous DEBUG session).

```
-G29
AX=4C4B BX=0028 CX=0000 DX=0002 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=FFFF DI=0000
DS=100B ES=0FF9 SS=100F CS=1009 IP=0029 NV UP EI NG NZ AC PO CY
1009:0029 CD21 INT 21

-D36 3D
100B:0030 4B 00-3F 00 5C 00 2D 00
```

The averages are 004Bh, 003Fh, 005Ch, and 002Dh, or—in decimal 75, 63, 92, and 45.

## 10.7

### The XLAT Instruction

In some applications, it is necessary to translate data from one form to another. For example, the IBM PC uses ASCII codes for characters, but IBM mainframes use EBCDIC (Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code). To translate a character string encoded in ASCII to EBCDIC, a program must replace the ASCII code of each character in the string with the corresponding EBCDIC code.

The instruction **XLAT** (translate) is a no-operand instruction that can be used to convert a byte value into another value that comes from a table. The byte to be converted must be in AL, and BX has the offset address of the conversion table. The instruction (1) adds the contents of AL to the address in BX to produce an address within the table, and (2) replaces the contents of AL by the value found at that address.

For example, suppose the contents of AL are in the range 0 to Fh and we want to replace it by the ASCII code of its hex equivalent; for example, 6h by 036h = "6", Bh by 042h = "B". The conversion table is

|       |                                                              |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| TABLE | DB 030h, 031h, 032h, 033h, 034h, 035, 036h, 037h, 038h, 039h |
|       | DB 041h, 042h, 043h, 044h, 045h, 046h                        |

For instance, to convert 0Ch to "C", we do the following:

```
MOV AL,0Ch ;number to convert
LEA BX, TABLE ;BX has table offset
XLAT ;AL has 'C'
```

Here XLAT computes address TABLE + Ch = TABLE + 12, and replaces the contents of AL by the number stored there, namely 043h = "C".

In this example, if AL contained a value *not* in the range 0 to 15, XLAT would translate it to some garbage value.

**Example: Coding and Decoding a Secret Message**

The following program prompts the user to type a message, encodes it in unrecognizable form, prints the coded message, translates it back, and prints the translation.

Sample output:

```
ENTER A MESSAGE:,
GATHER YOUR FORCES AND ATTACK AT DAWN, (input)
ZXKHGM WULM HUMPGN XJO XKKXPD XK OXSJ, (encoded)
GATHER YOUR FORCES AND ATTACK AT DAWN, (translated)
```

**Algorithm for Coding and Decoding a Secret Message**

```
Print prompt .
Read and encode message
Go to a new line
Print encoded message
Go to a new line
Translate and print message
```

**Program Listing PGM10\_5.ASM**

```
0: TITLE PGM 10_5: SECRET MESSAGE
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: ;alphabet ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
5: CODE_KEY DB 65 DUP (' '), 'XQPOGHZBCADEIJUVFMNKLRSTWY'
6: DB 37 DUP (' ')
7: DECODE_KEY DB 65 DUP (' '), 'JHIKLOEFMNTURSDCBVWXOZYAZG'
8: DB 37 DUP (' ')
9: CODED DB 80 DUP ('$')
10: PROMPT DB 'ENTER A MESSAGE:',ODH,0AH,'$'
11: CRLF DB ODH,0AH,'$'
12: .CODE
13: MAIN PROC
14: MOV AX,@DATA ;initialize DS
15: MOV DS,AX
16: ;print input prompt
17: MOV AH,9 ;print string fcn
18: LEA DX,PROMPT ;DX pts to prompt
19: INT 21H ;print message
20: ;read and encode message
21: MOV AH,1 ;read char fcn
22: LEA BX,CODE_KEY ;BX pts to code key
23: LEA DI,CODED ;DI pts to coded message
24: WHILE_:
25: INT 21H ;read a char
26: CMP AL,ODH ;carriage return?
27: JE ENDWHILE ;yes, go to print coded message
28: XLAT ;no, encode char
```

```

29: MOV [DI], AL ;store in coded message
30: INC DI ;move pointer
31: JMP WHILE_ ;process next char
32: WHILE:
33: ;go to a new line
34: MOV AH, 9
35: LEA DX,CRLF
36: INT 21H ;new line
37: ;print encoded message
38: LEA DX,CODED ;DX pts to coded
39: INT 21H ;print coded message
40: ;go to a new line
41: LEA DX,CRLF
42: INT 21H ;new line
43: ;decode message and print it
44: MOV AH, 2 ;print char fcn
45: LEA BX,DECODE_KEY ;BX pts to decode key
46: LEA SI,CODED ;SI pts to encoded message
47: WHILE1:
48: MOV AL,[SI] ;get a character from message
49: CMP AL,'$' ;end of message?
50: JE ENDWHILE1;yes, exit
51: XLAT . ;no, decode character
52: MOV DL,AL ;put in DL
53: INT 21H ;print translated char
54: INC SI ;move ptr
55: JMP WHILE1 ;process next char
56: ENDWHILE1:
57: MOV AH, 4CH
58: INT 21H ;dos exit
59: MAIN ENDP
60: END MAIN

```

Three arrays are declared in the data segment:

1. CODE\_KEY is used to encode English text.
2. CODED holds the encoded message; it is initialized to a string of dollar signs so that it may be printed with INT 21h, function 9.
3. DECODE\_KEY is used to translate the encoded text back to English.

Line 4 is a comment line containing the alphabet, which makes it easier to see how characters are encoded and decoded.

In lines 24–32, characters are read and encoded until a carriage return is typed. AL receives the ASCII code of each input character; XLAT adds it to address CODE\_KEY in BX to produce an address within the CODE\_KEY table.

CODE\_KEY is set up as follows: 65 blanks, followed by the letters to which A to Z will be encoded, followed by 37 more blanks for a total of 128 bytes (128 bytes are needed, because the standard ASCII characters range from 0 to 127). Suppose, for example, an "A" is typed. The ASCII code of "A" is 65; XLAT computes address CODE\_KEY+65, picks up the value of that byte, which is "X", and stores it in AL. At line 33, this value is moved into byte array CODED. Similarly, "B" is translated into 'Q', 'C' into 'P'... 'Z' into 'Y' (the encoding table was constructed arbitrarily). Characters other than capital letters (including the blank character) have ASCII code in the

ranges 0 to 64 or 92 to 127, and are translated into blanks. In lines 38-39, the encoded message is printed.

`DECODE_KEY` also begins with 65 blanks and ends with 37 blanks. The positions of the letters in this array may be deduced as follows. First, lay down the alphabet (line 4). Now since "A" was coded into "X", the letter at position "X" in the decoding sequence should be "A". Similarly, because "B" was coded into "Q", there should be a "B" at position "Q", and so on.

In lines 47-56, the encoded message is translated. After placing the addresses of `DECODE_KEY` and `CODED` in BX and SI, respectively, the program moves a byte of the coded message into AL. If it's a dollar sign, the message has been translated and the program exits. If not, XLAT adds AL to address `DECODE_KEY` to produce an address within the decoding table, and puts the character found there into AL. At line S2, the character is moved to DL so that it can be printed with INT 21h, function 2.

## Summary

- A one-dimensional array is an ordered list of elements of the same type. The DB and DW pseudo-ops are used to declare byte and word arrays.
- An array element can be located by adding a constant to the base address.
- The way that an operand is specified is its addressing mode. The addressing modes are register, immediate, direct, register indirect, based, indexed, and based indexed.
- In register indirect mode, an operand has the form [register], where register is BX, SI, DI, or BP. The operand's offset is contained in the register. For BP, the operand's segment number is in SS; for the other registers, the segment number is in DS.
- In based or indexed mode, an operand has the form [register + displacement]. Register is BX, BP, SI, or DI. The operand's offset is obtained by adding the displacement to the contents of the register. For BX, SI, or DI, the segment number is in DS; for BP, the segment number is in SS.
- The operators BYTE PTR and WORD PTR in front of an operand may be used to override the operand's declared type.
- The LABEL pseudo-op may be used to assign a type to a variable.
- A two-dimensional array is a one-dimensional array whose elements are one-dimensional arrays. Two-dimensional arrays may be stored row by row (row-major order), or column by column (column-major order).
- In based indexed mode, the offset address of the operand is the sum of (1) BX or BP; (2) SI or DI; (3) optionally, a memory offset address; (4) optionally, a constant. One (of several) possible forms is [base\_register + index\_register + memory\_location + constant]. DS has the segment number if BX is used; if BP is used, SS has the segment number.
- Based indexed mode may be used to process two-dimensional arrays.
- The XLAT instruction can be used to convert a byte value into another value that comes from a table. AL contains the value to be

converted and BX the address of the table. The instruction adds AL to the offset contained in BX to produce a table address. The contents of AL is replaced by the value found at that address.

### Glossary

|                                 |                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>addressing mode</b>          | The way the operand is specified                                                                                              |
| <b>base address of an array</b> | The address of the array variable                                                                                             |
| <b>based addressing mode</b>    | An indirect addressing mode in which the contents of BX or BP are added to a displacement to form an operand's offset address |
| <b>column-major order</b>       | Column by column                                                                                                              |
| <b>direct mode</b>              | The operand is a variable                                                                                                     |
| <b>displacement</b>             | In based or indexed mode, a number added to the contents of a register to produce an operand's offset address                 |
| <b>immediate mode</b>           | The operand is constant                                                                                                       |
| <b>indexed addressing mode</b>  | An indirect addressing mode in which the contents of SI or DI are added to a displacement to form an operand's offset address |
| <b>one-dimensional pointer</b>  | An ordered list of elements of the same type                                                                                  |
| <b>register mode</b>            | A register that contains an offset address of an operand                                                                      |
| <b>row-major order</b>          | Row by row                                                                                                                    |
| <b>two-dimensional array</b>    | A one-dimensional array whose elements are one-dimensional arrays                                                             |

### New instructions

XLAT

### New Pseudo-Ops

DUP

LABEL

PTR

### Exercises

1. Suppose

AX contains 0500h

BX contains 1000h

SI contains 1500h

DI contains 2000h

offset 1000h contains 0100h

offset 1500h contains 0150h

offset 2000h contains 0200h

offset 3000h contains 0400h

offset 4000h contains 0300h

and BETA is a word variable whose offset address is 1000h

For each of the following instructions, if it is legal, give the source offset address or register and the result stored in the destination.

- a. MOV DI, SI
- b. MOV DI, [DI]
- c. ADD AX, [SI]
- d. SUB BX, [DI]
- e. LEA BX, BETA[BX]
- f. ADD [SI], [DI]
- g. ADD BH, [BL]
- h. ADD AH, [SI]
- i. MOV AX, [BX + DI + BETA]

2. Given the following declarations

```
A DW 1,2,3
B DB 4,5,6
C LABEL WORD
MSG DB 'ABC'
```

and suppose that BX contains the offset address of C. Tell which of the following instructions are legal. If so, give the number moved.

- a. MOV AH, BYTE PTR A
- b. MOV AX, WORD PTR B
- c. MOV AX, C
- d. MOV AX, MSG
- e. MOV AH, BYTE PTR C

3. Use BP and based mode to do the following stack operations.  
(You may use other registers as well, but don't use PUSH or POP.)
  - a. Replace the contents of the top two words on the stack by zeros.
  - b. Copy a stack of five words into a word array ST\_ARR, so that ST\_ARR contains the stack top, ST\_ARR + 2 contains the next word on the stack, and so on.
4. Write instructions to carry out each of the following operations on a word array A of 10 elements or a byte array B of 15 elements.
  - a. Move A[i+1] to position i, i = 1 . . . 9, and move A[1] to position 10.
  - b. Count in DX the number of zero entries in array A.
  - c. Suppose byte array B contains a character string. Search B for the first occurrence of the letter "E". If found, make SI point to its location; if not found, set CF.
5. Write a procedure FIND\_IJ that returns the offset address of the element in row i and column j in a two-dimensional  $M \times N$  word array A stored in row-major order. The procedure receives i in AX, j in BX, N in CX, and the offset of A in DX. It returns the offset address of the element in DX. Note: you may ignore the possibility of overflow.

### Programming Exercises

6. To sort an array A of N elements by the bubblesort method, we proceed as follows:

Pass 1. For  $j = 2 \dots N$ , if  $A[j] < A[j - 1]$  then swap  $A[j]$  and  $A[j - 1]$ . This will place the largest element in position N.

Pass 2. For  $j = 2 \dots N - 1$ , if  $A[j] < A[j - 1]$  then swap  $A[j]$  and  $A[j - 1]$ . This will place the second largest element in position  $N - 1$ .

Pass  $N - 1$ . If  $A[2] < A[1]$ , then swap  $A[2]$  and  $A[1]$ . At this point the array is sorted.

#### Demonstration

|              |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| initial data | 7 | 5 | 3 | 9 | 1 |
| pass 1       | 5 | 3 | 7 | 1 | 9 |
| pass 2       | 3 | 5 | 1 | 7 | 9 |
| pass 3       | 3 | 1 | 5 | 7 | 9 |
| pass 4       | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 |

Write a procedure BUBBLE to sort a byte array by the bubblesort algorithm. The procedure receives the offset address of the array in SI and the number of elements in BX. Write a program that lets the user type a list of single-digit numbers, with one blank between numbers, calls BUBBLE to sort them, and prints the sorted list on the next line. For example,

```
?2 1 6 5 3 7
1 2 3 5 6 7
```

Your program should be able to handle an array with only one element.

7. Suppose the class records in the example of section 10.4.3 are stored as follows

```
CLASS
DB 'MARY ALLEN ', 67, 45, 9 8, 33
DB 'SCOTT BAYLIS', 70, 56, 87, 44
DB 'GEORGE FRANK', 82, 72, 89, 40
DB 'SAM WONG ', 78, 76, 92, 60
```

Each name occupies 12 bytes. Write a program to print the name of each student and his or her average (truncated to an integer) for the four exams.

8. Write a program that starts with an initially undefined byte array of maximum size 100, and lets the user insert single characters

into the array in such a way that the array is always sorted in ascending order. The program should print a question mark, let the user enter a character, and display the array with the new character inserted. Input ends when the user hits the ESC key. Duplicate characters should be ignored.

*Sample execution:*

```
?A
A
?D
AD
?B
ABD
?
ABDa
?D
ABDa
? <ESC>
```

9. Write a program that uses XLAT to (a) read a line of text, and (b) print it on the next line with all small letters converted to capitals. The input line may contain any characters—small letters, capital letters, digit characters, punctuation, and so on.
10. Write a procedure PRINTHEX that uses XLAT to display the content of BX as four hex digits. Test it in a program that lets the user type a four-digit hex integer, stores it in BX using the hex input algorithm of section 7.4, and calls PRINTHEX to print it on the next line.

# 11

## The String Instructions

---

### Overview

In this chapter we consider a special group of instructions called the *string instructions*. In 8086 assembly language, a **memory string** or **string** is simply a byte or word array. Thus, string instructions are designed for array processing.

Here are examples of operations that can be performed with the string instructions:

- Copy a string into another string.
- Search a string for a particular byte or word.
- Store characters in a string.
- Compare strings of characters alphabetically.

The tasks carried out by the string instructions can be performed by using the register indirect addressing mode we studied in Chapter 10; however, the string instructions have some built-in advantages. For example, they provide automatic updating of pointer registers and allow memory-memory operations.

---

### 11.1

#### The Direction Flag

In Chapter 5, we saw that the FLAGS register contains six status flags and three control flags. We know that the status flags reflect the result of an operation that the processor has done. The control flags are used to control the processor's operations.

One of the control flags is the *direction flag* (*DF*). Its purpose is to determine the direction in which string operations will proceed. These operations are implemented by the two index registers SI and DI. Suppose, for example, that the following string has been declared:

```
STRING1 DB 'ABCDE'
```

And this string is stored in memory starting at offset 0200h:

| <b>Offset address</b> | <b>Content</b> | <b>ASCII character</b> |
|-----------------------|----------------|------------------------|
| 0200h                 | 041h           | A                      |
| 0201h                 | 042h           | B                      |
| 0202h                 | 043h           | C                      |
| 0203h                 | 044h           | D                      |
| 0204h                 | 045h           | E                      |

If DF = 0, SI and DI proceed in the direction of increasing memory addresses: from left to right across the string. Conversely, if DF = 1, SI and DI proceed in the direction of decreasing memory addresses: from right to left.

In the DEBUG display, DF = 0 is symbolized by UP, and DF = 1 by DN.

### **CLD and STD**

To make DF = 0, use the **CLD** instruction

```
CLD ;clear direction flag
```

To make DF = 1, use the **STD** instruction:

```
STD ;set direction flag
```

CLD and STD have no effect on the other flags.

## **11.2**

### **Moving a String**

Suppose we have defined two strings as follows:

```
.DATA
STRING1 DB 'HELLO'
STRING2 DB 5 DUP (?)
```

and we would like to move the contents of STRING1 (the source string) into STRING2 (the destination string). This operation is needed for many string operations, such as duplicating a string or concatenating strings (attaching one string to the end of another string).

The **MOVSB** instruction

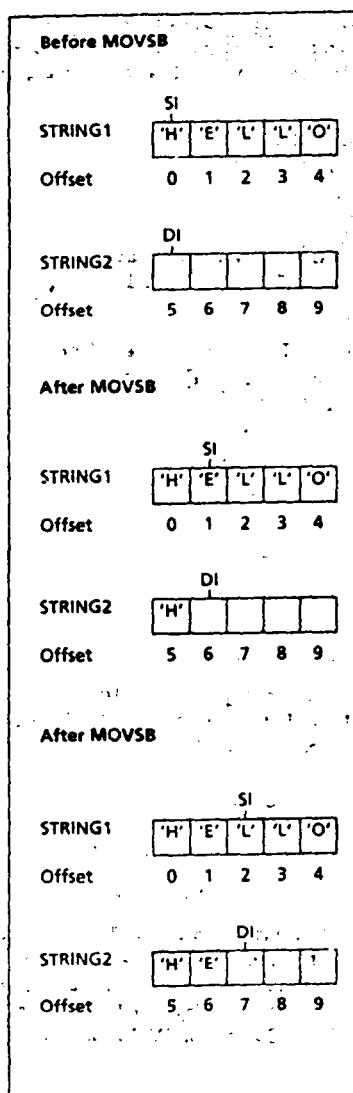
```
MOVSB ;move string byte
```

copies the contents of the byte addressed by DS:SI, to the byte addressed by ES:DI. The contents of the source byte are unchanged. After the byte has been moved, both SI and DI are automatically incremented if DF = 0, or decremented if DF = 1. For example, to move the first two bytes of STRING1 to STRING2, we execute the following instructions:

```
MOV AX,@DATA
MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
MOV ES,AX ;and ES
LEA SI,STRING1 ;SI points to source string
LEA DI,STRING2 ;DI points to destination string
CLD ;clear DF
MOVSB ;move first byte
MOVSB ;and second byte
```

See Figure 11.1.

Figure 11.1 MOVSB



MOVSB is the first instruction we have seen that permits a memory-memory operation. It is also the first instruction that involves the ES register.

#### The REP Prefix

MOVSB moves only a single byte from the source string to the destination string. To move the entire string, first initialize CX to the number N of bytes in the source string and execute

REP MOVSB

The REP prefix causes MOVSB to be executed  $N$  times. After each MOVSB, CX is decremented until it becomes 0. For example, to copy STRING1 of the preceding section into STRING2, we execute

```
CLD
LEA SI,STRING1
LEA DI,STRING2
MOV CX,5 ;no. of chars in STRING1
REP MOVSB
```

**Example 11.1** Write instructions to copy STRING1 of the preceding section into STRING2 in reverse order.

**Solution:** The idea is to get SI pointing to the end of STRING1, DI to the beginning of STRING2, then move characters as SI travels to the left across STRING1.

```
LEA SI,STRING1+4 ;SI pts to end of STRING1
LEA DI,STRING2 ;DI pts to beginning of STRING2
STD ;right to left processing
MOV CX,5
MOVE:
 MOVSB ;move a byte
 ADD DI,2
 LOOP MOVE
```

Here it is necessary to add 2 to DI after each MOVSB. Because we do this when DF = 1, MOVSB automatically decrements both SI and DI, and we want to increment DI.

### MOVSW

There is a word form of MOVSB. It is

```
MOVSW ;move string word
```

**MOVSW** moves a word from the source string to the destination string. Like MOVSB, it expects DS:SI to point to a source string word, and ES:DI to point to a destination string word. After a string word has been moved, both SI and DI are increased by 2 if DF = 0, or are decreased by 2 if DF = 1.

MOVSB and MOVSW have no effect on the flags.

**Example 11.2** For the following array,

```
ARR DW 10,20,40,50,60,?
```

write instructions to insert 30 between 20 and 40. (Assume DS and ES have been initialized to the data segment.)

**Solution:** The idea is to move 40, 50, and 60 forward one position in the array, then insert 30.

```

STD ;right to left processing
LEA SI,ARR+8h ;SI pts to 60
LEA DI,ARR+Ah ;DI pts to ?
MOV CX,3 ;3 elts to move
REP MOVSW ;move 40,50,60
MOV WORD PTR [DI],30 ;insert 30

```

*Note:* the PTR operator was introduced in section 10.2.3.

## 11.3

### Store String

#### The STOSB Instruction

```
STOSB ;store string byte
```

moves the contents of the AL register to the byte addressed by ES:DI. DI is incremented if DF = 0 or decremented if DF = 1. Similarly, the STOSW instruction

```
STOSW ;store string word
```

moves the contents of AX to the word at address ES:DI and updates DI by 2, according to the direction flag setting.

STOSB and STOSW have no effect on the flags.

As an example of STOSB, the following instructions will store two "A"s in STRING1:

```

MOV AX, RDATA
MOV ES, AX ;initialize ES
LEA DI, STRING1 ;DI points to STRING1
CLD ;process to the right
MOV AL, 'A' ;AL has character to store
STOSB ;store an 'A'
STOSB ;store another one

```

See Figure 11.2.

#### Reading and Storing a Character String

INT 21h, function 1 reads a character from the keyboard into AL. By repeatedly executing this interrupt with STOSB, we can read and store a character string. In addition, the characters may be processed before storing them.

The following procedure READ\_STR reads and stores characters in a string, until a carriage return is typed. The procedure is entered with the string offset address in DI. It returns the string offset in DI, and number of characters entered in BX. If the user makes a typing mistake and hits the backspace key, the previous character is removed from the string.

This procedure is similar to DOS INT 21h, function 0Ah (see exercise 11.11).

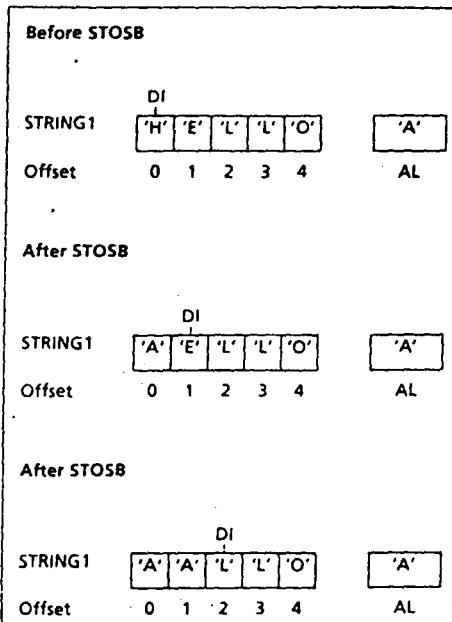
#### Algorithm for READ\_STR

```

chars_read = 0
read a char
WHILE char is not a carriage return DO
 IF char is a backspace
 THEN
 chars_read - chars_read - 1

```

Figure 11.2 STOSB



```

 remove previous char from string
ELSE
 store char in string
 chars_read = chars_read + 1
ENDIF
read a char
END WHILE

```

**Program Listing PGM11\_1.ASM**

```

1: READ_STR PROC NEAR
2: ; Reads and stores a string
3: ; input: DI offset of string
4: ;output: DI offset of string
5: ;BX number' of characters read
6: PUSH AX
7: PUSH DI
8: CLD ;process from left
9: XOR BX,BX ;no. of chars read
10: MOV AH,1 ;input char function
11: INT 21H ;read a char into AL
12: WHILE1:
13: CMP AL,0DH ;CR?
14: JE END WHILE1 ;yes, exit
15: ;if char is backspace
16: CMP AL,8H ;backspace?
17: JNE ELSE1 ;no, store in string
18: ;then
19: DEC DI ;yes, move string ptr back
20: DEC BX ;decrement char counter

```

```

21: JMP READ ;and go to read another char
22: ELSE1:
23: STOSB ;store char in string
24: INC BX ;increment char count
25: READ: INT 21H ;read a char into AL
26: JMP WHILE1 ;and continue loop
27: END_WHILE1:
28: POP DI
29: POP AX
30: RET.
32: READ_STR ENDP

```

At line 23, the procedure uses STOSB to store input characters in the string. STOSB automatically increments DI; at line 24, the character count in BX is incremented.

The procedure takes into account the possibility of typing errors. If the user hits the backspace key, then at line 19 the procedure decrements DI and BX. The backspace itself is not stored. When the next legitimate character is read, it replaces the wrong one in the string. Note: if the last characters typed before the carriage return are backspaces, the wrong characters will remain in the string, but the count of legitimate characters in BX will be correct.

We use READ STR for string input in the following sections.

## 11.4 Load String

### The LODSB instruction

LODSB ;load string byte

moves the byte addressed by DS:SI into AL. SI is then incremented if DF = 0 or decremented if DF = 1. The word form is

LODSW ;load string word

it moves the word addressed by DS:SI into AX; SI is increased by 2 if DF = 0 or decreased by 2 if DF = 1.

LODSB can be used to examine the characters of a string, as shown later.

LODSB and LODSW have no effect on the flags.

To illustrate LODSB, suppose STRING1 is defined as

STRING1 DB 'ABC'

The following code successively loads the first and second bytes of STRING1 into AL

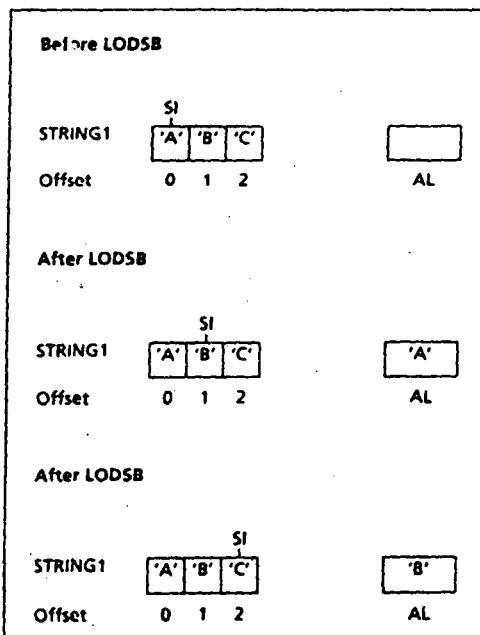
```

MOV AX,@DATA
MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
LEA SI,STRING1 ;SI points to STRING1
CLD ;process left to right
LODSB ;load first byte into AL
LODSB ;load second byte into AL

```

See Figure 11.3.

Figure 11.3 LODSB



### Displaying a Character String

The following procedure DISP\_STR displays the string pointed to by SI, with the number of characters in BX. It can be used to display all or part of a string.

#### Algorithm for DISP\_STR

```
FOR count times DO /* count = no. of characters to display *
 load a string character into AL
 move it to DL
 output character
END_FOR
```

#### Program Listing PGM 11\_2.ASM

```
;displays a string
;input: SI' = offset of string
; BX' = no. of chars. to display
;output: none
PUSH AX
PUSH BX
PUSH CX
PUSH DX
PUSH SI
MOV CX,BX ;no. of chars
JCXZ P_EXIT ;exit if none
CLD ;process left to right
```

```

 MOV AH,2 ;prepare to print
TOP: LODSB ;char in AL
 MOV DL,AL ;move it to DL
 INT 21H ;print char
 LOOP TOP ;loop until done
P_EXIT:
 POP SI
 POP DX
 POP CX
 POP BX
 POP AX
 RET
DISP_STR ENDP

```

To demonstrate READ\_STR and DISP\_STR, we'll write a program that reads a string (up to 80 characters) and displays the first 10 characters on the next line.

#### Program Listing PGM11\_3.ASM

```

TITLE PGM11_3: TEST READ_STR and PRINT_STR
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK
.DATA
STRINGDB 80 DUP (0)
CRLF DB 0DH,0AH,'$'
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX
 MOV ES,AX
;read a string
 LEA DI,STRING ;DI pts to string
 CALL READ_STR ;BX = no. of chars read
;go to a new line
 LEA DX,CRLF
 MOV AH,9
 INT 21H
;print string
 LEA SI,STRING ;SI pts to string
 MOV BX,10 ;display 10 chars
 CALL DISP_STR
;dos exit
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
;READ_STR goes here
;DISP_STR goes here
END MAIN

```

*Sample execution:*

```
C>PGM11_3
THIS PROGRAM TESTS TWO PROCEDURES
THIS PROGR
```

## 11.5 Scan String

The instruction

SCASB ;scan string byte

can be used to examine a string for a target byte. The target byte is contained in AL. SCASB subtracts the string byte pointed to by ES:DI from the contents of AL and uses the result to set the flags. The result is not stored. Afterward, DI is incremented if DF = 0 or decremented if DF = 1.

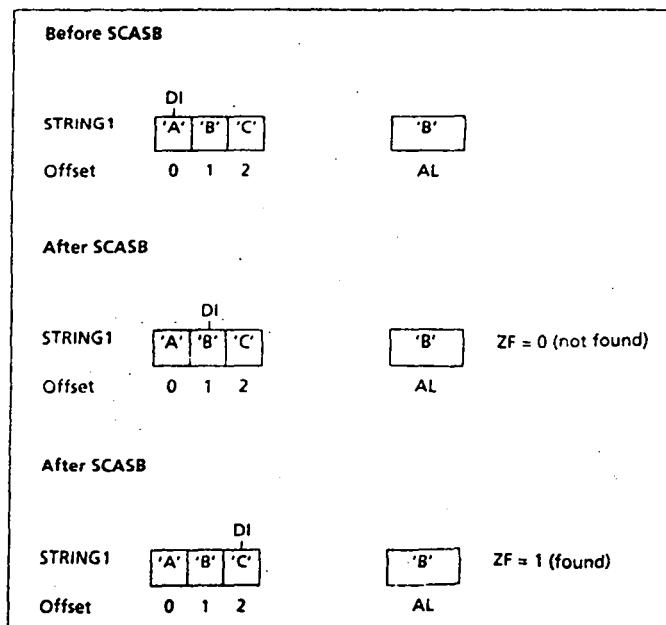
The word form is

SCASW ;scan string word

in this case, the target word is in AX. SCASW subtracts the word addressed by ES:DI from AX and sets the flags. DI is increased by 2 if DF = 0 or decreased by 2 if DF = 1.

All the status flags are affected by SCASB and SCASW.

Figure 11.4 SCASB



For example, if the string

```
STRING1 DB 'ABC'
```

is defined, then these instructions examine the first two bytes of STRING1, looking for "B"

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV AX, ES ; initialize ES
CLD ; left to right processing
LEA DI, STRING1 ; DI pts to STRING1
MOV AL, 'B' ; target character
SCASB ; scan first byte
SCASB ; scan second byte
```

See Figure 11.4. Note that when the target "B" was found, ZF = 1 and because SCASB automatically increments DI, DI points to the byte after the target, not the target itself.

In looking for a target byte in a string, the string is traversed until the byte is found or the string ends. If CX is initialized to the number of bytes in the string,

```
REPNE SCASB ; repeat SCASB while not equal
 ; (to target),
```

will repeatedly subtract each string byte from AL, update DI, and decrement CX until there is a zero result (the target is found) or CX = 0 (the string ends). Note: REPNZ (repeat while not zero) generates the same machine code as REPNE.

As an example, let's write a program to count the number of vowels and consonants in a string.

#### Algorithm for Counting Vowels and Consonants

```
Initialize vowel_count and consonant_count to 0;
Read and store a string;
REPEAT
 Load a string character;
 IF it's a vowel
 THEN
 increment vowel_count
 ELSE IF it's a consonant
 THEN increment consonant_count
 END_IF
UNTIL end of string;
display no. of vowels
display no. of consonants
```

We'll use procedure READ\_STR (section 11.3) to read the string. It returns with DI pointing to the string and BX containing the number of characters read. To display the number of vowels and consonants in the string, we'll use procedure OUTDEC of Chapter 9. It displays the contents of AX as a signed decimal integer. For simplicity, we'll suppose the input is in upper case.

#### Program Listing PGM11\_4.ASM

```
0: TITLE PGM 11_4: COUNT VOWELS AND CONSONANTS
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: STRING DB 80 DUP (0)
```

```

5: VOWELS DB 'AEIOU'
6: CONSONANTS DB 'BCDFGHJKLMNPQRSTVWXYZ'
7: OUT1 DB 0DH,0AH,'vowels = $'
8: OUT2 DB ', consonants = $'
9: VOWELCT DW 0
10: CONSCT DW 0
12: MAIN PROC
13: MOV AX,@DATA
14: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
15: MOV ES,AX ;and ES
16: LEA DI,STRING ;DI pts to string
17: CALL READ_STR ;BX = no. of chars read
18: MOV SI,DI ;SI pts to string
19: CLD ;left to right processing
20: REPEAT:
21: ;load a string character
22: LODSB ;char in AL
23: ;if it's a vowel
24: LEA DI,VOWELS ;DI pts to vowels
25: MOV CX,5 ;5 vowels
26: REPNE SCASB ;is char a vowel?
27: JNE CK_CONST ;no other char
28: ;then increment vowel count
29: INC VOWELCT
30: JMP UNTIL
31: ;else if it's a consonant
32: CK_CONST:
33: LEA DI,CONSONANTS ;DI pts to consonants
34: MOV CX,21 ;21 consonants
35: REPNE SCASB ;is char a consonant?
36: JNE UNTIL ;no
37: ;then increment consonant count
38: INC CONSCT
39: UNTIL:
40: DEC BX ;BX has no. chars left in str
41: JNE REPEAT ;loop if chars left
42: ;output no. of vowels
43: MOV AH,9 ;prepare to print
44: LEA DX,OUT1 ;get vowel message
45: INT 21H ;print it
46: MOV AX,VOWELCT ;get vowel count
47: CALL OUTDEC ;print it
48: ;output no. of consonants
49: MOV AH,9 ;prepare to print
50: LEA DX,OUT2 ;get consonant message
51: INT 21H ;print it
52: MOV AX,CONSCT ;get consonant count
53: CALL OUTDEC ;print it
54: ;dos exit
55: MOV AH,4CH
56: INT 21H
57: MAIN ENDP
58: ;READ_STR goes here
59: ;OUTDEC goes here
60: END MAIN

```

Because the program uses both LODSB, which loads the byte in DS:SI, and SCASB, which scans the byte in ES:DI, both DS and ES must be initialized. BX is used as a loop counter and is set to the number of bytes in the string (CX is used elsewhere in the program).

*Line 22.* LODSB puts a string character in AL and advances SI to the next one.

*Line 26.* To see if the character in AL is a vowel, the program scans the string VOWELS by executing REPNE SCASB. This instruction subtracts each byte of VOWELS from AL and sets the flags. The instruction returns ZF = 1 if the character is a vowel and ZF = 0 if it isn't.

*Line 35.* If the target was not a vowel, the program scans the string CONSONANTS, in exactly the same way it scanned VOWELS.

*Sample execution:*

```
C>PGM11_4
A,E,I,O,U ARE VOWELS.
vowels = 9, consonants = 5
```

## 11.6

### Compare String

#### The CMPSB Instruction

CMPSB ;compare string byte

subtracts the byte with address ES:DI from the byte with address DS:SI, and sets the flags. The result is not stored. Afterward, both SI and DI are incremented if DF = 0, or decremented if DF = 1.

The word version of CMPSB is

CMPSW ;compare string word

It subtracts the word with address ES:DI from the word whose address is DS:SI, and sets the flags. If DF = 0, SI and DI are increased by 2; if DF = 1, they are decreased by 2. CMPSW is useful in comparing word arrays of numbers.

All the status flags are affected by CMPSB and CMPSW.

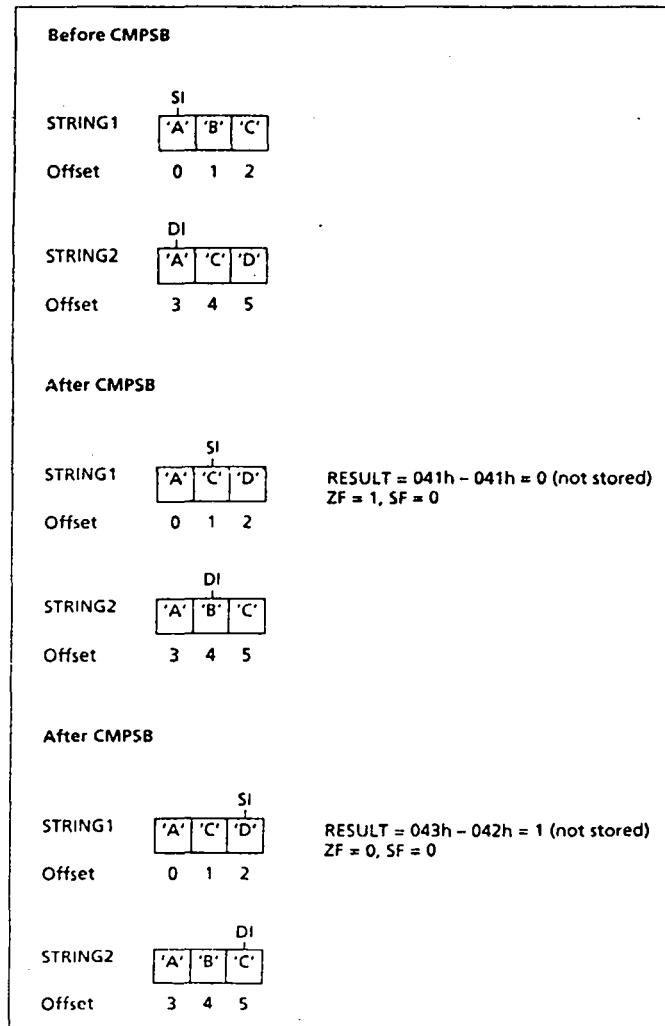
For example, suppose

```
.DATA
STRING1 DB 'ACD'
STRING2 DB 'ABC'
```

The following instructions compare the first two bytes of the preceding strings:

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX ; initialize DS
MOV ES, AX ; and ES
CLD ; left to right processing
LEA SI, STRING1 ; SI pts to STRING1
```

Figure 11.5 CMPSB



```

LEA DI,STRING2 ;DI pts to STRING2
CMPSB ;compare first bytes
CMPSB ;compare second bytes

```

See Figure 11.5.

### REPE and REPZ

String comparison may be done by attaching the prefix **REPE** (repeat while equal) or **REPZ** (repeat while zero) to CMPSB or CMPSW. CX is initialized to the number of bytes in the shorter string, then

```

REPE CMPSB ;compare string bytes while equal
OR
REPE CMPSW ;compare string words while equal

```

repeatedly executes CMPSB or CMPSW and decrements CX until (1) there is a mismatch between corresponding string bytes or words, or (2) CX = 0. The flags are set according to the result of the last comparison.

CMPSB may be used to compare two character strings to see which comes first alphabetically, or if they are identical, or if one string is a substring of the other (this means that one string is contained within the other as a sequence of consecutive characters).

As an example, suppose STR1 and STR2 are strings of length 10. The following instructions put 0 in AX if the strings are identical, put 1 in AX if STR1 comes first alphabetically, or put 2 in AX if STR2 comes first alphabetically (assume DS and ES are initialized).

```

 MOV CX,10 ;length of strings
 LEA SI,STR1 ;SI points to STR1
 LEA DI,STR2 ;DI points to STR2
 CLD ;left to right processing
 REPE CMPSB ;compare string bytes
 JL STR1_FIRST;STR1 precedes STR2
 JG STR2_FIRST;STR2 precedes STR1
;here if strings are identical
 MOV AX,0 ;put 0 in AX
 JMP EXIT ;and exit
;here if STR1 precedes STR2
STR1_FIRST:
 MOV AX,1 ;put 1 in AX
 JMP EXIT ;and exit
;here if STR2 precedes STR1
STR2_FIRST:
 MOV AX,2 ;PUT 2 in AX
EXIT:

```

### 11.6.1

#### **Finding a Substring of a String**

There are several ways to determine whether one string is a substring of another. The following way is probably the simplest. Suppose we declare

```

SUB1 DB 'ABC'
SUB2 DB 'CAB'
MAINST DB 'ABABCA'

```

and we want to see whether SUB1 and SUB2 are substrings of MAINST.

Let's begin with SUB1. We can compare corresponding characters in the strings

|        |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SUB1   | A | B | C |   |   |   |
|        |   |   | + |   |   |   |
| MAINST | A | B | A | B | C | A |

Because there is a mismatch at the third comparison, we backtrack and try to match SUB1 with the part of MAINST from position MAINST+1 on:

|        |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SUB1   | A | B | C |   |   |   |
|        | + |   |   |   |   |   |
| MAINST | A | B | A | B | C | A |

There is a mismatch immediately, so we begin again, and at position MAINST+2

|        |                            |
|--------|----------------------------|
| SUB1   | A    B    C                |
|        |                            |
| MAINST | A    B    A    B    C    A |

This time we are successful; SUB1 is a substring of MAINST.

Now let's try with SUB2. The search proceeds as before until we reach

|        |                            |
|--------|----------------------------|
| SUB2   | C    A    B                |
|        | +                          |
| MAINST | A    B    A    B    C    A |

There is a mismatch, and there is no need to proceed further, for if we did we would be trying to match the three characters of SUB2 with the two remaining characters "CA" of MAINST. Thus SUB2 is not a substring of MAINST.

Actually, we could have predicted the last place to search. It is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{STOP} &= \text{MAINST} + \text{length of MAINST} - \text{length of SUB2} \\ &= \text{MAINST} + 6 - 3 = \text{MAINST} + 3 \end{aligned}$$

Here is an algorithm and a program that searches a main string MAINST for a substring SUBST.

#### Algorithm for Substring Search

```

Prompt user to enter SUBST
Read SUBST
Prompt user to enter MAINST
Read MAINST
IF (length of MAINST is 0) OR (length of SUBST is 0)
OR (SUBST is longer than MAINST)
THEN
 SUBST is not a substring of MAINST
ELSE
 compute STOP
 START = offset of MAINST
 REPEAT
 compare corresponding characters in MAINST
 (from START on) and SUBST
 IF all characters match
 THEN
 SUBST found in MAINST
 ELSE
 START = START + 1
 END_IF
 UNTIL (SUBST found in MAINST)
 OR (START > STOP)
Display results

```

After reading SUBST and MAINST, and verifying that neither string is null and SUBST is not longer than MAINST, in lines 44-50 the program computes STOP (the place in MAINST to stop searching), and initializes START (the place to start searching) to the beginning of MAINST.

**Program Listing PGM11\_5.ASM**

```

1: TITLE PGM11_5: SUBSTRING DEMONSTRATION
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .DATA
5: MSG1 DB 'ENTER SUBST',0DH,0AH,'$'
6: MSG2 DB 0DH,0AH,'ENTER MAINST',0DH,0AH,'$'
7: MAINST DB 80 DUP (0)
8: SUBST DB 80 DUP (0)
9: STOP DW ? ;last place to begin search
10: START DW ? ;place to resume search
11: SUB_LEN DW? ;substring length
12: YESMSG DB 0DH,0AH,'SUBST IS A SUBSTRING OF MAINST$'
13: NOMSG DB 0DH,0AH,'SUBST IS NOT A SUBSTRING OF MAINST'
14: .CODE
15: MAIN PROC
16: MOV AX,@DATA
17: MOV DS,AX
18: MOV ES,AX
19: ;prompt for SUBST
20: MOV AH,9 ;print string fcn
21: LEA DX,MSG1 ;substring prompt
22: INT 21H ;prompt for SUBST
23: ;read SUBST
24: LEA DI,SUBST
25: CALL READ_STR ;BX has SUBST length
26: MOV SUB_LEN,BX ;save in SUB_LEN
27: ;prompt for MAINST
28: LEA DX,MSG2 ;main string prompt
29: INT 21H ;prompt for MAINST
30: ;read MAINST
31: LEA DI,MAINST
32: CALL READ_STR ;BX has MAINST length
33: ;see if string null or SUBST longer than MAINST
34: OR BX,BX ;MAINST null?
35: JE NO ;yes, SUBST not a substring
36: CMP SUB_LEN,0 ;SUBST null?
37: JE NO ;yes, SUBST not a substring
38: CMP SUB_LEN,BX ;substring > main string?
39: JG NO ;yes, SUBST not a substring
40: ;see if SUBST is a substring of MAINST
41: LEA SI,SUBST ;SI pts to SUBST
42: LEA DI,MAINST ;DI pts to MAINST
43: CLD ;left to right processing
44: ;compute STOP
45: MOV STOP,DI ;STOP has MAINST address
46: ADD STOP,BX ;add MAINST length
47: MOV CX,SUB_LEN
48: SUB STOP,CX ;subtract SUBST length
49: ;initialize start
50: MOV START,DI ;place to start search
51: REPEAT:
52: ;compare characters
53: MOV CLEN ;length of substring
54: MOV DI,START ;reset DI

```

```

55: LEA SI,SUBST ;reset SI
56: REPE CMPSB ;compare characters
57: JE YES ;SUBST found
58: ;substring not found yet
59: INC START ;update START
60: ;see if start <= stop
61: MOV AX,START
62: CMP AX,STOP ;START <= STOP?
63: JNLE NO ;no,exit
64: JMP REPEAT ;keep going
65: ;display results
66: YES:
67: LEA DX,YESMSG
68: JMP DISPLAY
69: NO:
70: LEA DX,NOMSG
71: DISPLAY:
72: MOV AH,9
73: INT 21H ;display results
74: ;DOS exit
75: MOV AH,4CH
76: INT 21H
77: MAIN ENDP
78: ;READ_STR goes here
79: END MAIN

```

At line 51, the program enters a REPEAT loop where the characters of SUBST are compared with the part of MAINST from START on. In lines 53-56, CX is set to the length of SUBST, SI is pointed to SUBST, DI is pointed to START, and corresponding characters are compared with REPE CMPSB. If ZF = 1, then the match is successful and the program jumps to line 66 where the message "SUBST is a substring of MAINST" is displayed. If ZF = 0, there was a mismatch between characters and START is incremented at line 59. The search continues until SUBST matches part of MAINST or START > STOP; in the latter case, the message "SUBST is not a substring of MAINST" is displayed.

*Sample executions:*

```

C>PGM11_5
ENTER SUBST
ABC
ENTER MAINST
XYZABABC
SUBST IS A SUBSTRING OF MAINST

C>PGM11_5
ENTER SUBST
ABD
ENTER MAINST
ABACADACD
SUBST IS NOT A SUBSTRING OF MAINST

```

**11.7****General Form of the String Instructions**

Let us summarize the byte and word forms of the string instructions:

| <i>Instruction</i> | <i>Destination</i> | <i>Source</i> | <i>Byte form</i> | <i>Word form</i> |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| Move string        | ES:DI              | DS:SI         | MOVSB            | MOVSW            |
| Compare string     | ES:DI              | DS:SI         | CMPSB            | CMPSW            |
| Store string       | ES:DI              | AL or AX      | STOSB            | STOSW            |
| Load string        | AL or AX           | DS:SI         | LODSB            | LODSW            |
| Scan string        | ES:DI              | AL or AX      | SCASB            | SCASW            |

\* Result not stored.

The operands of these instructions are implicit; that is, they are not part of the instructions themselves. However, there are forms of the string instructions in which the operands appear explicitly. They are as follows:

| <i>Instruction</i>                     | <i>Example</i> |
|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| MOVS destination_string, source_string | MOVSB          |
| CMPS destination_string, source_string | CMPSB          |
| STOS destination_string                | STOS STRING2   |
| LODS source_string                     | LODS STRING1   |
| SCAS destination_string                | SCAS STRING2   |

When the assembler encounters one of these general forms, it checks to see if (1) the source string is in the segment addressed by DS and the destination string is in the segment addressed by ES, and (2) in the case of MOVS and CMPS, if the strings are of the same type; that is, both byte strings or word strings. If so, then the instruction is coded as either a byte form, such as MOVSB, or a word form, such as MOVSW, to match the data declaration of the string. For example, suppose that DS and ES address the following segment:

```
.DATA
STRING1 DB 'ABCDE'
STRING2 DB 'EFGH'
STRING3 DB 'IJKL'
STRING4 DB 'MNOP'
STRINGS DW 1,2,3,4,5
STRING6 DW 7,8,9
```

Then the following pairs of instructions are equivalent

|                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| MOVS STRING2, STRING1 | MOVSB |
| MOVS STRING6, STRINGS | MOVSW |
| LODS STRING4          | LODSB |
| LODS STRING5          | LODSW |
| SCAS STRING1          | SCASB |
| STOS STRING6          | STOSW |

It is important to note that if the general forms are used, it is still necessary to make DS:SI and ES:DI point to the source and destination strings, respectively.

There are advantages and disadvantages in using the general forms of the string instructions. An advantage is that because the operands appear as part of the code, program documentation is improved. A disadvantage is

that only by checking the data definitions is it possible to tell whether a general string instruction is a byte form or a word form. In fact, the operands specified in a general string instruction may not be the actual operands used when the instruction is executed! For example, consider the following code:

```
LEA SI, STRING1 ; SI PTS TO STRING1
LEA DI, STRING2 ; DI PTS TO STRING2
MOVS STRING4, STRING3
```

Even though the specified source and destination operands are STRING3 and STRING4, respectively, when MOVS is executed the first byte of STRING1 is moved to the first byte of STRING2. This is because the assembler translates MOVS STRING4, STRING3 into the machine code for MOVSB, and SI and DI are pointing to the first bytes of STRING1 and STRING2, respectively.

### Summary

- The string instructions are a special group of array-processing instructions.
- The setting of the direction flag (DF) determines the direction that string operations will proceed. If DF = 0, they proceed left to right across a string; if DF = 1, they proceed right to left. CLD makes DF = 0 and STD makes it 1.
- MOVSB moves the string byte pointed to by DS:SI into the byte pointed to by ES:DI, and SI and DI to be updated according to DF. MOVSW is the word form. These instructions may be used with the prefix REP, which causes the instruction to be repeated CX times.
- REPE and REPNE are conditional prefixes that may be used with string instructions. REPE causes the string instruction that follows to be repeated CX times as long as ZF = 1. REPNE causes the following string instruction to be repeated CX times as long as ZF = 0. REPZ and REPNZ are alternate names for REPE and REPNE, respectively.
- STOSB moves AL to the byte addressed by ES:DI, and updates DI according to DF. STOSW is the word form. STOSB may be used to read a character string into an array.
- LODSB moves the byte addressed by DS:SI into AL, and updates SI according to DF. LODSW is the word form. LODSB may be used to examine the contents of a character string.
- SCASB subtracts the byte pointed to by ES:DI from AL and uses the result to set the flags. The result is not stored, and DI is updated according to DF. SCASW is the word form; it subtracts the word pointed to by ES:DI from AX, sets the flags, and updates DI. The result is not stored. These instructions may be used to scan a string for a target byte or word in AL or AX.
- CMPSB subtracts the byte pointed to by ES:DI from the byte pointed to by DS:SI, sets the flags, and updates both SI and DI according to DF. The result is not stored. The word form is CMPSW. These instructions may be used to compare character strings alphabetically, to see if two strings are identical, or if one string is a substring of another.

The string instructions have general forms in which the operands are ~~explic~~it. The assembler uses the operands only to decide whether to code the instructions in byte or word form.

### Glossary

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>(memory) string</b> | A byte or word array |
|------------------------|----------------------|

### New Instructions

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| CLD   | LODSW | SCASW |
| CMPSW | MOVSW | STD   |
| CMPSB | MOVSB | STOS  |
| CMPSW | MOVSW | STOSB |
| LODS  | SCAS  | STOSW |
| LODSB | SCASB |       |

### String Instruction Prefixes

|      |       |      |
|------|-------|------|
| REP  | REPNE | REPB |
| REPE | REPNE | REPZ |

### Exercises

1. Suppose

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| SI contains 100h  | Byte 100h contains 10h |
| DI contains 200h  | Byte 101h contains 15h |
| AX contains 4142h | Byte 200h contains 20h |
| DF = 0            | Byte 201h contains 25h |

Give the source, destination, and value moved for each of the following instructions. Also give the new contents of SI and DI.

- a. MOVSB
- b. MOVSW
- c. STOSB
- d. STOSW
- e. LODSB
- f. LODSW

2. Suppose the following declarations have been made:

```
STRING1 DB 'FGHIJ'
STRING2 DB 'ABCDE'
DB 5 DUP (?)
```

Write instructions to move STRING1 to the end of STRING2, producing the string "ABCDEFGHIJ".

3. Write instructions to exchange STRING1 and STRING2 in exercise 2.  
 You may use the five bytes after STRING2 for temporary storage.
4. An ASCII string is a string that ends with a 0 byte; for example,

```
STR DB 'THIS IS AN ASCII STRING',0
```

Write a procedure LENGTH that receives the address of an ASCII string in DX, and returns its length in CX.

5. Use the addressing modes of Chapter 10 to write instructions equivalent to each of the following string instructions. Assume where necessary that SI already has the offset address of the source string, DI has the offset address of the destination string, and DF = 0. You may use AL for temporary storage. For SCASB and CMPSB, the flags should reflect the result of the comparison.
- MOVSB
  - STOSB
  - LODSB
  - SCASB
  - CMPSB

6. Suppose the following string has been declared:

```
STRING DB 'TH*IS* G*S* AR* B*ASTS'
```

Write instructions that will cause each "\*" to be replaced by "E".

7. Suppose the following string has been declared:

```
STRING1 DB 'T H I S I S A T E S T'
STRING2 DB ?? DUP (?)
```

Write some code that will cause STRING1 to be copied into STRING2 with the blank characters removed.

### Programming Exercises

8. A palindrome is a character string that reads the same forward or backward. In deciding if a string is a palindrome, we ignore blanks, punctuation, and letter case. For example "Madam, I'm Adam" or "A man, a plan, a canal, Panama!"
- Write a program that (a) lets the user input a string, (b) prints it forward and backward without punctuation and blanks on successive lines, and (c) decides whether it is a palindrome and prints the conclusion.
9. In spreadsheet applications, it is useful to display numbers right-justified in fixed fields. For example, these numbers are right-justified in a field of 10 characters:

```
1345
2342545
 56
```

Write a program to read ten numbers of up to 10 digits each, and display them as above.

10. A character string STRING1 precedes another string STRING2 alphabetically if (a) the first character of STRING1 comes before the first character of STRING2 alphabetically, or (b) the first  $N - 1$  characters of the strings are identical, but the  $N$ th character of STRING1 precedes the  $N$ th character of STRING2, or (c) STRING1 matches the beginning of STRING2, but STRING2 is longer.

Write a program that lets the user enter two character strings on separate lines, and decides which string comes first alphabetically, or if the strings are identical.

11. INT 21h, function 0Ah, can be used to read a character string. The first byte of the array to hold the string (the string buffer) must be initialized to the maximum number of characters expected. After execution of INT 21h, the second byte contains the actual number of characters read. Input ends with a carriage return, which is stored but not included in the character count. If the user enters more than the expected number of characters, the computer beeps.

Write a program that prints a "?"; reads a character string of up to 20 characters using INT 21h, function 0Ah; and prints the string on the next line. Set up the string buffer like this:

```
STRING LABEL BYTE
MAX_LEN DB 20 ;maximum no. of chars expected
ACT_LEN DH ? ;actual no. of chars read
CHARS DB 21 DUP (?) ;20 bytes for string
 ;extra byte for carriage
 ;return
```

12. Write a procedure INSERT that will insert a string STRING1 into a string STRING2 at a specified point.

#### *Input*

SI offset address of STRING1  
 DI offset address of STRING2  
 BX length of STRING1  
 CX length of STRING2  
 AX offset address at which to insert STRING1

#### *Output*

DI offset address of new string  
 BX length of new string

The procedure may assume that neither string has 0 length, and that the address in AX is within STRING2.

Write a program that inputs two strings STRING1 and STRING2, a nonnegative decimal integer  $N$ ,  $0 \leq N \leq 40$ , inserts STRING1 into STRING2 at position  $N$  bytes after the beginning of STRING2, and displays the resulting string. You may assume that  $N \leq$  length of STRING2 and that the length of each string is less than 40.

13. Write a procedure `DELETE` that will remove  $N$  bytes from a string at a specified point and close the gap.

***Input***

DI offset address of string

BX length of string

CX number of bytes  $N$  to be removed

SI offset address within string at which to remove bytes

***Output***

DI offset address of new string

BX length of new string

The procedure may assume that the string has nonzero length, the number of bytes to be removed is not greater than the length of the string, and that the address in SI is within the string.

Write a program that reads a string `STRING`, a decimal integer  $S$  that represents a position in `STRING`, a decimal integer  $N$  that represents the number of bytes to be removed (both integers between 0 and 80), calls `DELETE` to remove  $N$  bytes at position  $S$ , and prints the resulting string. You may assume  $0 \leq N \leq L - S$ , where  $L = \text{length of } STRING$ .

**Part Two**

## ***Advanced Topics***

# *Text Display and Keyboard Programming*

## **Overview**

One of the most interesting and useful applications of assembly language is in controlling the monitor display. In this chapter, we program such operations as moving the cursor, scrolling windows on the screen, and displaying characters with various attributes. We also show how to program the keyboard; so that if the user presses a key, a screen control function is performed; for example, we'll show how to make the arrow keys operate.

The display on the screen is determined by data stored in memory. The chapter begins with a discussion of how the display is generated and how it can be controlled by altering the display memory directly. Next, we'll show how to do screen operations by using BIOS function calls. These functions can also be used to detect keys being pressed; as a demonstration, we'll write a simple screen editor.

---

## **12.1 The Monitor**

A computer monitor operates on the same principle as a TV set. An electron gun is used to shoot a stream of electrons at a phosphor screen, creating a bright spot. Lines are generated by sweeping the stream across the screen; dots are created by turning the beam on and off as it moves.

A raster of lines is created by starting the beam at the top left corner, sweeping it to the right, then turning it off and repositioning it at the beginning of the next line. This process is repeated until the last line has been traced, at which point the beam is repositioned at the top left corner and the process is repeated.

There are two kinds of monitors: monochrome and color. A monochrome monitor uses a single electron beam and the screen shows only one color, typically amber or green. By varying the intensity of the electron beam, dots of different brightness can be created; this is called a **gray scale**.

For a color monitor, the screen is coated with three kinds of phosphors capable of displaying the three primary colors of red, green, and blue. Three electron beams are used in writing dots on the screen; each one is used to display a different color. Varying the intensity of the electron beams produces different intensities of red, green, and blue dots. Because the red, green, and blue dots are very close together, the human eye detects a single homogeneous color spot. This is what makes the monitor show different colors.

## **12.2** **Video Adapters and Display Modes**

### **Video Adapters**

The display on the monitor is controlled by a circuit in the computer called a **video adapter**. This circuit, which is usually on an add-in card, has two basic units: a **display memory** (also called a **video buffer**) and a **video controller**.

The display memory stores the information to be displayed. It can be accessed by both the CPU and the video controller. The memory address starts at segment A000h and above, depending on the particular video adapter.

The video controller reads the display memory and generates appropriate video signals for the monitor. For color display, the adapter can either generate three separate signals for red, green, and blue, or can generate a composite output when the three signals are combined. A composite monitor uses the composite output, and an RGB monitor uses the separate signals. The composite output contains a color burst signal, and when this signal is turned off, the monitor displays in black and white.

### **Display Modes**

We commonly see both text and picture images displayed on the monitor. The computer has different techniques and memory requirements for displaying text and picture graphics. So the adapters have two display modes: **text** and **graphics**. In **text mode**, the screen is divided into columns and rows, typically 80 columns by 25 rows, and a character is displayed at each screen position. In **graphics mode**, the screen is again divided into columns and

**Table 12.1** Video Adapters

| <b>Mnemonic</b> | <b>Stands For</b>          |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| MDA             | Monochrome Display Adapter |
| CGA             | Color Graphics Adapter     |
| EGA             | Enhanced Graphics Adapter  |
| MCGA            | Multi-color Graphics Array |
| VGA             | Video Graphics Array       |

rows, and each screen position is called a *pixel*. A picture can be displayed by specifying the color of each pixel on the screen. In this chapter we concentrate on text mode; graphics mode is covered in Chapter 16.

Let's take a closer look at character generation in text mode. A character on the screen is created from a dot array called a **character cell**. The adapter uses a character generator circuit to create the dot patterns. The number of dots in a cell depends on the **resolution** of the adapter, which refers to the number of dots it can generate on the screen. The monitor also has its own resolution, and it is important that the monitor be compatible with the video adapter.

### Kinds of Video Adapters

Table 12.1 lists the video adapters for the IBM PC. They differ in resolution and the number of colors that can be displayed.

IBM introduced two adapters with the original PC, the **MDA** (Monochrome Display Adapter) and **CGA** (Color Graphics Adapter). The MDA can only display text and was intended for business software, such as word processors and spread sheets, which at that time did not use graphics. It has good resolution, with each character cell being  $9 \times 14$  dots. The CGA can display in color both text and graphics, but it has a lower resolution. In text mode, each character cell is only  $8 \times 8$  dots.

In 1984 IBM introduced the **EGA** (Enhanced Graphics Adapter), which has good resolution and color graphics. The character cell is  $8 \times 14$  dots.

In 1988 IBM introduced the PS/2 models, which are equipped with the **VGA** (Video Graphics Array) and **MCGA** (Multi-color Graphics Array) adapters. These adapters have better resolution and can display more colors in graphics mode than EGA. The character cell is  $8 \times 16$ .

### Mode Numbers

Depending on the kind of adapter present, a program can select text or graphics modes. Each mode is identified by a **mode number**; Table 12.2 lists the text modes for the different kinds of adapters.

**Table 12.2 Video Adapter Text Modes**

| Mode Number | Description                                | Adapters            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 0           | 40 x 25 16-color text<br>(color burst off) | CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA |
| 1           | 40 x 25 16-color text                      | CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA |
| 2           | 80 x 25 16-color text<br>(color burst off) | CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA |
| 3           | 80 x 25 16-color text                      | CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA |
| 7           | 80 x 25 monochrome text                    | MDA, EGA, VGA       |

**Note:** For modes 0 and 2, the color burst signal is turned off for composite monitors; RGB monitors will display 16 colors.

## 12.3 Text Mode Programming

As discussed earlier, the screen in text mode is usually divided into 80 columns by 25 rows. However, a 40-column by 25-row display is also possible for the color graphics adapters.

A position on the screen may be located by giving its (column, row) coordinates. The upper left corner has coordinate (0,0); for a  $80 \times 25$  display, rows are 0-24 and columns are 0-79. Table 12.3 gives the coordinates of some screen positions.

The character displayed at a screen position is specified by the contents of a word in the display memory. The low byte of the word contains the character's ASCII code; the high byte contains its **attribute**, which tells how the character will be displayed (its color, whether it is blinking; underlined, and so on). Actually, all 256 byte combinations have display characters (see Appendix A). Attributes are discussed later.

### Display Pages

For the MDA, the display memory can hold one screenful of data. The graphics adapters, however, can store several screens of text data. This is because graphics display requires more memory, so the memory unit in a graphics adapter is bigger. To fully use the display memory, a graphics adapter divides its display memory into **display pages**. One page can hold the data for one screen. The pages are numbered, starting with 0; the number of pages available depends on the adapter and the mode selected. If more than one page is available, the program can display one page while updating another one.

Table 12.4 shows the number of display pages for the MDA, CGA, EGA, and VGA in text mode. In the  $80 \times 25$  text mode, each display page is 4 KB. The MDA has only one page, page 0; it starts at location B000:0000h. The CGA has four pages, starting at address B800:0000h. In text mode, the EGA and VGA can emulate either the MDA or CGA.

**Table 12.3 Some  $80 \times 25$  Screen Positions**

| Position             | Decimal |     | Hex    |     |
|----------------------|---------|-----|--------|-----|
|                      | Column  | Row | Column | Row |
| Upper left corner    | 0       | 0   | 0      | 0   |
| Lower left corner    | 0       | 24  | 0      | 18  |
| Upper right corner   | 79      | 0   | 4F     | 0   |
| Lower right corner   | 79      | 24  | 4F     | 18  |
| Center of the screen | 39      | 12  | 27     | C   |

**Table 12.4 Number of Text Mode Display Pages**

| Modes | Maximum Number of Pages |     |     |
|-------|-------------------------|-----|-----|
|       | CGA                     | EGA | VGA |
| 0-1   | 8                       | 8   | 8   |
| 2-3   | 4                       | 8   | 8   |
| 7     | NA                      | 8   | 8   |

### The Active Display Page

The **active display page** is the page currently being displayed: For  $80 \times 25$  text mode, the memory requirement is  $80 \times 25 = 2000$  words = 4000 bytes (thus the display does not use up all the 4 KB, or 4096 bytes, in the page). The video controller displays the first word in the active display page at the upper left corner of the screen (column 0, row 0). The next word is displayed in column 1, row 0. In general, the active display page is displayed on the screen row by row; this means that the screen may be considered as the image of a two-dimensional array stored in row-major order.

#### 12.3.1

#### The Attribute Byte

In a display page, the high byte of the word that specifies a display character is called the **attribute byte**. It describes the color and intensity of the character, the background color, and whether the character is blinking and/or underlined.

#### 16-Color Display

The attribute byte for 16-color text display (modes 0-3) has the format shown in Figure 12.1. A 1 in a bit position selects an attribute characteristic. Bits 0-2 specify the color of the character (foreground color) and bits 4-6 give the color of the background at the character's position. For example, to display a red character on a blue background, the attribute byte should be 0001 0100 = 14h.

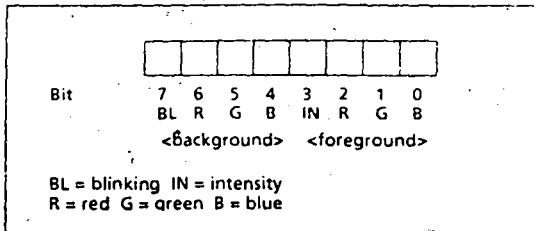
By adding red, blue, and green, other colors can be created. On the additive color wheel (Figure 12.2), a complement color can be produced by adding adjacent primary colors; for example, magenta is the sum of red and blue. To display a magenta character on a cyan background, the attribute is 0011 0101 = 35h.

If the *intensity bit* (bit 3) is 1, the foreground color is lightened. If the *blinking bit* (bit 7) is 1, the character turns on and off. Table 12.5 shows the possible colors in 16-color display. All the colors can be used for the color of the character; the background can use only the basic colors.

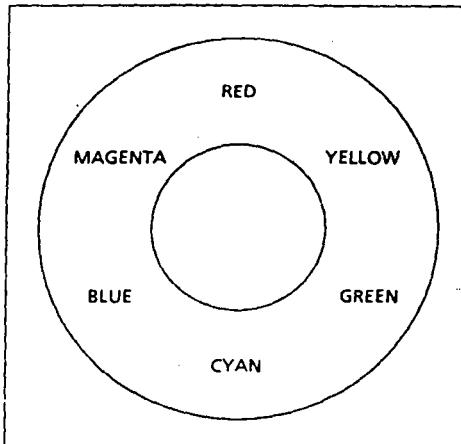
#### Monochrome Display

For monochrome display, the possible colors are white and black. For white, the RGB bits are all 1; for black, they are all 0. **Normal video** is a white character on a black background; the attribute byte is 0000 0111 = 7h. **Reverse video** is a black character on a white background, so the attribute is 0111 0000 = 70h.

Figure 12.1 Attribute Byte



**Figure 12.2 Additive Color Wheel**



As with color display, the intensity bit can be used to brighten a white character and the blinking bit can turn it on and off. For the monochrome adapter only, two attributes give an underlined character. They are 01h for normal underline and 09h for bright underline. Table 12.6 lists the possible monochrome attributes.

**Table 12.5 Sixteen-Color Text Display**

| <b>Basic Colors</b>  | <b>I R G B</b> | <b>Color</b>  |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|
|                      | 0 0 0 0        | black         |
|                      | 0 0 0 1        | blue          |
|                      | 0 0 1 0        | green         |
|                      | 0 0 1 1        | cyan          |
|                      | 0 1 0 0        | red           |
|                      | 0 1 0 1        | magenta       |
|                      | 0 1 1 0        | brown         |
|                      | 0 1 1 1        | white         |
| <b>Bright Colors</b> | <b>I R G B</b> | <b>Color</b>  |
|                      | 0 0 0 0        | black         |
|                      | 1 0 0 0        | gray          |
|                      | 1 0 0 1        | light blue    |
|                      | 1 0 1 0        | light green   |
|                      | 1 0 1 1        | light cyan    |
|                      | 1 1 0 0        | light red     |
|                      | 1 1 0 1        | light magenta |
|                      | 1 1 1 0        | yellow        |
|                      | 1 1 1 1        | intense white |

I = intensity, R = red, G = green, B = blue.

**Table 12.6 Monochrome Attributes****Attribute Byte**

| <b>Binary</b> | <b>Hex</b> | <b>Result</b>                   |
|---------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| 0000 0000     | 00         | black on black                  |
| 0000 0111     | 07         | normal (white on black)         |
| 0000 0001     | 01         | normal underline                |
| 0000 1111     | 0F         | bright (intense white on black) |
| 0000 1001     | 09         | bright underline                |
| 0111 0000     | 70         | reverse video (black on white)  |
| 1000 0111     | 80         | normal blinking                 |
| 1000 1111     | 8F         | bright blinking                 |
| 1111 1111     | FF         | bright blinking                 |
| 1111 0000     | F0         | reverse video blinking          |

**12.3.2****A Display Page Demonstration**

To display a character with attribute at any screen position, it is only necessary to store the character and attribute at the corresponding word in the active display page. The following program fills the color screen with red "A's on a blue background.

**Program Listing PGM12\_1.ASM**

```

1: TITLE PGM12_1: SCREEN DISPLAY_1
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .CODE
5: MAIN PROC
6: ;set DS to active display page
7: MOV AX,0B800h ;color active display page
8: MOV DS,AX
9: MOV CX,2000 ;80 x 25 = 2000 words
10: MOV DI,0 ;initialize DI
11: ;fill active display page
12: FILL_BUF:
13: MOV [DI],1441h ;red A on blue
14: ADD DI,2 ;go to next word
15: LOOP FILL_BUF ;loop until done
16: ;dos exit
17: MOV AH,4CH
18: INT 21H
19: MAIN ENDP
20: END MAIN

```

To display a red "A" on a blue background at a screen position, the corresponding active display page word should contain 14h in the high byte and 41h in the low byte.

The program begins by initializing DS to the video buffer segment, which is B800h for a color adapter. Loop counter CX is set to 2000—the number of words in the active display page—and DI is initialized to 0. At line 13, the program enters a loop that moves 1441h into each word of the video buffer.

After the program is run, the screen positions retain the same attributes unless another program changes it or the computer is reset.

### 12.3.3 INT 10H

Even though we can display data by moving them directly into the active display page, this is a very tedious way to control the screen.

Instead we use the BIOS video screen routine which is invoked by the INT 10h instruction; a video function is selected by putting a function number in the AH register.

In the following, we discuss the most important INT 10h functions used in text mode and give examples of their use. The INT 10h functions used in graphics mode are discussed in Chapter 16. Appendix C has a more complete list.

#### INT 10h, Function 0: Select Display Mode

|         |                                   |
|---------|-----------------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 0                            |
|         | AL = mode number (see Table 12.2) |
| Output: | none                              |

**Example 12.1** Set the CGA adapter for 80 × 25 color text display.

#### Solution:

```
XOR AH,AH ;select display mode function
MOV AL,3 ;80x25 color text mode
INT 10H ;select mode
```

when BIOS sets the display mode, it also clears the screen.

#### INT 10h, Function 1: Change Cursor Size

|         |                         |
|---------|-------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 1                  |
|         | CH = starting scan line |
|         | CL = ending scan line   |
| Output: | none                    |

In text mode, the cursor is displayed as a small dot array at a screen position (in graphics mode, there is no cursor). For the MDA and EGA, the dot array has 14 rows (0–13) and for the CGA, there are 8 rows (0–7). Normally only rows 6 and 7 are lit for the CGA cursor, and rows 11 and 12 for the MDA and EGA cursor. To change the cursor size, put the starting and ending numbers of the rows to be lit in CH and CL, respectively.

**Example 12.2** Make the cursor as large as possible for the MDA.**Solution:**

```
MOV AH,1 ;cursor size function
MOV CH,0 ;starting row
MOV CL,13 ;ending row
INT 10H. ;change cursor size
```

**INT 10h, Function 2:****Move Cursor**

Input: AH = 2  
DH = new cursor row (0-24)  
DL = new cursor column. 0-79 for 80 × 25 display,  
 0-39 for 40 × 25 display  
BH = page number  
Output: none

This function lets the program move the cursor anywhere on the screen. The page doesn't have to be the one currently being displayed.

**Example 12.3** Move the cursor to the center of the 80 × 25 screen on page 0.

**Solution:** The center of the 80 × 25 screen is column 39 = 27h, row 12 = 0Ch.

```
MOV AH,2 ;move cursor function
XOR BH,BH ;page 0
MOV DX,0C27h ;row = 12, column = 39
INT 10H. ;move cursor
```

**INT 10h, Function 3:****Get Cursor Position and Size**

Input: AH = 3  
BH = page number  
Output: DH = cursor row  
 DL = cursor column  
 CH = cursor starting scan line  
 CL = cursor ending scan line

For some applications, such as moving the cursor up one row, we need to know its current location.

**Example 12.4** Move the cursor up one row if not at the top of the screen on page 0.

**Solution:**

```

MOV AH, 3 ;read cursor location function
XOR BH, BH ;page 0
INT 10H ;DH = row, DL = column
OR DH,DH ;cursor at top of screen?
JZ EXIT ;yes, exit
MOV AH, 2 ;move cursor function
DEC DH ;row = row - 1
INT 10H ;move cursor

```

EXIT:

**INT 10h, Function 5:  
Select Active Display Page**

**Input:**     AH = 5  
              AL = active display page  
              0-7 for modes 0, 1  
              0-3 for CGA modes 2, 3  
              0-7 for EGA, MCGA, VGA modes 2, 3  
              0-7 for EGA, VGA mode 7

**Output:**   none

This function selects the page to be displayed.

**Example 12.5** Select page 1 for the CGA.

**Solution:**

```

MOV AH, 5 ;select active display page function
MOV AL, 1 ;page 1
INT 10H ;select page

```

**INT 10h, Function 6:  
Scroll the Screen or a Window Up**

**Input:**     AH = 6  
              AL = number of lines to scroll (AL = 0 means  
                   scroll the whole screen or window)  
              BH = attribute for blank lines  
              CH,CL = row, column for upper left corner of window  
              DH,DL = row, column for lower right corner of window

**Output:**   none

Scrolling the screen up one line means moving each display line up one row, and bringing in a blank line at the bottom. The previous top row disappears from the screen.

The whole screen, or any rectangular area (window) may be scrolled. AL contains the number of lines to be scrolled. If AL = 0, all the lines are scrolled and this provides a way to clear the screen or a window. CH and CL get the row and column of the upper left corner of the window, and DH and DL get the row and column of the lower right corner. BH contains the attribute for the blank lines.

**Example 12.6** Clear the screen to black for the  $80 \times 25$  display.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH, 6 ;scroll up function
XOR AL, AL ;clear whole screen
XOR CX, CX ;upper left corner is (0,0)
MOV DX, 184Fh ;lower right corner is (4Fh,18h)
MOV BH, 7 ;normal video attribute
INT 10H ;clear screen
```

**INT 10h, Function 7:  
Scroll the Screen or a Window Down**

|         |                                                                                    |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 7                                                                             |
|         | AL = number of lines to scroll (AL = 0 means<br>scroll the whole screen or window) |
|         | BH = attribute for blank lines                                                     |
|         | CH,CL = row, column for upper left corner of window                                |
|         | DH,DL = row, column for lower right corner of window                               |
| Output: | none                                                                               |

If the screen or window is scrolled down one line, each line moves down one row, a blank line is brought in at the top, and the bottom row disappears.

**INT 10h, Function 8:  
Read Character at the Cursor**

|         |                              |
|---------|------------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 8                       |
|         | BH = page number             |
| Output: | AH = attribute of character  |
|         | AL = ASCII code of character |

In some applications, we need to know the character at the cursor position. BH contains a page number, which doesn't have to be the one being displayed. After execution, AL contains the ASCII code of the character, and AH contains its attribute. We'll see an example that uses this function in a moment. Let's first look at a function that writes a character.

**INT 10h, Function 9:  
Display Character at the Cursor with Any Attribute**

**Input:** AH = 9  
 BH = page number  
 AL = ASCII code of character  
 CX = number of times to write character  
 BL = attribute of character

**Output:** none

With function 9, the programmer can specify an attribute for the character. CX contains the number of times to display the character, starting at the cursor position.

Unlike INT 21h, function 2, the cursor doesn't advance after the character is displayed. Also, if AL contains the ASCII code of a control character, a control function is not performed; instead, a display symbol is shown.

The following example shows how functions 8 and 9 can be used together to change the attribute of a character.

**Example 12.7** Change the attribute of the character under the cursor to reverse video for monochrome display.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH, 8 ;read character
XOR BH, BH ;on page 0
INT 10H ;character in AL, attribute in AH
MOV AH, 9 ;display character with attribute
MOV CX, 1 ;display 1 character
MOV BL, 70H ;reverse video attribute
INT 10H ;display character
```

**INT 10h, Function Ah:  
Display Character at the Cursor with Current Attribute**

**Input:** AH = 0Ah  
 BH = page number  
 AL = ASCII code of character  
 CX = number of times to write character

**Output:** none

This function is like function 9, except that the attribute byte is not changed, so the character is displayed with the current attribute.

**INT 10h, Function Eh:  
Display Character and Advance Cursor**

Input:      AH = 0Eh  
                AL = ASCII code of character  
                BH = page number  
                BL = foreground color (graphics mode only)

Output:     none

This function displays the character in AL and advances the cursor to the next position in the row, or if at the end of a row, it sends it to the beginning of the next row. If the cursor is in the lower right corner, the screen is scrolled up and the cursor is set to the beginning of the last row. This is the BIOS function used by INT 21h, function 2, to display a character. The control characters bell (07h), backspace (08h), line feed (0Ah), and carriage return (0Dh) cause control functions to be performed.

**INT 10h, Function Fh:  
Get Video Mode**

Input:      AH = 0Fh  
Output:     AH = number of screen columns  
                AL = display mode (see Table 12.2)  
                BH = active display page

This function can be used with function 5 to switch between pages being displayed.

**Example 12.8** Change the display page from page 0 to page 1, or from page 1 to page 0.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH,0FH ;get video mode
INT 10H ;BH = active page
MOV AL,BH ;move to AL
XOR AL,1 ;complement bit 0
MOV AH,5 ;select active page
INT 10H ;select new page
```

**12.3.4****4 Comprehensive Example**

To demonstrate several of the INT 10h functions, we write a program to do the following:

1. Set the display to mode 3 (80 × 25 16-color text).
2. Clear a window with upper left corner at column 26, row 8, and lower right corner at column 52, row 16, to red.

3. Move the cursor to column 39, row 12.

4. Print a blinking, cyan "A" at the cursor position.

If you have a color adapter and monitor, you can see the output by running the program in program listing PGM12\_2.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM12\_2.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM12_2: SCREEN DISPLAY_2
;red screen with blinking cyan 'A' in middle of screen
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.CODE

MAIN PROC
 ;set video mode
 MOV AH,0 ;select mode function
 MOV AL,3 ;80x25 color text
 INT 10H ;select mode

 ;clear window to red
 MOV AH,6 ;scroll up function
 MOV CX,081Ah ;upper left corner (1Ah,08h)
 MOV DX,1034h ;lower right corner (34h,10h)
 MOV BH,43H ;cyan chars on red background
 MOV AL,0 ;scroll all lines
 INT 10H ;clear window

 ;move cursor
 MOV AH,2 ;move cursor function
 MOV DX,0C27h ;center of screen
 XOR BH,BH ;page 0
 INT 10H ;move cursor

 ;display character with attribute
 MOV AH,09 ;display character function
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 MOV BL,0C3H ;blinking cyan char, red back
 MOV CX,1 ;display one character
 MOV AL,'A' ;character is 'A'
 INT 10H ;display character

 ;dos exit
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H

MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

## **12.4**

### **The Keyboard**

There are several keyboards in use for the IBM PC. The original keyboard has 83 keys. Now, more computers use the enhanced keyboard with 101 keys. In general, we can group the keys into three categories:

1. ASCII keys; that is, keys that correspond to ASCII display and control characters. These include letters, digits, punctuation, arithmetic and other special symbols; and the control keys Esc (escape), Enter (carriage return), Backspace, and Tab.

2. Shift keys: left and right shifts, Caps Lock, Ctrl, Alt, Num Lock, and Scroll Lock. These keys are usually used in combination with other keys.
3. Function keys: F1–F10 (F1–F12 for the enhanced keyboard), the arrow keys, Home, PgUp, PgDn, End, Ins, and Del. We call them **function keys** because they are used in programs to perform special functions.

### Scan Codes

Each key on the keyboard is assigned a unique number called a **scan code**; when a key is pressed, the keyboard circuit sends the corresponding scan code to the computer. Scan code values start with 1; Table 12.7 shows the scan codes of shift and function keys. A complete list of scan codes for the 101-key keyboard may be found in Appendix H.

You may wonder how the computer detects a combination of keys, such as the Ctrl-Alt-Del combination that resets the computer. There must be a way for the computer to know that a key has been pressed, but not yet released.

To indicate a key's release, the keyboard circuit sends another code called a **break code**; derived from the key's scan code by changing the msb to 1 (the scan code itself is also known as a **make code**). For example, the make code for the Esc key is 01h and its break code is 81h.

The computer does not store information on every key that is pressed and not yet released; it only does so for the function key Ins, and the shift keys. This information is saved as individual bits called *keyboard flags* stored

**Table 12.7 Scan Codes for Shift and Function Keys**

| Hex   | Decimal | Key         |
|-------|---------|-------------|
| 1D    | 29      | Ctrl        |
| 2A    | 42      | Left Shift  |
| 38    | 56      | Alt         |
| 3A    | 58      | Caps Lock   |
| 3B–44 | 59–68   | F1–F10      |
| 45    | 69      | Num Lock    |
| 46    | 70      | Scroll Lock |
| 47    | 71      | Home        |
| 48    | 72      | Up arrow    |
| 49    | 73      | PgUp        |
| 4B    | 75      | Left arrow  |
| 4C    | 76      | Keypad 5    |
| 4D    | 77      | Right arrow |
| 4F    | 79      | End         |
| 50    | 80      | Down arrow  |
| 51    | 81      | PgDn        |
| 52    | 82      | Ins         |
| 53    | 83      | Del         |

in the byte at 0040:0017. A program can call a BIOS routine to investigate these flags.

### **The Keyboard Buffer**

To prevent the user from typing ahead of a program, the computer uses a 15-word block of memory called the **keyboard buffer** to store keys that have been typed but not yet read by the program. Each keystroke is stored as a word, with the high byte containing the key's scan code, and the low byte containing its ASCII code if it's an ASCII key, or 0 if it's a function key. A shift key is not stored in the buffer. When a left or right shift, Ctrl, or Alt key is down, some keys will cause a combination key scan code to be placed in the keyboard buffer (see Appendix H).

The contents of the buffer are released when a program requests key inputs. The key values are passed onto the program in the same order that they come in; that is, the keyboard buffer is a queue. If a key input is requested and the buffer is empty, the system waits until a key is pressed. If the buffer is full and the user presses a key, the computer sounds a tone.

### **Keyboard Operation**

To summarize the preceding discussion, let's see what happens when you press a key that is read by the current executing program:

1. The keyboard sends a request (interrupt 9) to the computer.
2. The interrupt 9 service routine obtains the scan code from the keyboard I/O port and stores it in a word in the keyboard buffer (high byte = scan code, low byte = ASCII code for an ASCII key, 0 for a function key).
3. The current program may use INT 21h, function 1, to read the ASCII code. This also causes the ASCII code to be displayed (echoed) to the screen.

In the next section, we'll show how a program can process keyboard inputs using INT 16h. To get both the scan code and ASCII code, a program may access the keyboard buffer directly or use the BIOS routine INT 16h.

### **INT 16H**

BIOS INT 16h provides keyboard services. As with INT 10h, a program can request a service by placing the function number in AH before calling INT 16h. In what follows, we use only function 0.

|                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INT 16h, Function 0:<br/>Read Keystroke</b> |
|------------------------------------------------|

|         |                                                                                              |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 0                                                                                       |
| Output: | AL = ASCII code if an ASCII key is pressed<br>= 0 for function keys<br>AH = scan code of key |

This function transfers the first available key value in the keyboard buffer into AX. If the buffer is empty, the computer waits for the user to press key. ASCII keys are not echoed to the screen.

The function provides a way for the program to decide if a function key is pressed. If AL = 0, this must be the case, and the program can check the scan code in AH to see which key it is.

**Example 12.9** Move the cursor to the upper left corner if the F1 key is pressed, to the lower right corner if any other function key is pressed. If a character key is pressed, do nothing.

#### Solution:

```

 MOV AH, 0 ;read keystroke function
 INT 16H ;AL = ASCII code or 0,
 ;AH = scan code
 OR AL, AL ;AL = 0 (function key) ?
 JNE EXIT ;no, character key
 CMP AH, 3BH ;scan code for F1 ?
 JE F1 ;yes, go to move cursor
;other function key
 MOV DX, 184FH ;lower right corner
 JMP EXECUTE ;go to move cursor
F1:
 XOR DX, DX ;upper left corner
EXECUTE:
 MOV AH, 2 ;move cursor function
 XOR BH, BH ;page 0
 INT 10H ;move cursor
EXIT:

```

## 12.5

### A Screen Editor

To show how the function keys may be programmed, here is a program that does some of the things that a basic word processor does. It first clears the screen and puts the cursor in the upper left corner, then lets the user type text on the screen, operate some of the function keys, and finally exits when the Esc key is pressed.

#### Screen Editor Algorithm

```

Clear the screen
Move the cursor to the upper left corner
Get a keystroke
WHILE key is not the Esc key DO
 IF function key
 THEN
 perform function
 ELSE /* key must be a character key */
 display character
 END_IF
 Get a keystroke
END WHILE

```

The Esc key can be detected by checking for an ASCII code of 1Bh. To demonstrate how the function keys can be programmed, a procedure DO\_FUNCTION is written to program the arrow keys. They operate as follows:

*Up arrow.* Causes the cursor to move up one row unless it's at the top of the screen. If so, the screen scrolls down one line.

*Down arrow.* Causes the cursor to move down one row unless it's at the bottom of the screen. If so, the screen scrolls up one line.

*Right arrow.* Causes the cursor to move right one column, unless it's at the right margin. If so, it moves to the beginning of the next row. But if it's in the lower right corner, the screen scrolls up one line.

*Left arrow.* Causes the cursor to move left one column, unless it's at the left margin. If so, it moves to the end of the previous row. But if it's in the upper right corner, the screen scrolls down one line.

#### **DO\_FUNCTION Algorithm**

```

Get cursor position;
Examine scan code of last key pressed;
CASE scan code OF
 up arrow:
 IF cursor is at the top of the screen /* row 0 */
 THEN
 scroll screen down
 ELSE
 move cursor up one row
 END_IF
 down arrow:
 IF cursor is at the bottom of the screen /* row 24 */
 THEN
 scroll screen up
 ELSE
 move cursor down
 END_IF
 left arrow:
 IF cursor is not at beginning of a row /* column 0 */
 THEN
 move cursor to the left
 ELSE /* cursor is at beginning of a row */
 IF cursor is in row 0 /* position (0,0) */
 THEN
 scroll screen down
 ELSE
 move cursor to the end of previous row
 END_IF
 END_IF
 right arrow:
 IF cursor is not at end of a row
 THEN
 move cursor to the right
 ELSE /* cursor is at end of a row */
 IF cursor is in last row /* row 24 */
 THEN
 scroll screen up
 ELSE
 move cursor to the beginning of next row
 END_IF
 END_IF
END_CASE

```

Here is the program:

```

Program Listing PGM12_3.ASM
0: TITLE PGM12_3: SCREEN EDITOR
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .CODE
4: MAIN PROC
5: ;set video mode and clear screen
6: MOV AH,0 ;set mode function
7: MOV AL,3 ;80 x 25 color text
8: INT 10H ;set mode
9: ;move cursor to upper left corner
10: MOV AH,2 ;move cursor function
11: XOR DX,DX ;position (0,0)
12: MOV BH,0 ;page 0
13: INT 10H ;move cursor
14: ;get keystroke
15: MOV AH,0 ;keyboard input function
16: INT 16H ;AH=scan code,AL=ASCII code
17: WHILE_:
18: CMP AL,1BH ;ESC (exit character)?
19: JE END_WHILE ;yes, exit
20: ;if function key
21: CMP AL,0 ;AL = 0?
22: JNE ELSE_ ;no, character key
23: ;then
24: CALL DO_FUNCTION ;execute function
25: JMP NEXT_KEY ;get next keystroke
26: ELSE_:
27: MOV AH,2 ;display character
28: MOV DL,AL ;get character
29: INT 21H ;display character
30: NEXT_KEY:
31: MOV AH,0 ;get keystroke function
32: INT 16H ;AH=scan code,AL=ASCII code
33: JMP WHILE_
34: END_WHILE:
35: ;dos exit
36: MOV AH,4CH
37: INT 21H
38: MAIN ENDP
39:
40: DO_FUNCTION PROC
41: ; operates the arrow keys
42: ; input: AH = scan code
43: ; output: none
44: PUSH BX
45: PUSH CX
46: PUSH DX
47: PUSH AX ;save scan code
48: ;locate cursor
49: MOV AH,3 ;get cursor position
50: MOV BH,0 ;on page 0
51: INT 10H ;DH = row, DL = col

```

```

52: POP AX ;retrieve scan code
53: ;case scan code of
54: CMP AH,72 ;up arrow?
55: JE CURSOR_UP ;yes, execute
56: CMP AH,75 ;left arrow?
57: JE CURSOR_LEFT ;yes, execute
58: CMP AH,77 ;right arrow?
59: JE CURSOR_RIGHT ;yes, execute
60: CMP AH,80 ;down arrow?
61: JE CURSOR_DOWN ;yes, execute
62: JMP EXIT ;other function key
63: CURSOR_UP:
64: CMP DH,0 ;row 0?
65: JE SCROLL_DOWN ;yes, scroll down
66: DEC DH ;no, row = row - 1
67: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
68: CURSOR_DOWN:
69: CMP DH,24 ;last row?
70: JE SCROLL_UP ;yes, scroll up
71: INC DH ;no, row = row + 1
72: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
73: CURSOR_LEFT:
74: CMP DL,0 ;column 0?
75: JNE GO_LEFT ;no, move to left
76: CMP DH,0 ;row 0?
77: JE SCROLL_DOWN ;yes, scroll down
78: DEC DH ;row = row - 1
79: MOV DL,79 ;last column
80: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
81: CURSOR_RIGHT:
82: CMP DL,79 ;last column?
83: JNE GO_RIGHT ;no, move to right
84: CMP DH,24 ;last row?
85: JE SCROLL_UP ;yes, scroll up
86: INC DH ;row = row + 1
87: MOV DL,0 ;col = 0
88: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
89: GO_LEFT:
90: DEC DL ;col = col - 1
91: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
92: GO_RIGHT:
93: INC DL ;col = col + 1
94: JMP EXECUTE ;go to execute
95: SCROLL_DOWN:
96: MOV AL,1 ;scroll 1 line
97: XOR CX,CX ;upper left corner = (0,0)
98: MOV DH,24 ;last row
99: MOV DL,79 ;last column
100: MOV BH,07 ;normal video attribute
101: MOV AH,7 ;scroll down function
102: INT 10H ;scroll down 1 line
103: JMP EXIT ;exit procedure
104: SCROLL_UP:
105: MOV AL,1 ;scroll up 1 line
106: XOR CX,CX ;upper left corner = (0,0)

```

```

107: MOV DX,184FH ;lower rt corner (4Fh,18h)
108: MOV BH,07 ;normal video attribute
109: MOV AH,6 ;scroll up function
110: INT 10H ;scroll up
111: JMP EXIT ;exit procedure
112: EXECUTE:
113: MOV AH,2 ;cursor move function
114: INT 10H ;move cursor
115: EXIT:
116: POP DX
117: POP CX
118: POP BX
119: RET
120: DO_FUNCTION ENDP
121: END MAIN

```

The program begins by setting the video mode to 80 × 25 color text (mode 3). This also clears the screen. After moving the cursor to the upper left corner, the program accepts the first keystroke and enters a WHILE loop at line 17. AH has the scan code of the key, AL the ASCII code for a character key, and 0 for a function key. If the key is the Esc key (AL = 1BH), the program terminates. If not, the program checks for a function key (AL = 0). If so, the procedure DO\_FUNCTION is called. If not, the key must have been a character key, and the character is displayed with INT 21h, function 2. This function automatically advances the cursor after displaying the character. At the bottom of the WHILE loop (line 30), another keystroke is accepted.

Procedure DO\_FUNCTION is entered with the scan code of the last keystroke in AH. This is saved on the stack (line 47), while the procedure determines the cursor position (lines 49–51). After restoring the scan code to AH (line 52), the procedure checks to see if it is the scan code of one of the arrow keys (lines 54–61). If not, the procedure terminates.

If AH contains the scan code of an arrow key, the procedure jumps to a block of code where the appropriate cursor move is executed. DH and DL contain the row and column of the cursor location, respectively.

If the cursor is not at the edge of the screen (row 0 or 24, column 0 or 79), DH and DL are updated. To move up, the row number in DH is decremented; to move down, it is incremented. To move left, the column number in DL is decremented; to move right, it is incremented. After updating DH and DL, the procedure jumps to line 112, where INT 10h, function 2, does the actual cursor move.

For the up arrow key, if the cursor is in row 0 the procedure at line 64 jumps to code block SCROLL\_DOWN, which scrolls the screen down one line. Similarly, for the down arrow key, if the cursor is in row 24 the procedure at line 72 jumps to code block SCROLL\_UP where the screen is scrolled up one line.

For the left arrow key, if the cursor is in the upper left corner (0,0) the procedure jumps to SCROLL\_DOWN (line 77). If it's at the left margin and not row 0, we want to move to the end of the previous row. To do this, the row number in DH is decremented, DL gets 79, and the procedure jumps to line 112 to do the cursor move.

Similarly for the right arrow key, if the cursor is in the lower right corner the procedure jumps to SCROLL\_UP (line 85). If it's at the right margin and not row 24, we want to move to the beginning of the next row. To do

this, the row number in DH is incremented, DL gets 0, and the procedure jumps to line 112 to do the cursor move.

The program can be run by assembling and linking file PGM12\_3.ASM. As you play with it, its shortcomings become apparent. For example, text scrolled off the screen is lost. It is possible to type over text, but not to insert or delete text.

---

## Summary

- A video adapter contains memory and a video controller, which translates data into an image on the screen. The adapters are the MDA, CGA, EGA, MCGA, and VGA. They differ in resolution and the number of colors they can display.
- There are two kinds of display modes: text mode and graphics mode. In text mode, a character is displayed at each screen position; in graphics mode, a pixel is displayed.
- In text mode, a screen position is specified by its (column, row) coordinates. A character and its attribute can be displayed at each position.
- In  $80 \times 25$  text mode, the memory on the video adapter is divided into 4-KB blocks called *display pages*. The number of pages available depends on the kind of adapter. The screen can display one page at a time; the page being displayed is called the *active display page*.
- The display at each screen position is specified by a word in the active display page. The low byte of the word gives the ASCII code of the character and the high byte its attribute.
- The attribute byte specifies the foreground (color of the character) and background at each screen position. Other attributes are blinking and underline (MDA only).
- For monochrome display, the foreground and background colors are white (RGB bits all 1's) or black (RGB bits all 0's). Normal video attribute is 07h; reverse video is 70h.
- BIOS interrupt INT 10h routine performs screen processing. A number placed in AH identifies the screen function.
- INT 16h function 0, is a BIOS function for reading keystrokes. AH gets the scan code, and AL the ASCII code for a character key. For a function key, AH gets the scan code and AL = 0.
- A program can use INT 16h and INT 10h to program the function keys for controlling the screen display.

---

**Glossary**

|                                |                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>active display page</b>     | The display page currently being shown on the screen                                                 |
| <b>attribute</b>               | A number that specifies how a character will be displayed                                            |
| <b>attribute byte</b>          | The high byte of the word that specifies a display character; it contains the character's attribute  |
| <b>break code</b>              | Number used to indicate when a key is released—obtained by putting 1 in the msh of a key's scan code |
| <b>CGA</b>                     | Color Graphics Adapter                                                                               |
| <b>character cell</b>          | Dot array used to form a character on the screen                                                     |
| <b>display memory</b>          | Memory unit of a video adapter                                                                       |
| <b>display page</b>            | The portion of display memory that holds one screenful of data                                       |
| <b>EGA</b>                     | Enhanced Graphics Adapter                                                                            |
| <b>function keys</b>           | Keys that don't correspond to ASCII characters or shifts                                             |
| <b>graphics mode</b>           | Display mode that can show pictures                                                                  |
| <b>gray scale</b>              | Different levels of brightness in monochrome display                                                 |
| <b>keyboard buffer</b>         | A 15-word block of memory used to hold keystrokes                                                    |
| <b>make code</b>               | Same as scan code                                                                                    |
| <b>MCGA</b>                    | Multi-color Graphics Array                                                                           |
| <b>MDA</b>                     | Monochrome Display Adapter                                                                           |
| <b>mode number</b>             | A number used to select a text or graphics display mode                                              |
| <b>normal video resolution</b> | White character on a black background<br>The number of dots a video adapter can display              |
| <b>reverse video</b>           | Black character on a white background                                                                |
| <b>scan codes</b>              | Numbers used to identify a key                                                                       |
| <b>text mode</b>               | Display mode in which only characters are shown                                                      |
| <b>VGA</b>                     | Video Graphics Array                                                                                 |
| <b>video adapter</b>           | Circuit that controls monitor display                                                                |
| <b>video buffer</b>            | The memory that stores data to be displayed on the monitor; same as display memory                   |
| <b>video controller</b>        | Control unit of a video adapter                                                                      |

---

## Exercises

1. To demonstrate the video buffer, enter DEBUG and do the following:
  - a. If your machine has a monochrome adapter, use the R command to put B000h in DS; if it has a color adapter, put B800h in DS.
  - b. We can now enter data directly into the video buffer, and see the results on the screen. To do so, use the E command to enter data, starting at offset 0. For example, to display a blinking reverse video A in the upper left corner of the screen, put 41h in byte 0 and F0h in byte 1. Now enter different character:attribute values in words 2, 4, and so on, and watch the changes on the top row of the screen.
2. Write some code to do the following (assume  $80 \times 25$  monochrome display, page 0). Each part of this exercise is independent.
  - a. Move the cursor to the lower right corner of the screen.
  - b. Locate the cursor and move it to the end of the current row.
  - c. Locate the cursor and move it to the top of the screen in the current column.
  - d. Move the cursor to the left one position if not at the beginning of a row.
  - e. Clear the row the cursor is in to white.
  - f. Scroll the column the cursor is in down one line (normal video).
  - g. Display five blinking reverse video "A"s, starting in the upper left corner of the screen.
3. Assuming  $80 \times 25$  color display, write some code to turn the color of each capital letter character in row 0 to red and the local background to brown. Other characters should retain their previous foreground and background colors. Assume page 0.

### Programming Exercises

4. Write a program to
  - a. Clear the screen, make the cursor as large as possible, and move it to the upper left corner.
  - b. Program the following function keys:

Home key: Cursor moves to the upper left corner.

End key: Cursor moves to the lower left corner.

PgUp key: Cursor moves to the upper right corner.

PgDn key: Cursor moves to the lower right corner.

Esc key: Program terminates.

Any other key: Nothing happens.

5. Write a program to
  - a. Clear the screen to black, move the cursor to the upper left corner.
  - b. Let the user type his or her name.

- c. Clear the input line, and display the name vertically in column 40, starting at the top of the screen. Use  $80 \times 25$  display. For MDA, display the name in reverse video. For color display, display it in green letters on a magenta background.
6. Write a program that does the following:
  - a. Clear the screen, move the cursor to row 12, column 0.
  - b. If the user types a character, the character is displayed at the cursor position. Cursor does *not* advance.
  - c. Program the following function keys:

*Right Arrow:* The program moves cursor and character to the right one position, unless it is at the right margin. A blank appears at the cursor's previous position.

*Left Arrow:* The program moves cursor and character to the left one position, unless it is at the left margin. A blank appears at the cursor's previous position.

*Escape:* The program terminates.

*Other function keys:* Nothing happens.

7. Write a one-line screen editor that does the following:
  - a. Clear screen, and position cursor at the beginning of row 12.
  - b. Let the user type text. Cursor advances after each character is displayed unless cursor is at the right margin.
  - c. Left arrow moves cursor left except at left margin; right arrow moves cursor right except at right margin. Other arrow keys do not operate.
  - d. Ins key makes the cursor and each character to the right of the cursor (in the cursor's row) move right one position. A blank appears at the cursor's previous position. The last character in the cursor's row is pushed off the screen.
  - e. Del key causes each character to the right of the cursor (in the cursor's row) to move left one position, and a blank is brought in at the right.
  - f. Esc key terminates the program.

# 13

## Macros

---

### Overview

In previous chapters we have shown how programming may be simplified by using procedures. In this chapter, we discuss a program structure called a *macro*, which is similar to a procedure.

As with procedures, a macro name represents a group of instructions. Whenever the instructions are needed in the program, the name is used. However, the way procedures and macros operate is different. A procedure is called at execution time; control transfers to the procedure and returns after executing its statements. A macro is invoked at assembly time. The assembler copies the macro's statements into the program at the position of the invocation. When the program executes, there is no transfer of control.

Macros are especially useful for carrying out tasks that occur frequently. For example, we can write macros to initialize the DS and ES registers, print a character string, terminate a program, and so on. We can also write macros to eliminate restrictions in existing instructions; for example, the operand of MUL can't be a constant, but we can write a multiplication macro that doesn't have this restriction.

---

### 13.1

#### Macro Definition and Invocation

A **macro** is a block of text that has been given a name. When MASM encounters the name during assembly, it inserts the block into the program. The text may consist of instructions, pseudo-ops, comments, or references to other macros.

The syntax of macro definition is

```
macro_name MACRO d1,d2,...dn
 statements
 ENDM
```

Here `macro_name` is the user-supplied name for the macro. The pseudo-ops `MACRO` and `ENDM` indicate the beginning and end of the macro definition; `d1, d2, ..., dn` is an optional list of dummy arguments used by the macro.

One use of macros is to create new instructions. For example, we know that the operands of `MOV` can't both be word variables, but we can get around this restriction by defining a macro to move a word into a word.

**Example 13.1** Define a macro to move a word into a word.

**Solution:**

```
MOVW MACRO WORD1,WORD2
 PUSH WORD2
 POP WORD1
 ENDM
```

Here the name of the macro is `MOVW`. `WORD1` and `WORD2` are the dummy arguments.

To use a macro in a program, we **invoke** it. The syntax is

```
macro_name a1,a2,...,an
```

where `a1, a2, ..., an` is a list of actual arguments. When MASM encounters the macro name, it **expands** the macro; that is, it copies the macro statements into the program at the position of the invocation, just as if the user had typed them in. As it copies the statements, MASM replaces each dummy argument `di` by the corresponding actual argument `ai` and creates the machine code for any instructions.

A macro definition must come before its invocation in a program listing. To ensure this sequence, macro definitions are usually placed at the beginning of a program. It is also possible to create a library of macros to be used by any program, and we do this later in the chapter.

**Example 13.2** Invoke the macro `MOVW` to move B to A, where A and B are word variables.

**Solution:** `MOVW A, B`

To expand this macro, MASM would copy the macro statements into the program at the position of the call, replacing each occurrence of `WORD1` by `A`, and `WORD2` by `B`. The result is

```
PUSH B
POP A
```

In expanding a macro, the assembler simply substitutes the character strings defining the actual arguments for the corresponding dummy ones. For example, the following calls to the `MOVW` macro

```
MOVW A,DX and MOVW A+2,B
```

cause the assembler to insert this code into the program:

|                      |                  |                      |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <code>PUSH DX</code> | <code>and</code> | <code>PUSH B</code>  |
| <code>POP A</code>   |                  | <code>POP A+2</code> |

### **Illegal Macro Invocations**

There are often restrictions on the arguments for a macro. For example, the arguments in the MOVW macro must be memory words or 16-bit registers. The macro invocation

```
MOVW AX,1ABCH
```

generates the code

```
PUSH 1ABCH
POP AX
```

and because an immediate data push is illegal (for the 8086/8088), this results in an assembly error. One way to guard against this situation is to put a comment in the macro; for example,

```
MOVW MACRO WORD1,WORD2
;arguments must be memory words or 16-bit registers
 PUSH WORD2
 POP WORD1
ENDM
```

### **Restoring Registers**

Good programming practice requires that a procedure should restore the registers it uses, unless they contain output values. The same is usually true for macros. As an example, the following macro exchanges two memory words. Because it uses AX to perform the exchange, this register is restored.

```
XCH MACRO WORD1,WORD2
 PUSH AX
 MOV AX,WORD1
 XCHG AX,WORD2
 MOV WORD1,AX
 POP AX
ENDM
```

### **Macro Expansion in the .LST File**

The .LST file is one of the files that can be generated when a program is assembled (see Appendix D). It shows assembly code and the corresponding machine code, addresses of variables, and other information about the program. The .LST file also shows how macros are expanded. To demonstrate this, the following program contains the MOVW macro and two invocations:

#### **Program Listing PGM13\_1.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM13_1: MACRO DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
MOVW MACRO WORD1,WORD2
 PUSH WORD2
 POP WORD1
ENDM
.STACK 100H
.DATA
A DW 1,2
B DW 3
.CODE
```

```

MAIN PROC
 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS, AX
 MOVW A, DX
 MOVW A+2, B
;dos exit
 MOV AH, 4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

Figure 13.1 shows file PGM13\_1.LST. In this file, MASM prints the macro invocations, followed by their expansions (shown in boldface). The digit 1 that appears on each line of the expansions means these macros were invoked at the “top level”; that is, by the program itself. We will show later that a macro may invoke another macro.

**Figure 13.1 PGM 13\_1.LST**

```

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
1/18/92 00:03:08
PGM13_1: MACRO DEMO
Page 1-1
TITLE PGM13_1: MACRO DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
MOVW MACRO WORD1,WORD2
PUSH WORD2
POP WORD1
ENDM
.STACK 100H
.DATA
0000 0001 0002
0004 0003
.CODE
MAIN PROC
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX
MOVW A, DX
PUSH DX
POP A
MOVW A+2, B
PUSH B
POP A+2
;dos exit
0012 B4 4C
0014 CD 21
0016
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
1/18/92 00:03:08
PGM13_1: MACRO DEMO
Macros:
Symbols-1

```

**Figure 13.1 PGM13\_1.LST**

(Continued)

| Name                                    | Length | Align   | Combine | Class   |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| MOVW                                    |        |         |         | 2       |
| <b>Segments and Groups:</b>             |        |         |         |         |
| Name                                    | Length | Align   | Combine | Class   |
| DGROUP                                  |        |         |         | GROUP   |
| _DATA                                   | 0006   | WORD    | PUBLIC  | 'DATA'  |
| STACK                                   | 0100   | PARA    | STACK   | 'STACK' |
| TEXT                                    | 0016   | WORD    | PUBLIC  | 'CODE'  |
| <b>Symbols:</b>                         |        |         |         |         |
| Name                                    | Type   | Value   | Attr    |         |
| A                                       | L WORD | 0000    | _DATA   |         |
| B                                       | L WORD | 0004    | _DATA   |         |
| MAIN                                    | N PROC | 0000    | TEXT    |         |
| Length = 0016                           |        |         |         |         |
| @CODE                                   | TEXT   |         | TEXT    |         |
| @CODESIZE                               | TEXT   | 0       |         |         |
| @CPU                                    | TEXT   | 0101h   |         |         |
| @DATASIZE                               | TEXT   | 0       |         |         |
| @FILENAME                               | TEXT   | PGM13_1 |         |         |
| @VERSION                                | TEXT   | 510     |         |         |
| 21 Source Lines                         |        |         |         |         |
| 25 Total Lines                          |        |         |         |         |
| 21 Symbols                              |        |         |         |         |
| 47930 + 4220033 Bytes symbol space free |        |         |         |         |
| 0 Warning Errors                        |        |         |         |         |
| 0 Severe Errors                         |        |         |         |         |

**.LST File Options**

Three assembler directives govern how macro expansions appear in the LST file. These directives pertain to the macros that follow them in the program.

1. After **.SALL** (suppress all), the assembly code in a macro expansion is not listed. You might want to use this option for large macros, or, if there are a lot of macro invocations.
2. After **.XALL**, only those source lines that generate code or data are listed. For example, comment lines are not listed. This is the default option.
3. After **.LALL** (list all), all source lines are listed, except those beginning with a double semicolon (;;) .

These directives do not affect the machine code generated in the macro invocations; only the way the macro expansion appear in the .LST file.

**Example 13.3** Suppose the MOVW macro is rewritten as follows:

```
MOVW MACRO WORD1,WORD2
;moves source to destination
;uses the stack
 PUSH WORD2
 POP WORD1
ENDM
```

Show how the following macro invocations would appear in a .LST file

```
.XALL
 MOVW DS,CS
.LALL
 MOVW P,Q
.SALL
 MOVW AX,[SI]
```

**Solution:**

```
.XALL
 MOVW DS,CS
 PUSH CS
 POP DS
.LALL
 MOVW P,Q
 ;moves source to destination
 PUSH Q
 POP P
.SALL
 MOVW AX,[SI]
```

#### Finding Assembly Errors

If MASM finds an error during macro expansion, it indicates an error at the point of the macro invocation; however, it's more likely that the problem is within the macro itself. To find where the mistake really is, you need to inspect the macro expansion in the .LST file. The .LST file is especially helpful if you have a macro that invokes other macros (see discussion later).

## 13.2

### Local Labels

A macro with a loop or decision structure contains one or more labels. If such a macro is invoked more than once in a program, a duplicate label appears, resulting in an assembly error. This problem can be avoided by using **local labels** in the macro. To declare them, we use the **LOCAL** pseudo-op, whose syntax is

```
LOCAL list_of_labels
```

where `list_of_labels` is a list of labels, separated by commas. Every time the macro is expanded, MASM assigns different symbols to the labels in the list. The LOCAL directive must appear on the next line after the MACRO statement; not even a comment can precede it.

**Example 13.4** Write a macro to place the largest of two words in AX.

**Solution:**

```
GET_BIG MACRO WORD1,WORD2
 LOCAL
 MOV AX,WORD1
 CMP AX,WORD2
 JG EXIT
 MOV AX,WORD2
EXIT:
ENDM
```

Now suppose that FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD are word variables. A macro invocation of the form

`GET_BIG FIRST,SECOND`  
expands as follows:

```
MOV AX,FIRST
CMP AX,SECOND
JG ??0000
MOV AX,SECOND
??0000:
```

A later call of the form

`GET_BIG SECOND,THIRD`  
expands to this code:

```
MOV AX,SECOND
CMP AX,THIRD
JG ??0001
MOV AX,THIRD
??0001:
```

Subsequent invocations of this macro or to other macros with local labels causes MASM to insert labels ??0002, ??0003, and so on into the program. These labels are unique and not likely to conflict with ones the user would choose.

### 13.3

#### Macros that Invoke Other Macros

A macro may invoke another macro. Suppose, for example, we have two macros that save and restore three registers:

|           |       |          |              |       |          |
|-----------|-------|----------|--------------|-------|----------|
| SAVE_REGS | MACRO | R1,R2,R3 | RESTORE_REGS | MACRO | S1,S2,S3 |
|           | PUSH  | R1       |              | POP   | S1       |
|           | PUSH  | R2       |              | POP   | S2       |
|           | PUSH  | R3       |              | POP   | S3       |
|           | ENDM  |          |              | ENDM  |          |

These macros are invoked by the macro in the following example.

**Example 13.5** Write a macro to copy a string. Use the `SAVE_REGS` and `RESTORE_REGS` macros.

**Solution:**

```
COPY MACRO SOURCE, DESTINATION, LENGTH
 SAVE_REGS CX, SI, DI
 LEA SI, SOURCE
 LEA DI, DESTINATION
 CLD
 MOV CX, LENGTH
 REP MOVSB
 RESTORE_REGS DI, SI, CX
 ENDM
```

If MASM encounters the macro invocation

```
COPY STRING1, STRING2, 15
```

it will copy the following code into the program:

```
PUSH CX
PUSH SI
PUSH DI
LEA SI, STRING1
LEA DI, STRING2
CLD
MOV CX, 15
REP MOVSB
POP DI
POP SI
POP CX
```

*Note:* A macro may invoke itself; such macros are called *recursive macros*. They are not discussed in this book.

## 13.4 A Macro Library

The macros that a program invokes may be contained in a separate file. This makes it possible to create a library file of useful macros. For example, suppose the file's name is `MACROS`, on a disk in drive A. When MASM encounters the pseudo-op

```
INCLUDE A:MACROS
```

in a program, it copies all the macro definitions from the file `MACROS` into the program at the position of the `INCLUDE` statement (*note:* the `INCLUDE` directive was discussed in section 9.5). The `INCLUDE` statement may appear anywhere in the program, as long as it precedes the invocations of its macros.

### *The IF1 Conditional*

If a macro library is included in a program, all its macro definitions will appear in the `.LST` file, even if they're not invoked in the program. To prevent this, we can insert the following:

```
IF1
INCLUDE MACROS
ENDIF
```

Here, IF1 and ENDIF are pseudo-ops. The IF1 directive causes the assembler to access the MACROS file during the first assembly pass, when macros are expanded, but not during the second pass, when the .LST file is created.

*Note:* Other conditional pseudo-ops are discussed in section 13.6.

### **Examples of Useful Macros**

The following are examples of macros that are useful to have in a macro library file.

**Example 13.6** Write a macro to return to DOS.

#### **Solution:**

```
DOS_RTN MACRO
MOV AH, 4CH
INT 21H
ENDM
```

The macro invocation is

```
DOS_RTN
```

**Example 13.7** Write a macro to execute a carriage return and line feed.

#### **Solution:**

```
NEW_LINE MACRO
MOV AH, 2
MOV DL, ODH
INT 21H
MOV DL, OAH
INT 21H
ENDM
```

The macro invocation is

```
NEW_LINE
```

The next example is one of the more interesting macros.

**Example 13.8** Write a macro to display a character string. The string is the macro parameter.

#### **Solution:**

```
DISP_STR MACRO STRING
LOCAL START, MSG
; save registers
PUSH AX
PUSH DX
PUSH DS
JMP START
```

```

MSG DB STRING,'$'
START:
 MOV AX,CS
 MOV DS,AX ;set DS to code segment
 MOV AH,9
 LEA DX, MSG
 INT 21H
;restore registers
 POP DS
 POP DX
 POP AX
 ENDM

```

**Sample invocation:**

```
DISP_STR 'this is a string'
```

When this macro is invoked, the string parameter replaces the dummy parameter STRING. Because the string is being stored in the code segment, CS must be moved to DS; this takes two instructions, because a direct move between segment registers is forbidden.

***Including a Macro Library***

The preceding macros have been placed in file MACROS on the student disk. They are used in the following program, which displays a message, goes to a new line, and displays another message.

```

Program Listing PGM13_2.ASM
TITLE PGM13_2: MACRO DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
IF1
INCLUDE MACROS
ENDIF
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 DISP_STR 'this is the first line'
 NEW_LINE
 DISP_STR 'and this is the second line'
 DOS_RTN
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

***Sample execution:***

```

C>PGM13_2
this is the first line
and this is the second line

```

The macro expansions are shown in file PGM13\_2.LST (Figure 13.2). To save space, the machine code has been edited out.

Figure 13.2 PGM13\_2.LST.

```

TITLE PGM13_2: MACRO DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.CODE
MAIN PROC
DISP_STR 'this is the first line'
 1 PUSH AX
 1 PUSH DX
 1 PUSH DS
 1 JMP ??0000
 1 ??0001 DB 'this is the
 first line','
 $'
 1 ??0000: MOV AX,CS
 1 MOV DS,AX ;set DX to
code segment
 1 MOV AH,9
 1 LEA DX, ??0001
 1 INT 21H
 1 POP DS
 1 POP DX
 1 POP AX
NEW_LINE MOV AH,2
 1 MOV DL,0DH
 1 INT 21H
 1 MOV DL,0AH
 1 INT 21H
DISP_STR 'and this is the second line '
 1 PUSH AX
 1 PUSH DX
 1 PUSH DS
 1 JMP ??0002
 1 ??0003 DB 'and this is the
second line ','$'
 1 ??0002: MOV AX,CS
 1 MOV DS,AX ;set DX to
code segment
 1 MOV AH,9
 1 LEA DX, ??0003
 1 INT 21H
 1 POP DS
 1 POP DX
 1 POP AX
DOS_RTN MOV AH,4CH
 1 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

**13.5****Repetition Macros**

The REPT macro can be used to repeat a block of statements. Its syntax is

```
REPT expression
statements
ENDM
```

When the assembler encounters this macro, the statements are repeated the number of times given by the value of the expression. A REPT macro may be invoked by placing it in the program at the point that the macro's statements are to be repeated. For example, to declare a word array A of five zeros the following can appear in the data segment:

```
A LABEL WORD
REPT 5
DW 0
ENDM
```

Note: The LABEL pseudo-op was discussed in section 10.2.3. MASM expands this as follows:

```
A DW 0
DW 0
DW 0
DW 0
DW 0
```

Of course, this example is trivial because we can just write

```
A DW (0)
```

Another way to invoke a REPT macro is to place it an ordinary macro, and invoke that macro.

**Example 13.9** Write a macro to initialize a block of memory to the first  $N$  integers. Then invoke it in a program to initialize an array to the first 100 integers.

**Solution:**

```
BLOCK MACRO N
 K=1
 REPT N
 DW K
 K=K+1
 ENDM
ENDM
```

Note: In this macro, we used the = (**equal**) pseudo-op. Like EQU, it can be used to give a name to a constant. The expression to the right of the equals sign must evaluate to a number. Unlike EQU, a constant defined with an = may be redefined; for example,  $K = K + 1$ . Remember, all this takes place at assembly time, rather than execution time.

To define a word array A and initialize it to the first 100 integers, we can place the following statements in the data segment:

```
A. LABEL WORD
 BLOCK 100
```

Invocation of the BLOCK macro initializes K to 1 and the statements inside the REPT are assembled 100 times. The first time, DW 1 is generated and K is increased to 2; the second time, DW 2 is generated and K becomes 3, . . . the 100th time, DW 100 is generated and K = 101. The final result is equivalent to

```
A DW 1
 DW 2
 .
 .
 .
 DW 100
```

**Example 13.10** Write a macro to initialize an  $n$ -word array to  $1!, 2!, \dots, n!$  and show how to invoke it.

#### Solution:

```
FACTORIALS MACRO N
 M = 1
 FAC = 1
 REPT N
 DW FAC
 M = M+1
 FAC = M*FAC
 ENDM
ENDM
```

To define a word array B of the first eight factorials, the data segment can contain

```
B. LABEL WORD
 FACTORIALS 8
```

Because  $8! = 40320$  is the largest factorial that will fit in a 16-bit word, it doesn't make sense to invoke this macro for larger values of  $N$ . The expansion is

```
B. DW 1
 DW 2
 DW 6
 DW 24
 DW 120
 DW 720
 DW 5040
 DW 40320
```

#### The IRP Macro

Another repetition macro is IRP (indefinite repeat). It has the form

```
IRP d, <a1,a2,...an>
 statements
ENDM
```

**Note:** The angle brackets in the above definition are part of the syntax.

When it is expanded, this macro causes the statements to be assembled n times; on the i<sup>th</sup> expansion, each occurrence of parameter d is replaced by ai.

**Example 13.11** Write macros to save and restore an arbitrary number of registers.

**Solutions:**

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| SAVE_REGS MACRO REGS | RESTORE_REGS MACRO REGS |
| IRP D,<REGS>         | IRP D,<REGS>            |
| PUSH D               | POP D                   |
| ENDM                 | ENDM                    |
| ENDM                 | ENDM                    |

To save AX,BX,CX,DX, we can write

SAVE\_REGS <AX, BX, CX, DX>

It has the following expansion:

```
PUSH AX
PUSH BX
PUSH CX
PUSH DX
```

To restore these registers, write,

RESTORE\_REGS <DX, CX, BX, AX>

## 13.6

### An Output Macro

To use the macro structures introduced so far, we write a macro HEX\_OUT that displays the contents of a word as four hex digits. The hex output algorithm, discussed in Chapter 7, is the following:

**Algorithm for Hex Output (of BX)**

```
1: FOR 4 times DO
2: Move BH to DL
3: shift DL 4 times to the right
4: IF DL < 10
5: THEN
6: convert contents of DL to a character in '0'..-'9'
7: ELSE
8: convert contents of DL to a character in 'A'..-'F'
9: END_IF
10: output character
11: Rotate BX left 4 times
12: END_FOR
```

The following listing contains the macro HEX\_OUT and a program to test it. HEX\_OUT invokes four other macros: (1) SAVE\_REGISTERS and (2) RESTORE\_REGISTERS from example 13.11; (3) CONVERT\_TO\_CHAR, which converts the contents of a byte to a hex digit character (lines 4-9 in the algorithm); and (4) DISP\_CHAR, which displays a character (line 10 in the algorithm).

**Program Listing PGM13\_3.ASM**

```

0: TITLE PGM13_3: HEX OUTPUT MACRO DEMO
1: .MODEL SMALL
2:
3: SAVE_REGS MACRO REGS
4: IRP D,<REGS>
5: PUSH D
6: ENDM
7: ENDM
8:
9: RESTORE_REGS MACRO REGS
10: IRP D,<REGS>
11: POP D
12: ENDM
13: ENDM
14:
15: CONVERT_TO_CHAR MACRO BYT
16: LOCAL ELSE_, EXIT
17: ;converts contents of BYT to a hex digit char
18: ;if
19: CMP BYT,9 ;contents <= 9?
20: JNLE LSE_ ;no, >= Ah
21: ;then
22: OR BYT,30H ;convert to digit char
23: JMP EXIT
24: ELSE_:
25: ADD BYT,37H ;convert to digit char
26: EXIT:
27: ENDM
28:
29: DISP_CHAR MACRO BYT
30: ;displays contents of BYT
31: PUSH AX
32: MOV AH,2
33: MOV DL,BYT
34: INT 21H
35: POP AX
36: ENDM
37:
38: HEX_OUT MACRO WRD
39: ;displays contents of WRD as 4 hex digits
40: SAVE_REGS <BX,CX,DX>
41: MOV BX,WRD
42: MOV CL,4 ;shift and rotate count
43: REPT 4
44: MOV DL,BH
45: SHR DL,CL ;shift right 4 times
46: CONVERT_TO_CHAR DL ;convert DL to digit char
47: DISP_CHAR DL ;display D
48: ROL BX,CL ;rotate left 4 times
49: ENDM
50: RESTORE_REGS <DX,CX,BX>
51: ENDM
52:
53: .STACK

```

```

54: .CODE
55: ;program to test above macros
56: MAIN PROC
57: MOV AX,1AF4h ;test data
58: HEX_OUT AX ;display in hex
59: MOV AH,4CH ;dos exit
60: INT 21H
61: MAIN ENDP
62: END MAIN

```

*Sample execution:*

```

C>PGM13_3
1AF4

```

To code the FOR loop in the hex output algorithm, HEX\_OUT uses a REPT ... ENDM (lines 43-49). This was done mostly for illustrative purposes; It makes the machine code of the expanded macro longer, but it has the advantage of freeing CL for use as a shift and rotate counter.

At line 46, macro CONVERT\_TO\_CCHAR is invoked to transform the contents of DL to a hex digit character. This macro has two local labels, declared at line 16. At line 47, macro DISP\_CHAR is invoked to display the contents of DL.

## 13.7 Conditionals

**Conditional pseudo-ops** may be used to assemble certain statements and exclude others. They may be used anywhere in an assembly language program, but are most often used inside macros. The basic forms are

|                                                         |                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Conditional</b><br><b>statements</b><br><b>ENDIF</b> | <b>and</b><br><b>Conditional</b><br><b>statements1</b><br><b>ELSE</b><br><b>statements2</b><br><b>ENDIF</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

In the first form, If Conditional evaluates to true, the statements are assembled; if not, nothing is assembled. In the second form, if Conditional is true, then statements1 are assembled; if not, statements2 are assembled (ELSE and ENDIF are pseudo-ops).

Table 13.1 gives the forms of the most useful conditional pseudo-ops and what is required for them to be evaluated as true.

In section 13.4, we used the conditional IF1 to include a macro library in a program. The next examples show how some of the other conditionals may be used.

**Table 13.1 Conditional Pseudo-Ops**

| <b>Form</b>         | <b>TRUE IF</b>                                                                        |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IF exp              | Constant expression exp is nonzero.                                                   |
| IFE exp             | Exp is zero.                                                                          |
| IFB <arg>           | Argument arg is missing (blank). Angle brackets are required.                         |
| IFNB <arg>          | Arg is not missing (not blank).                                                       |
| IFDEF sym           | Symbol sym is defined in the program (or declared as EXTRN).                          |
| IFIDN <str1>,<str2> | Note: The EXTRN directive is discussed in Chapter 14.<br>Sym is not defined or EXTRN. |
| IFDIF <str1>,<str2> | Strings str1 and str2 are identical. Angle brackets are required.                     |
| IF1                 | Assembler is making the first assembly pass.                                          |
| IF2                 | Assembler is making the second assembly pass.                                         |

**A Macro that Uses IF**

**Example 13.12** Write a macro to define a block of memory words with  $N$  entries, consisting of the first  $K$  integers, followed by  $N - K$  zero words, and use it to initialize an array of 10 words to values 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0, and 0.

**Solution:**

```
BLOCK MACRO N,K
 I = 1
 REPT N
 IF K+1-I
 DW I
 I = I+1
 ELSE
 DW 0
 ENDIF
 ENDM
ENDM
```

If this macro is invoked to define an array A as follows,

| A     | LABEL | WORD |
|-------|-------|------|
| BLOCK | 10,5  |      |

the expansion initializes  $N$  to 10,  $K$  to 5,  $I$  to 1, and assemble the statements inside REPT 10 times. After five passes, DW 1 . . . DW 5 are generated and  $K = 6$ . After that, since  $K + 1 - I = 5 + 1 - 6 = 0$ , the statement following ELSE—namely DW 0—is assembled. The result is equivalent to

A DW 1,2,3,4,5,0,0,0,0,0

**A Macro that Uses IFNB**

Recall from Chapter 11, exercise 9, that INT 21h, function 0AH, stores a string that the user types in the byte array whose offset address is contained in DX. The first byte of the array must contain the maximum number of characters expected. DOS fills in the next byte with the actual number of characters read.

**Example 13.13** Write a macro READ MACRO BUF,LEN that either uses INT 21h, function 0Ah, to read a string into the byte array BUF of length LEN (if both arguments are present), or uses INT 21h, function 1, to read a single character into AL (if both arguments are missing).

**Solution:**

```
READ MACRO BUF,MAXCHARS
; BUF = STRING BUFFER ADDRESS
; LEN = MAX NO. OF CHARS TO READ
IFNB <BUF>
IFNB- <LEN>
 MOV AH,0AH ;read string FCN,
 LEA DX,BUF ;DX has string ADDR
 MOV BUF,LEN ;1st byte has array size
 INT 21H ;read string
ENDIF
ELSE
 MOV AH,1 ;read char FCN
 INT 21H ;read char
ENDIF
ENDM
```

If the preceding macro is invoked by the statement

READ MSG,10

then since both arguments are present, the code

```
MOV AH,0AH
LEA DX,MSG
MOV MSG,10
INT 21H
```

is assembled. String MSG must be a declared array of at least 13 bytes (1 byte for the maximum number of characters expected, 1 byte for the actual number of characters read, 10 bytes for the characters, and 1 byte for a carriage return). If the macro invocation is

READ

then since both arguments are blank, the code following ELSE, namely

```
MOV AH,1
INT 21H
```

is assembled. If this macro is improperly invoked with only one argument—for example, READ MSG—then no code is assembled.

### The .ERR Directive

Because macros may be called in a variety of situations, it's possible they may be invoked incorrectly. The .ERR directive provides a way for the assembler to tell the user about this. If MASM encounters this directive, it displays the message "forced error", which indicates a fatal assembly error.

**Example 13.14** Write a program containing a macro to display a character. The macro should produce an assembly error if its parameter is omitted.

#### Solution:

**Program Listing PGM13\_4.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM13_4: .ERR DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
DISP_CHAR MACRO CHAR
 IFNB <CHAR>
 MOV AH, 2
 MOV DL, CHAR
 INT 21H
 ELSE
 .ERR
 ENDIF
ENDM

.CODE
MAIN PROC
 DISP_CHAR 'A' ;legal call
 DISP_CHAR ;illegal call
 MOV AH, 4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

C>MASM PGM13\_4;

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10.  
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

PGM13\_4.ASM(15): error A2089: Forced error

50050 + 418683 Bytes symbol space free  
0 Warning Errors  
1 Severe Errors

**13.8****Macros and Procedures**

Macros and procedures are alike in the sense that both are written to carry out tasks for a program, but it can sometimes be difficult for a programmer to decide which structure is best in a given situation. Here are some considerations:

***Assembly Time***

A program containing macros usually takes longer to assemble than a similar program containing procedures, because it takes time to expand the macros. This is especially true if library macros are involved.

***Execution Time***

The code generated by a macro expansion generally executes faster than a procedure call, because the latter involves saving the return address, transferring control to the procedure, passing data into the procedure, and returning from the procedure.

***Program Size***

A program with macros is generally larger than a similar program with procedures, because each macro invocation causes a separate code block to be copied into the program. However, a procedure is coded only once.

***Other Considerations***

Macros are especially suitable for small, frequently occurring tasks. Liberal use of such macros can result in source code that resembles high-level language. However, big jobs are usually best handled by procedures, because big macros generate large amount of code if they are called very often.

**Summary**

- A macro is a named block of text. It may consist of instructions, pseudo-ops, or references to other macros.
- A macro is invoked at assembly time. To expand a macro, MASM copies the macro text into the program at the position of the invocation, just as if the user had typed it in. If the macro has a dummy parameter list, actual parameters replace the dummy ones. MASM replaces any instructions by machine language code.
- An important use of macros is to create new instructions.
- Macro expansions may be viewed in a program's .LST file. Three assembler directives govern how the expansion will appear. After .SALL, the macro expansion is not listed. After .XALL, only those lines that generate source code are listed. After .LALL, all source lines are listed, except comments that are preceded by //.
- Local labels may be used within a macro. Each time the macro is invoked, a different label is generated. This gets around the problem of having duplicate labels resulting from several macro invocations.

- A macro may invoke another macro, or itself.
- A library file of macros can be created. Its macros may be used in a program if the INCLUDE pseudo-op is used.
- The REPT macro may be used to repeat a block of statements. It has a single argument that specifies the number of times to repeat the statements. It can be placed in the program at the point the statements are to be repeated, or enclosed in another macro.
- The REPT macro has no name field.
- The IRP macro may be used to repeat statements an arbitrary number of times.
- By using conditional pseudo-ops within macros, MASM can be made to assemble certain statements and exclude others.
- The ERR directive provides a way to inform the user that a macro is being incorrectly called.
- Macro and procedures each have advantages. Programs with macros usually take longer to assemble, and they generate more machine code, but execute faster. Small tasks are often best handled by macros, and procedures are better for large tasks.

### Glossary

**conditional pseudo-ops**

Pseudo-ops used to assemble certain statements and exclude others

**expand (a macro)**

When MASM encounters a macro name in a program, it replaces the macro name by its body

**invoke (a macro)**

Use the macro name in a program

**local label**

A label defined with the LOCAL pseudo-op inside a macro. Each time the macro is invoked, MASM generates a different numerical label when the local label is encountered

### New Pseudo-Ops

conditional macros  
ELSE  
ENDIF

ENDM  
.ERR  
IRP

LOCAL  
MACRO  
REPT

(\*see Table 13.1)

---

Exercises

1. Write the following macros. All registers used by the macros should be restored, except those that return results.
  - a. **MUL\_N MACRO N**, which puts the signed 32-bit product of AX and the number *N* in DX and AX.
  - b. **DIV\_N MACRO N** which divides the number in AX by the number *N* and puts the signed 16-bit quotient in AX. You may assume that *N* is not 0.
  - c. **MOD MACRO M,N**, which returns in AX the remainder after *M* is divided by *N*. Note that *M* and *N* may be 16-bit words, registers, or constants. You may assume that *N* is not 0.
  - d. **POWER MACRO N**, which takes the number in AX and raises it to the power of *N*, where *N* is a positive number. The result should be stored in AX. If the result is too big to fit in 16 bits, the macro should set CF/OF.
2. Write a macro **C\_TO\_F**, which takes an argument *C* (which represents a centigrade temperature), and converts it to Fahrenheit temperature *F* according to the formula  $F = (\frac{9}{5} \times C) + 32$ . To do the multiplication by 9 and division by 5, your macro should invoke the **MUL\_N** and **DIV\_N** macros of exercises 1(a) and 1(b). The result, truncated to an integer, is returned in AX. If overflow occurs on multiplication, CF/OF should be set.
3. Write a macro **CGD MACRO M,N** that computes the greatest common divisor of arguments *M* and *N*. Euclid's algorithm for computing the CGD of *M* and *N* is

```

WHILE N ≠ 0 DO
 M = M MOD N
 Swap M and N
END WHILE
RETURN M

```

Your macro should invoke the **MOD** macro of exercise 1(c).

4. Macros are especially useful in graphics applications. Write the following macros:
  - a. A macro **MOV\_CURSOR MACRO R;C** that moves the cursor to row *R* and column *C*.
  - b. A macro **DISP\_CHAR MACRO CHAR,ATTR** that displays character *CHAR* with attribute *ATTR* once at the cursor position.
  - c. A macro **CLEAR\_WINDOW MACRO R1,C1,R2,C2,COLOR** that clears a window with upper left corner at (*C1,R1*), lower right corner at (*C2,R2*), and attribute *COLOR*.
  - d. A macro **DRAW\_BOX MACRO R1,C1,R2,C2** that draws a box outline with upper left corner at (*C1,R1*), and lower right corner at (*C2,R2*). Use extended ASCII characters for the corners and sides.

5. Use a REPT to write the following macros:

- A macro ALT MACRO N, where  $N$  is a positive even integer, that initializes a block of  $N$  memory bytes to alternating 0's and 1's, beginning with 0. Show how the macro would be invoked to initialize a 100-byte array BYT.
- A macro ARITH MACRO B,I,N, where  $B$ ,  $I$ , and  $N$  are positive integers, that initializes a block of memory words to the following arithmetic progression:  $B$ ,  $B + I$ ,  $B + 2 \times I$  . . .  $B + (N - 1) \times I$ . Show how the macro would be invoked to initialize a 100-word array WRD whose first two elements are 10 and 12.
- A macro POWERS\_OF\_TWO MACRO N, where  $N$  is a nonnegative integer, that may be used to initialize a block of  $N$  memory words to  $1, 2, 4, 8, 16, \dots, 2^{N-1}$ . Show how the macro is invoked to initialize a 10-word array W.
- A macro BIN MACRO N, K, where  $N$  and  $K$  are nonnegative integers, that will move the binomial coefficient  $B(N, K) = N \times (N - 1) \times \dots \times (N - K + 1)$  into AX.

6. State what code, if any, would be assembled in the following macro:

```
MAC1 MACRO M
 IF M-1
 MOV AX,M
 M=M-1
 IFE M
 MOV BX,M
 ENDIF
 ENDIF
ENDM
```

a. For the macro invocation MAC1 1?

b. For the macro invocation MAC1 2?

7. State what code, if any, would be assembled in the following macro:

```
MAC2 MACRO M,K
 REPT M
 MOV AX,M
 K=K+1
 IF K-3
 MOV BX,M
 ENDIF
 ENDM
ENDM
```

a. For the macro invocation MAC2 5,1?

b. For the macro invocation MAC2 2,2?

8. The Fibonacci sequence is 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34 . . . Write a macro FIB MACRO N whose invocation will cause the instruction MOV AX,FN to be assembled, where FN is the Nth Fibonacci number. For example, the call FIB 8 would cause the instruction MOV AX,21 to be assembled.

Here is an iterative algorithm for producing the Nth Fibonacci number:

```
IF N = 1
 THEN FN = 1
ELSE
 LO = 0
 HI = 1
REPEAT N-1 TIMES
 X = LO
 LO = HI
 HI = X + LO
FN = HI
```

# 14

## ***Memory Management***

---

### **Overview**

Until now, all our programs have consisted of a code segment, a stack segment, and perhaps a data segment. If there were other procedures besides the main procedure, they were placed in the code segment after the main procedure. In this chapter, you will see that programs can be constructed in other ways.

In section 14.1, we discuss the .COM program format in which code, data, and stack fit into a single segment. .COM programs have a simple structure and don't take up as much disk space as .EXE programs, so system programs are often written in this format.

Section 14.2 shows how procedures can be placed in different modules, assembled separately, and linked into a single program. In this way they can be written and tested separately. The modules containing these procedures may have their own code and data segments; when the modules are linked, the code segments can be combined, as can the data segments.

Section 14.3 covers the full segment definitions. They provide complete control over the ordering, combination, and placement of program segments.

Section 14.4 provides more information about the simplified segment definitions that we have been using throughout the book.

The procedures we've written so far have generally passed data values through registers. Section 14.5 shows other ways for procedures to communicate.

---

### **14.1**

#### **.COM Programs**

In this section we discuss a program format in which the code, data, and stack segments coincide. This type of program is also known as a **.COM program**, because that is the extension given the run file. As you will see, the primary advantages of .COM programs are their simple structure and the

fact that they take up relatively little disk space. The disadvantages are inflexibility and limited size, because everything—code, data, and stack—must fit into the single segment.

A problem with .COM programs is where to place the data, if any, because they are in the same segment as the code. They can be put at the end of the program, but this requires use of the full segment declarations (section 14.3). We choose to place the data at the beginning of the program. Here is the form of a .COM program:

#### .COM Program Format

```

0: TITLE
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .CODE
3: ORG 100H
4: START:
5: JMP MAIN
6: ;data goes here
7: MAIN PROC
8: ;instructions go here
9: ;dos exit
10: MOV AH,4CH
11: INT 21H
12: MAIN ENDP
13: ;other procedures go here
14: END START

```

Let's look at the differences between this format and the format we've been using up till now (.EXE program format). First, there is only one segment, defined by .CODE. Because the first statement must be an instruction, the procedure begins with a JMP around the 'data'. The label START indicates the entry point to the program; this label is also the operand of the END in line 14. The reason for the ORG 100h directive is explained as follows.

#### The ORG Directive

In Chapter 4 we mentioned that when an .EXE program is loaded in memory, it is preceded by a 100h-byte information area called the *program segment prefix (PSP)*. The same is true for .COM programs, and for them, the PSP occupies the first 100h bytes of the segment.

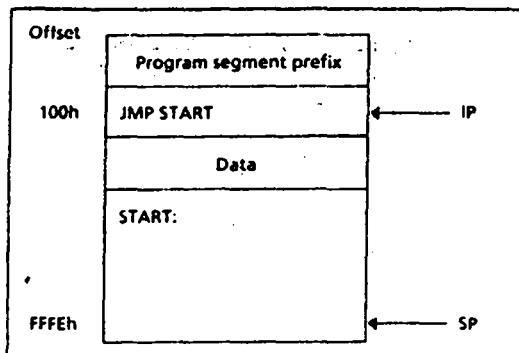
The ORG 100h directive assigns 100h to the *location counter*, which keeps track of the relative location of the statement currently being assembled. Ordinarily, the location counter is set to 0 at the beginning of a segment. ORG 100h makes it start at 100h instead.

Now suppose a .COM program has some data. Without the ORG 100h, the assembler would assign addresses to variables relative to the beginning of the segment; this would incorrectly place them in the PSP. With the ORG 100h, variables are correctly assigned addresses relative to the beginning of the program, which starts 100h bytes after the beginning of the segment.

#### .COM Program Stack

In a .COM program, the stack is in the same segment as the code and data. Unlike an .EXE program, the programmer does not have to define a stack area. When the program is loaded, SP is initialized to FFFEh, the last

**Figure 14.1 A .COM Program in Memory**



word in the segment. Because the stack grows toward the beginning of memory, there is little danger that the stack will interfere with the code, unless the stack gets very large or there is a lot of code. Figure 14.1 shows how a .COM program looks after it has been loaded in memory, if defined with the preceding format.

#### *An Example of a .COM Program*

As an example, let's rewrite PGM4\_2.ASM in .COM format. The program just displays HELLO! on the screen. To aid in the comparison, PGM4\_2.ASM is reproduced here and renumbered PGM14\_1.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM14\_1.ASM (a repeat of PGM4\_2.ASM)**

```
TITLE PGM14_1: HELLO
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
 MSG DB 'HELLO!'
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;initialize DS
 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS, AX ;initialize DS
;display message
 LEA DX, MSG ;get message
 MOV AH, 9 ;display string function
 INT 21h ;display message
;return to DOS
 MOV AH, 4CH
 INT 21h
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

Now here is the program written in .COM format.

**Program Listing PGM14\_2.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM14_2:.COM DEMO
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
.ORG 100H
START:
 JMP MAIN
MSG DB 'HELLO$'
MAIN PROC
 LEA DX,MSG ;get message
 MOV AH,9 ;display string function
 INT 21H ;display 'HELLO'
 MCV AH,4CH ;dos exit
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
END START

```

Note that because there is only one segment, the instructions

```

MCV AX,@DATA
MCV DS,AX

```

which are required for an .EXE program that has data, are not needed in a .COM program.

The assemble and link steps are the same as before:

A>C:MASM PGM14\_2;

```

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

```

```

40116 + 418713 Bytes symbol space free

```

```

0 Warning Errors
0 Severe Errors

```

A>C:LINK PGM14\_2;

```

Microsoft (R) Overlay Linker Version 3.64
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983-1988. All rights reserved.
LINK : warning L4021: no stack segment

```

This warning may be ignored since a .COM program doesn't have a separate stack segment.

For a .COM program, the .EXE file that is produced by the LINK program is not the run file. It must be converted to .COM file format by running the DOS utility program EXE2BIN.

```
A>C:\EXE2BIN\ PGM14_2\PGM14_2.COM
```

The first argument to EXE2BIN is PGM14\_2. The default extension is .EXE. The second argument PGM14\_2.COM is the output file name. The .EXE file that was created in the preceding steps is no longer needed and should be erased before running the program. To execute it, we type

```
A>PGM14_2
HELLO!
```

As mentioned before, a primary advantage of .COM programs is their small size. The size of PGM14\_1.EXE is 801 bytes vs. 22 bytes for PGM14\_2.COM. The main reason for the size discrepancy is that an .EXE file has a 512-byte header block, which contains information about the size of the executable code, where it is to be located in memory, and other data. Another reason is that an .EXE program contains a separate stack segment.

## 14.2 Program Modules

For large programs with many procedures, it is convenient to put procedures in separate files. There are two primary reasons for doing this:

1. The procedures can be coded, assembled, and tested separately, possibly by different programmers.
2. When procedures are assembled separately, they can use the same names for variables and/or statement labels. This is because the assembler allows a name to be local to a file and it will not conflict with the same name in a different file.

### *Assembly and Object Modules*

A separately-assembled procedure must be contained in an **assembly module**. This is an .ASM file consisting of at least one segment definition. The assembler takes an assembly module and produces an .OBJ file called an **object module**. The linker then combines object modules into an .EXE file that can be executed.

### *NEAR and FAR Procedures*

In section 8.3, we noted that the syntax of procedure declaration is

where type is NEAR or FAR (the default is NEAR). A procedure is NEAR if the statement that calls it is in the same segment as the procedure itself; a procedure is FAR if it is called from a different segment.

Because a FAR procedure is in a different segment from its calling statement, the CALL instruction causes first CS and then IP to be saved on the stack, then CS:IP gets the segment:offset of the procedure. To return, RET pops the stack twice to restore the original CS:IP.

You'll see in a moment that a procedure can be NEAR, even if it's assembled separately. A procedure must be typed as FAR if it's impossible for the calling statement and the procedure to fit into a single memory segment, or if the procedure will be called from a high-level language.

### **EXTRN**

When assembling a module, the assembler must be informed of names which are used in the module but are defined in other modules; otherwise these names will be flagged as undeclared. This is done by the EXTRN pseudo-op, whose syntax is

```
EXTRN external_name_list
```

Here, external\_name\_list is a list of arguments of the form name:type where name is an external name, and type is one of the following: NEAR, FAR, WORD, BYTE, or DWORD. For externally declared procedures, type would be NEAR or FAR. The types WORD, BYTE, and DWORD are used for variables.

For example, to inform MASM of the existence of a NEAR procedure PROC1 and a FAR procedure PROC2 that are defined in separate modules, we would say,

```
EXTRN PROC1:NEAR, PROC2:FAR
```

Now suppose MASM encounters the statement

```
CALL PROC1
```

MASM knows from the EXTRN list that PROC1 is in another assembly module, and allocates an undefined address to PROC1. The address is filled in when the modules are linked.

The EXTRN pseudo-op may appear anywhere in the program, as long as it precedes the first reference to any of the names in the external name list. We will place it at the beginning of the program.

### **PUBLIC**

A procedure or variable must be declared with the PUBLIC pseudo-op if it is to be used in a different module. The syntax is

```
PUBLIC name_list
```

where name\_list is a list of procedure and variable names that may be referred to in a different module. The PUBLIC pseudo-op can appear anywhere in a module but we will usually place it near the beginning of the module.

### **Linking Object Modules**

The LINK program combines object modules into a single executable machine language program. It tries to match names that are declared in EXTRN directives with PUBLIC declarations in the other modules. It combines code and data segments in different modules according to the segment declarations of these segments (see section 14.3). With the relative positions

of instructions and data known, it is able to fill in the addresses left undefined by MASM.

As an example, we will rewrite PGM4\_3.ASM, which displays a prompt, reads a lowercase letter, and converts it to upper case.

There are two assembly modules. The first module contains the main procedure; it displays a message, lets the user enter the lowercase letter, and calls a procedure CONVERT, which converts the letter to uppercase and displays it with another message. CONVERT is defined in another module.

#### **Program Listing 14\_3.ASM: First Module**

```

0: TITLE PGM14_3: CASE CONVERSION
1: EXTRN CONVERT:NEAR
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .DATA
5: MSG DB 'ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER:$'
6: .CODE
7: MAIN PROC
8: MOV AX, @DATA
9: MOV DS, AX ;initialize ds
10: MOV AH, 9 ;display string fcn
11: LEA DX, MSG ;get MSG
12: INT 21H ;display it
13: MOV AH, 1 ;read char fcn
14: INT 21H ;input char
15: CALL CONVERT ;convert to uppercase
16: MOV AH, 4CH
17: INT 21H ;DOS exit
18: MAIN ENDP
19: END MAIN

```

The first module consists of stack, data, and code segments. After initializing DS at lines 8 and 9, the program prints the message "ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER:" and calls procedure CONVERT. The existence of CONVERT as a procedure in another module is made known to the assembler by the EXTRN directive in line 1. The first module ends with an END directive in line 19, with the entry point MAIN to the program.

#### **Program Listing 14\_3A.ASM: Second Module**

```

0: TITLE PGM14_3A: CONVERT
1: PUBLIC CONVERT
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .DATA
4: MSG DB 0DH, 0AH, 'IN UPPERCASE IT IS '
5: CHAR DB -20H, '$'
6: .CODE
7: CONVERT PROC NEAR
8: ;converts char in AL to uppercase
9: PUSH BX
10: PUSH DX
11: ADD CHAR, AL ;convert to uppercase
12: MOV AH, 9 ;display string fcn
13: LEA DX, MSG ;get MSG

```

```

14: INT 21H ;display it
15: POP DX
16: POP BX
17: RET
18: CONVERT ENDP
19: END

```

The module containing CONVERT has its own data and code segments. When the modules are linked, the code segments from the two modules are combined into a single code segment; similarly, the data segments are combined into a single segment (you'll see the reason for this in section 14.3).

At line 1, CONVERT is declared PUBLIC, enabling it to be called from the first module. At line 7, procedure CONVERT is declared as type NEAR because the code segments of the two modules are combined. Because the data segments are also combined, it's not necessary to initialize DS in the second module; this was done in the first module. The module ends with an END directive; unlike the first module, the END has no operand.

After saving the registers used, CONVERT begins at line 11 by adding the lowercase letter in AL to the -20h stored in byte variable CHAR. This converts the letter to upper case (assuming a lowercase letter was entered). At lines 12-14, the procedure outputs the final message. Note that the name MSG is used in both modules.

Now let's assemble and link the modules. MASM and LINK will be in drive C, and the source files in drive A. A is the logged drive.

A>C:MASM PGM14\_3;

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10  
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

49984 + 390317 Bytes symbol space free

0 Warning Errors  
0 Severe Errors

A>C:MASM PGM14\_3A;

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10  
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

49976 + 390325 Bytes symbol space free

0 Warning Errors  
0 Severe Errors

```
C>LIB MYLIB.
```

```
Microsoft (R) Library Manager Version 3.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983-1988. All rights reserved.

Operations:
List file:MYLIB
```

When LIB asks for a list file, we reply MYLIB. This creates a listing file MYLIB, which looks like this:

```
C>Type MYLIB
```

```
CONVERT.....pgm14_3a

pgm14_3a Offset: 00000010H Code and data size: 29H
CONVERT
```

The listing shows the object module names and the procedures they contain. In this case, the only object module in the library is PGM14\_3A.OBJ, and it contains only procedure CONVERT.

For more information about the LIB utility, consult the Microsoft *Codeview and Utilities* manual.

### 14.3

## **Full Segment Definitions**

The simplified segment definitions that we have been using up till now are adequate for most purposes. In this section we consider the full segment definitions. The primary reasons for using them are as follows:

1. Full segment definitions must be used for versions of MASM earlier than version 5.0.
2. With the full segment definitions, the programmer can control how segments are ordered, combined with each other, and aligned relative to each other in memory.

### ***The Segment Directive***

The full form of the segment directive is

name SEGMENT align combine 'class'

The operands align, combine, and class are optional types, and are discussed in the next section. To end a segment, we say

name ENDS

For example, we could define a data segment called D\_SEG as follows:

```
D_SEG SEGMENT
;data goes here
D_SEG ENDS
```

Now let's look at the segment operands.

### Align Type

The *align type* of a segment declaration determines how the starting address of the segment is selected when the program is loaded in memory. Table 14.1 gives the options.

The significance of a segment's align type may be illustrated by the following example. Let SEG1 and SEG2 be segments declared like this:

|      |             |      |
|------|-------------|------|
| SEG1 | SEGMENT     | PARA |
| DB   | 11H DUP (1) |      |
| SEG1 | ENDS        |      |
| SEG2 | SEGMENT     | PARA |
| DB   | 10H DUP (2) |      |
| SEG2 | ENDS        |      |

Suppose these segments are loaded sequentially, with SEG1 being assigned segment number 1010h. The 11h bytes of SEG1 will extend from 1010:0000h to 1010:0010h. Now, because SEG2 has a PARA align type, it begins at the next available paragraph boundary, which is at 1012:0000 = 1010:0020. Here is a DEBUG display of memory:

```
1010:0000 01 01 01 01 01 01 01 01-01 01 01 01 01 01 01 01
1010:0010 01 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
1010:0020 02 02 02 02 02 02 02-02 02 02 02 02 02 02 02 02
```

We see there is a gap of Fh = 15 bytes (represented by 00 bytes) from the end of SEG1 to the start of SEG2. This gap represents wasted space, because it is not part of the data in either segment.

**Table 14.1 Align Types**

|      |                                                                                                         |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PARA | Segment begins at the next available paragraph (least significant hex digit of physical address is 0).  |
| BYTE | Segment begins at the next available byte.                                                              |
| WORD | Segment begins at the next available word (least significant bit of physical address is 0).             |
| PAGE | Segment begins at the next available page (two least significant hex digits of physical address are 0). |

PARA is the default align type.

Now suppose the segments are declared as follows:

```
SEG1 SEGMENT PARA
DB 11H DUP (1)
SEG1 ENDS
SEG2 SEGMENT BYTE
DB 10H DUP (2)
SEG2 ENDS
```

where SEG2 is given a BYTE align type. If these segments are loaded sequentially, memory will look like this:

|           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |       |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1010:0000 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01-01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 |
| 1010:0010 | 01 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02-02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 |
| 1010:0020 | 02 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00-00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |

The segments have been combined into a single memory segment with no wasted space.

### Combine Type

If a program contains segments of the same name, the *combine type* tells how they are to be combined when the program is loaded in memory. Table 14.2 gives the most frequently used choices.

The assembler indicates an error if a stack segment does not have a STACK combine type. For other segments, if the combine type is omitted the program segment is loaded into its own memory segment.

A frequent use of the PUBLIC combine type is to combine code segments with the same name from different modules into a single code segment. This means that all procedures can be typed as NEAR. Similarly, PUBLIC data segments can be combined into a single data segment. The advantage is that DS needs only to be initialized once, and does not need to be modified to access any of the data. This is what happened in PGM14\_3 when data segments were combined.

Data segments in different modules can be given the same name and a COMMON combine type so that variables in one module can share

Table 14.2 Combine Types

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PUBLIC       | Segments with the same name are concatenated (placed one after the other) to form a single, continuous memory block                                                                   |
| COMMON       | Segments with the same name begin at the same place in memory; that is, are overlaid.                                                                                                 |
| STACK        | Has the same effect as PUBLIC, except that all offset addresses of instructions and data in the segment are relative to the SS register. SP is initialized to the end of the segment. |
| AT paragraph | Indicates that the segment should begin at the specified paragraph.                                                                                                                   |

the same memory locations as variables in the other module. To show how COMMON works, suppose we declare

```
D_SEG SEGMENT COMMON
A DB 11H DUP (1)
D_SEG ENDS
```

in FIRST.ASM, and

```
D_SEG SEGMENT COMMON
B DB 10H DUP (2)
D_SEG ENDS
```

in SECOND.ASM. If the modules are assembled and linked as follows:

C>LINK FIRST + SECOND;

then they will be overlaid in memory and variables A and B will be assigned the same address. The size of the common data segment will be that of the larger segment (11h bytes). However, the values of the bytes will be those that appear in SECOND, because it is the last module mentioned on the LINK command line. Memory will look like this:

|                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0000:0000 02 02 02 02 02 02 02-02 02 02 02 02 02 02 02 02 |
| 0000:0010 01 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |

### Class Type

The *class type* of a segment declaration determines the order in which segments are loaded in memory. Class type declarations must be enclosed in single quotes.

If two or more segments have the same class, they are loaded in memory one after the other. If classes are not specified in segment declarations, segments are loaded in the order they appear in the source listing.

For example, suppose we declare

```
C_SEG SEGMENT 'CODE'
;main procedure goes here
C_SEG ENDS
```

in module FIRST.ASM, and

```
C1_SEG SEGMENT 'CODE'
;another procedure goes here
C1_SEG ENDS
```

in module SECOND.ASM and these are the only segments of class 'CODE'. When the modules are assembled and linked by

C>LINK FIRST + SECOND

then C1\_SEG will follow C\_SEG in memory. However, there may be a gap between the segments; to eliminate it, C1\_SEG could be given a BYTE align type.

### 14.3.1

#### **Form of an .EXE Program with Full Segment Definitions**

The form of an .EXE program with the full segment definitions is a little different from the way it is with simplified segment definitions. Here is the standard format:

```

S_SEG SEGMENT STACK
 DB 100H DUP (?)
S_SEG ENDS
D_SEG SEGMENT
;data goes here
D_SEG ENDS
C_SEG SEGMENT
 ASSUME CS:C_SEG, SS:S_SEG, DS:D_SEG
MAIN PROC
;initialize DS
 MOV AX,D_SEG
 MOV DS,AX
;other instructions
;dos exit
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
;other procedures can go here
C_SEG ENDS
END MAIN

```

The segment names in this form are arbitrary. The ASSUME directive is unfamiliar, so we need to explain its role here.

#### **The ASSUME Directive**

When a program is assembled, MASM needs to be told which segments are the code, data, and stack; the purpose of the **ASSUME** directive is to associate the CS, SS, DS, and possibly ES registers with the appropriate segment. With the simplified segment directives, the segment registers are automatically associated with the correct segments, so no ASSUME is needed. However, for programs with data we still need to move the data segment number into DS at run time because, as we noted in Chapter 4, DS initially contains the segment number of the PSP.

### 14.3.2

#### **Using the Full Segment Definitions**

To show how the full Segment definitions work, we'll use them to rewrite PGM14\_3.ASM and PGM14\_3A.ASM. We will do this two ways: in the first version, we'll use the default operands of the segment directives.

#### **Program Listing 14\_4.ASM: First Module**

```

0: TITLE PGM14_4: CASE CONVERSION
1: EXTRN CONVERT:FAR
2: S_SEG SEGMENT STACK
3: DB 100 DUP (0)

```

```

4: S_SEG ENDS
5: D_SEG SEGMENT
6: MSG DB 'ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER:$'
7: D_SEG ENDS
8: C_SEG SEGMENT
9: ASSUME CS:C_SEG,DS:D_SEG,SS:S_SEG
10: MAIN PROC
11: MOV AX,D_SEG
12: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
13: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
14: LEA DX,MSG ;get MSG
15: INT 21H ;display it
16: MOV AH,1 ;read char fcn
17: INT 21H ;input char
18: CALL CONVERT ;convert to uppercase
19: MOV AH,4CH
20: INT 21H ;dos exit
21: MAIN ENDP
22: C_SEG ENDS
23: END MAIN

```

**Program Listing 14\_4A.ASM: Second Module**

```

24: TITLE PGM14_4A: CONVERT
25: PUBLIC CONVERT
26: D_SEG SEGMENT
27: MSG DB ODH,0AH,'IN UPPERCASE IT IS '
28: CHAR DB -20H,'$'
29: D_SEG ENDS
30: C_SEG SEGMENT
31: ASSUME CS:C_SEG,DS:D_SEG
32: CONVERT PROC FAR
33: ;converts char in AL to uppercase
34: PUSH DS ;save DS
35: PUSH DX ;and DX
36: MOV DX,D_SEG ;reset DS
37: MOV DS,DX ;to local data segment
38: ADD CHAR,AL ;convert to uppercase
39: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
40: LEA DX,MSG ;get MSG
41: INT 21H ;display it
42: POP DX ;restore DX
43: POP DS ;and DS
44: RET
45: CONVERT ENDP
46: C_SEG ENDS
47: END

```

Note the following:

1. We chose the same name C\_SEG for the code segments in both modules, but because they don't have combine type PUBLIC, they will occupy separate memory segments when the modules are assembled and linked. This means procedure CONVERT must be typed as FAR (lines 1, 32).

2. Because the data segments are also not PUBLIC, they occupy separate memory segments. This means procedure CONVERT needs to change DS in order to access the data in the second module (lines 36, 37). We use DX (instead of AX) to move the segment number into DS, because CONVERT receives its input in AL.

After assembling and linking the modules, let's look at the .MAP file (Figure 14.3). The segments appear in the order they appear in the source listings. Because the segments were defined with the default (PARA) align type, there are gaps between them.

Now let's rewrite the preceding modules to take full advantage of the SEGMENT directives. Here are the requirements:

1. The code segments from the two programs are combined into a single segment, as are the data segments.
2. Gaps between segments are eliminated.
3. The order of the segments in the final program is: stack, data, code.

#### Program Listing 14\_5.ASM: First Module

```

0: TITLE PGM14_5: CASE CONVERSION
1: EXTRN CONVERT:NEAR
2: S_SEG SEGMENT STACK
3: DB 100 DUP (0)
4: S_SEG ENDS
5: D_SEG SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'DATA'
6: MSG DB 'ENTER A LOWERCASE LETTER:$'
7: D_SEG ENDS
8: C_SEG SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'
9: ASSUME CS:C_SEG,DS:D_SEG,SS:S_SEG
10: MAIN PROC
11: MOV AX,D_SEG
12: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
13: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
14: LEA DX,MSG ;get MSG
15: INT 21H ;display it
16: MOV AH,1 ;read char fcn
17: INT 21H ;input char
18: CALL CONVERT ;convert to uppercase
19: MOV AH,4CH
20: INT 21H ;dos exit
21: MAIN ENDP
22: C_SEG ENDS
23: END MAIN

```

Figure 14.3 PGM14\_4.MAP

| Start  | Stop   | Length | Name  | Class |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| 00000H | 00063H | 00064H | S_SEG |       |
| 00070H | 0008AH | 0001BH | D_SEG |       |
| 00090H | 000A9H | 0001AH | C_SEG |       |
| 000B0H | 000C7H | 00018H | D_SEG |       |
| 000D0H | 000E5H | 00016H | C_SEG |       |

Program entry point at 0009:0000

**Program Listing 14\_5A.ASM: Second Module**

```

0: TITLE PGM14_5A: CONVERT
1: PUBLIC CONVERT
2: D_SEG SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'DATA'
3: MSG DB 0DH,0AH,'IN UPPERCASE IT IS '
4: CHAR DB -20H,'$'
5: D_SEG ENDS
6: C_SEG SEGMENT BYTE PUBLIC 'CODE'
7: ASSUME CS:C_SEG,DS:D_SEG
8: CONVERT PROC NEAR
9: ;converts char in AL to uppercase
10: PUSH DX
11: ADD CHAR,AL ;convert to uppercase
12: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
13: LEA DX,MSG1 ;get MSG1
14: INT 21H ;display it
15: POP DX
16: RET
17: CONVERT ENDP
18: C_SEG ENDS
19: END

```

As before, we assemble and link the modules. Figure 14.4 shows the .MAP file. It shows that the data and code segments of the two modules have been combined into single segments with no gaps between them. Here's how the SEGMENT operands were used:

1. By using the same names for code and data segments in the two modules, and using a PUBLIC combine type, we formed a program consisting of only three segments. Also, gaps were eliminated by using a BYTE align type. Because the PUBLIC combine type causes segments with the same name to be concatenated, the use of class types 'CODE' and 'DATA' is actually redundant.
2. Because the data for both modules now form a single segment, it wasn't necessary to reset DS in procedure CONVERT, and CONVERT doesn't need to save and restore DS. This is the primary reason for combining data segments.
3. Because there is now only one code segment, we can give CONVERT a NEAR attribute.

Figure 14.4 PGM14\_5.MAP

| Start  | Stop   | Length | Name  | Class |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| 00000H | 00063H | 00064H | S_SEG |       |
| 00064H | 00096H | 00032H | D_SEG | DATA  |
| 00097H | 0008DH | 00027H | C_SEG | CODE  |

Program entry point at 0009:0007

## 14.4

### More About the Simplified Segment Definitions

Now that we have seen the full segment definitions, we can say more about the features of the simplified segment directives that we have been using throughout the book.

First, as we saw in section 4.7.1, a memory model must be specified when the simplified segment definitions are used. The choice of memory model depends on how many code and data segments there are. The syntax is

```
.MODEL memory_model
```

where `memory_model` is one of the choices listed in Table 14.3. Unless there is a lot of code or data, the `.SMALL` model is adequate for most assembly language programs.

Second, for the `SMALL` model, Table 14.4 gives the simplified segments, their default names and align, combine, and class types. In addition to the `.CODE`, `.DATA`, and `.STACK` segments we have been using, uninitialized data can be declared in a separate `.DATA?` segment, and data that won't be changed by the program may be placed in a `.CONST` segment. For example,

```
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE 100H
.DATA
 X DW 5
.DATA?
 Y DW
.CONST
 MSG DB 'HELLO$'
```

**Table 14.3 Memory Models**

| <i>Model</i>         | <i>Description</i>                                                                                |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>SMALL</code>   | Code in one segment<br>Data in one segment                                                        |
| <code>MEDIUM</code>  | Code in more than one segment<br>Data in one segment                                              |
| <code>COMPACT</code> | Code in one segment<br>Data in more than one segment                                              |
| <code>LARGE</code>   | Code in more than one segment<br>Data in more than one segment<br>No array larger than 64 KB      |
| <code>HUGE</code>    | Code in more than one segment<br>Data in more than one segment<br>Arrays may be larger than 64 KB |

**Table 14.4 SMALL Model Segments**

| <i>Segment</i>      | <i>Default Name</i> | <i>Align</i> | <i>Combine</i> | <i>Class</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| <code>.CODE</code>  | <code>_TEXT</code>  | WORD         | PUBLIC         | 'CODE'       |
| <code>.DATA</code>  | <code>_DATA</code>  | WORD         | PUBLIC         | 'DATA'       |
| <code>.DATA?</code> | <code>_BSS</code>   | WORD         | PUBLIC         | 'BSS'        |
| <code>.STACK</code> | <code>STACK</code>  | PARA         | STACK          | 'STACK'      |
| <code>.CONST</code> | <code>CONST</code>  | WORD         | PUBLIC         | 'CONST'      |

```
.CODE
MAIN PROC
...
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

Here the usual initializing statements

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX
```

allow the program access to the .DATA, .DATA?, and .CONST segments. This is because LINK actually combines these program segments into a single memory segment.

Third, for the .SMALL model, when .CODE is used to define code segments in separately assembled modules, these segments have the same default name (\_TEXT) and a PUBLIC combine type. Thus when the modules are linked, the code segments combine into a single code segment; likewise, segments defined with .DATA combine into a single data segment. We saw a demonstration of this in PGM14\_3.

## 14.5

### **Passing Data Between Procedures**

In section 8.3, we briefly discussed the problem of passing data between procedures. Because assembly language procedures do not have associated parameter lists, as do high-level language procedures, it is up to the programmer to devise strategies for passing data between them. So far, we have been passing data to procedures through registers.

#### 14.5.1

##### **Global Variables**

We have used the EXTRN and PUBLIC directives to show how a procedure defined in one module can be called from another. We can also use these directives to have variables defined in one module and referred to in another. Following high-level language practice, these variables are called **global variables**. An advantage of using global variables is that procedures need not use additional instructions to move data between themselves.

As an example, the following program prints a user prompt, reads two decimal digits whose sum is less than 10, and prints them and their sum on the next line. This problem was exercise 4.7.

##### **Program Listing 14\_6.ASM: First Module**

```
0: TITLE PGM14_6: ADD DIGITS
1: EXTRN ADDNOS: N$AR
2: PUBLIC DIGIT1, DIGIT2, SUM
3: MODEL SMALL
4: STACK 100H
5: DATA
6: MSG DB 'ENTER TWO DIGITS:$'
7: MSG1 DB 0DH,0AH,'THE SUM OF '
8: DIGIT1 DB ?
9: DB ' AND '
10: DIGIT2 DB ?
11: DE ' IS'
```

```

12: SUM DB -30H,'$'
13: .CODE
14: MAIN PROC
15: ;initialize DS
16: MOV AX,@DATA ..
17: MOV DS,AX .. ;initialize DS
18: ;prompt user
19: MOV AH,9 .. ;display string fcn
20: LEA DX,MSG .. ;get prompt
21: INT 21H .. ;display it
22: ;read two digits
23: MOV AH,1 .. ;input char fcn
24: INT 21H .. ;char in AL
25: MOV DIGIT1,AL .. ;store in DIGIT1
26: INT 21H .. ;char in AL
27: MOV DIGIT2,AL .. ;store in DIGIT2
28: ;add the digits
29: CALL ADDNOS .. ;add nos
30: ;display results
31: LEA DX,MSG1
32: MOV AH,9
33: INT 21H .. ;output result
34: MOV AH,4CH
35: INT 21H .. ;dos exit
36: MAIN ENDP
37: END MAIN

```

The digits and their sum are contained in variables DIGIT1, DIGIT2, and SUM, declared in the first module. In line 2, they are declared PUBLIC so that external procedure ADDNOS can have access to them.

#### Program Listing 14\_6A.ASM: Second Module

```

0: TITLE PGM14_6A: ADDNOS
1: EXTRN DIGIT1:BYTE, DIGIT2:BYTE, SUM:BYTE
2: PUBLIC ADDNOS
3: .MODEL SMALL
4: .CODE
5: ADDNOS PROC NEAR
6: ;adds two digits
7: ;input: byte variables DIGIT1, DIGIT2 in PGM14_4
8: ;output: byte variable SUM in PGM14_4
9: PUSH AX
10: MOV AL,DIGIT1
11: ADD AL,DIGIT2
12: ADD SUM,AL
13: POP "AX
14: RET
15: ADDNOS ENDP
16: END

```

DIGIT1, DIGIT2, and SUM appear in the second module's EXTRN list, line 1. The procedure adds them (actually, it adds the ASCII codes of the digit characters), then adds the sum to the -30h that has been stored in variable SUM. This puts the ASCII code of the sum in SUM.

*Sample execution:*

```
C>PGM14_5
ENTER TWO DIGITS:26
THE SUM OF 2 AND 6 IS 8
```

**14.5.2*****Passing the Addresses  
of the Data***

A second method for passing data to a procedure is to send the address of the data. This method is known as **call by reference**; it is particularly useful when dealing with arrays. Call by reference is different from **call by value** in which the actual data values are passed to the called procedure. Both methods can be used in the same procedure; for example, the `selectsort` procedure discussed in section 10.3 receives the address of the array to be sorted in SI (call by reference), and the number of elements in the array in BX (call by value).

Here is the program to add two digits using call by reference.

**Program Listing 14\_7.ASM: First Module**

```
0: TITLE PGM14_7: ADD DIGITS
1: EXTRN ADDNOS: NEAR
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .DATA
5: MSG DB 'ENTER TWO DIGITS:$'
6: MSG1 DB 0D1H,0AH,'THE SUM OF '
7: DIGIT1 DB ?
8: DB ' AND '
9: DIGIT2 DB ?
10: DB ' IS '
11: SUM DB -30H,$'
12: .CODE
13: MAIN PROC
14: ;initialize DS
15: MOV AX,@DATA
16: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
17: ;display prompt
18: MOV AH,9 ;display string function
19: LEA DX,MSG ;get prompt
20: INT 21H ;display it
21: ;read two digits
22: MOV AH,1 ;input char function
23: INT 21H ;char in AL
24: MOV DIGIT1,AL ;store in DIGIT1
25: INT 21H ;char in AL
26: MOV DIGIT2,AL ;store in DIGIT2
27: ;add them
28: LEA SI,DIGIT1 ;SI has offset of DIGIT1
29: LEA DI,DIGIT2 ;DI has offset of DIGIT2
```

```

30: LEA BX,SUM ;BX has offset of SUM
31: CALL ADDNOS ;add nos
32: ;display results
33: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
34: LEA DX,MSG1 ;DX has message
35: INT 21H ;output result
36: ;dos exit
37: MOV AH,4CH
38: INT 21H
39: MAIN ENDP
40: END MAIN

```

At lines 28–30, the addresses of the DIGIT1, DIGIT2, and SUM are passed to procedure ADDNOS in pointer registers SI, DI, and BX.

#### **Program Listing 14\_7A.ASM: Second Module**

```

0: TITLE PGM14_7A: ADDNOS
1: PUBLIC ADDNOS
2: .MODEL $MEDIUM
3: .CODE
4: ADDNOS PROC NEAR
5: ;adds two digits
6: ;input: SI = address of DIGIT1
7: ; DI = offset of DIGIT2
8: ; BX = offset of SUM
9: ;output: [BX] = sum
10: PUSH AX
11: MOV AL,[SI] ;AL has DIGIT1
12: ADD AL,[DI] ;AL has DIGIT1 + DIGIT2
13: ADD [BX],AL ;add to SUM
14: POP AX
15: RET
16: ADDNOS ENDP
17: END

```

In lines 11 and 12, ADDNOS uses indirect addressing to place the sum of digits in AL. In line 13, indirect addressing is used to add the sum to the -30h in variable SUM.

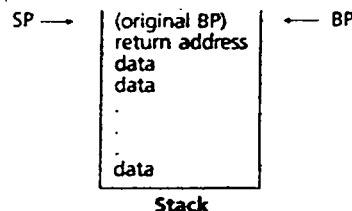
#### **14.5.3**

#### **Using the Stack**

Instead of using registers, a procedure can place data values and addresses on the stack before calling another procedure. The called procedure then uses BP and indirect addressing to access the data (recall from section 10.2.1 that if BP is used in register indirect mode, SS has the operand's segment number). This method is used by high-level languages to pass data to assembly language procedures; we use it in Chapter 17 to implement recursive procedures (procedures that call themselves).

Because the CALL instruction causes the return address to be placed on top of the stack, the called procedure begins by saving BP on the stack,

then it moves SP to BP; this makes BP point to the top of the stack. The resulting stack looks like this:



Now BP may be used with indirect addressing to access the data (we use BP because SP can't be used in indirect addressing). To return to the calling procedure, BP is popped off the stack and a RET N is executed, where N is the number of data bytes that the calling procedure pushed onto the stack. This restores CS:IP and removes N more bytes from the stack, leaving it in its original condition.

Here is the program to add two digits using this method:

#### Program Listing 14\_8.ASM: First Module

```

0: TITLE PGM14_8: ADD DIGITS
1: EXTRN ADDNOS: NEAR
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .STACK 100H
4: .DATA
5: MSG DB 'ENTER TWO DIGITS:$'
6: MSG1 DB 0DH,0AH,'THE SUM OF '
7: DIGIT1 DB ?
8: DB ' AND '
9: DIGIT2 DB ?
10: DB ' IS '
11: SUM DB -30H,'$'
12: .CODE
13: MAIN PROC
14: ;initialize DS
15: MOV AX,@DATA
16: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
17: ;display prompt
18: MOV AH,9 ;display string function
19: LEA DX,MSG ;get prompt
20: INT 21H ;display it
21: ;read two digits
22: MOV AH,1 ;input char function
23: INT 21H ;char in AL
24: MOV DIGIT1,AL ;store in DIGIT1
25: PUSH AX ;save on stack
26: INT 21H ;char in AL
27: MOV DIGIT2,AL ;store in DIGIT2
28: PUSH AX ;save on stack
29: ;add the digits
30: CALL ADDNOS ;AX has sum
31: ADD SUM,AL ;store sum
32: ;display results

```

```

33: MOV AH, 9 ;$, fdisplay string fcn
34: LEA DX, MSG1 ;DX has message
35: INT 21H ;output result
36: ;dos exit
37: MOV AH, 4CH
38: INT 21H
39: MAIN ENDP
40: END MAIN

```

At lines 24-28, the two digits are read, stored, and pushed onto the stack (because PUSH requires a word operand, we have to push AX). At line 30, ADDNOS is called to add the digits; it returns with the sum in AL, and this is added to the -30h in SUM.

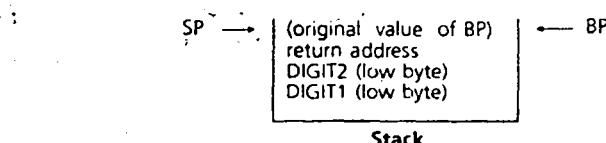
#### Program Listing 14\_8A.ASM: Second Module

```

0: TITLE PGM14_8A: ADDNOS
1: PUBLIC ADDNOS
2: .MODEL SMALL
3: .CODE
4: ADDNOS PROC NEAR
5: ;adds two digits
6: ;stack on entry: ret. addr (top), digit2, digit1
7: ;output: AX = sum
8: PUSH BP ;save BP
9: MOV BP,SP ;BP pts to stack top
10: MOV AX,[BP+6] ;AL has DIGIT1
11: ADD AX,[BP+4] ;AL has SUM
12: POP BP ;restore BP
13: RET 4 ;restore stack, exit
14: ADDNOS ENDP
15: END

```

At line 9, the stack looks like this:



DIGIT1 and DIGIT2 are in the low bytes of the words on the stack.  
After adding them, BP is popped and the procedure executes a RET 4, which removes the two data words from the stack.

---

## Summary

- In a .COM format program, stack, data, and code all fit into a single segment. A .COM program takes up much less disk space than a comparable .EXE program, but the fact that code, data, and stack must all fit into a single segment limits its versatility.
- There are two kinds of procedures, NEAR and FAR. A NEAR procedure is in the same code segment as the calling procedure, and a FAR procedure is in a different segment. When a FAR procedure is called, both CS and IP are saved on the stack.
- The EXTRN pseudo-op is used to inform the assembler of the existence of procedures and variables that are defined in another assembly module.
- A procedure must be contained in an assembly module, which consists of at least one segment definition. MASM translates an assembly module into a machine language object (.OBJ) module.
- The PUBLIC pseudo-op is used to inform the assembler that certain names a module may be referred to in another module.
- The LINK program combines object modules into an executable machine language program. It matches EXTRN declarations in object modules with PUBLIC declarations in other object modules.
- The LIB program can be used to create and maintain a file of object modules.
- The SEGMENT directive may have align, combine, and class types.
- The align type determines how the segment's starting address will be selected when the program is loaded in memory.
- The combine type determines how segments of the same name are to be combined in memory.
- If two or more segments have the same class, they are loaded sequentially in memory.
- Procedures in different modules can communicate through global variables. Other methods are call by value or call by reference; the calling procedure can implement these methods by placing data values and addresses in registers, or pushing them onto the stack.

---

## Glossary

|                          |                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>assembly module</b>   | An .ASM file consisting of at least one segment definition                                                      |
| <b>call by reference</b> | Communication with a procedure by passing it the addresses of variables containing the data the procedure needs |
| <b>call by value</b>     | Communication with a procedure by passing the procedure the actual data values it needs                         |

|                        |                                                                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>.COM program</b>    | A program in which the code, data, and stack segments coincide                                      |
| <b>global variable</b> | A variable that is declared as PUBLIC, so it can be accessed by statements in other program modules |
| <b>object module</b>   | The .OBJ file that MASM creates by assembling an assembly module                                    |

**New Pseudo-Ops**

|        |       |         |
|--------|-------|---------|
| ASSUME | EXTRN | PUBLIC  |
| .CONST | ORG   | SEGMENT |
| .DATA? |       |         |

**Exercises**

1. Suppose a program contains the lines

```
CALL PROC1
MOV AX,BX
```

and (a) instruction MOV AX,BX is stored at 08FD:0200h, (b) PROC1 is a FAR procedure that begins at 1000:0200h, and (c) SP = 010Ah.

- What are the contents of CS, IP, and SP just after CALL PROC1 is executed? What word is on top of the stack?
2. Suppose SP = 00FAh, CS = 1000h, top of stack = 0200h, next word on the stack = 08FDh. What are the contents of CS, IP and SP after the following happens:
- After RET is executed, where RET appears in a NEAR procedure.
  - After RET is executed, where RET appears in a FAR procedure.
  - After RET 4 is executed, where RET appears in a NEAR procedure.

**Programming Exercises**

3. Consider a program that does the following:

- The main procedure MAIN displays the message "INSIDE MAIN PROGRAM", calls procedure PROC1, and exits to DOS.
- PROC1 displays the message "INSIDE PROC1" on a new line, calls procedure PROC2, and returns to MAIN.
- PROC2 displays the message "INSIDE PROC2" on a new line and returns to PROC1.

Write this program in the following ways;

- As a .COM program.
- As an .EXE program in which PROC1 and PROC2 are NEAR procedures contained in separately assembled modules. Each procedure's module contains the message that the procedure displays.

- c. As an .EXE program in which the PROC1 and PROC2 are FAR procedures contained in separately assembly modules. Each procedure's module contains the message that the procedure displays.
  - d. As an .EXE program in which the three messages are contained in MAIN's module and declared PUBLIC there. The other procedures are NEAR procedures contained in separately assembled modules. These procedures refer to the appropriate messages via an EXTRN directive.
  - e. As an .EXE program in which the three messages are contained in MAIN's module. PROC1 and PROC2 are separately assembled NEAR procedures. Before calling PROC1, MAIN places the addresses of the messages "INSIDE PROC1" and "INSIDE PROC2" in SI and DI, respectively.
  - f. As an .EXE program in which the three messages are contained in MAIN's module. PROC1 and PROC2 are separately assembled NEAR procedures. Before calling PROC1, MAIN pushes the addresses of the messages "INSIDE PROC2" and "INSIDE PROC1" onto the stack.
4. The *position* of a substring within a string is the number of bytes from the beginning of the string to the start of the substring.

Write a separately assembled NEAR procedure FIND\_SUBST that receives the offset addresses of the first string in SI and the second string in DI and determines whether the second string is a substring of the first; if so, FIND\_SUBST returns its position in AX. If the second string is not a substring of the first string, the procedure returns a negative number in AX.

Write a program to test FIND\_SUBST; the testing program reads the strings, calls FIND\_SUBST, and displays the result. This problem is a variation of PGM11\_5.ASM.

# 15

## ***BIOS and DOS Interrupts***

---

### **Overview**

In previous chapters, we used the INT (interrupt) instruction to call system routines. In this chapter, we discuss different kinds of interrupts and take a closer look at the operation of the INT instruction. In sections 15.2 and 15.3, we discuss the services provided by various BIOS (basic input/output systems) and DOS interrupt routines.

To demonstrate the use of interrupts, we will write a program that displays the current time on the screen. There are three versions: the first version simply displays the time and then terminates, the second version shows the time updated every second, and the third version is a memory resident program that can be called up when other programs are running.

---

### **15.1 Interrupt Service**

#### **Hardware Interrupt**

The notion of interrupt originally was conceived to allow hardware devices to interrupt the operation of the CPU. For example, whenever a key is pressed, the 8086 must be notified to read a key code into the keyboard buffer. The general **hardware interrupt** goes like this: (1) a hardware device that needs service sends an **interrupt request signal** to the processor; (2) the 8086 suspends the current task it is executing and transfers control to an **interrupt routine**; (3) the interrupt routine services the hardware device by performing some I/O operation; and (4) control is transferred back to the original executing task at the point where it was suspended.

Some questions to be answered are how does the 8086 find out a device is signaling? How does it know which interrupt routine to execute? How does it resume the previous task?

Because an interrupt signal may come at any time, the 8086 checks for the signal after executing each instruction. On detecting the interrupt signal, the 8086 acknowledges it by sending an **interrupt acknowledge signal**. The interrupting device responds by sending an eight-bit number on the data bus, called an **interrupt number**. Each device uses a different interrupt number to identify its own service routine. The process of sending control signals back and forth is called **hand-shaking**; it is needed to identify the interrupt device. We say that a type  $N$  interrupt occurs when a device uses an interrupt number  $N$  to interrupt the 8086.

The transfer to an interrupt routine is similar to a procedure call. Before transferring control to the interrupt routine, the 8086 first saves the address of the next instruction on the stack; this is the return address. The 8086 also saves the FLAGS register on the stack; this ensures that the status of the suspended task will be restored. It is the responsibility of the interrupt routine to restore any registers it uses.

Before we talk about how the 8086 uses the interrupt number to locate the interrupt routine, let's look at the other kinds of interrupts.

### **Software Interrupt**

Software interrupts are used by programs to request system services. A **software interrupt** occurs when a program calls an interrupt routine using the INT instruction. The format of the INT instruction is

```
INT interrupt-number
```

The 8086 treats this interrupt number in the same way as the interrupt number generated by a hardware device. We have already given a number of examples of doing I/O with INT 21h.

### **Processor Exception**

There is a third kind of interrupt, called a **processor exception**. A processor exception occurs when a condition arises inside the processor, such as divide overflow, that requires special handling. Each condition corresponds to a unique interrupt type. For example, divide overflow is type 0, so when overflow occurs in a divide instruction the 8086 automatically executes interrupt 0 to handle the overflow condition.

Next we take on the address calculation for interrupt routines.

#### 15.1.1

#### **Interrupt Vector**

The interrupt numbers for the 8086 processor are unsigned byte values. Thus, it is possible to specify a total of 256 types of interrupts. Not every interrupt number has a corresponding interrupt routine. The computer manufacturer provides some hardware device service routines in ROM; these are the BIOS interrupt routines. The high-level system interrupt routines, like INT 21h, are part of DOS and are loaded into memory when the machine is started. Some additional interrupt numbers are reserved by IBM for future use; the remaining numbers are available for the user. See Table 15.1.

The 8086 does not generate the interrupt routine's address directly from the interrupt number. Doing so would mean that a particular interrupt routine must be placed in exactly the same location in every computer—an impossible

**Table 15.1 Interrupt Types**

|                          |                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| Interrupt Types 0–1Fh:   | BIOS Interrupts |
| Interrupt Types 20h–3Fh: | DOS Interrupts  |
| Interrupt Types 40h–7Fh: | reserved        |
| Interrupt Types 80h–FOh: | ROM BASIC       |
| Interrupt Types F1h–FFh: | not used        |

task, given the number of computer models and updated versions of the routines. Instead, the 8086 uses the interrupt number to calculate the address of a memory location that contains the actual address of the interrupt routine. This means that the routine may appear anywhere, so long as its address, called an **interrupt vector**, is stored in a predefined memory location.

All interrupt vectors are placed in an **interrupt vector table**, which occupies the first 1 KB of memory. Each interrupt vector is given as segment:offset and occupies four bytes; the first four bytes of memory contain interrupt vector 0. See Figure 15.1.

To find the vector for an interrupt routine, we simply multiply the interrupt number by 4. This gives the memory location containing the offset of the routine; the segment address of the routine is in the next word. For example, take interrupt 9, the keyboard interrupt routine: the offset address is stored in location  $9 \times 4 = 36 = 00024h$ , and the segment address is found in location  $24h + 2 = 00026h$ . BIOS initializes its interrupt vectors when the computer is turned on, and the DOS interrupt vectors are initialized when DOS is loaded.

**Figure 15.1 Interrupt Vector Table**

| Address | Memory words      |
|---------|-------------------|
| 003FE   | Segment of INT FF |
| 003FC   | Offset of INT FF  |
| 00006   | Segment of INT 1  |
| 00004   | Offset of INT 1   |
| 00002   | Segment of INT 0  |
| 00000   | Offset of INT 0   |

---

### 15.1.2

#### **Interrupt Routines**

Let's see how the 8086 executes an INT instruction. First, it saves the flags by pushing the contents of the FLAGS register onto the stack. Then it clears the control flags IF (interrupt flag) and TF (trap flag); the reason for this action is explained later. Next it saves the current address by pushing CS and IP on the stack. Finally, it uses the interrupt number to get the interrupt vector from memory and transfers control to the interrupt routine by loading CS:IP with the interrupt vector. The 8086 transfers to a hardware interrupt routine or processor exception routine in a similar fashion.

On completion, an interrupt routine executes an IRET (interrupt return) instruction that restores the IP, CS, and FLAGS registers.

#### **The Control Flags IF and TF**

The control flags IF and TF play an important role in the interrupt process. When TF is set, the 8086 generates a processor exception, interrupt type 1. This interrupt is used by DEBUG in executing the T (trace) command. To trace an instruction, DEBUG first sets the TF, and then transfers control to the instruction to be traced. After the instruction is executed, the processor generates an interrupt type 1 because TF is set. DEBUG uses its own interrupt 1 routine to gain control of the processor.

The IF is used to control hardware interrupts. When IF is set, hardware devices may interrupt the 8086. External interrupts may be disabled (masked out) by clearing IF. Actually, there is a hardware interrupt, called NMI (nonmaskable interrupt) that cannot be masked out.

Both TF and IF are cleared by the processor before transferring to an interrupt routine so that the routine will not be interrupted. Of course, an interrupt routine can change the flags to enable interrupts to occur during its execution.

---

## 15.2

### **BIOS Interrupts**

As indicated in Table 15.1, interrupt types 0 to 1Fh are known as BIOS interrupts. This is because most of these service routines are BIOS routines residing in the ROM segment F000h.

#### **Interrupt Types 0–7**

Interrupt types 0–7 are reserved by Intel, with types 0–4 being pre-defined. IBM uses type 5 for print screen. Types 6 and 7 are not used.

**Interrupt 0—Divide Overflow** A type 0 interrupt is generated when a DIV or IDIV operation produces an overflow. The interrupt 0 routine displays the message "DIVIDE OVERFLOW" and returns control to DOS.

**Interrupt 1—Single Step** As discussed in the last section, a type 1 interrupt is generated when the TF is set.

**Interrupt 2—Nonmaskable Interrupt** Interrupt 2 is the hardware interrupt that cannot be masked out by clearing the IF. The IBM PC uses this interrupt to signal memory and I/O parity errors that indicate bad chips.

**Interrupt 3—Breakpoint** The INT 3 instruction is the only single-byte interrupt instruction (opcode CCh); other interrupt instructions are two-byte instructions. It is possible to insert an INT 3 instruction anywhere in a program by replacing an existing opcode. The DEBUG program uses this feature to set up breakpoints for the G (go) command.

**Interrupt 4—Overflow** A type 4 interrupt is generated by the instruction INTO (interrupt if overflow) when OF is set. Programmers may write their own interrupt routine to handle unexpected overflows.

**Interrupt 5—Print Screen** The BIOS interrupt 5 routine sends the video screen information to the printer. An INT 5 instruction is generated by the keyboard interrupt routine (interrupt type 9) when the PrtSc (print screen) key is pressed.

#### **Interrupt Types 8h—Fh**

The 8086 has only one terminal for hardware interrupt signals. To allow more devices to interrupt the 8086, IBM uses an interrupt controller, the Intel 8259 chip, which can interface up to eight devices. Interrupt types 8–Fh are generated by hardware devices connected to the 8259. The original version of the PC uses only interrupts 8, 9, and Eh.

**Interrupt 8—Timer** The IBM PC contains a timer circuit that generates an interrupt once every 54.92 milliseconds (about 18.2 times per second). The BIOS interrupt 8 routine services the timer circuit. It uses the timer signals (ticks) to keep track of the time of day.

**Interrupt 9—Keyboard** This interrupt (9) is generated by the keyboard each time a key is pressed or released. The BIOS interrupt 9 routine reads a scan code and stores it in the keyboard buffer.

**Interrupt E—Diskette Error** The BIOS interrupt Eh routine handles diskette errors.

#### **Interrupt Types 10h—1Fh**

The interrupt routines 10h—1Fh can be called by application programs to perform various I/O operations and status checking.

**Interrupt 10h—Video** The BIOS interrupt 10h routine is the video driver. Details are covered in Chapters 12 and 16.

**Interrupt 11h—Equipment Check** The BIOS interrupt 11h routine returns the equipment configuration of the particular PC. The return code is placed in AX. Table 15.2 gives the interpretation of the bits returned in AX.

**Interrupt 12h—Memory Size** The BIOS interrupt 12h routine returns in AX the amount of **conventional memory** a computer has. Conventional memory refers to memory circuits with addresses below 640 K. The unit for the return value is in kilobytes.

**Table 15.2 Equipment Check**

|       |                                                                                                                                |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15–14 | number of printers installed                                                                                                   |
| 13    | = 1 if internal modem installed                                                                                                |
| 12    | = 1 if game adapter installed                                                                                                  |
| 11–9  | number of RS-232 (serial) ports installed                                                                                      |
| 8     | not used                                                                                                                       |
| 7–6   | number of floppy disk drives (if bit 0 = 1)<br>00 means 1<br>01 means 2<br>10 means 3<br>11 means 4                            |
| 5–4   | initial video mode<br>00 not used<br>01 means 40 × 25 color text<br>10 means 80 × 25 color text<br>11 means 80 × 25 monochrome |
| 3–2   | system board RAM size (for original PC)<br>00 = means 16 KB<br>01 = means 32 KB<br>10 = means 48 KB<br>11 = means 64 KB        |
| 1     | = 1 if math coprocessor installed                                                                                              |
| 0     | = 1 if floppy disk drive installed                                                                                             |

**Example 15.1** Suppose a computer has 512 KB conventional memory. What will be returned in AX if the instruction INT 12H is executed?

**Solution:** 512 = 200h, hence AX = 0200h.

**Interrupt 13h—Disk I/O** The BIOS interrupt 13h routine is the disk driver, it allows application programs to do disk I/O.

**Interrupt 14h—Communications** The BIOS interrupt 14h routine is the communications driver that interacts with the serial ports.

**Interrupt 15h—Cassette** This interrupt was used by the original PC for cassette interface and by the PC AT and PS/2 models for various system services.

**Interrupt 16h—Keyboard I/O** The BIOS interrupt 16h routine is the keyboard driver. Keyboard operations are found in Chapter 12.

**Interrupt 17h—Printer I/O** The BIOS interrupt 17h routine is the printer driver. The routine supports three functions: 0–2. Function 0 writes a character to the printer; input values are AH = 0, AL = character, DX = printer number. Function 1 initializes a printer port; input values are AH = 1, DX

**Table 15.3 Printer Status**

| <i>Bits in AH</i> | <i>Meaning</i>        |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 7                 | = 1 printer not busy  |
| 6                 | = 1 print acknowledge |
| 5                 | = 1 out of paper      |
| 4                 | = 1 printer selected  |
| 3                 | = 1 I/O error         |
| 2                 | not used              |
| 1                 | not used              |
| 0                 | = 1 printer timed-out |

printer number. Function 2 gets printer status, input values are AH = 2, DX = printer number. For all functions, the status is returned in AH. Table 15.3 shows the meaning of the bits returned in AH.

**Example 15.2** Write instructions to print a 0.

**Solution:** We use function 0 to do the printing. Because printers contain buffers for data, the 0 will not be printed until a carriage return or line feed character is sent. Thus,

```

MOV AH,0 ;function 0, print char
MOV AL,'0' ;char '0'
MOV DX,0 ;printer 0
INT 17H ;AH contains return code
MOV AH,0 ;function 0, print char
MOV AL,0AH ;line feed
INT 17H

```

**Interrupt 18h—BASIC** The BIOS interrupt 18h routine transfers control to ROM BASIC.

**Interrupt 19h—Bootstrap** The BIOS interrupt 19h routine reboots the system.

**Interrupt 1Ah—Time of Day** The BIOS interrupt 1Ah routine allows a program to get and set the timer tick count, and in the case of PC AT and PS/2 models, it allows programs to get and set the time and date for the clock circuit chip.

**Interrupt 18h—Ctrl-Break** This interrupt is called by the INT 9 routine when the Ctrl-break key is pressed. The BIOS interrupt 18h routine contains only an IRET instruction. Users may write their own routine to handle the Ctrl-break key.

**Interrupt 1Ch—Timer Tick** INT 1Ch is called by the INT 8 routine each time the timer circuit interrupts. The BIOS interrupt 1Ch routine contains only an IRET instruction. Users may write their own service routine to perform timing operations. In section 15.5, we use it to update the displayed time.

**Interrupts 1Dh—1Fh** These interrupt vectors point to data instead of instructions. The interrupt 1Dh, 1Eh, and 1Fh vectors pointing to video initialization parameters, diskette parameters, and video graphics characters, respectively.

## 15.3

### DOS Interrupts

The interrupt types 20h–3Fh are serviced by DOS routines that provide high-level service to hardware as well as system resources such as files and directories. The most useful is INT 21h, which provides many functions for doing keyboard, video, and file operations.

**Interrupt 20h—Program Terminate** Interrupt 20h can be used by a program to return control to DOS. But because CS must be set to the program segment prefix before using INT 20h, it is more convenient to exit a program with INT 21h, function 4Ch.

**Interrupt 21h—Function Request** The number of functions varies with the DOS version. DOS 1.x has functions 0–2Eh, DOS 2.x added new functions 2Fh–57h, and DOS 3.x added new functions 58h–5Fh. These functions may be classified as character I/O, file access, memory management, disk access, networking, and miscellaneous. More information is found in Appendix C.

**Interrupts 22h–26h** Interrupt routines 22h–26h handle Ctrl-Break, critical errors, and direct disk access.

**Interrupt 27h—Terminate but Stay Resident** Interrupt 27h allows programs to stay in memory after termination. We demonstrate this interrupt in section 15.6.

## 15.4

### A Time Display Program

As an example of using interrupt routines, we now write a program that displays the current time. There are three versions, each getting more complex. In this section, we show the first version, which simply displays the current time in hours, minutes, and seconds. In section 15.5, we write the second version, which shows the time updated every second; and in section 15.6 we write the third version, which is a *memory resident program* that can display the time while other programs are running.

When the computer is powered up, the current time can be entered by the user or supplied by a real-time clock circuit that is battery powered. This time value is kept in memory and updated by a timer circuit using interrupt 8. A program can call the DOS interrupt 21h, function 2Ch, to access the time.

**INT-21h, Function 2Ch:  
Time-of-Day**

Input: AH = 2Ch  
 Output: CH = hours (0-23),  
          CL = minutes (0-59),  
          DH = seconds (0-59),  
          DL = 1/100 seconds (0-99).

Our time display program has the following steps: (1) obtain the current time, (2) convert the hours, minutes, and seconds into ASCII digits, we ignore the fractions of a second, and (3) display the ASCII digits.

The program is organized into a MAIN procedure in program listing PGM15\_1.ASM and two procedures GET\_TIME and CONVERT in program listing PGM15\_1A.ASM.

A time buffer, TIME\_BUF, is initialized with the message of 00:00:00. The procedure MAIN first calls GET\_TIME to store the current time in the time buffer. Then it uses INT 21h, function 9, to print out the string in the time buffer.

The procedure GET\_TIME calls INT 21h function 2Ch to get the time, then calls CONVERT to convert the hours, minutes, and seconds into ASCII characters. The first step in procedure CONVERT is to divide the input number in AL by 10; this will put the ten's digit value in AL and unit's digit value in AH (note that the input value is less than 60). The second step is to convert the digits into ASCII.

**Program Listing PGM15\_1.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM15_1: TIME_DISPLAY_VER_1
;program that displays the current time

 EXTRN GET_TIME:NEAR
 .MODEL SMALL
 .STACK 100H
 .DATA
TIME_BUF DB '00:00:00$';time buffer hr:min:sec
;
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
;get and display time
 LEA BX,TIME_BUF ;BX points to TIME_BUF
 CALL GET_TIME ;put current time in TIME_BUF
 LEA DX,TIME_BUF ;DX points to TIME_BUF
 MOV AH,09H ;display time
 INT 21H
;exit
 MOV AH,4CH ;return
 INT 21H ;to DOS
MAIN ENDP
 END MAIN
```

**Program Listing PGM15\_1A.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM15_1A: GET AND CONVERT TIME TO ASCII
PUBLIC GET_TIME
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
GET_TIME PROC
;get time of day and store ASCII digits in time buffer
;input: BX = address of time buffer
 MOV AH,2CH ;gettime
 INT 21H ;CH = hr, CL = min, DH = sec
;convert hours into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,CH ;hour
 CALL CONVERT ;convert to ASCII
 MOV [BX],AX ;store
;convert minutes into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,CL ;minute
 CALL CONVERT ;convert to ASCII
 MOV [BX+3],AX ;store
;convert seconds into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,DH ;second
 CALL CONVERT
 MOV [BX+6],AX
 RET
GET_TIME ENDP
;
CONVERT PROC
;converts byte number (0-59) into ASCII digits
;input: AL = number
;output: AX = ASCII digits, AL = high digit, AH = low digit
 MOV AH,0 ;clear AH
 MOV DL,10 ;divide AX by 10
 DIV DL ;AH has remainder, AL has quotient
 OR AX,3030H ;convert to ASCII, AH has low digit
 RET ;AL has high digit
CONVERT ENDP
;
END

```

The program displays the time and terminates.

## **15.5 User Interrupt Procedures**

To make the time display program more interesting, let us write a second version that displays the time and updates it every second.

One way to continuously update the time is to execute a loop that keeps obtaining the time via INT 21h, function 2Ch and displaying it. The problem here is to find a way to terminate the program.

Instead of pursuing this approach, we will write a routine for interrupt 1Ch. As mentioned earlier, this interrupt is generated by the INT 8 routine which is activated by a timer circuit about 18.2 times a second. When our interrupt routine is called, it will get the time and display it.

Our program will have a MAIN procedure that sets up the interrupt routine and when a key is pressed, it will deactivate the interrupt routine and terminate.

### ***Set Interrupt Vector***

To set up an interrupt routine, we need to (1) save the current interrupt vector, (2) place the vector of the user procedure in the interrupt vector table, and (3) restore the previous vector before terminating the program.

We use the INT 21h, function 35h, to get the old vector and function 25h to set up the new interrupt vector.

#### **INT 21h, Function 25h: Set Interrupt Vector**

;store interrupt vector into vector table  
 Input: AH = 25h  
       AL = Interrupt number  
       DS:DX = interrupt vector  
 Output: none

#### **INT 21h, Function 35h: Get Interrupt Vector**

;obtain interrupt vector from vector table  
 Input: AH = 35h  
       AL = Interrupt number  
 Output: ES:BX = interrupt vector

The procedure SETUP\_INT in program listing PGM15\_2A.ASM saves an old interrupt vector and sets up a new vector. It gets the interrupt number in AL, a buffer to save the old vector at DS:DI, and a buffer containing the new interrupt vector at DS:SI. By reversing the two buffers, SETUP\_INT can also be used to restore the old vector.

#### **Program Listing PGM15\_2A.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM15_2A: SET INTERRUPT VECTOR
PUBLIC SETUP_INT
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
SETUP_INT PROC
; saves old vector and sets up new vector
; input: AL = interrupt number
; DI = address of buffer for old vector
; SI = address of buffer containing new vector
; save old interrupt vector
 MOV AH,35H ;function 35h, get vector
 INT 21H ;ES:BX = vector
 MOV [DI],BX ;save offset
 MOV [DI+2],ES ;save segment
```

```

;setup new vector
MOV DX, [SI] ;DX has offset
PUSH DS ;save DS
MOV DS, [SI+2] ;DS has segment number
MOV AH, 25H ;function 25h, set vector
INT 21H ;
POP DS ;restore DS
RET
SETUP_INT ENDP
END

```

### **Cursor Control**

Each display of the current time by INT 21h, function 9, will advance the cursor. If a new time is then displayed, it appears at a different screen position. So, to view the time updated at the same screen position we must restore the cursor to its original position before we display the time. This is achieved by first determining the current cursor position; then, after each print string operation, we move the cursor back.

We use the INT 10h, functions 3 and 2, to save the original cursor position and to move the cursor to its original position after each print string operation.

#### **INT 10h, Function 2: Move Cursor**

**Input:**   AH = 2  
             BH = page number  
             DH = row number  
             DL = column number  
**Output:**   none

#### **INT 10h, Function 3: Get Cursor Position**

**Input:**   AH = 3  
             BH = page number  
**Output:**   DH = row number  
             DI = column number  
             CH = starting scan line for cursor  
             CL = ending scan line for cursor

### **Interrupt Procedure**

When an interrupt procedure is activated, it cannot assume that the DS register contains the program's data segment address. Thus, if it uses any variables it must first reset the DS register. The DS register should be restored before ending the interrupt routine with IRET.

Program listing PGM15\_2.ASM contains the MAIN procedure and the interrupt procedure TIME\_INT. The steps in the MAIN procedure are (1) save the current cursor position, (2) set up the interrupt vector for TIME\_INT, (3) wait for a key input, and (4) restore the old interrupt vector and terminate.

To do step 2, we use the pseudo-ops **OFFSET** and **SEG** to obtain the offset and segment of procedure TIME\_INT; the vector is then stored in the buffer NEW\_VEC. The procedure SETUP\_INT, is called to set up the vector for interrupt type 1Ch, timer tick. The interrupt 16h, function 0 is used for step 3, key input. Procedure SETUP\_INT is again used in step 4; this time SI points to the old vector and DI points to the vector for TIME\_INT.

The steps in the procedure TIME\_INT are (1) set DS, (2) get new time, (3) display time, (4) restore cursor position, and (5) restore DS.

The program operates like this: After setting up the cursor and interrupt vectors, the MAIN procedure just waits for a keystroke. In the meantime, the interrupt procedure, TIME\_INT, keeps updating the time whenever the timer circuit ticks. After a key is hit, the old interrupt vector is restored and the program terminates.

#### Program Listing PGM15\_2.ASM

```

TITLE PGM15_2: DISPLAY_TIME_VER_2
;program that displays the current time
;and updates the time 18.2 times a second
 EXTRN GET_TIME:NEAR, SETUP_INT:NEAR
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
TIME_BUF DB '00:00:00$' ;time buffer hr:min:sec
CURSOR_POS DW ? ;cursor position (row:col)
NEW_VEC DW ?,? ;new interrupt vector
OLD_VEC DW ?,? ;old interrupt vector
;
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS, AX ;initialize DS
;
;save cursor position
 MOV AH, 3 ;function 3, get cursor
 MOV BH, 0 ;page 0
 INT 10H ;DH = row, DL = col
 MOV CURSOR_POS, DX ;save it
;
;set up interrupt-procedure by
;placing segment:offset of TIME_INT in NEW_VEC
 MOV NEW_VEC, OFFSET TIME_INT ;offset
 MOV NEW_VEC+2, SEG TIME_INT ;segment
 LEA DI, OLD_VEC ;DI points to vector buffer
 LEA SI, NEW_VEC ;SI points to new vector
 MOV AL, 1CH ;timer interrupt
 CALL SETUP_INT ;setup new interrupt vector
;
;read keyboard
 MOV AH, 0
 INT 16H
;
;restore old interrupt vector
 LEA DI, NEW_VEC ;DI points to vector buffer
 LEA SI, OLD_VEC ;SI points to old vector

```

```

 MOV AL,1CH ;timer interrupt
 CALL SETUP_INT ;restore old vector

 MOV AH,4CH ;return
 INT 21H ;to DOS
MAIN ENDP

;

TIME_INT PROC
;interrupt procedure
;activated by the timer
 PUSH DS ;save current DS
 MOV AX,@DATA ;set it to data segment
 MOV DS,AX
;get new time
 LEA BX,TIME_BUF ;BX points to time buffer
 CALL GET_TIME ;store time in buffer
;display time
 LEA DX,TIME_BUF ;DX points to TIME_BUF
 MOV AH,09H ;display string
 INT 21H
;restore cursor position
 MOV AH,2 ;function 2, move cursor
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 MOV DX,CURSOR_POS ;cursor position,DH=row,DL=col
 INT 10H
 POP DS ;restore DS
 IRET

TIME_INT ENDP
;

END MAIN

```

The LLINK command should include the modules PGM15\_2, PGM15\_1A, and PGM15\_2A.

## 15.6 Memory Resident Program

We will write the third version of DISPLAY\_TIME as a **TSR (terminate and stay resident) program**. Normally, when a program terminates, the memory occupied by the program is used by DOS to load other programs. However, when a TSR program terminates, the memory occupied is not released. Thus, a TSR program is also called a **memory resident program**.

To return to DOS, a TSR program is terminated by using either INT 27h or INT 21h, function 31h. Our program uses INT 27h.

### INT 27h: Terminate and Stay Resident

**Input:** DS:DX = address of byte beyond the part that is  
to remain resident

**Output:** none

We write our program as a .COM program because to use interrupt 27h, we need to determine how many bytes are to remain memory resident. The structure of a .COM program makes this easy because there is only one program segment. Another reason for using a .COM program is the size consideration. As we saw in Chapter 14, a .COM program is smaller in size than its .EXE counterpart. So, to save space, TSR programs are often written as .COM programs.

Once terminated, a TSR program is not active. It must be activated by some external activity, such as a certain key combination or by the timer. The advantage of a TSR program is that it may be activated while some other program is running. Our program will become active when the Ctrl and right shift keys are pressed.

To keep the program small, it will not update the time. We leave it as an exercise for the reader to write a TSR program that updates the time every second.

The program has two parts, an initialization part that sets up the interrupt vector, and the interrupt routine itself. The procedure INITIALIZE initializes the interrupt vector 9 (keyboard interrupt) with the address of the interrupt procedure MAIN and then calls INT 27h to terminate. The address passed to INT 27h is the beginning address of the INITIALIZE procedure; this is possible because the instructions are no longer needed. The procedure INITIALIZE is shown in program listing PGM15\_3A.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM15\_3A.ASM**

```

 TITLE PGM15_3A:SET UP TSR PROGRAM
 EXTRN MAIN:NEAR, SETUP_INT:NEAR
 EXTRN NEW_VEC:WORD, OLD_VEC:DWORD
PUBLIC INITIALIZE
C SEG SEGMENT PUBLIC
ASSUME CS:C SEG
INITIALIZE PROC
;set up interrupt vector
 MOV NEW_VEC,OFFSET MAIN ;store address
 MOV NEW_VEC+2,CS ;segment
 LEA DI,OLD_VEC ;DI points to vector buffer
 LEA SI,NEW_VEC ;SI points to new vector
 MOV AL,09H ;keyboard interrupt
 CALL SETUP_INT ;set interrupt vector
;exit to DOS
 LEA DX,INITIALIZE
 INT 27H ;terminate and stay resident
INITIALIZE ENDP
C SEG ENDS
END

```

There are a number of ways for the interrupt routine to detect a particular key combination. The simplest way is to detect the control and shift keys by checking the keyboard flags. When activated by a keystroke, the interrupt routine calls the old keyboard interrupt routine to handle the key input. To detect the control and shift keys, a program can examine the keyboard flags at the BIOS data area 0000:0417h or use INT 16h, function 2.

**INT 16h, Function 2:  
Get Keyboard Flags**

|         |                      |
|---------|----------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 2               |
| Output: | AL = key flags       |
| bit     | meaning              |
| 7 = 1   | insert on            |
| 6 = 1   | Caps Lock on         |
| 5 = 1   | Num Lock on          |
| 4 = 1   | Scroll Lock on       |
| 3 = 1   | Alt key down         |
| 2 = 1   | Ctrl key down        |
| 1 = 1   | left shift key down  |
| 0 = 1   | right shift key down |

We will use the Ctrl and right shift key combination to activate and deactivate the clock display. When activated, the current time will be displayed on the upper right-hand corner. We must first save the screen data so that when the clock display is deactivated the screen can be restored.

The procedure SET\_CURSOR sets the cursor at row 0 and the column given in DL. The procedure SAVE\_SCREEN copies the screen data into a buffer called SS\_BUF, and the procedure RESTORE\_SCREEN moves the data back to the screen buffer. All three procedures are shown in program listing PGM15\_3B.

**Program Listing PGM15\_3B.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM15_3B: SAVE SCREEN AND CURSOR
 EXTRN SS_BUF:BYTE
 PUBLIC SAVE_SCREEN, RESTORE_SCREEN, SET_CURSOR
C SEGMENT PUBLIC
 ASSUME CS:C SEG
;
SAVE_SCREEN PROC
; saves 8 characters from upper right hand corner of
; screen
 LEA DI,SS_BUF ;screen buffer
 MOV CX,8 ;repeat 8 times
 MOV DL,72 ;column 72
 CLD
;clear DF for string operation
SS_LOOP:
 CALL SET_CURSOR ;setup cursor at row 0,col DL
 MOV AH,08H ;read char on screen
 INT 10H ;AH = attribute, AL = character
 STOSW ;stores char and attribute
 INC DL ;next col
 LOOP SS_LOOP
 RET
SAVE_SCREEN ENDP
;
RESTORE_SCREEN PROC
;restores saved screen
 LEA SI,SS_BUF ;SI points to buffer
 MOV DI,8 ;repeat 8 times
 MOV DL,72 ;column 72

```

```

 MOV CX, 1 ;1 char at a time
RS_LOOP:
 CALL SET_CURSOR ;move cursor
 LODSW ;AL = char, AH = attribute
 MOV BL,AH ;attribute to BL
 MOV AH,09H ;function 9, write char and attribute
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 INT 10H
 INC DL ;next char position
 DEC DI ;move characters?
 JG RS_LOOP ;yes, repeat
 RET
RESTORE_SCREEN ENDP
;
SET_CURSOR PROC
;sets cursor at row 0, column DL
;input DL = column number
 MOV AH,02 ;function 2, set cursor
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 MOV DH,0 ;row 0
 INT 10H
 RET
SET_CURSOR ENDP
;
C_SEG ENDS
END

```

We are now ready to write the interrupt routine. To determine whether to activate or deactivate the time display, we use the variable ON\_FLAG, which is set to 1 when the time is being displayed. Procedure 'MAIN' is the interrupt procedure.

The steps in procedure MAIN are (1) save all registers used and set up the DS and ES registers, (2) call the old keyboard interrupt routine to handle the key input, (3) check to see if both Ctrl and right shift keys are down; if not, then exit, (4) test ON\_FLAG to determine status, and if ON\_FLAG is 1 then restore screen and exit, (5) save current cursor position and also the display screen info, and (6) get time, display time, then exit.

In step 1, to set up the registers DS and ES we use CS. It might be tempting to use the value C\_SEG instead; however, segment values cannot be used in a .COM program. In step 2, we need to push the FLAGS register so that the procedure call simulates an interrupt call. In step 6, we used the BIOS interrupt 10h instead of the DOS interrupt 21h, function 9, to display the time, because from experience, the INT 21h, function 9, tends to be unreliable in a TSR program.

#### Program Listing PGM15\_3.ASM

```

TITLE PGM15_3: TIME_DISPLAY_VER_3
;memory resident program that shows current time of day
;called by Ctrl-rt shift key combination

 EXTRN INITIALIZE:NEAR,SAVE_SCREEN:NEAR
 EXTRN RESTORE_SCREEN:NEAR,SET_CURSOR:NEAR
 EXTRN GET TIME:NEAR

```

```

PUBLIC MAIN
PUBLIC NEW_VEC,OLD_VEC,SS_BUF
C_SEG SEGMENT PUBLIC
ASSUME CS:C_SEG, DS:C_SEG, SS:C_SEG
ORG 100H
START: JMP INITIALIZE
;
SS_BUF DB 16 DUP(?) ;save screen buffer
TIME_BUF DB '00:00:00$' ;time buffer hr:min:sec
CURSOR_POS DW ? ;cursor position
ON_FLAG DB 0 ;1 = interrupt procedure running
NEW_VEC DW ?,? ;contains new vector
OLD_VEC DD ? ;contains old vector
;
MAIN PROC
;interrupt procedure
;save registers
 PUSH DS
 PUSH ES
 PUSH AX
 PUSH BX
 PUSH CX
 PUSH DX
 PUSH SI
 PUSH DI
;
 MOV AX,CS ;set DS
 MOV DS,AX
 MOV ES,AX ;and ES to current segment
;call old keyboard interrupt procedure
 PUSHF ;save FLAGS
 CALL OLD_VEC
;get keyboard flags
 MOV AX,CS ;reset DS
 MOV DS,AX
 MOV ES,AX ;and ES to current segment
 MOV AH,02 ;function 2, keyboard flags
 INT 16H ;AL has flag bits
 TEST AL,1 ;right shift?
 JE I_DONE ;no, exit
 TEST AL,100B ;Ctrl?
 JE t_DONE ;no, exit
;yes, process
 CMP ON_FLAG,1 ;procedure active?
 JE RESTORE ;yes, deactivate
 MOV ON_FLAG,1 ;no, activate
;-save cursor position and screen info
 MOV AH,03 ;get cursor position
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 INT 10H ;DH = row, DL = col
 MOV CURSOR_POS,DX ;save it
 CALL SAVE_SCREEN ;save time display screen
;-position cursor to upper right corner
 MOV DL,72 ;column 72
 CALL SET_CURSOR ;position cursor in row 0,col 72

```

```

 LEA BX, TIME_BUF
 CALL GET_TIME ;get current time
;<--display time
 LEA SI, TIME_BUF
 MOV CX, 8 ;8 chars
 MOV BH, 0 ;page 0
 MOV AH, 0EH ;write char
M1: LODSB ;char in AL
 INT 10H ;cursor is moved to next col
 LOOP M1 ;loop back if more chars
 JMP RES_CURSOR

RESTORE:
;restore screen
 MOV ON_FLAG, 0 ;clears flag
 CALL RESTORE_SCREEN
;restore saved cursor position
RES_CURSOR:
 MOV AH, 02 ;set cursor
 MOV BH, 0
 MOV DX, CURSOR_POS
 INT 10H
;restore registers
I_DONE:
 POP DI
 POP SI
 POP DX
 POP CX
 POP BX
 POP AX
 POP ES
 POP DS
 IRET ;interrupt return
MAIN ENDP
;
C_SEG ENDS
END START ;starting instruction

```

Because the program has been written as a .COM program, we need to rewrite the file containing the GET\_TIME procedure with full segment directives. The file PGM15\_3C.ASM contains GET\_TIME, CONVERT, and SETUP\_INT.

#### Program Listing PGM15\_3C.ASM

```

TITLE PGM15_3C: GET AND CONVERT TIME TO ASCII
 PUBLIC GET_TIME, SETUP_INT
C_SEG SEGMENT PUBLIC
 ASSUME CS:C_SEG
;
GET_TIME PROC
;get time of day and store ASCII digits in time buffer
;input: BX = address of time buffer

```

```

 MOV AH,2CH ;get time
 INT 21H ;CH = hr, CL = min, DH = sec
;convert hours into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,CH ;hour
 CALL CONVERT ;convert to ASCII
 MOV [BX],AX ;store
;convert minutes into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,CL ;minute
 CALL CONVERT ;convert to ASCII
 MOV [BX+3],AX ;store
;convert seconds into ASCII and store
 MOV AL,DH ;second
 CALL CONVERT ;convert to ASCII
 MOV [BX+6],AX ;store
 RET
GET_TIME ENDP
;
CONVERT PROC
;converts byte number (0-59) into ASCII digits
;input: AL = number
;output: AX = ASCII digits, AL = high digit, AH = low
;digit
 MOV AH,0 ;clear AH
 MOV DL,10 ;divide AX by 10
 DIV DL ;AH has remainder, AL has quotient
 OR AX,3030H ;convert to ASCII, AH has low digit
 RET ;AL has high digit
CONVERT ENDP
;
SETUP_INT PROC
;input: AL = interrupt type
;DI = address of buffer for old vector
;SI = address of buffer containing new vector
;save old interrupt vector
 MOV AH,35H ;function 35h, get vector
 INT 21H ;ES:BX = vector
 MOV [DI],BX ;save offset
 MOV [DI+2],ES ;save segment
;setup new vector
 MOV DX,[SI] ;DX has offset
 PUSH DS ;save it
 MOV DS,[SI+2] ;DS has segment number
 MOV AH,25H ;function 25h, set vector
 INT 21H ;
 POP DS ;restore DS
 RET
SETUP_INT ENDP
;
C_SEG ENDS
END

```

The LINK command should be LINK PGM15\_3 + PGM15\_3B + PGM15\_3C + PGM15\_3A. Notice that PGM15\_3A is linked last so that the procedure INITIALIZE is placed at the end of the program. Writing TSR programs is tricky; if there are other TSR programs on your system, your program may not function properly.

---

### Summary

- An interrupt may be requested by a hardware device or by a program using the INT instruction or generated internally by the processor.
- The INT instruction calls an interrupt routine by using an interrupt number.
- The 8086 supports 256 interrupt types and the interrupt vectors (addresses of the procedures) are stored in the first 1 KB of memory.
- The interrupts 0–1FH call BIOS interrupt routines and the interrupt vectors are set up by BIOS when the computer is powered up.
- The interrupts 20H–3Fh call DOS interrupt routines.
- Users can write their own interrupt routines to perform various tasks.
- A memory resident program may be activated by a combination of keystrokes.

---

### Glossary

|                                                  |                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>conventional memory</b>                       | The first 640 KB of memory                                                |
| <b>hand-shaking</b>                              | A protocol for devices to communicate with each other                     |
| <b>hardware interrupt</b>                        | A hardware device interrupting the processor                              |
| <b>interrupt acknowledge signal</b>              | A signal generated by the processor accepting an interrupt request signal |
| <b>interrupt number</b>                          | A number identifying the type of interrupt                                |
| <b>interrupt request signal</b>                  | A signal sent by a hardware device to the processor requesting service    |
| <b>interrupt routine</b>                         | A procedure invoked by an interrupt                                       |
| <b>interrupt vector</b>                          | The address of an interrupt routine                                       |
| <b>interrupt vector table</b>                    | The set of all interrupt vectors                                          |
| <b>memory resident program</b>                   | A TSR program                                                             |
| <b>NMI (nonmaskable interrupt)</b>               | A hardware interrupt that cannot be masked out by clearing the IF         |
| <b>processor exception</b>                       | A condition of the processor that requires special handling               |
| <b>TSR (terminate and stay resident) program</b> | A program that remains in memory after termination                        |
| <b>software interrupt</b>                        | An INT instruction                                                        |

---

**New Instructions**

IRET

---

**New Pseudo-Ops**

OFFSET

SEG

---

**Exercises**

1. Compute the location of the interrupt vector for interrupt 20h.
2. Use DEBUG to find the value of the interrupt vector for interrupt 0.
3. Write instructions that use the BIOS interrupt 17h to print the message "Hello".
4. Write instructions that use the INT 21h, function 2Ah, to display the current date.

**Programming Exercises**

5. Write a program that will output the message "Hello" once every half second to the screen.
6. Modify PGM15\_2.ASM so that INT 21h, function 9, is called to display the time only when the seconds change.
7. Write a memory resident program similar to PGM15\_3.ASM using INT 21h, function 31h.

# Color Graphics

## Overview

In Chapter 12, we showed how the screen can be manipulated in text mode. In this chapter, we discuss the graphics modes of the PC. There are three common color graphics adapters for the PC: CGA (Color Graphics Adapter), EGA (Enhanced Graphics Adapter), and VGA (Video Graphics Array). We describe their operations and programming, and also show how to write an interactive video game program.

### 16.1 Graphics Modes

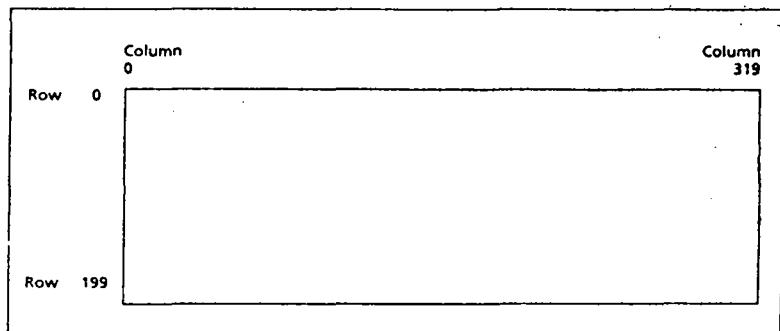
As noted in Chapter 12, the screen display is composed of lines traced by an electron beam; these lines are called **scan lines**. A dot pattern is created by turning the beam on and off during the scan; the dot patterns generate characters as well as pictures on the screen. The video signal controlling the scan is generated by a video adapter circuit in the computer.

A video adapter can vary the number of dots per line by changing the size of a dot. Some adapters can also change the number of scan lines.

#### Pixels

In graphics mode operation, the screen display is divided into columns and rows; and each screen position, given by a column number and row number, is called a **pixel** (picture element). The number of columns and rows give the *resolution* of the graphics mode; for example, a resolution of  $320 \times 200$  means 320 columns and 200 rows. The columns are numbered from left to right starting with 0, and the rows are numbered from top to bottom starting with 0. For example, in a  $320 \times 200$  mode, the upper-right corner pixel has column 319 and row 0, and the lower-right corner pixel has column 319 and row 199. See Figure 16.1.

**Figure 16.1 Pixel Coordinates in  $320 \times 200$  Mode**



Depending on the mapping of rows and columns into the scan lines and dot positions, a pixel may contain one or more dots. For example, in the low-resolution mode of the CGA, there are 160 columns by 100 rows, but the CGA generates 320 dots and 200 lines; so a pixel is formed by a  $2 \times 2$  set of dots. A graphics mode is called **APA (all points addressable)** if it maps a pixel into a single dot.

Table 16.1 shows the APA graphics modes of the CGA, EGA, and VGA. To maintain compatibility, the EGA is designed to display all CGA modes and the VGA can display all the EGA modes.

### Mode Selection

The screen mode is normally set to text mode, hence the first operation to begin a graphics display is to set the display mode. We showed in Chapter 12 that the BIOS interrupt 10h handles all video functions; function 0 sets the screen mode.

**Table 16.1 Video Adapter Graphics Display Modes**

| <b>Mode Number (hex)</b> | <b>CGA Graphics</b>                 |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 4                        | 320 x 200 4 Color                   |
| 5                        | 320 x 200 4 Color (color burst off) |
| 6                        | 640 x 200 2 Color                   |
| <b>EGA Graphics</b>      |                                     |
| D                        | 320 x 200 16 Color                  |
| E                        | 640 x 200 16 Color                  |
| F                        | 640 x 350 Monochrome                |
| 10                       | 640 x 350 16 Color                  |
| <b>VGA Graphics</b>      |                                     |
| 11                       | 640 x 480 2 Color                   |
| 12                       | 640 x 480 16 Color                  |
| 13                       | 320 x 200 256 Color                 |

**' INT 10h Function 0:  
Set Screen Mode**

Input: AH = 0  
AL = mode number  
Output: none

**Example 16.1** Set the display mode to 640 × 200 two-color mode.

**Solution:** From Table 16.1, the mode number is 06h; thus, the instructions are

```
MOV AH, 0 ;function 0
MOV AL, 06H ;mode 6
INT 10H ;select mode
```

## 16.2 CGA Graphics

The CGA has three graphics resolutions: a *low resolution* of 160 × 100, a *medium resolution* of 320 × 200, and a *high resolution* of 640 × 200. Only the medium-resolution and high-resolution modes are supported by the BIOS INT 10h routine. Programs that use the low-resolution mode must access the video controller chip directly.

The CGA adapter has a display memory of 16 KB located in segment B800h; the memory addresses are from B800:0000 to B800:3FFF. Each pixel is represented by one or more bits, depending on the mode. For example,

**Table 16.2 Sixteen Standard CGA Colors**

| <i>I R G B</i> | <i>Color</i>     |
|----------------|------------------|
| 0 0 0 0        | Black            |
| 0 0 0 1        | Blue             |
| 0 0 1 0        | Green            |
| 0 0 1 1        | Cyan             |
| 0 1 0 0        | Red              |
| 0 1 0 1        | Magenta (purple) |
| 0 1 1 0        | Brown            |
| 0 1 1 1        | White            |
| 1 0 0 0        | Gray             |
| 1 0 0 1        | Light Blue       |
| 1 0 1 0        | Light Green      |
| 1 0 1 1        | Light Cyan       |
| 1 1 0 0        | Light Red        |
| 1 1 0 1        | Light Magenta    |
| 1 1 1 0        | Yellow           |
| 1 1 1 1        | Infense White    |

high resolution uses one bit per pixel and medium uses two bits per pixel. The pixel value identifies the color of the pixel.

### **Medium-Resolution Mode**

The CGA can display 16 colors; Table 16.2 shows the 16 colors of the CGA. In medium resolution, four colors can be displayed at one time. This is due to the limited size of the display memory. Because the resolution is  $320 \times 200$ , there are  $320 \times 200 = 64,000$  pixels. To display four colors, each pixel is coded by two bits, and the memory requirement is  $64000 \times 2 = 128000$  bits or 16000 bytes. Thus, the 16-KB CGA display memory can only support four colors in this mode.

To allow different four-color combinations, the CGA in medium-resolution mode uses two **palettes**; a palette is a set of colors that can be displayed at the same time. Each palette contains three fixed colors plus a **background color** that can be chosen from any of the standard 16 colors. The background color is the default color of all pixels. Thus, a screen with the background color would show up if no data have been written. Table 16.3 shows the two palettes.

The default palette is palette 0, but a program can select either palette for display. A pixel value (0–3) identifies the color in the current selected palette; if we change the display palette, all the pixels change color. INT 10h, function 0Bh, can be used to select a palette or a background color.

#### **INT 10h, Function 0Bh: Select Palette or Background Color**

##### **Subfunction 0: Select Background**

Input: AH = 0Bh  
 BH = 0  
 BL = color number (0–15)  
 Output: none

##### **Subfunction 1: Select Palette**

Input: AH = 0Bh  
 BH = 1  
 BL = palette number (0 or 1)  
 Output: none

**Table 16.3 CGA Mode, Four-Color Palettes**

| <b>Palette</b> | <b>Pixel Value</b> | <b>Color</b> |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 0              | 0                  | Background   |
|                | 1                  | Green        |
|                | 2                  | Red          |
|                | 3                  | Brown        |
| 1              | 0                  | Background   |
|                | 1                  | Cyan         |
|                | 2                  | Magenta      |
|                | 3                  | White        |

**Example 16.2** Write instructions that select palette 1 and a background color of light blue.

**Solution:** Light blue has color number 9. Thus,

```
MOV AH, 0BH ;function 0Bh
MOV BH, 00H ;select background color
MOV BL, 9 ;light blue
INT 10H
MOV BH, 1 ;select palette
MOV BL, 1 ;palette 1
INT 10H
```

### Reading and Writing Pixels

To read or write a pixel, we must identify the pixel by its column and row numbers. The functions 0Dh and 0Ch are for read and write, respectively.

#### INT 10h, Function 0Ch: Write Graphics Pixel

**Input:**     AH = 0Ch  
              AL = pixel value  
              BH = page (for the CGA, this value is ignored)  
              CX = column number  
              DX = row number  
**Output:**    none

#### INT 10h, Function 0Dh: Read Graphics Pixel

**Input:**     AH = 0Dh  
              BH = page (for the CGA, this value is ignored)  
              CX = column number  
              DX = row number  
**Output:**    AL = pixel value

**Example 16.3** Copy the pixel at column 50, row 199, to the pixel at column 20, and row 40.

**Solution:** We first read the pixel at column 50, row 199, and then write to the pixel at column 20, row 40.

```
MOV AH, 0DH ;read pixel
MOV CX, 50 ;column 50
MOV DX, 199 ;row 199
INT 10H ;AL gets pixel value
MOV AH, 0CH ;write pixel, AL is already set
MOV CX, 20 ;column 20
MOV DX, 40 ;row 40
INT 10H
```

### High-Resolution Mode

In high-resolution mode, the CGA can display two colors, each pixel value is either 0 or 1; 0 for black and 1 for white. It is also possible to select a background color using INT 10h, function 0Bh. When a background color is selected, a 0 pixel value is the background color, and a pixel value of 1 is white.

We now show a complete graphics program.

**Example 16.4** Write a program that draws a line in row 100 from column 301 to column 600 in high resolution.

**Solution:** The organization of the program is as follows: (1) set the display mode to 6 (CGA high resolution), (2) draw the line, (3) read a key input, and (4) set the mode back to 3 (text mode). Step 3 is included so that we can control when to return to text mode; otherwise, the line would disappear before we can take a good look.

#### Program Listing PGM16\_1.ASM

```
TITLE PGM16_1: CGA LINE DRAWING
;draws horizontal line in high res
;in row 100 from col 301 to col 600
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
;
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;set graphics mode
 MOV AX,6 ;select mode 6, hi res
 INT 10H
;draw line
 MOV AH,0CH ;write pixel
 MOV AL,1 ;white
 MOV CX,301 ;beginning col
 MOV DX,100 ;row
L1: INT 10H
 INC CX ;next col
 CMP CX,600 ;more columns?
 JLE L1 ;yes, repeat
;read keyboard
 MOV AH,0
 INT 16H
;set to text mode
 MOV AX,3 ;select mode 3, text mode
 INT 10H
;return to DOS
 MOV AH,4CH ;return
 INT 21H ;to DOS
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

### Writing Directly to Memory

When we wish to do fast screen updates, as in video game playing, we can bypass the BIOS routines and write directly to the CGA video display memory. To do so, we need to understand the organization of the CGA display memory. The CGA's 16-KB display memory is divided into two halves. Pixels in even-numbered rows are stored in the first 8 KB (B800:0000 to B800:1FFF), and pixels in odd-numbered rows are stored in the second 8 KB (B800:2000 to B800:3FFF). Each row is represented by 50h bytes. Figure 16.2 shows the relationship between the display memory address and the screen display.

To locate the bit positions for a particular pixel in a display mode, we first determine the starting byte of that row and then the offset in the row for that pixel. We now show an example.

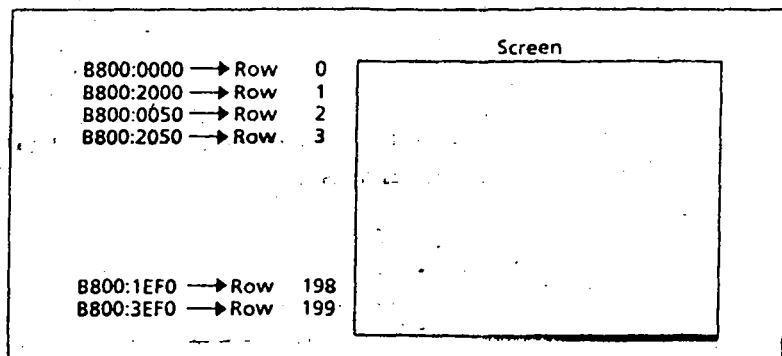
**Example 16.5** Let the graphics mode be mode 4. Determine the byte address and bit positions for the pixel in row 5, column 10.

**Solution:** Row 5 is the third odd-numbered row, so the starting byte for row 5 has an offset address of  $2000h + 2 \times 50h = 20A0h$ . In mode 4, each pixel is two bits, so each byte can store four pixels. Column 10 is the eleventh column in the row, so the pixel must be the third pixel in the third byte. The byte address is  $20A0h + 2 = 20A2h$ . Pixels are stored starting from the left in a byte, so the third pixel has bit positions 3 and 2.

**Example 16.6** Suppose the current display mode is mode 4. Write a pixel value of 10b at row 5, column 10.

**Solution:** We use the address computed in the last example. To write a pixel, we first read the byte containing the pixel, change the appropriate bits, and then write back. The reason for read before write is to preserve other pixel values contained in the same byte. To change the bits, we first clear them using an AND operation, and then write the data using an OR operation.

Figure 16.2 CGA Display Address



```

MOV AX,0B800H ;video memory segment number
MOV ES,AX ;place in ES
MOV DI,20A2H ;offset of byte
MOV AL,ES:[DI] ;move byte into AL
AND AL,11110011B ;clear the data bit positions
OR AL,1000B ;write 10b into bit positions 3,2
STOSB ;store back to memory

```

### *Displaying Text*

It is possible to display text in graphics mode. Text characters in graphics mode are not generated from a character generator circuit as in text mode. Instead, the characters are selected from the character fonts stored in memory. Another difference between text mode and graphics mode is that the cursor is not being displayed in graphics mode. However, the cursor position can still be set by INT 10h, function 2.

**Example 16.7** Display the letter "A" in red at the upper right corner of the screen. Use mode 4 and a background color of blue.

**Solution:** When we display characters in graphics mode, we use text coordinates. With the  $320 \times 200$  resolution, there are only 40 text columns, see Table 16.4. Thus, the row and column numbers of the upper-right corner are 0 and 39, respectively. To display a red letter and blue background, we use palette 0 with blue background color.

The steps are as follows: (1) set to mode 4, default palette is 0, (2) set background color to blue, (3) position cursor, and (4) display letter "A" in red.

```

MOV AH,0 ;set mode
MOV AL,04H ;mode 4
INT 10H
MOV AH,0BH ;function 0Bh
MOV BH,00H ;select background color
MOV BL,3 ;blue
INT 10H
MOV AH,02 ;set cursor
MOV BH,0 ;page 0
MOV DH,0 ;row 0
MOV DL,39 ;col 39
INT 10H
MOV AH,9 ;write char function

```

**Table 16.4 Text Columns and Rows in Graphics Mode**

| <i>Graphics Resolution</i> | <i>Text Columns</i> | <i>Text Rows</i> |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| $320 \times 200$           | 40                  | 25               |
| $640 \times 200$           | 80                  | 25               |
| $640 \times 350$           | 80                  | 25               |
| $640 \times 480$           | 80                  | 29               |

```

MOV AL, 'A' ;'A'
MOV BL, 2 ;red color
MOV CX, 1 ;write 1 char
INT 10H

```

## 16.3 EGA Graphics

The EGA adapter can generate either 200 or 350 scan lines. To display the higher resolution, an **ECD (enhanced color display) monitor** is required. The EGA has sixteen *palette registers*; these registers store the current display colors. There are six color bits in each palette register; two for each primary color. This means that each palette register is capable of storing any one of 64 colors and thus, the EGA can display 16 colors out of 64 at one time. In the 16-color EGA modes, each pixel value selects a palette register. Initially, the 16 palette registers are loaded with the standard 16 CGA colors. To display other colors on the screen, a program can modify these registers using INT 10h, function 0h (see Appendix C).

The EGA adapter can emulate the CGA graphics modes, so that a program written for the CGA can run in EGA with the same colors. Its display memory can be configured by software. Depending on the display mode, the display memory may have a starting address of A0000h, B0000h, or B8000h. In displaying CGA modes, the EGA memory starts at B8000h so as to remain compatible with the CGA display memory.

In displaying EGA modes, the display memory has the following structure. It is located in segment A000h and uses up to 256 KB. To accommodate 256 KB in one segment, the EGA uses four modules of up to 64 KB each. The four modules, called **bit planes**, share the same 64 K memory addresses; each address refers to four bytes, one in each bit plane. The 8086 cannot access the bit planes directly; instead, all data transfer must go through EGA registers.

With this much storage, we can see that the display memory may hold more than one screen of graphics data. In EGA modes, the display memory is divided into *pages*, with each page being the size of one screen of data. The number of pages allowed depends on the graphics mode and the display memory size. For example, for the display mode D (320 × 200 with 16 colors) there are 64000 pixels and 4 bits for each pixel. Thus, the memory requirement for one screen is 32000 bytes. If the display memory is 256 KB, then it is possible to have eight display pages (0 to 7). There will be fewer pages if the memory is less.

When we use functions 0Ch and 0Dh to read or write pixels, the page number is specified in BH. These functions can be used on any page regardless of which page is being displayed.

**Example 16.8** Assume that we are using a 16-color palette, write a green pixel to page 2 at column 0, row 0.

**Solution:** We use function 0Ch and a color value of 2.

```

MOV AH, 0CH ;write pixel function
MOV AL, 2 ;green
MOV BH, 2 ;page 2
MOV CX, 0 ;column 0
MOV DX, 0 ;row 0
INT 10H

```

When a graphics mode is first selected, the active display page is automatically set to page 0. We can select a different active display page by using function 05h.

**INT 10h, Function 5:  
Select Active Display Page**

**Input:** AH = 5  
**AL** = page number  
**Output:** none

**Example 16.9** Select page 1 to be displayed.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH, 05H ;select active display page
MOV AL, 1 ;page 1
INT 10H
```

Page switching can be used to do simple animation. Suppose we draw a figure in page 0, then draw the same figure at a slightly different position in page 1, and so on. Then, by quickly switching the active display page, we can see the figure move across the screen. This movement is limited by the total number of pages available. We show a more practical animation technique in section 16.5.

## 16.4 VGA Graphics

The VGA adapter has higher resolution than the EGA; it can display  $640 \times 480$  in mode 12h. There are also more colors: the VGA can generate 64 levels of red, green, and blue. The combinations of the red, blue, and green colors produce  $64^3$  equals 256 K different colors. A maximum of 256 colors can be displayed at one time. The color values being displayed are stored in 256 video DAC (*digital to analog circuit*) color registers. There are 18 color bits in a color register; six for each primary color. To display all these colors, we need to have an **analog monitor**.

The VGA adapter can emulate the CGA and EGA graphics modes. In VGA mode, the display memory is organized into bit planes just like the EGA.

Let's look at the VGA mode 13h, which supports 256 colors. In this mode, each pixel value is one byte, and it selects a color register. The color registers are loaded initially with a set of default values. It is possible to change the value in a color register; but let us first display the default colors.

**Example 16.10** Give the instructions that will display the 256 default colors as 256 pixels in row 100.

**Solution:** We begin by selecting mode 13h, then we set up a loop to write the value of AL, which goes from 0 to 255 in columns 0 to 255.

```

;set mode
 MOV AH,0 ;set mode
 MOV AL,13H ;to 13h
 INT 10H ;
;display 256 pixels in row 100
 MOV AH,0CH ;write pixel function
 MOV AL,0 ;start with pixel color 0
 MOV BH,0 ;page 0
 MOV CX,0 ;column 0
 MOV DX,100 ;row 100
.L1: INT 10H ;write pixel
 INC AL ;next color
 INC CX ;next col
 CMP CX,256 ;finished?
 JL L1 ;no, repeat

```

We can set the color in a color register with function 10h.

**INT 10h, Function 10h, Subfunction 10h:  
Set Color Register**

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 10h            |
|         | AL = 10h            |
|         | BX = color register |
|         | CH = green value    |
|         | CL = blue value     |
|         | DH = red value      |
| Output: | none                |

**Example 16.11** Put the color values of 30 red, 20 green, and 10 blue into color register 5.

**Solution:**

```

MOV AH,10H ;set color register
MOV AL,10H ;
MOV BX,5 ;register 5
MOV DH,30 ;red value
MOV CH,20 ;green value
MOV CL,10 ;blue value
INT 10H

```

It is also possible to set a block of color registers in one call; see Appendix C.

## 16.5 Animation

The movement of an object on the screen is simulated by erasing the existing object and then displaying it at a new location. We will use a small ball to illustrate the techniques in animation.

For the display, we need to pick a graphics mode, the ball color, and the background color. Because all adapters support CGA modes, let's choose mode 4. If we select palette 1 with a green background color, we can show

a white ball moving on a green background. The ball will be represented by a square matrix of four pixels; its position is given by the upper left-hand pixel.

### *Ball Display*

We will confine the ball to an area bounded by columns 10 and 300 and the rows 10 and 189. The boundary is shown in cyan. Initially, let us set the ball to the middle of the right-hand margin; that is, ball position is column 298, row 100.

The procedure SET\_DISPLAY\_MODE sets the display mode to 4, selects palette 1 and a green background color, and then draws a cyan border. The border is drawn by two macros DRAW\_ROW and DRAW\_COLUMN. The procedure DISPLAY\_BALL displays the ball at column CX row DX with the color given in AL. Both procedures are in program listing PGM16\_2A.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM16\_2A.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM16_2A:
PUBLIC SET_DISPLAY_MODE, DISPLAY_BALL
.MODEL SMALL
DRAW_ROW MACRO X
 LOCAL L1
 ;draws a line in row X from column 10 to column 300
 MOV AH,0CH ;draw pixel
 MOV AL,1 ;cyan
 MOV CX,10 ;column 10
 MOV DX,X ;row X
L1: INT 10H
 INC CX ;next column
 CMP CX,301 ;beyond column 300?
 JL L1 ;no, repeat
 ENDM

;
DRAW_COLUMN MACRO Y
 LOCAL L2
 ;draws a line in column Y from row 10 to row 189
 MOV AH,0CH ;draw pixel
 MOV AL,1 ;cyan
 MOV CX,Y ;column Y
 MOV DX,10 ;row 10
L2: INT 10H
 INC DX ;next row
 CMP DX,190 ;beyond row 189?
 JL L2 ;no, repeat
 ENDM

;
.CODE
SET_DISPLAY_MODE PROC
;sets display mode and draws boundary
 MOV AH,0 ;set mode
 MOV AL,04H ;mode 4, 320 x 200 4 color
 INT 10H
 MOV AH,0BH ;select palette
 MOV BH,1
 MOV BL,1 ;palette 1
 INT 10H
;
```

```

 MOV BH,0 ;set background color
 MOV BL,2 ;green.
 INT 10H
draw_boundary
 DRAW_ROW 10 ;draw row 10
 DRAW_ROW 189 ;draw row 189
 DRAW_COLUMN 10 ;draw column 10
 DRAW_COLUMN 300 ;draw column 300
 RET
SET_DISPLAY_MODE ENDP

DISPLAY_BALL PROC
;displays ball at column CX and row DX with color given
;in' AL
;input: AL = color of ball ..
; CX = column
; DX = row
 MOV AH,0CH ;write pixel
 INT 10H
 INC CX ;pixel on next column
 INT 10H
 INC DX ;down 1 row
 INT 10H
 DEC CX ;previous column
 INT 10H
 DEC DX ;restore DX
 RET
DISPLAY_BALL ENDP
END

```

Notice that, to erase the ball, all we have to do is display a ball with the background color at the ball position. Thus we can use the DISPLAY\_BALL procedure for both displaying and erasing.

To simulate ball movement, we define a ball velocity with two components, VEL\_X and VEL\_Y; each is a word variable. When VEL\_X is positive, the ball is moving to the right, and when VEL\_Y is positive, the ball is moving down! The position of the ball is given by CX (column) and DX (row). After displaying the ball at one position, we erase it and compute the new position by adding VEL\_X to CX and VEL\_Y to DX. The ball is then displayed at the new column and row position, and the process is repeated.

The following instructions display a ball at column CX, row DX; erase it; and display it in a new position determined by the velocity.

```

MOV AL,3 ;color 3 in palette = white
CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;display white ball
MOV AL,0 ;color 0 is background color
CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;erase ball
ADD CX,VEL_X ;new column
ADD DX,VEL_Y ;new row
MOV AL,3 ;white color
CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;display ball at new position

```

Because the computer can execute instructions at such a high speed, the ball will be moving too fast on the screen for us to see. One way to solve the

problem is to use a counter-controlled delay loop after each display of the ball. But due to different operation speeds of the various PC models, such a delay loop cannot give a consistent delay time. A better method is to use the timer. We noted in Chapter 15 that the timer ticks 18.2 times every second.

A timer interrupt procedure is needed for the timing; it will do the following: each time it is activated, it will set the variable TIMER\_FLAG to 1. A ball-moving procedure will check this variable to determine if the timer has ticked; if so, it moves the ball and clears TIMER\_FLAG to 0. The timer interrupt procedure TIMER\_TICK is given in the program listing PGM16\_2B.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM16\_2B.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM16_2B: TIMER_TICK
;timer interrupt procedure
 EXTRN TIMER_FLAG:BYTE
 PUBLIC TIMER_TICK

.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
;timer routine
TIMER_TICK PROC
;save registers
 PUSH DS ;save DS
 PUSH AX
 MOV AX, SEG TIMER_FLAG ;get segment of flag
 MOV DS, AX ;put in DS
 MOV TIMER_FLAG, 1 ;set flag
;restore registers
 POP AX
 .POP DS ;restore DS
 IRET
TIMER_TICK ENDP ;end timer routine
END
```

#### **Ball Bounce**

If we continue to move the ball in the same direction, eventually, the ball will go beyond the boundary. To confine the ball to the given area, we show it bouncing off the boundary. First we test each new position before displaying the ball. If a position is beyond the boundary, we simply set the ball at the boundary; at the same time, we reverse the velocity component that caused the ball to move outside. This will move the ball back as if it bounced off the boundary. The procedure CHECK\_BOUNDARY in program listing PGM16\_2C.ASM checks for the boundary condition and modifies the velocity accordingly.

With the boundary check procedure written, we can write a MOVE\_BALL procedure that waits for the timer and moves the ball. The MOVE\_BALL procedure first erases the ball at the current position given by CX,DX; then it computes the new position by adding the velocity and calls CHECK\_BOUNDARY to check the new position; finally, it checks the TIMER\_FLAG to see if the timer has ticked; if so, it displays the ball at the new position. The MOVE\_BALL procedure is in program listing PGM16\_2C.ASM.

**Program Listing PGM16\_2C.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM16_2C:
;contains MOVE_BALL and CHECK_BOUNDARY procedures
 EXTRN DISPLAY_BALL:NEAR
 EXTRN TIMER_FLAG:BYTE, VEL_X:WORD, VEL_Y:WORD
PUBLIC MOVE_BALL

.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
MOVE_BALL PROC
;erase ball at current position and display ball at new
;position
;input: CX = column of ball position
; DX = row of ball position
;erase ball
 MOV AL,0 ;color 0 is background color
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;erase ball
;get new position
 ADD CX,VEL_X
 ADD DX,VEL_Y
;check boundary
 CALL CHECK_BOUNDARY
;wait for 1 timer tick to display ball
TEST_TIMER:
 CMP TIMER_FLAG,1 ;timer ticked?
 JNE TEST_TIMER ;no, keep testing
 MOV TIMER_FLAG,0 ;yes, reset flag
 MOV AL,3 ;white color
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;show ball
 RET
MOVE_BALL ENDP
;
CHECK_BOUNDARY . PROC
;determine if ball is outside screen, if so move it
;back in and change the ball direction
;input: CX = column of ball position
; DX = row of ball position
;output: CX = column of ball position
; DX = row of ball position
;check column value
 CMP CX,11 ;left of 11?
 JG L1 ;no, go check right margin
 MOV CX,11 ;yes, set to 11
 NEG VEL_X ;change direction
 JMP L2 ;go test row boundary
L1: CMP CX,298 ;beyond right margin?
 JL L2 ;no, go test row boundary
 MOV CX,298 ;set column to 298
 NEG VEL_X ;change direction
;check row value
L2: CMP DX,11 ;above top margin?
 JG L3 ;no, check bottom margin
 MOV DX,11 ;set to 11
 NEG VEL_Y ;change direction
 JMP DONE ;done
L3: CMP DX,187 ;below bottom margin?

```

```

 JL DONE ;no, done
 MOV DX,187 ;yes, set to 187
 NEG VEL_Y ;change direction
DONE:
 RET
CHECK_BOUNDARY ENDP
END

```

We are now ready to write the main procedure. Our program will use the SETUP\_INT procedure in program listing PGM15\_2A in Chapter 15 to set up the interrupt vector. The steps in the main procedure are: (1) set up the graphics display and the TIMER\_TICK interrupt procedure, (2) display the ball at the right margin with a velocity going up and to the left, (3) wait for the timer to tick, (4) call MOVE\_BALL to move the ball, (5) wait for the timer to tick again to allow more time for the ball to stay on the screen, and (6) go to step 3. The main procedure is shown in program listing PGM16\_2.ASM.

#### Program Listing PGM16\_2.ASM

```

TITLE PGM16_2: BOUNCING BALL
 EXTRN SET_DISPLAY_MODE:NEAR, DISPLAY_BALL:NEAR
 EXTRN MOVE_BALL:NEAR
 EXTRN SETUP_INT:NEAR, TIMER_TICK:NEAR
 PUBLIC TIMER_FLAG, VEL_X, VEL_Y
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
;
.DATA
NEW_TIMER_VEC DW ?,?
OLD_TIMER_VEC DW ?,?
TIMER_FLAG DB 0
VEL_X DW -6
VEL_Y DW -1
;
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
;
;set graphics mode and draw border
 CALL SET_DISPLAY_MODE
;
;set up timer interrupt vector
 MOV NEW_TIMER_VEC, OFFSET TIMER_TICK ;offset
 MOV NEW_TIMER_VEC+2,CS ;segment
 MOV AL,1CH ;interrupt type
 LEA DI,OLD_TIMER_VEC ;DI points to vector buffer
 LEA SI,NEW_TIMER_VEC ;SI points to new vector
 CALL SETUP_INT
;
;start ball at column = 298, row = 100
;for the rest of the program CX will be column position
;of ball and DX will be row position
 MOV CX,298
 MOV DX,100

```

```

 MOV AL,3 ;white ball
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL
 ;wait for timer tick before moving the ball
 TEST_TIMER:
 CMP TIMER_FLAG,1 ;timer ticked?
 JNE TEST_TIMER ;no, keep testing
 MOV TIMER_FLAG,0 ;yes, clear flag
 CALL MOVE_BALL ;move to new position
 ;delay 1 timer tick
 TEST_TIMER_2:
 CMP TIMER_FLAG,1 ;timer ticked?
 JNE TEST_TIMER_2 ;no, keep testing
 MOV TIMER_FLAG,0 ;yes, clear flag
 JMP TEST_TIMER ;go get next ball position
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

To run the program, we need to link the object files PGM16\_2 + PGM15\_2A + PGM16\_2A + PGM16\_2B + PGM16\_2C. One word of caution, however: this program has no way to terminate. So it may be necessary to reboot the system. In section 16.6.2 we discuss a way to terminate the program.

## 16.6

### An Interactive Video Game

In the following sections, we'll develop the bouncing ball program into an interactive video game program. First, in section 16.6.1, we add sound to the program; when the ball hits the boundary a tone is generated. Second, in section 16.6.2, we add a paddle to allow the player to hit the ball. To keep things simple, the paddle only slides up and down along the left boundary and is controlled by the up and down arrow keys. If the paddle misses the ball when it arrives at the left margin, the game is terminated. The game can also be terminated by pressing the Esc key.

#### 16.6.1

##### Adding Sound

The PC has a tone generator that can be set to generate particular tones for specified durations. The frequency of the tone generation can be specified by a timer circuit.

The timer circuit is driven by a clock circuit that has a rate of 1.193 MHz. This is beyond the range of human hearing, but the timer can generate output signals with lower frequencies. It does this by generating one pulse for every  $N$  incoming pulses, where  $N$  can be specified by a program. The number  $N$  is first loaded into a counter, then, after counting  $N$  incoming pulses, the circuit produces one pulse. The process is repeated until a different value is placed in the counter. For example, by placing a value of 1193 in the counter, the output is 1000 pulses every second, or 1000 Hz.

The next thing in tone generation is to determine the duration. To start the tone, we turn on the timer circuit; after a specific amount of time, we must turn it off. To keep time, we can use the TIMER TICK interrupt

routine. Because the TIMER\_TICK procedure is activated once every 55 ms, we get half a second of delay in 9 ticks.

To access the timer circuit, we have to use the I/O instructions **IN** and **OUT**. They allow data to be moved between an I/O port and AL or AX. To read an 8-bit I/O port we use

**IN AL, port**

where port is an I/O port number. Similarly, to write to a 8-bit I/O port we use  
**OUT port, AL**

There are three I/O ports involved here: port 42h for loading the counter, port 43h that specifies the timer operation, and port 61h that enables the timer circuit.

Before loading port 42h with the count, we load port 43h with the command code B6h; this specifies that the timer will generate square waves and that the port 42h will be loaded one byte at a time with the low byte first. The bit positions 0 and 1 in port 61h control the timer and its output. By setting them to 1, the timer circuit will be enabled.

The sound-generating procedure, BEEP, produces a tone of 1000 Hz for half a second. The steps are (1) load the counter (I/O port 42h) with 1193, (2) activate the timer, (3) allow the beep to last for about 500 ms, and (4) deactivate the timer. Procedure BEEP is shown in program listing PGM16\_3A.ASM.

#### Program Listing PGM16\_3A.ASM

```

TITLE PGM16_3A: BEEP
;sound generating procedure
 EXTRN TIMER_FLAG:BYTE
 PUBLIC BEEP
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
BEEP PROC
;generate beeping sound
 PUSH CX ;save CX
;initialize timer
 MOV AL,0B6H ;specify mode of operation
 OUT 43H,AL ;write to port 43h
;load count
 MOV AX,1193 ;count for 1000 Hz
 OUT 42H,AL ;low byte
 MOV AL,AH ;high byte
 OUT 42H,AL
;activate speaker
 IN AL,61H ;read control port
 MOV AH,AL ;save value in AH
 OR AL,11B ;set control bits
 OUT 61H,AL ;activate speaker
;500 ms delay loop
 MOV CX,9 ;do 9 times
B_1: CMP TIMER_FLAG,1 ;check timer flag
 JNE B_1 ;not set, loop back
 MOV TIMER_FLAG,0 ;flag set, clear it
 LOOP B_1 ;repeat for next tick
;turn off tone
 MOV AL,AH ;return old control value to AL

```

We now write a new ball movement procedure that uses the sound-generating procedure BEEP. Whenever the ball hits the boundary, procedure BEEP is called to sound the tone. The new procedures are called MOVE\_BALL\_A and CHECK\_BOUNDARY\_A; both are contained in the program listing PGM16\_3B.ASM.

#### Program Listing PGM16\_3B.ASM

```

TITLE PGM16_3B: Ball Movement
;contains MOVE_BALL_A and CHECK_BOUNDARY_A
 EXTRN DISPLAY_BALL:NEAR, BEEP:NEAR
 EXTRN TIMER_FLAG:BYTE, VEL_X:WORD, VEL_Y:WORD
PUBLIC MOVE_BALL_A
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
MOVE_BALL_A PROC
;erase ball at current position and display ball at new
;position
;input: CX = column
; DX = row
;output: CX = column
; DX = row
 MOV AL,0 ;color 0 is background color
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;erase ball
;get new position
 ADD CX,VEL_X
 ADD DX,VEL_Y
;check boundary
 CALL CHECK_BOUNDARY_A
;wait for 1 timer tick
TEST_TIMER_1:
 CMP TIMER_FLAG,1 ;timer ticked?
 JNE TEST_TIMER_1 ;no, keep testing
 MOV TIMER_FLAG,0 ;yes, clarify
 MOV AL,3 ;white color
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL ;show ball
 RET
MOVE_BALL_A ENDP
;
CHECK_BOUNDARY_A PROC
;determine if ball is outside screen, if so move it
;back in and change the ball direction
;input: CX = column
; DX = row
;output: CX = column
; DX = row
;check column value
 CMP CX,11 ;left of 11?
 JG L1 ;no, go check right margin
 MOV CX,11 ;yes, set to 11
 NEG VEL_X ;change direction
 CALL BEEP ;sound beep
 JMP L2 ;go test row boundary
L1: CMP CX,299 ;beyond right margin?
 JL L2 ;no, go test row boundary
 MOV CX,299 ;set column to 298
 NEG VEL_X ;change direction

```

```

 CALL BEEP ;sound beep
;check row value
L2: CMP DX,11 ;above top margin?
 JG L3 ;no, check bottom margin
 MOV DX,11 ;set to 11
 NEG VEL_Y ;change direction
 CALL BEEP
 JMP DONE ;done
L3: CMP DX,188 ;below bottom margin?
 JL DONE ;no, done
 MOV DX,187 ;yes, set to 187
 NEG VEL_Y ;change direction
 CALL BEEP
 ;sound beep

DONE:
 RET
CHECK_BOUNDARY_A ENDP
;
END

```

### 16.6.2

#### **Adding a Paddle**

Next, let us add a paddle to the program. The paddle will move up and down along the left boundary as the player presses the up and down arrow keys.

Since the program does not know when a key may be pressed, we need to write an interrupt procedure for interrupt 9, the keyboard interrupt. This interrupt procedure differs from the one in Chapter 15 in that it will access the keyboard I/O port directly and obtain the scan code.

There are three I/O ports to be accessed. When the keyboard generates an interrupt, bit 5 of the I/O port 20h is set, and the scan code comes into port 60h. Port 61h, bit 7, is used to enable the keyboard. Therefore, the interrupt routine should read the data from port 60h, enable the keyboard by setting bit 7 in port 61h, and clear bit 5 of port 20h.

The interrupt procedure is called KEYBOARD\_INT. When it obtains a scan code, it first checks to see if the scan code is a make or break code. If it finds a make code, it sets the variable KEY\_FLAG and puts the make code in the variable SCAN\_CODE. If it finds a break code, the variables are not changed. Procedure KEYBOARD\_INT is in program listing PGM16\_3C.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM16\_3C.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM16_3C:Keyboard Interrupt
EXTRN SCAN_CODE:BYTE, KEY_FLAG:BYTE
PUBLIC KEYBOARD_INT
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
KEYBOARD_INT PROC
;keyboard interrupt routine
;save registers
PUSH DS

```

```

 PUSH AX
;set up DS
 MOV AX, SEG SCAN_CODE
 MOV DS, AX
;input scan code
 IN AL, 60H ;read scan code
 PUSH AX ;save it
 IN AL, 61H ;control port value
 MOV AH, AL ;save in AH
 OR AL, 80H ;set bit for keyboard
 OUT 61H, AL ;write back
 XCHG AH, AL ;get back control value
 OUT 61H, AL ;reset control port
 POP AX ;recover scan code
 MOV AH, AL ;save scan code in AH
 TEST AL, 80H ;test for break code
 JNE KEY_0 ;yes, clear flags, goto KEY_0
;make code
 MOV SCAN_CODE, AL ;save in variable
 MOV KEY_FLAG, 1 ;set key flag
KEY_0: MOV AL, 20H ;reset interrupt
 OUT 20H, AL
;restore registers
 POP AX
 POP DS
 IRET
KEYBOARD_INT ENDP ;end KEYBOARD routine
;
END

```

We now add a paddle in column 11, and use the up and down arrow keys to move it. If the ball gets to column 11 and the paddle is not in position to hit the ball, the program terminates. The paddle is made up of 10 pixels; the initial position is from row 45 to row 54. We use two variables, PADDLE\_TOP and PADDLE\_BOTTOM, to keep track of its current position.

We need two procedures: DRAW\_PADDLE, to display and erase the paddle; and MOVE\_PADDLE, to move the paddle up and down. Both procedures are in program listing PGM16\_3D.ASM.

#### **Program Listing PGM16\_3D.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM16_3D: PADDLE CONTROL
;contains MOVE_PADDLE and DRAW_PADDLE
 EXTRN PADDLE_TOP:WORD, PADDLE_BOTTOM:WORD
 PUBLIC DRAW_PADDLE, MOVE_PADDLE
.MODEL SMALL
.CODE
DRAW_PADDLE PROC
;draw paddle in column 11
;input: AL contains pixel value
; 2 (red) for display and 0 (green) to erase
;save registers
 PUSH CX
 PUSH DX

```

```

 MOV AH,0CH ;write pixel function
 MOV CX,11 ;column 11
 MOV DX,PADDLE_TOP ;top row
DP1: INT 10H
 INC DX ;next row
 CMP DX,PADDLE_BOTTOM;done?
 JLE DP1 ;no, repeat
;restore registers
 POP DX
 POP CX
 RET
DRAW_PADDLE ENDP
;
MOVE_PADDLE PROC
;move paddle up or down
;input: AX = 2 (to move paddle down 2 pixels)
; = -2 (to move paddle up 2 pixels)
 MOV BX,AX ;copy to BX
;check direction
 CMP AX,0
 JL UP ;neg, move up
;move down, check paddle position
 CMP PADDLE_BOTTOM,188 ;at bottom?
 JGE DONE ;yes, cannot move
 JMP UPDATE ;no, update paddle
;move up, check if at top
UP: CMP PADDLE_TOP,11 ;at top?
 JLE DONE ;yes, cannot move
;move paddle
UPDATE:
;erase paddle
 MOV AL,0 ;green color
 CALL DRAW_PADDLE
;-change paddle position
 ADD PADDLE_TOP,BX
 ADD PADDLE_BOTTOM,BX
;-display paddle at new position
 MOV AL,2 ;red
 CALL DRAW_PADDLE
DONE: RET
MOVE_PADDLE ENDP
END

```

MOVE\_PADDLE will either move the paddle up two pixels or down two pixels, depending on whether AX is positive or negative. However, if the paddle is already at the top, it will not move up; and if it is already at the bottom, it will not move down.

We are now ready to write the main procedure.

**Program Listing PGM16\_3.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM16_3: PADDLE_BALL
 EXTRN SET_DISPLAY_MODE:NEAR, DISPLAY_BALL:NEAR
 EXTRN MOVE_BALL_A:NEAR, DRAW_PADDLE:NEAR
 EXTRN MOVE_PADDLE:NEAR
 EXTRN KEYBOARD_INT:NEAR, TIMER_TICK:NEAR
 EXTRN SETUP_INT:NEAR, KEYBOARD_INT:NEAR
PUBLIC TIMER_FLAG, KEY_FLAG, SCAN_CODE
PUBLIC PADDLE_TOP, PADDLE_BOTTOM, VEL_X, VEL_Y
;
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
;
NEW_TIMER_VEC DW ?,?
OLD_TIMER_VEC DW ?,?
NEW_KEY_VEC DW ?,?
OLD_KEY_VEC DW ?,?
SCAN_CODE DB 0
KEY_FLAG DB 0
TIMER_FLAG DB 0
PADDLE_TOP DW 45
PADDLE_BOTTOM DW 54
VEL_X DW -6
VEL_Y DW -1
;scan codes
UP_ARROW = 72
DOWN_ARROW = 80
ESC_KEY = 1
;
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
;
;set graphics mode
 CALL SET_DISPLAY_MODE
;draw paddle
 MOV AL,2 ;display red paddle
 CALL DRAW_PADDLE
;set up timer interrupt vector
 MOV NEW_TIMER_VEC,OFFSET TIMER_TICK ;offset
 MOV NEW_TIMER_VEC+2,CS ;segment
 MOV AL,1CH ;interrupt number
 LEA DI,OLD_TIMER_VEC
 LEA SI,NEW_TIMER_VEC
 CALL SETUP_INT
;set up keyboard interrupt vector
 MOV NEW_KEY_VEC,OFFSET KEYBOARD_INT ;offset
 MOV NEW_KEY_VEC+2,CS ;segment
 MOV AL,9H ;interrupt number
 LEA DI,OLD_KEY_VEC
 LEA SI,NEW_KEY_VEC
 CALL SETUP_INT
;start ball at column = 298, row = 100

```

```

 MOV CX, 298 ;column
 MOV DX, 100 ;row
 MOV AL, 3 ;white
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL
;check key flag
TEST_KEY:
 CMP KEY_FLAG, 1 ;check key flag
 JNE TEST_TIMER ;not set, go check timer fla
 MOV KEY_FLAG, 0 ;flag set, clear it and chec
 CMP SCAN_CODE, ESC_KEY ;Esc key?
 JNE TK_1 ;no, check arrow keys
 JMP DONE ;Esc, terminate
TK_1: CMP SCAN_CODE, UP_ARROW ;up arrow?
 JNE TK_2 ;no, check down arrow
 MOV AX, -2 ;yes, move up 2 pixels
 CALL MOVE_PADDLE ;
 JMP TEST_TIMER ;go check timer flag
TK_2: CMP SCAN_CODE, DOWN_ARROW ;down arrow?
 JNE TEST_TIMER ;no, check timer flag
 MOV AX, 2 ;yes, move down 2 pixels
 CALL MOVE_PADDLE ;
;check timer flag
TEST_TIMER:
 CMP TIMER_FLAG, 1 ;flag set?
 JNE TEST_KEY ;no, check key flag
 MOV TIMER_FLAG, 0 ;yes, clear it
 CALL MOVE_BALL_A ;move ball to new position
;check if paddle missed ball
 CMP CX, 11 ;at column 11?
 JNE TEST_KEY ;no, check key flag
 CMP DX, PADDLE_TOP ;yes, check paddle
 JL CP_1 ;missed, ball above
 CMP DX, PADDLE_BOTTOM
 JG CP_1 ;missed, ball below
;paddle hit the ball, delay one tick then
;move the ball and redraw paddle
DELAY: CMP TIMER_FLAG, 1 ;timer ticked?
 JNE DELAY ;no, keep checking
 MOV TIMER_FLAG, 0 ;yes, reset flag
 CALL MOVE_BALL_A ;
 MOV AL, 2 ;display red paddle
 CALL DRAW_PADDLE ;
 JMP TEST_KEY ;check key flag
;paddle missed the ball, erase the ball and terminate
CP_1: MOV AL, 0 ;erase ball
 CALL DISPLAY_BALL
;-reset timer interrupt vector
DONE: LEA DI, NEW_TIMER_VEC
 LEA SI, OLD_TIMER_VEC
 MOV AL, 1CH
 CALL SETUP_INT
;-reset keyboard interrupt vector
 LEA DI, NEW_KEY_VEC
 LEA SI, OLD_KEY_VEC
 MOV AL, 9H

```

```

 CALL SETUP_INT
;read key
 MOV AH,0
 INT 16H
;reset to text mode
 MOV AH,0 ;wait for input
 MOV AL,3
 INT 10H
;return to DOS
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
 END MAIN

```

In the main procedure, we alternate between checking the key flag and the timer flag. If the key flag is set, we check the scan code: (1) Esc key will terminate the program, (2) Up arrow key will move the paddle up, (3) Down arrow key will move the paddle down, and (4) all other keys are ignored. If the timer flag is set, we call MOVE\_BALL\_A to move the ball to a new position, and if the ball is at column 11 but missed the paddle, we terminate the program.

To terminate the program, we first reset the interrupt vectors and wait for a key input. When a key is pressed, we reset the screen to text mode and return to DOS.

### Summary

- Screen elements in graphics mode are called pixels.
- The common IBM graphics adapters are CGA, EGA, and VGA.
- The INT 10h routine handles all graphics operations.
- The CGA has a medium-resolution mode of  $320 \times 200$  and a high-resolution mode of  $640 \times 200$ .
- The EGA has all the CGA modes plus a resolution of  $640 \times 350$ .
- The VGA has all the EGA modes plus a resolution of  $640 \times 480$ . It can also display 256 colors in the  $320 \times 200$  mode.
- Animation involves erasing an object and displaying it at a new location.
- Sound generation can be achieved by writing to the I/O ports.
- Interactive video game programming requires trapping the keyboard interrupt.

**Glossary**

|                                             |                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>analog monitor</b>                       | A monitor that can accept multilevel color signals            |
| <b>APA (all points addressable)</b>         | Graphics mode that maps a pixel into a single dot             |
| <b>background color</b>                     | Default color of pixels                                       |
| <b>bit planes</b>                           | Memory modules that share the same memory address             |
| <b>ECD (enhanced color display) monitor</b> | A monitor that can display all EGA modes                      |
| <b>palette</b>                              | A collection of colors that can be displayed at the same time |
| <b>pixel</b>                                | Picture element                                               |
| <b>scan lines</b>                           | Lines on the screen traced by a beam of electrons             |

---

**New Instructions**

IN

OUT

---

**Exercises**

1. Write instructions that will select graphics mode  $320 \times 200$  with 16 colors.
2. Write instructions that will select palette 0 with white background for the CGA medium resolution mode.
3. Write instructions that will display a  $10 \times 10$  green rectangle with the upper left-hand corner at column 150 and row 100 on a white background using CGA medium resolution.
4. Write instructions that will change a  $10 \times 10$  green rectangle on white background into a cyan rectangle on a white background.

**Programming Exercises**

5. Modify the video game program in the chapter to add a second paddle in column 299 so that it becomes a 2-player game.
6. Modify the video game program in the chapter so that the ball speed decreases when it hits the boundary, but increases when it is hit by a paddle.

# 17

## Recursion

### Overview

A recursive procedure is a procedure that calls itself. Recursive procedures are important in high-level languages, but the way the system uses the stack to implement these procedures is hidden from the programmer. In assembly language, the programmer must actually program the stack operations, so this provides an opportunity to see how recursion really works.

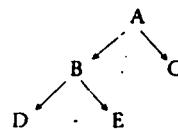
Because you may have had only limited experience with recursion, sections 17.1–17.2 discuss the underlying ideas. Section 17.3 shows how that stack can be used to pass data to a procedure; this topic was also covered in Chapter 14. In sections 17.4–17.5, we apply this method to implement recursive procedures that call themselves once. The chapter ends with a discussion of procedures that make multiple recursive calls.

### 17.1 The Idea of Recursion

A process is said to be **recursive** if it is defined in terms of itself. For example, consider the following definition of a binary tree:

A binary tree is either empty, or consists of a single element called the *root*, and whose remaining elements are partitioned into two disjoint subsets (the left and right subtrees), each of which is a binary tree.

Let us apply the definition to show that the following tree T is a binary tree:



Choose A as the root of T. The tree T<sub>1</sub>, consisting of B, D, and E, is the left subtree of A and the tree T<sub>2</sub>, consisting of C, is the right subtree. We must show that T<sub>1</sub> and T<sub>2</sub> are binary trees.

Choose B as the root of T<sub>1</sub>. The trees T<sub>1a</sub> consisting of D and T<sub>1b</sub> consisting of E are the left and right subtrees. We must show that T<sub>1a</sub> and T<sub>1b</sub> are binary trees.

Choose D as the root of T<sub>1a</sub>. The left and right subtrees of D are empty, and since an empty tree is a binary tree, T<sub>1a</sub> is a binary tree. For the same reason, T<sub>1b</sub> is a binary tree. Because T<sub>1a</sub> and T<sub>1b</sub> are binary trees, T<sub>1</sub> must be a binary tree.

Now look at T<sub>2</sub>. It has a root C whose left and right subtrees are empty, so it is a binary tree.

Since T<sub>1</sub> and T<sub>2</sub> have been shown to be binary trees, tree T must also be a binary tree.

This simple example illustrates the main characteristics of recursive processes:

1. The main problem (showing that T is a binary tree) breaks down to simpler problems (showing that T<sub>1</sub> and T<sub>2</sub> are binary trees), and each of these problems is solved in exactly the same way as the main problem.
2. There must be an escape case (empty trees are binary trees) that lets the recursion terminate.
3. Once a subproblem has been solved (T<sub>1</sub> is shown to be a binary tree), work proceeds on the next step of the original problem (showing that T<sub>2</sub> is a binary tree).

## 17.2 Recursive Procedures

A recursive procedure calls itself. As a first example, consider the factorial of a positive integer. It may be defined nonrecursively as

$$\text{FACTORIAL}(1) = 1$$

$$\text{FACTORIAL}(N) = N \times (N - 1) \times (N - 2) \times \dots \times 2 \times 1 \quad \text{if } N > 1$$

or, since

$$\text{FACTORIAL}(N - 1) = (N - 1) \times (N - 2) \times \dots \times 2 \times 1$$

we may write the following recursive definition:

$$\text{FACTORIAL}(1) = 1$$

$$\text{FACTORIAL}(N) = N \times \text{FACTORIAL}(N - 1) \quad \text{if } N > 1$$

Let's rewrite this as an algorithm for a recursive procedure FACTORIAL:

```

1: PROCEDURE FACTORIAL (input: N, output: RESULT)
2: IF N = 1
3: THEN
4: RESULT = 1
5: ELSE

```

```

6: call FACTORIAL (input: N - 1, output: RESULT)
7: RESULT = N * RESULT
8: END_IF
9: RETURN

```

In line 7, the value of RESULT on the right side is the value returned by the call to FACTORIAL at line 6.

For  $N = 4$ , we can trace the actions of the procedure as follows:

```

call FACTORIAL (4,RESULT) /* begin first call */
call FACTORIAL (3,RESULT) /* begin second call */
call FACTORIAL (2,RESULT) /* begin third call */
call FACTORIAL (1,RESULT) /* begin fourth call */
RESULT = 1
RETURN /* end fourth call */

```

The fourth call is the escape case. When it is finished, the third call is resumed at line 7:

```
RESULT = N * RESULT
```

On the right side,  $N = 2$  and RESULT is 1, the value computed in the fourth call. We compute,

```
RESULT = 2 * 1 = 2
```

and this call ends. The procedure then resumes the second call at line 7. In this call  $N = 3$ , so we compute

```
RESULT = 3 * RESULT = 3 * 2 = 6
```

which ends this call. Finally the procedure resumes the first call at line 7. In this call  $N = 4$ , so the result is,

```
RESULT = 4 * RESULT = 4 * 6 = 24
```

and this is the value returned by the procedure.

This procedure has the properties of a recursive process that we noticed in the binary tree example. Each call to procedure FACTORIAL works on a simpler version of the original problem (finding the factorial of a smaller number), there is an escape case (the factorial of 1) and once a call has been completed, work continues on the previous call.

As a second example, consider the problem of finding the largest entry in an array A of  $N$  integers. If  $N = 1$ , then the largest entry is the only entry,  $A[1]$ . If  $N > 1$ , the largest entry is either  $A[N]$  or the biggest of the entries  $A[1] \dots A[N - 1]$ . Here is an algorithm for a procedure:

```

1: PROCEDURE FIND_MAX (input: N, output: MAX)
2: IF N = 1
3: THEN
4: MAX = A[1]
5: ELSE
6: call FIND_MAX (N-1, MAX)
7: IF A[N] > MAX
8: THEN
9: MAX = A[N]
10: ELSE
11: MAX = MAX
12: END_IF
13: RETURN

```

In lines 7 and 11, the value MAX on the right side is the value returned by the call at line 6.

Let's trace the procedure for an array A of four entries: 10, 50, 20, 4.

```
call FIND_MAX(4,MAX) /* first call */
call FIND_MAX(3,MAX) /* second call */
call FIND_MAX(2,MAX) /* third call */
call FIND_MAX(1,MAX) /* fourth call */
```

As in the factorial example, the fourth call is the escape case. It returns MAX = A[1] = 10 and exits.

Now the third call resumes at line 7. Because A[2] (= 50) > MAX (= 10), the value returned from this call is MAX = 50.

Next the second call resumes at line 7. Because A[3] (= 20) < MAX (= 50), this call also returns MAX = 50.

Finally, we are back in the first call at line 7. Because A[4] (= 4) < MAX (= 50), this call returns MAX = 50, and this is the value returned to the calling program by the procedure.

## 17.3

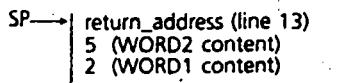
### **Passing Parameters on the Stack**

As we will see later, recursive procedures are implemented in assembly language by passing parameters on the stack (section 14.5.3). To see how this may be accomplished, consider the following simple program. It places the content of two memory words on the stack, and calls a procedure ADD\_WORDS that returns their sum in AX.

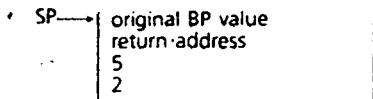
#### **Program Listing PGM17\_1.ASM**

```
0: TITLE PGM17_1: ADD WORDS
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: WORD1 DW 2
5: WORD2 DW 5
6: .CODE
7: MAIN PROC
8: MOV AX, @DATA
9: MOV DS, AX
10: PUSH WORD1
11: PUSH WORD2
12: CALL ADD_WORDS
13: MOV AH, 4CH
14: INT 21H
15: ;
16: ADD_WORDS PROC NEAR
17: ;adds two memory words
18: ;stack on entry: return addr.(top), word2, word1
19: ;output: AX = sum
20: PUSH BP ;save BP
21: MOV BP, SP
22: MOV AX, [BP+6] ;AX gets WORD1
23: ADD AX, [BP+4] ;AX has sum
24: POP BP ;restore BP
25: RET 4 ;exit
26: ADD_WORDS ENDP
27: END MAIN
```

After initializing DS, the program pushes the contents of WORD1 and WORD2 on the stack, and calls ADD\_WORDS. On entry to the procedure, the stack looks like this:



At lines 20-21, the procedure first saves the original content of BP on the stack, and sets BP to point to the stack top. The result is



Now the data can be accessed by indirect addressing. BP is used for two reasons: (1) when BP is used in indirect addressing, SS is the assumed segment register, and (2) SP itself may not be used in indirect addressing. At line 22, the effective address of the source in the instruction

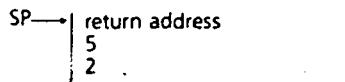
`MOV AX, [BP+6]`

is the stack top offset plus 6, which is the location of WORD1 content. Similarly, at line 23 the source in

`ADD AX, [BP+4]`

is the location of WORD2 content (5).

After restoring BP to its original value at line 24, the stack becomes



To exit the procedure and restore the stack to its original condition, we use

`RET 4`

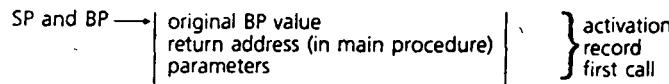
This causes the return address to be popped into IP, and four additional bytes to be removed from the stack.

## 17.4 The Activation Record

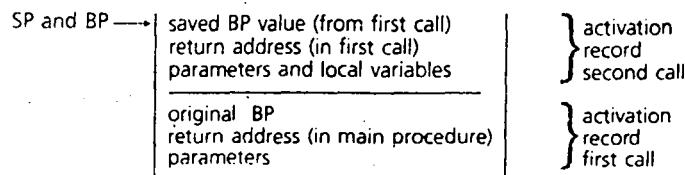
Before attempting to code a recursive procedure, one issue must be resolved. The parameters (and local variables, if any) of the procedure are reinitialized each time the procedure is called. In both examples of section 17.2, the procedure is first called with parameter  $N = 4$ , then with  $N = 3$ , then with  $N = 2$ , then with  $N = 1$ . When a call has been completed, the procedure resumes the previous call at the point it left off. In order to do so, it must somehow "remember" that point, as well as the values of the parameters and local variables in that call. These values are known as the **activation record** of the call.

To illustrate, suppose we have a procedure that is called once from the main procedure, and then calls itself twice more. Before initiating the first call, the main procedure places the initial activation record on the stack and calls the procedure. The procedure saves BP and sets BP to point to the

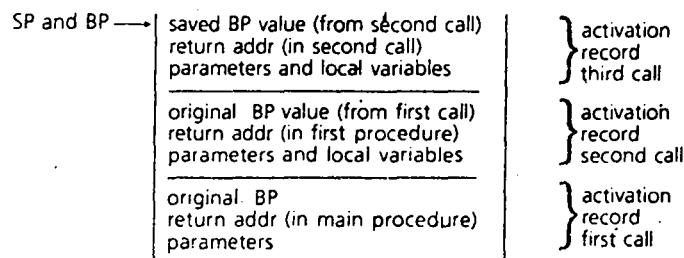
stack top, as was done in the example of the last section. The stack looks like this:



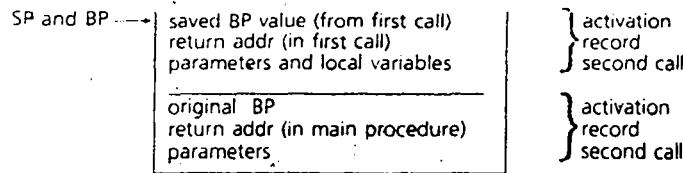
Using BP to access the parameters and local variables, the procedure executes its instructions. Before calling itself, it places the activation record for the next call on the stack. The return address that the recursive call places on the stack is that of the next instruction to be done in the procedure. As the second call begins, the procedure once again saves BP and sets BP to point to the stack top. The result is



Now, as in the first call, the procedure uses BP to access the data for the second call. Before initiating the third call, its activation record is placed on the stack. The third call saves BP and sets it to point to the stack top. The stack becomes

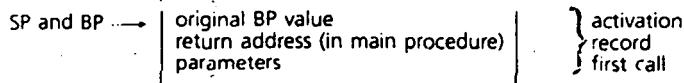


Let's suppose that the third call is the escape case. The result it computes may be placed in a register or memory location so that it is available to the second call when the second call resumes. After the third call is completed, the second call may be resumed by first popping BP to restore its previous value, and executing a return. The return places in IP the address of the next instruction to be done in the second call. As part of the return, the third call's parameters and local variables are popped off the stack and discarded, as was done in the example in the last section. The stack becomes



Now the second call resumes. It picks up the result of the third call and executes to completion. When it has finished and stored the result, the

stack is once again popped into BP, and control returns to the first call. As before, the second call's data are discarded. Now the stack looks like this:



When the first call is done, the procedure restores BP to its original value, and control passes to the main procedure. As before, the parameters are discarded. The procedure stores the final result in a place where the main procedure can pick it up.

## 17.5 Implementation of Recursive Procedures

In this section, we show how recursive procedures may be implemented in assembly language.

**Example 17.1** Code the FACTORIAL procedure of section 17.2. Call it in a program to compute the factorial of 3.

**Solution:** To make the code easier to follow, the algorithm is repeated here:

```

1: PROCEDURE FACTORIAL (input: N, output: RESULT)
2: IF N = 1
3: THEN
4: RESULT = 1
5: ELSE
6: call FACTORIAL (input: N - 1, output: RESULT)
7: RESULT = N x RESULT
8: END_IF
9: RETURN

```

### Program Listing PGM17\_2.ASM

```

0: TITLE PGM17_2: FACTORIAL PROGRAM
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .CODE
4: MAIN PROC
5: MOV AX, 3 ;N = 3
6: PUSH AX ;N on stack
7: CALL FACTORIAL ;AX has 3 factorial
8: MOV AH, 4CH
9: INT 21H ;dos return
10: MAIN ENDP
11: FACTORIAL PROC NEAR
12: ; computes N factorial
13: ; input: stack on entry - ret. addr.(top), N
14: ; output: AX
15: PUSH BP ;save BP
16: MOV BP, SP ;BP pts to stacktop
17: ;if
18: CMP WORD PTR[BP+4], 1 ;N = 1?

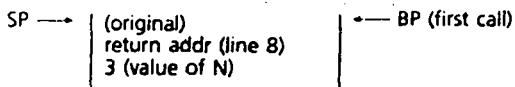
```

```

19: JG END_IF ;no, N1
20: ;then
21: MOV AX, 1 ;result = 1
22: JMP RETURN ;go to return
23: END_IF:
24: MOV CX, [BP+4] ;get N
25: DEC CX ;N-1
26: PUSH CX ;save on stack
27: CALL FACTORIAL ;recursive call
28: MUL WORD PTR[BP+4] ;RESULT = N*RESULT
29: RETURN:
30: POP BP ;restore BP
31: RET 2 ;return and discard N
32: FACTORIAL ENDP
33: END MAIN

```

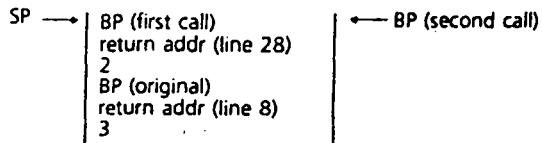
The testing program puts 3 on the stack and calls FACTORIAL. At lines 15 and 16 the procedure saves BP and sets BP to point to the stack top. The stack looks like this:



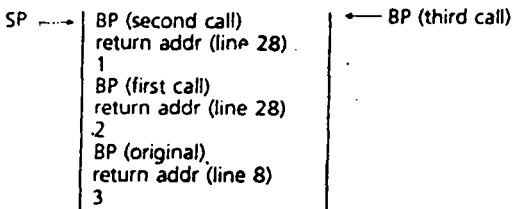
Now, at line 18 the current value of  $N$  is examined. We must use `CMP WORD PTR [BP+4],1` rather than `CMP [BP+4],1` because the assembler cannot tell from the source operand 1 whether to code this as a byte or word instruction.

Because  $N \neq 1$ , in lines 24–26 the data for the next call are prepared by retrieving the current value of  $N$ , decrementing it, and saving it on the stack.

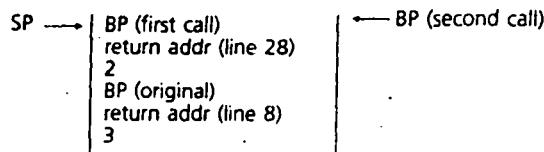
At line 27, the second call ( $N = 2$ ) is made. Once again, at lines 15 and 16, BP is saved and BP is set to point to the stack top. The stack becomes



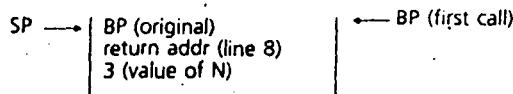
Since  $N$  is still not 1, the procedure calls itself one more time, and the stack looks like this:



Since  $N$  is now 1, the recursion can terminate. At line 21, the procedure places RESULT = 1 in AX, restores BP to its value in the second call and returns. The RET 2 at line 31 causes the return address in the second call (line 28 in the listing) to be placed in IP. RET 2 also causes parameter 1 to be popped off the stack. The stack becomes



Now execution of the second call continues at line 28. Because the result of the third call is in AX, the procedure can multiply it by the current value of  $N$ , yielding RESULT =  $2 \times 1 = 2$ . The new result remains in AX. With this call complete, BP is restored and the first call resumed at line 28. The stack is now



As before, the latest result is multiplied by  $N$ , yielding RESULT =  $3 \times 2 = 6$ . Control passes to line 8 in the main program, with the value of the factorial in AX.

**Example 17.2** Code procedure FINDMAX of section 17.2, and test it in a program.

**Solution:** The algorithm for the procedure is reproduced here:

```

1: PROCEDURE FIND_MAX (input: N, output: MAX)
2: IF N = 1
3: THEN
4: MAX = 1
5: ELSE
6: call FIND_MAX(N - 1, MAX)
7: IF A[N] > MAX
8: THEN
9: MAX = A[N]
10: ELSE
11: MAX = MAX /* value returned by call at line 6 */
12: ENDIF
13: RETURN

```

**Program Listing PGM17\_3.ASM**

```

0: TITLE PGM17_3: FIND_MAX
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: A DW 10,50,20,4
5: .CODE
6: MAIN PROC
7: MOV AX,@DATA
8: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
9: MOV AX,4 ;no. of elts in array
10: PUSH AX ;parameter on stack
11: CALL FIND_MAX ;retunrs MAX in AX
12: MOV AH,4CH
13: INT 21H ;dos exit
14: MAIN ENDP
15: FIND_MAX PROC NEAR
16: ; finds the largest element in array A of N elements
17: ; input: stack on entry - ret. addr. (top), N
18: ; output: AX largest element
19: PUSH BP ;save BP
20: MOV BP,SP ;BP pts to stacktop
21: ;if
22: CMP WORD PTR [BP+4],1 ;N=1?
23: JG ELSE_ ;no, go to set up next call
24: ;then
25: MOV AX,A ;MAX = A[1]
26: JMP END_IF
27: ELSE_:
28: MOV CX,[BP+4] ;get N
29: DEC CX ;N-1
30: PUSH CX ;save on stack
31: CALL FIND_MAX ;returns MAX in AX
32: ;if
33: MOV BX,[BP+4] ;get N
34: SHL BX,1 ;2N
35: SUB BX,2 ;2(N-1)
36: CMP A[BX],AX ;A[N] > MAX?
37: JLE END_IF1 ;no, go to return
38: ;then
39: MOV AX,A[BX] ;yes, set MAX = A[N]
40: END_IF1:
41: POP BP ;restore BP
42: RET 2 ;return and discard N
43: FIND_MAX ENDP
44: END MAIN

```

The stacking of the activation records during the recursive calls in this example is similar to that of example 17.1, and is not shown here (see exercises).

At line 32, the procedure begins preparation for comparison of  $A[N]$  with the current value of MAX in AX. Recall from chapter 10 that the offset location of the  $N$ th element of a word array A is  $A + 2 \times (N - 1)$ . Lines 33-35 put  $2 \times (N - 1)$  in BX, so that based mode may be used in the comparison at line 36. If  $MAX > A[N]$ , we can leave it in AX, which means that the ELSE statement at line 11 of the algorithm need not be coded.

## 17.6 More Complex Recursion

In the preceding examples, the code for recursive procedures has involved only one recursive call; for example, the only call that procedure FACTORIAL ( $N$ ) makes is to FACTORIAL ( $N - 1$ ). However, it is possible that the code for a recursive procedure may involve multiple recursive calls.

As an example, suppose we would like to write a procedure to compute the binomial coefficients  $C(n, k)$ . These are the coefficients that appear in the expansion of  $(x + y)^n$ . The expansion takes the form

$$(x + y)^n = C(n, 0)x^n y^0 + C(n, 1)x^{n-1}y^1 + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}y^2 + \dots + C(n, n-1)x^1y^{n-1} + C(n, n)x^0y^n$$

These coefficients also are used in the construction of Pascal's Triangle. For  $n = 4$ , the triangle is

|  |         |         |         |         |
|--|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|  |         |         | C(0, 0) |         |
|  | C(1, 0) |         | C(1, 1) |         |
|  | C(2, 0) | C(2, 1) | C(2, 2) |         |
|  | C(3, 0) | C(3, 1) | C(3, 2) | C(3, 3) |
|  | C(4, 0) | C(4, 1) | C(4, 2) | C(4, 3) |
|  |         |         |         | C(4, 4) |

The coefficients satisfy the following relation:

$$\begin{aligned} C(n, n) &= C(n, 0) = 1 \\ C(n, k) &= C(n - 1, k) + C(n - 1, k - 1) \quad \text{if } n > k > 0 \end{aligned}$$

This means that in the triangle, the entries along the edges are all 1's, and an interior entry is the sum of the entries in the row above immediately to the left and right. So the triangle computes to

|  |  |   |   |   |   |   |
|--|--|---|---|---|---|---|
|  |  | 1 |   |   |   |   |
|  |  | 1 | 1 |   |   |   |
|  |  | 1 | 2 | 1 |   |   |
|  |  | 1 | 3 | 3 | 1 |   |
|  |  | 1 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 1 |

Let's apply the preceding definition to compute  $C(3, 2)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} C(3, 2) &= C(2, 2) + C(2, 1) \\ C(2, 2) &= 1 \\ C(2, 1) &= C(1, 1) + C(1, 0) \\ C(1, 1) &= 1 \\ C(1, 0) &= 1 \\ \text{So } C(2, 1) &= 1 + 1 = 2 \\ \text{and } C(3, 2) &= 1 + 2 = 3 \end{aligned}$$

Here is an algorithm for a procedure to compute  $C(n, k)$ :

```

PROCEDURE BINOMIAL (input: N, K; output: RESULT)
 IF (K = N) OR (K = 0)
 THEN
 RESULT = 1
 ELSE
 CALL BINOMIAL(N-1, K, RESULT1)
 CALL BINOMIAL(N-1, K-1, RESULT2)
 RESULT = RESULT1 + RESULT2
 RETURN

```

**Example 17.3** Code the BINOMIAL procedure and call it in a program to compute  $C(3, 2)$ .

**Solution:**

**Program Listing PGM17\_4.ASM**

```

0: TITLE PGM17_4: BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .CODE
4: MAIN PROC
5: MOV AX, 2 ;K=2
6: PUSH AX
7: MOV AX, 3 ;N=3
8: PUSH AX
9: CALL BINOMIAL ;AX = RESULT
10: MOV AH, 4CH
11: INT 21H ;DOS EXIT
12: MAIN ENDP
13: BINOMIAL PROC NEAR
14: PUSH BP
15: MOV BP, SP
16: MOV AX, [BP+6] ;get K
17: ;if
18: CMP AX, [BP+4] ;K=N?
19: JE THEN ;yes, nonrecursive case
20: CMP AX, 0 ;K=0?
21: JNE ELSE_ ;no, recursive case
22: THEN:
23: MOV AX, 1 ;RESULT = 1
24: JMP RETURN
25: ELSE_:
26: ;compute C(N-1,K)
27: PUSH [BP+6] ;save K
28: MOV CX, [BP+4] ;get N
29: DEC CX ;N-1
30: PUSH CX ;save N-1
31: CALL BINOMIAL ;RESULT1 in AX
32: PUSH AX ;save RESULT1
33: ;compute C(N-1,K-1)
34: MOV CX, [BP+6] ;get K
35: DEC CX ;K-1
36: PUSH CX ;save K-1
37: MOV CX, [BP+4] ;get N
38: DEC CX ;N-1
39: PUSH CX ;save N-1
40: CALL BINOMIAL ;RESULT2 in AX
41: ;compute C(N,K)
42: POP BX ;get RESULT1
43: ADD AX, BX ;RESULT = RESULT1 + RESULT2
44: RETURN:
45: POP BP ;restore BP
46: RET 4 ;return and discard N and K
47: BINOMIAL ENDP
48: END MAIN

```

Procedure BINOMIAL differs from the procedures of examples 17.1 and 17.2 in the following ways:

1. There are two escape cases,  $k = n$  or  $k = 0$ ; in both cases, the call returns 1 in AX (line 23).
2. In the general case, computation of  $C(n, k)$  involves two recursive calls, to compute  $C(n - 1, k)$  and  $C(n - 1, k - 1)$ .

All calls to BINOMIAL return the result in AX. After  $C(n - 1, k)$  is computed (line 31), the result (RESULT1 in the algorithm) is pushed onto the stack (line 32). At line 40,  $C(n - 1, k - 1)$  is computed and the result (RESULT2 in the algorithm) will be in AX. At lines 42–43, RESULT1 is popped into BX and added to RESULT2, so that AX will contain  $C(n, k) = C(n - 1, k) + C(n - 1, k - 1)$ .

To completely understand how procedure BINOMIAL works, you are encouraged to trace the effect of the procedure on the stack, as was done in example 17.1.

### Summary

- Recursive problem solving has the following characteristics: (1) The main problem breaks down to simpler problems, each of which is solved in the same way as the main problem; (2) there is a nonrecursive escape case; and (3) once a subproblem has been solved, work proceeds to the next step of the original problem.
- In assembly language, recursive procedures are implemented as follows: The calling program places the activation record for the first call on the stack and calls the procedure. The procedure uses BP to access the data it needs from the stack. Before initiating a recursive call, a procedure places the activation record for the call on the stack and calls itself. When a call is completed, BP is restored, the return address popped into IP, and the data for the completed call popped off the stack.
- The code for a procedure may involve more than one recursive call. Intermediate results may be saved on the stack, and retrieved when the original call resumes.

### Glossary

**activation record**

Values of the parameters, local variables, and return address of a procedure call

**recursive process**

A process that is defined in terms of itself

### Exercises

1. Write a recursive definition of  $a^n$ , where  $n$  is a nonnegative integer.
2. Ackermann's function is defined as follows for nonnegative integers  $m$  and  $n$ :

$$A(0, n) = n + 1$$

$$A(m, 0) = A(m - 1, 1)$$

$$A(m, n) = A(m - 1, A(m, n - 1)) \quad \text{if } m, n \neq 0$$

Use the definition to show that  $A(2,2) = 7$ .

3. Trace the steps in example 17.2 (PGM17\_3.ASM) and show the stack
  - a. At line 20 in the initial (first) call to FIND\_MAX.
  - b. At line 20 in the second call to FIND\_MAX.
  - c. At line 20 in the third call to FIND\_MAX.
  - d. At line 20 in the fourth call to FIND\_MAX. This is the escape case.
  - e. At line 42 in the completion of the third call to FIND\_MAX (after RET 2 has been executed). Also give the contents of AX.
  - f. At line 42 in the completion of the second call to FIND\_MAX (after RET 2 has been executed). Also give the contents of AX.
  - g. At line 42 in the completion of the first call to FIND\_MAX (after RET 2 has been executed). Also give the contents of AX. This is the value returned by the procedure.

### Programming Exercises

4. Write a recursive assembly language procedure to compute the sum of the elements of a word array. Write a program to test your procedure on a four-element array.
5. The Fibonacci sequence 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, ... may be defined recursively as follows:

$$F(0) = F(1) = 1$$

$$F(n) = F(n - 1) + F(n - 2) \quad \text{if } n > 1$$

Write a recursive assembly language procedure to compute  $F(n)$ , and call it in a testing program to compute  $F(7)$ .

# 18

## Advanced Arithmetic

### Overview

Programs often must deal with data that are bigger than 16 bits, or contain fractions, or have special encoding. In the first three sections of this chapter, we discuss arithmetic operations on *double-precision numbers*, *BCD (binary-coded decimal) numbers*, and *floating-point numbers*. In section 18.4, we discuss the operation of the 8087 numeric coprocessor.

### 18.1

#### Double-Precision Numbers

We have shown that numbers stored in the 8086-based computer can be 8 or 16 bits. But even for 16-bit numbers, the range is limited to 0 to 65535 for unsigned numbers and -32768 to +32767 for signed numbers. To extend this range, a common technique is to use 2 words for each number. Such numbers are called **double-precision numbers**, and the range here is 0 to  $2^{32} - 1$  or 4,294,967,295 for unsigned and -2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647 for signed numbers.

A double-precision number may occupy two registers or two memory words. For example, if a 32-bit number is stored in the two memory words A and A+2, written A+2:A, then the upper 16 bits are in A+2 and the lower 16 bits are in A. If the number is signed, then the msb of A+2 is the sign bit. Negative numbers are represented in two's complement form.

Since the 8086/8088 can only operate on 8- or 16-bit numbers, operations on double-precision numbers must be emulated by software. In section 18.4, we show how the 8087 coprocessor can be used to do double-precision arithmetic.

## 18.1.1

**Double-Precision  
Addition, Subtraction,  
and Negation**

To add or subtract two 32-bit numbers, we first add or subtract the lower 16 bits and then add or subtract the higher 16 bits. However, the answer would be incorrect if the first addition or subtraction generates a carry or borrow.

One way to handle this problem is to use instructions to test the flags and adjust the result. A better method is to use two new instructions provided by the 8086. The instruction **ADC** (add with carry) adds the source operand and CF to the destination, and the instruction **SBB** (subtract with borrow) subtracts the source operand and CF from the destination. The syntax is

```
ADC destination,source
SBB destination,source
```

For our first example we'll add two 32-bit numbers.

**Example 18.1** Write instructions to add the 32-bit number in A+2:A to the number in B+2:B.

**Solution:** We have to move the first number to registers before the addition.

```
MOV AX,A ;AX gets lower 16 bits of A
MOV DX,A+2 ;DX gets upper 16 bits of A
ADD B,AX ;add the lower 16 bits to B
ADC B+2,DX ;add DX and CF to B+2
```

While the 32-bit sum is stored in B+2:B, the flags may not be set correctly. Specifically, the ZF and the PF, which depend on both values of B+2 and B, are set by the value in B+2 only. When it is important to set the flags correctly, we can use additional instructions.

The procedure DADD in program listing PGM18\_1.ASM performs a double-precision add and leaves the flags in the same state as if the processor had a 32-bit add instruction. We assume the two numbers are in DX:AX and CX:BX, and the result is returned in DX:AX.

**Program Listing PGM18\_1.ASM**

```
;Procedure for double precision addition with ZF and PF
;adjust
DADD PROC
;input: CX:BX = source operand
; DX:AX = destination operand
;output: DX:AX = sum
;save register SI
 PUSH SI ;SI is needed in the procedure
 ;to store flags
 ADD AX,BX ;add lower 16 bits
 ADC DX,CX ;add upper 16 bits with carry
 PUSHF ;save the flags on the stack
 POP SI ;put flags in SI
;test for zero
 JNE CHECK_PF ;if DX is not zero then ZF
 ;is OK, go check PF
 TEST AX,0FFFFH ;DX = 0, check if AX = 0?
```

```

 JE CHECK_PF ;yes, ZF is OK
 AND SI,0FFBFH ;AX not zero, clear ZF bit in SI
;check_PF
CHECK_PF:
 OR SI,100B ;set SI for even parity
 TEST AX,0FFH ;test AL for parity
 JP RESTORE ;AL has even parity, PF bit in
 ;SI is OK
 XOR SI,100B ;AL has odd parity, negate PF
 ;bit in SI
RESTORE:
 PUSH SI ;place new flags on stack
 POPPF . ;update FLAGS register
;restore SI
 POP SI
 RET
DADD ENDP

```

The SI register is used to manipulate the flag bits. We copy the flags into SI by pushing the FLAGS register and then popping to SI because the contents of the FLAGS register cannot be moved to SI directly. To adjust ZF, we examine both DX and AX, and for PF we examine AL; then we copy SI to the FLAGS register, again using the stack. Use the INCLUDE directive to include the file PGM18\_1.ASM in your program if you want to use procedure DADD.

To obtain the negation of a double-precision number, we recall that the two's complement of a number is formed by adding a 1 to its one's complement.

**Example 18.2** Write instructions to form the negation of A+2:A.

**Solution:** We first form the one's complement by using the NOT instruction, and then add a 1.

```

NOT A+2 ;one's complement
NOT A ;one's complement
INC A ;add 1
ADC A+2,0 ;take care of possible carry

```

For subtraction, again we subtract the low 16 bits first, then subtract the high-order words together with any borrow that might be generated.

**Example 18.3** Write instructions to subtract the 32-bit number in A+2:A from B+2:B.

**Solution:**

```

MOV AX,A ;AX gets lower 16 bits of A
MOV DX,A+2 ;DX gets upper 16 bits of A
SUB B,AX ;subtract the lower 16 bits
SBB B+2,DX ;subtract DX and CF from B+2

```

To set the flags correctly, we can use the same technique as in the case for addition; we will leave it as an exercise.

**18.1.2****Double-Precision Multiplication and Division**

Double-precision multiplication and division by powers of 2 can be achieved by using the shift operations, as was done in Chapter 7. To multiply by 2, we perform a left shift. To divide by 2 we perform a right shift.

**Example 18.4** Write instructions to perform a left shift operation on A+2:A.

**Solution:** We start with a left shift on the low-order word, resulting in the msb being shifted into CF. Next, an RCL shifts the CF into the high-order word. The instructions are

```
SHL A,1 ;low-order word shifted
RCL A+2,1 ;shift CF into high-order word
```

Again, the OF, ZF, and the PF may be set incorrectly.

The next example shows multiplication by  $2^{10}$ .

**Example 18.5** Write instructions to perform 10 left shifts on A+2:A.

**Solution:** One may be tempted to place 10 in CL and use CL as the count in the shift operation. However, this causes 9 bits in the number to be lost. In multiple-precision shifts, we must do one shift at a time. The CX register may be used as a counter in a loop.

```
MOV CX,10 ;initialize counter
L1: SAI A,1 ;shift low-order word
 RCL A+2,1 ;shift CF into high-order word
 LOOP L1 ;repeat if count is not 0
```

The other shift and rotate operations are left as exercises.

When the multiplier is not a power of 2, we can simulate a multiplication operation with a series of additions. For example, to multiply two double-precision numbers M and N, we can form the product by adding the number M N times. A more efficient way to do multiplication and division of multiple precision numbers is to use the 8087 numeric processor instructions covered in section 18.4.

**18.2****Binary-Coded Decimal Numbers**

The **BCD (binary-coded decimal) number** system uses four bits to code each decimal digit, from 0000 to 1001. The combinations 1010 to 1111 are illegal in BCD. For example, the BCD representation of the decimal number 913 is 1001 0001 0011. The reason for using BCD numbers is that the conversion between decimal and BCD is relatively simple. In section 18.4, we give a procedure for conversion between decimal and BCD.

As we saw in Chapter 9, multiplication and division are needed to do decimal I/O. These are notoriously slow operations. For some business programs that perform a lot of I/O and only do simple calculations, much time can be saved if numbers are stored internally in BCD format. Needless

to say, the processor must make it easy for programs to do BCD arithmetic if the savings are to be realized.

We first look at the two ways of storing BCD numbers in memory.

### 18.2.1

#### Packed and Unpacked BCD

Because only four bits are needed to represent a BCD digit, two digits can be placed in a byte. This is known as **packed BCD form**. In **unpacked BCD form**, only one digit is contained in a byte. The 8086 has addition and subtraction instructions to perform with both forms, but for multiplication and division, the digits must be unpacked.

**Example 18.6** Give the binary, packed BCD, and unpacked BCD representations of the decimal number 59.

**Solution:**  $59 = 3Bh = 00111011$ , which is the binary representation. Because  $5 = 0101$  and  $9 = 1001$ , the packed BCD representation is 01011001. The unpacked BCD representation is 00000101 00001001.

In the following sections, we cover the instructions needed to do arithmetic on unpacked BCD numbers.

### 18.2.2

#### BCD Addition and the AAA Instruction

In BCD operations, we do one digit at a time. It is possible to add two BCD digits and generate a non-BCD result. For example, suppose we add BL, which has 7, to AL, which has 6. The sum of 13 in AL is no longer a valid BCD digit. To adjust, we subtract 10 from AL and place a 1 in AH; then AX will contain the correct sum.

|    |          |    |                 |                                |
|----|----------|----|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| AH | 00000000 | AL | 00000110        |                                |
|    |          | BL | + 00000111      |                                |
|    |          | AL | <u>00001101</u> | ;not a BCD digit               |
| +  | 1        |    | - 00001010      | ;adjust by subtracting a 10d   |
|    |          |    |                 | ;from AL and adding a 1 to AH  |
| AH | 00000001 | AL | 00000011        | ;result is 1 in AH and 3 in AL |

We can get the same result by adding 6 to AL and then clearing the high nibble (bits 4-7) of AL. Because the value 13 in AL is greater than the correct result by 10, adding a 6 will make it too large by 16; clearing the high nibble has the effect of subtracting 16.

|    |          |    |            |                               |
|----|----------|----|------------|-------------------------------|
| AH | 00000000 | AL | 00001101   | ;not a BCD digit              |
|    | +        | 1  | + 00000110 | ;adjust by adding 6 to AL     |
|    |          |    |            | ;and 1 to AH                  |
| AH | 00000001 | AL | 00010011   | ;and clearing the high nibble |
| AH | 00000001 | AL | 00000011   | ;of AL                        |

### The AAA Instruction

The 8086 does not have a BCD addition instruction, but it does have an instruction that performs the preceding adjustments: **AAA** (ASCII adjust for addition) instruction.

**AAA** has no operand (AL is assumed to be the operand). It is used after an add operation to adjust the BCD value in AL. It checks the low nibble of AL and the AF (auxiliary flag). If the low nibble of AL is greater than 9 or the AF is set, then a 6 is added to AL, the high nibble of AL is cleared, and a 1 is added to AH.

Both AF and CF are set if the adjustment is made. Other flags are undefined.

It is also possible to add two ASCII digits and use AAA to adjust the result to obtain BCD digits. This allows a program to input ASCII digits, add them, and store the result in BCD format. For example, suppose AL contains 36h (ASCII 6) and BL contains 37h (ASCII 7). We add BL to AL and then use AAA to adjust the result.

|    |          |                  |                 |                                                  |
|----|----------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| AH | 00000000 | AL               | 00110110        |                                                  |
|    |          | BL               | + 00110111      |                                                  |
| AH | 00000000 | AL               | <u>01101101</u> | ;low nibble not a BCD digit                      |
|    |          | + <u>      1</u> | + 00000110      | ;adjust by adding 6 to AL<br>;and adding 1 to AH |
| AH | 00000001 | AL               | 01110011        | ;and clearing the high nibble                    |
| AH | 00000001 | AL               | 00000011        | ;of AL                                           |

As another example, suppose AL is 39h (ASCII 9) and BL is 37h (ASCII 7).

|    |          |                  |                 |                                              |
|----|----------|------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| AH | 00000000 | AL               | 00111001        |                                              |
|    |          | BL               | + 00110111      |                                              |
| AH | 00000000 | AL               | <u>01110000</u> | ;low nibble is a BCD digit<br>;but AF is set |
|    |          | + <u>      1</u> | + 00000110      | ;adjust by adding 6 to AL<br>;and 1 to AH    |
| AH | 00000001 | AL               | 01110110        | ;and clearing the high nibble                |
| AH | 00000001 | AL               | 00000110        | ;of AL                                       |

**Example 18.7** Write instructions to perform decimal addition on the unpacked BCD numbers in BL and AL.

**Solution:** The first operation is to clear AH, then we add and adjust the result.

```
MOV AH,0 ;prepare for possible carry
ADD AL,BL ;binary addition
AAA ;BCD adjust, AX contains sum
```

**Example 18.8** Write instructions to add the two-digit BCD number in bytes B+1:B to the one contained in A+1:A. Assume the result is only two digits.

**Solution:** We add the low digit before the high digit.

```

MOV AH,0 ;prepare for possible carry
MOV AL,A ;load BCD digit
ADD AL,B ;binary addition
AAA ;BCD adjust, AX contains sum
MOV A,AL ;store digit
MOV AL,AH ;put carry in AL
ADD AL,A+1 ;add high digit of A, assume no
 ;adjustment is needed
ADD AL,B+1 ;add high digit of B, assume no
 ;adjustment is needed
MOV A+1,AL ;store high digit

```

Multiple-digit addition is given as an exercise.

### 18.2.3

#### **BCD Subtraction and the AAS Instruction**

BCD subtraction is again performed one digit at a time. When one BCD digit is subtracted from another, a borrow may result. For example, suppose we subtract 7 from 26; we place 7 in BL, 2 in AH, and 6 in AL. After subtracting BL from AL, the result in AL is incorrect. The adjustment is to subtract 6 from AL, clear the high nibble, and subtract 1 from AH. This has the same effect as borrowing from AH and adding 10 to AL.

|    |          |    |            |                              |
|----|----------|----|------------|------------------------------|
| AH | 00000010 | AL | 000000110  |                              |
|    |          | BL | - 00000111 |                              |
| AH | 00000010 | AL | 11111111   | ;not a BCD digit             |
|    |          |    | - 1        |                              |
| AH | 00000001 | AL | 00000110   | ;adjust by subtracting 6     |
| AH | 00000001 | AL | 11111001   | ;from AL and 1 from AH       |
|    |          |    |            | ;clear high nibble of AL and |
|    |          |    |            | ;result in AH:AL is 19       |

#### **The AAS Instruction**

The AAS (ASCII adjust for subtraction) instruction performs BCD subtraction adjustment on the AL register. If the low nibble of AL is greater than 9 (low nibble of AL contains an invalid BCD number) or if the AF is set, AAS will subtract 6 from AL, clear the high nibble of AL, and subtract 1 from AH.

**Example 18.9** Write instructions to subtract the two-digit BCD number in bytes B+1:B from the one contained in A+1:A. Assume the number in A+1:A is larger.

**Solution:** We subtract the low digit before the high digit.

```

MOV AH,A+1 ;load high BCD digit of A
MOV AL,A ;load low digit of A
SUB AL,B ;subtract low digit of B
AAS ;adjust for borrow

```

```

SUB AH,B+1 ;subtract high digit of B
MOV A+1,AH ;store high digit
MOV A,AL ;store low digit

```

In subtracting the high digits, we were able to use the AH register because we assumed that no adjustment was needed; otherwise AL should be used as the result adjusted with AAS. For subtraction of three-digit numbers, and again start from the lowest digit to the highest. Three AAS adjustments are needed. The details are left as an exercise.

### 18.2.4

#### **BCD Multiplication and the AAM Instruction**

In this section, we show only single digit BCD multiplication. In section 18.4, we show how the 8087 can be used to perform multiple-digit BCD multiplication. Two BCD digits can be multiplied to produce a one- or two-digit product. We put the multiplicand in AL and the multiplier in a register or memory byte. After BCD multiplication, AX contains the BCD product.

To multiply 8 by 9, for example, we could put 8 in AL and 9 in BL. After doing the steps in BCD multiplication, the registers AH:AL contain the product 07 02.

The first step in BCD multiplication is to multiply the digits by ordinary binary multiplication. The binary product will be in AL. The second step is to convert the binary product to its BCD equivalent in AX.

With 8 in AL and 9 in BL, to do the first step we execute MUL BL. It puts 0048h = 72 in AX. This needs to be adjusted so that AH contains 07 and AL contains 02.

#### *The AAM Instruction*

The AAM (ASCII adjust for multiply) instruction performs the second step. It divides the contents of AL by 10. The quotient, corresponding to the ten's digit (7, in this example), is placed in AH; the remainder, corresponding to the unit's (2, in the example), is placed in AL.

In summary, to multiply the BCD digits in AL and BL, and put the BCD product in AX, execute

```

MUL BL ;8-bit multiplication
AAM ;BCD adjust, result in AX

```

### 18.2.5

#### **BCD Division and the AAD Instruction**

In this section, we show the division of a two digit BCD number by a single digit BCD number. The quotient is stored as a two digit BCD number (the leading digit may be 0). We put the dividend in AX and the divisor in a register or memory byte. After the BCD division AX will contain the BCD digits of the quotient.

For example, suppose we want to divide 97 by 5. Before division, AH:AL contains 09 07. The divisor 5 could be put in BL. Since the quotient is 19, after BCD division, AH:AL = 01 09.

There are three steps in BCD division:

1. Convert the dividend in AX from two BCD digits to their binary equivalent.
2. Do ordinary binary division. This puts the (binary) quotient in AL and the remainder in AH.
3. Convert the binary quotient in AL to its two-digit BCD equivalent in AX.

### **The AAD Instruction**

The instruction **AAD** (ASCII adjust for division) does step 1. It multiplies AH by 10, adds the product to AL, then clears AH. For AH:AL = 09 07, multiplication of AH by 10 yields 90 = 5Ah, and adding this to the 7 in AL puts 61h = 01100001 in AL.

If the divisor is in BL, step 2 is done by executing DIV BL. AL gets the quotient, 13h = 19, and AH gets the remainder 02h.

Step 3 is done by executing AAM. It converts the 13h in AL to 01 09 in AH:AL.

In summary, to divide the two BCD digits in AX by the BCD digit in BL, execute

```

AAD ; convert BCD dividend in AX to binary
DIV BL ; do binary division
AAM ; AX has BCD quotient

```

## **18.3**

### **Floating-Point Numbers**

By using floating-point numbers, we can represent values that are very large and fractions that are very small in a uniform fashion. Before we look at the floating-point representation, we have to see how decimal fractions can be converted into binary.

#### **18.3.1**

##### **Converting Decimal Fractions into Binary**

Suppose the decimal fraction  $0.D_1D_2 \dots D_n$  has a binary representation  $0.B_1B_2 \dots B_m$ . The bit  $B_1$  is equal to the integer part of the product  $0.D_1D_2 \dots D_n \times 2$ . This is because if we multiply the binary representation by 2 we obtain  $B_1B_2 \dots B_m$ ; as the two products must be equal, so must their integer parts. If we multiply the fractional part of the previous product by 2, the integer part of the result will be  $B_2$ . We can repeat this process until  $B_m$  is obtained. Here is the algorithm:

##### **Algorithm to convert a decimal fraction to an M digit binary fraction**

```

Let "X" contain the decimal fraction
For i = 1 step 1 until m do
 Y = X × 2
 X = fractional part of Y
 Bi = integer part of Y
end

```

Now let's look at some examples.

**Example 18.10** Convert the decimal fraction 0.75 to binary.

**Solution:** Step 1,  $X = 0.75$ ,  $Y = 0.75 \times 2 = 1.5$ , so  $B_1$  is 0. Step 2, the new value of  $X$  is 0.5, so  $Y = 0.5 \times 2 = 1.0$ , and  $B_2$  is 1. Since the new fractional part is 0, we are done. Thus, the binary representation of 0.75 is 0.11.

**Example 18.11** Convert the decimal number 4.9 into binary.

**Solution:** We do this in two parts. First we convert the integer part into binary and get 100b. Next we convert the fractional part: Step 1,  $X = 0.9$ ,  $Y = 0.9 \times 2 = 1.8$ , so  $B_1$  is 1. Step 2,  $X = 0.8$ ,  $Y = 0.8 \times 2 = 1.6$ , so  $B_2$  is 1. Step 3,  $X = 0.6$ ,  $Y = 0.6 \times 2 = 1.2$ , so  $B_3$  is 1. Step 4,  $X = 0.2$ ,  $Y = 0.2 \times 2 = 0.4$ , so  $B_4$  is 0. Step 5,  $X = 0.4$ ,  $Y = 0.4 \times 2 = 0.8$ , so  $B_5$  is 0. At this point the new value for  $X$  is again 0.8, we can expect the computation to cycle. So the binary representation for 4.9 is 100.1110011001100...

### 18.3.2

## Floating-Point Representation

In the floating-point representation, each number is represented in two parts: a **mantissa**, which contains the leading significant bits in a number, and an **exponent**, which is used to adjust the position of the binary point. For example, the number 2.5 in binary is 10.1b, and its floating-point representation has a mantissa of 1.01 and an exponent of 1. This is because 10.1b can be written as  $1.01 \times 2^1$ . For numbers different from zero, the mantissa is stored as a value that is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 2. Such a mantissa is said to be *normalized*. Some floating-point representations do not store the integer part. Negative numbers are not complemented; they are stored in signed-magnitude format.

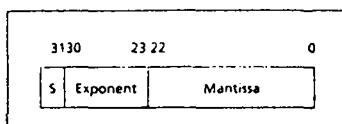
For numbers smaller than 1, if we normalize the mantissa the exponent will be negative. For example, the number 0.0001b is  $1 \times 2^{-4}$ . Negative exponents are not represented as signed numbers. Instead, a number called the **bias** is added to the exponent to create a positive number. For example, if we use eight bits for the exponent, then the number  $(2^7 - 1)$  or 127 is chosen as the bias. To represent the number 0.0001b, we have a mantissa of 1.0 and an exponent of -4. After adding the bias of 127, we get 123 or 01111101b. Figure 18.1 shows the layout of a 32-bit floating-point representation. It starts with a sign bit, followed by an 8-bit exponent, and a 23-bit mantissa. We'll give examples in section 18.4.1.

### 18.3.3

## Floating-Point Operations

To perform most arithmetic operations on floating-point numbers, the exponent and the mantissa must be first extracted, and then different operations are performed on them. For example, to multiply two real numbers

Figure 18.1 Floating-Point Representation



we have to add the exponents and multiply the mantissa; then the result is normalized and stored. However, if two real numbers are to be added, the number with the smaller exponent is shifted to the right so as to adjust the exponent to that of the other number; then the two mantissas are added and the result normalized.

Needless to say, all these operations are time consuming if emulated by software. The floating-point operations can be carried out much faster by using a specially designed circuit chip.

## 18.4

### The 8087 Numeric Processor

The 8087 chip is designed to perform fast numeric operations for an 8088- or 8086-based system. It can operate on multiple-precision, BCD, and floating-point data.

#### 18.4.1

##### Data Types

The 8087 supports three signed integer formats: word integer (16 bits), short integer (32 bits), and long integer (64 bits).

The 8087 supports a 10-byte packed BCD format which consists of a sign byte, followed by 9 bytes which contain 18 packed BCD digits; a positive sign is represented by 0h and a negative sign by 80h.

There are three floating-point formats:

*Short real*—Four data bytes with an 8-bit exponent and a 24-bit mantissa. The integer part is not stored.

*Long real*—Eight data bytes, with an 11-bit exponent and a 53-bit mantissa. Again, the integer part is not stored.

*Temporary real*—Ten data bytes, with a 15-bit exponent and a 64-bit mantissa. All mantissa bits, including the integer part, are stored.

Figure 18.2 shows the data types of the 8087: We give some examples.

**Example 18.12** Represent the number -12345 as an 8087 packed BCD number.

**Solution:** For negative BCD numbers, the sign byte is 80h. There are a total of 18 BCD digits. Thus the number is 800000000000000012345h.

**Example 18.13** Represent the number 4.9 as an 8087 short real.

**Solution:** From example 18.11, the binary representation for 4.9 is 100.1110011001100... After normalization, the 24-bit mantissa is 1.0011100110011001100110, and the exponent is 2. Adding the bias 127 to 2, we get 129 or 10000001b. The integer part is not stored, so the number is 0 10000001 0011100110011001100 or 409CCCCCh.

**Example 18.14** Represent the number -0.75 as an 8087 short real.

| Data Formats   | Range        | Precision | Most Significant Byte |                                  |                  |                 |                 |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|--|--|--|--|---------------------------------|--|
| Word integer   | $10^4$       | 16 Bits   | I <sub>15</sub>       | I <sub>0</sub>                   | Two's Complement |                 |                 |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
| Short integer  | $10^9$       | 32 Bits   | I <sub>31</sub>       | I <sub>0</sub>                   | Two's Complement |                 |                 |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
| Long integer   | $10^{18}$    | 64 Bits   | I <sub>63</sub>       | I <sub>0</sub>                   | Two's Complement |                 |                 |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
| Packed BCD     | $10^{18}$    | 18 Digits | S                     | D <sub>1</sub> , D <sub>16</sub> |                  |                 |                 |          |  |  |  |  | D <sub>1</sub> , D <sub>0</sub> |  |
| Short Real     | $10^{-38}$   | 24 Bits   | S   E <sub>7</sub>    | E <sub>0</sub>   F <sub>1</sub>  | F <sub>23</sub>  | F <sub>0</sub>  | Implicit        |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
| Long Real      | $10^{-308}$  | 53 Bits   | S   E <sub>10</sub>   | E <sub>0</sub>   F <sub>1</sub>  |                  | F <sub>62</sub> | F <sub>0</sub>  | Implicit |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |
| Temporary Real | $10^{-4932}$ | 64 Bits   | S   E <sub>14</sub>   | E <sub>0</sub>   F <sub>0</sub>  |                  |                 | F <sub>63</sub> |          |  |  |  |  |                                 |  |

Integer: I  
 Packed BCD:  $(-1)^S(D_{17}, \dots, D_0)$   
 Real:  $(-1)^S(2^{E-Bias})F_0, F_1, \dots, F_{63}$   
 bias = 127 for Short Real  
 1023 for Long Real  
 16383 for Temp Real

Figure 18.2 8087 Data Types

**Solution:** From example 18.12, the binary representation for 0.75 is 0.11b, so -7.5 is -0.11b. The normalized mantissa is 1.1, and the exponent is -1. Adding the bias 127 to -1, we get 126 or 01111110b. The integer part is not stored, so the number is  
 1 01111110 10000000000000000000000000000000 or BF400000h.

#### 18.4.2

#### 8087 Registers

The 8087 has eight 80-bit data registers, and they function as a stack. Data may be pushed or popped from the stack. The top of the stack is addressed as ST or ST(0). The register directly beneath the top is addressed as ST(1). In general, the *i*th register in the stack is addressed as ST(*i*), where *i* must be a constant.

The data stored in these registers are in temporary real format. Memory data in other formats may be loaded onto the stack. When that happens, the data are converted into temporary real. Similarly, when storing data into memory, the temporary real data are converted to other data formats specified in the store instructions.

#### 18.4.3

#### Instructions

The instructions for the 8087 include add, subtract, multiply, divide, compare, load, store, square root, tangent, and exponentiation. In doing a complex floating-point operation, the 8087 can be 100 times faster than an 8086 using an emulation program.

The coordination between the 8087 and the 8086 is like this. The 8086 is responsible for fetching instructions from memory. The 8087 monitors

this instruction stream but does not execute any instructions until it finds an 8087 instruction. An 8087 instruction is ignored by the 8086, except when it contains a memory operand. In that case, the 8086 would access the operand and place it on the data bus; this is how the 8087 gains access to memory locations.

In this section, we'll show simple examples on the operations of load, store, add, subtract, multiply, and divide. Appendix F contains more information on these instructions and in the following sections we'll give some program examples.

### **Load and Store**

The load instructions load a source operand onto the top of the 8087 stack. There are three load instructions: **FLD** (load real), **FILD** (integer load), and **FBLD** (packed BCD load). The syntax is

```
FLD source
FILD source
FBLD source
```

where source is a memory location.

The type of the memory data is taken from the declared data type. For example, to load a word integer stored in the memory word NUMBER, we write the instruction **FILD NUMBER**. If the variable DNUM is defined by DD (Define Doubleword), then the instruction **FILD DNUM** loads a short integer. The instruction **FLD** can also be used to load an 8087 register to the top of the stack. For example, **FLD ST(3)**.

Once a number is loaded onto the 8087 stack, we can convert it into any data type by simply storing it back into memory. This is a simple way of using the 8087 to perform type conversion. Let's look at the store instructions.

When storing the top of the stack to memory, the stack may or may not be popped. The instructions **FST** (store real) and **FIST** (integer store) do not pop the stack, while the instructions **FSTP** (store real and pop), **FISTP** (integer store and pop), and **FBSTP** (packed BCD store and pop) will pop the stack after the store operation. The syntax is

```
FST destination
FIST destination
FSTP destination
FISTP destination
FBSTP destination
```

where destination is a memory location. The stored data type depends on the declared size of the memory operand.

**Example 18.15** Write instructions to convert the short integer stored in the doubleword variable DNUM into a long real and store it in the quadword variable QNUM.

**Solution:** We use the load integer and store real instructions.

```
fld DNUM ;load short integer
fstp QNUM ;store long real and pop stack
```

### Add, Subtract, Multiply, and Divide

We can add, subtract, multiply, and divide a memory operand or an 8087 register with the top of the 8087 stack. The instructions for real operands are **FADD** (add real), **FSUB** (subtract real), **FMUL** (multiply real), and **FDIV** (divide real). Each opcode can take zero, one, or two operands. An instruction with no operands assumes ST(0) as the source and ST(1) as the destination; the instruction also pops the stack. For example, FADD (with no operands) adds ST(0) to ST(1) and pops the stack.

In an instruction with one operand, the operand specifies a memory location as the source; the destination is assumed to be ST(0). For example, to subtract a short real in the double word variable DWORD from ST(0) we write FSUB DWORD.

A two operand instruction specifies ST(0) as one operand and ST(1) as the other operand. The stack is not popped. For example, the instruction FMUL ST(1), ST(0) multiplies ST(0) into ST(1); and FDIV ST(0),ST(2) divides ST(2) into ST(0). The syntax is

```
FADD [[destination,]source]
FSUB [[destination,]source]
FMUL [[destination,]source]
FMUL [[destination,]source]
FDIV [[destination,]source]
```

where items in square brackets are optional.

There are also instructions for integer operands. They are **FIADD** (integer add), **FISUB** (integer subtract), **FIMUL** (integer multiply), and **FIDIV** (integer divide). The syntax is

```
FIADD source
FISUB source
FIMUL source
FIDIV source
```

**Example 18.16** Write instructions to add the short reals stored in the variables NUM1 and NUM2, and store the sum in NUM3.

**Solution:** We load the first number, add the second, and store into the third location.

```
FLD NUM1 ;load first number
FADD NUM2 ;add second number
FSTP NUM3 ;store result and pop
```

#### 18.4.4

#### Multiple-Precision Integer I/O

A **multiple-precision** number is a number stored in multiple words. In section 18.4.1, you have already seen the special case of a double-precision number. Normally, conversions of multiple-precision numbers between their decimal and binary representations are very time consuming. We can use the 8087 to speed up the conversion process. To input a multiple-precision decimal number and convert it into binary, we first store it in BCD format. Then the 8087 can be used to convert the BCD into binary. To output a binary multiple-precision number in decimal, we first use the 8087 to convert it into BCD and then output the BCD digits.

The algorithm for reading digits and converting to packed BCD format is as follows:

#### Algorithm for Converting ASCII Digits to Packed BCD

```

read first char
case '-' : set sign bit of BCD buffer
'0' ... '9' : convert to binary and push on stack
while char <> CR
read char
case '0' ... '9' : convert to binary and push on stack
end_while
repeat:
pop stack .
assemble 2 digits to one byte
until all digits are popped

```

The algorithm is coded in procedure READ\_INTEGER, which also converts the BCD number into temporary real format. We can convert the number into other binary formats by using different store instructions. The READ\_INTEGER procedure is given in program listing PGM18\_2.ASM. The input buffer is 10 bytes and contains 0's initially. We also assume the input number is at most 18 digits.

#### Program Listing PGM18\_2.ASM

```

READ_INTEGER . PROC
;read multiple precision integer number and store as
;real number
;input: BX = address of 10-byte buffer of 0's
 XOR BP,BP ;BP counts number of digits read
 MOV SI,BX ;copy of pointer
;read number and push digits on stack
 MOV AH,01 ;read
 INT 21H
;check for negative
 CMP AL,'-'
 JNE RI_LOOP1 ;not negative
;negative, set sign byte to 80h
 MOV BYTE PTR [BX+9],80H
 INT 21H ;read next char
;check for CR
RI_LOOP1:
 CMP AL,0DH ;CR?
 JE RI_1 ;CR, goto RI_1
;digit, convert to binary and save on stack
 AND AL,0FH ;convert ASCII to binary value
 INC BP ;increment count
 PUSH AX ;push on stack
 MOV AH,01 ;read next char
 INT 21H
 JMP RI_LOOP1 ;repeat
;pop number from stack and store as packed BCD
RI_1:
 MOV CL,4 ;counter for left shifts
RI_LOOP2:

```

```

 POP AX ;low digit
 MOV [BX],AL ;store
 DEC BP ;more digits?
 JE RI_4 ;no, exit loop
 POP AX ;yes, pop high digit
 SHL AL,CL ;shift to high nibble
 OR [BX],AL ;store
 INC BX ;next byte
 DEC BP ;more digits?
 JG RI_LOOP2 ;yes, repeat
;convert to real
RI_4: FBLD TBYTE PTR[SI] ;load BCD to 8087 stack
 FSTP TBYTE PTR[SI] ;store real to memory
 RET
READ_INTEGER ENDP

```

Once the numbers are converted to binary format, we may add, subtract, multiply, and divide them. As long as the results do not cause overflow, we can store the results as BCD numbers and print out the results in decimal using the following algorithm.

#### Algorithm for Printing Packed BCD Numbers

```

if sign bit is set, then print '-'
get high order byte
for 9 times do
 convert high BCD digit to ASCII and output
 convert low BCD digit to ASCII and output
 get next byte
end

```

The algorithm is coded as procedure PRINT\_BCD given in program listing PGM18\_3.ASM.

#### Program Listing PGM18\_3.ASM

```

PRINT_BCD PROC
;print BCD number in buffer
;input: BX = addresses of 10-byte
 TEST BYTE PTR[BX+9],80H ;check sign bit
 JE PB_1 ;positive, skip
 MOV DL,'-' ;negative, output '-'
 MOV AH,2
 INT 21H
PB_1: ADD BX,8 ;start with most significant digit
 MOV CH,9 ;9 bytes
 MOV CL,4 ;shift 4 times
PB_LOOP:
 MOV DL,[BX] ;get byte
 SHR DL,CL ;high digit to low nibble
 OR DL,30H ;convert to ASCII
 MOV AH,2 ;output
 INT 21H
 MOV DL,[BX] ;get byte again
 AND DL,0FH ;mask out high nibble

```

```

 OR DL, 30H ;convert low digit to ASCII
 MOV AH, 2 ;output
 INT 21H
 DEC BX ;next byte
 DEC CH ;more digits?
 JG PB_LOOP ;yes, repeat
 RET
PRINT_BCD ENDP

```

When we combine 8086 and 8087 instructions in a program, we need to make sure the 8086 does not access a memory location for an 8087 result before the 8087 can finish an operation and store the result. To synchronize the 8086 with the 8087 we use the instruction **FWAIT**, which suspends the 8086 until the 8087 is finished executing.

Program listing PGM18\_4 gives a program that reads in two multiple-precision numbers, and outputs the sum, difference, product, and quotient.

#### Program Listing PGM18\_4.ASM

```

TITLE PGM18_4: MULTIPLE PRECISION ARITHMETIC
;inputs 2 multiple precision numbers
;outputs the sum, difference, product, and quotient
.MODEL SMALL
.8087
.STACK
.DATA
NUM1 DT 0
NUM2 DT 0
SUM DT ?
DIFFERENCE DT ?
PRODUCT DT ?
QUOTIENT DT ?
CR EQU 0DH
LF EQU 0AH
;
NEW_LINE MACRO ;output CR and LF
 MOV DL,CR
 MOV AH,2
 INT 21H
 MOV DL,LF
 INT 21H
ENDM
;
DISPLAY MACRO X ;output X on screen
 MOV DL,X
 MOV AH,2
 INT 21H
ENDM
;
.CODE
;include I/O procedures
INCLUDE PGM18_2.ASM
INCLUDE PGM18_3.ASM
MAIN PROC

```

```

 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS, AX ;initialize DS
 MOV ES, AX ;initialize ES

 DISPLAY '?'
 LEA BX, NUM1
 CALL READ_INTEGER
 NEW_LINE
 DISPLAY '?'
 LEA BX, NUM2
 CALL READ_INTEGER
 NEW_LINE
;compute sum
 FLD NUM1 ;load first number
 FLD NUM2 ;load second number
 FADD
 FBSTP SUM ;store and pop
 FWAIT
 LEA BX, SUM ;BX points to SUM
 CALL PRINT_BCD
 NEW_LINE
;compute difference
 FLD NUM1 ;load first number
 FLD NUM2 ;load second number
 FSUB
 FBSTP DIFFERENCE ;subtract second from first
 FWAIT
 LEA BX, DIFFERENCE ;store difference and pop
 CALL PRINT_BCD
 NEW_LINE
;compute product
 FLD NUM1 ;load first number
 FLD NUM2 ;load second number
 FMUL
 FBSTP PRODUCT ;multiply
 FWAIT
 LEA BX, PRODUCT ;store product and pop
 CALL PRINT_BCD
 NEW_LINE
;compute quotient
 FLD NUM1 ;load first number
 FLD NUM2 ;load second number
 FDIV
 FBSTP QUOTIENT ;divide first by second
 FWAIT
 LEA BX, QUOTIENT ;store quotient and POP
 CALL PRINT_BCD
 NEW_LINE
 MOV AH, 4CH ;return
 INT 21H ;to DOS
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

**18.4.5****Real-Number I/O**

Numbers with fractions are called real numbers. The algorithm for reading real numbers is similar to that for integers. The digits are read in as BCD, then converted to floating point and scaled. To do the scaling, a counter is set to the number of digits after the decimal point.

**Algorithm for Reading Real Numbers**

```

repeat: read char
 case '-': set sign bit of BCD buffer
 '.' : set flag
 '0' ... '9': convert to binary and push on stack
 and if flag is set, increment counter
until CR
repeat:
 pop stack
 assemble 2 digits to one byte
until all digits are popped
load BCD onto 8087 stack
divide by nonzero count, value
store back as real

```

The algorithm is coded as procedure READ\_FLOAT given in program listing PGM18\_5.ASM.

**Program Listing PGM18\_5.ASM**

```

READ_FLOAT PROC
;read and store real number
;input: BX = address of 10-byte buffer of 0's
 XOR DX,DX ;DH = 1 for decimal point,
 ;DL = no. of digits after decimal point
 XOR BP,BP ;BP counts number of digits read
 MOV SI,BX ;copy of pointer
;read number and push digits on stack
RF_LOOP1:
 MOV AH,01 ;read char
 INT 21H
;check for negative
 CMP AL,'-'
 JNE RF_1 ;not negative, check
;negative, set sign byte
 MOV BYTE PTR [BX+9],80H
 JMP RF_LOOP1 ;read next char
RF_1: CMP AL,'.'
 JNE RF_2 ;no, check CR
;decimal point, set DH to '1'
 INC DH
 JMP RF_LOOP1 ;read next char
;check for CR
RF_2: CMP AL,0DH
 JE RF_3 ;CR, goto RF_3
;digit, convert to binary and save on stack
 AND AL,0FH ;convert ASCII to binary value
 INC BP ;increment count
 PUSH AX ;push on stack

```

```

 CMP DH,0 ;seen decimal point?
 JE RF_LOOP1 ;no, read next char
 INC DL ;yes, increment count
 JMP RF_LOOP1 ;read next char
;pop number from stack and store as packed BCD
RF_3:
 MOV CL,4 ;counter for left shifts
RF_LOOP2:
 POP AX ;get low digit
 MOV [BX],AL ;store in buffer
 DEC BP ;decrement count
 JE RF_4 ;done if 0
 POP AX ;get high digit
 SHL AL,CL ;move to high nibble
 OR [BX],AL ;move to buffer
 INC BX ;next byte
 DEC BP ;more digits?
 JG RF_LOOP2 ;yes, repeat
;convert to real
RF_4: FBLD TBYTE PTR[SI] ;load BCD to 8087 stack
 FWAIT ;synchronize 8036 and 8087
 CMP DL,0 ;digits after decimal?
 JE RF_5 ;no scaling, goto RF_5
 XOR CX,CX
 MOV CL,DL ;digit count in CX
 MOV AX,1 ;prepare to form
 MOV BX,10 ;powers of 10
RF_LOOP3:
 IMUL BX ;multiply 1 by 10
 LOOP RF_LOOP3 ;CX times
 MOV [SI],AX ;save scaling factor
 FIDIV WORD PTR[SI] ;divide by scaling factor
RF_5: FSTP TBYTE PTR[SI] ;store real to memory
 FWAIT ;synchronize 8086 and 8087
 RET
READ_FLOAT ENDP

```

Here, we assume that the number of digits after the decimal point is less than 5, which allows the scaling factor to be stored as a one-word signed integer.

To output real numbers, we first multiply the number by a scaling factor. Then we store the real number in BCD format, and output the digits with an appropriate decimal point. We print only four digits after the decimal point. So the scaling factor is 10000.

#### Algorithm for Printing Real Numbers with a Four-Digit Fraction

multiply real number by 10000  
store as BCD  
output BCD number with '.' inserted before last 4 digits

The algorithm is coded as procedure PRINT\_FLOAT given in program listing PGM18\_6.ASM.

**Program Listing PGM18\_6.ASM**

```

PRINT_FLOAT PROC
;print top of 8087 stack
;input: BX = address of buffer

 MOV WORD PTR[BX],10000 ;ten thousand
 FIMUL WORD PTR[BX] ;scale up by 10000
 FBSTP TBYTE PTR[BX] ;store as BCD
 FWAIT ;synchronize 8086 and 8087
 TEST BYTE PTR[BX+9],80H ;check sign bit
 JE PF_1 ;0, goto PF_1
 MOV DL,'-' ;output '-'
 MOV AH,2
 INT 21H

 PF_1: ADD BX,8 ;point to high byte
 MOV CH,7 ;14 digits before decimal point
 MOV CL,4 ;4 shifts
 MOV DH,2 ;2 times

 PF_LOOP: MOV DL,[BX] ;get BCD digits
 SHR DL,CL ;move high digit to low nibble
 OR DL,30H ;convert to ASCII
 INT 21H ;output
 MOV DL,[BX] ;get byte again
 AND DL,0FH ;mask out high digit
 OR DL,30H ;convert to ASCII
 INT 21H ;output
 DEC BX ;next byte
 DEC CH ;decrement count
 JG PF_LOOP ;repeat if more bytes
 DEC DH ;second time?
 JE PF_DONE ;yes, done
 DISPLAY '.' ;no, output decimal point
 MOV CH,2 ;4 more digits after decimal point
 JMP PF_LOOP ;go print digits

 PF_DONE: RET
PRINT_FLOAT ENDP

```

The program to combine these procedures is left as an exercise.

**Summary**

- Double-precision numbers increase the range of integers represented.
- The ADC and SBB instructions are used in performing double-precision addition and subtraction.
- Multiplication and division of double-precision numbers by powers of 2 can be implemented by shift and rotate instructions.

In the BCD system, the decimal digits of a number are expressed in four bits. A number is stored in packed form if two BCD digits are contained in a byte; in unpacked form, one BCD digit is contained in a byte.

- The advantage of the BCD representation is that it is easy to convert decimal character input to BCD and back. The disadvantage is that decimal arithmetic is more complicated for the computer than ordinary binary arithmetic.
- The AAA instruction adjusts the sum in AL after addition.
- The AAS instruction adjusts the difference in AL after a subtraction.
- The AAM instruction takes the binary product of two BCD digits in AL, and produces a two-digit BCD product in AH:AL.
- The AAD instruction converts a two-digit BCD dividend in AH:AL into its binary equivalent in AL.
- Floating-point format consists of a sign bit, an exponent, and a mantissa.
- The 8087 numeric processor can perform a variety of numeric operations on integer, BCD, and real numbers.

## Glossary

|                                          |                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>BCD (binary-coded decimal) system</b> | A system of coding each decimal digit as four binary digits              |
| <b>bias</b>                              | A number that is added to the exponents to make them positive            |
| <b>double-precision number</b>           | Number stored in two computer words                                      |
| <b>exponent</b>                          | The part of a floating-point number consisting of the power              |
| <b>floating-point number</b>             | Number represented in memory in the form of exponent and mantissa        |
| <b>mantissa</b>                          | The part of a floating-point number consisting of the significant digits |
| <b>multiple-precision number</b>         | Number stored in multiple words                                          |
| <b>packed BCD form</b>                   | Two BCD digits stored in a byte                                          |
| <b>unpacked BCD form</b>                 | One BCD digit stored in a byte                                           |

## New Instructions

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| AAA   | FDIV  | FLD   |
| AAD   | FIADD | FMUL  |
| AAM   | FIDIV | FST   |
| AAS   | FILD  | FSTP  |
| ADC   | FIMUL | FSUB  |
| FADD  | FIST  | FWAIT |
| FBLD  | FISTP | SBB   |
| FBSTP | FISUB |       |

---

**New Pseudo-Ops**

.8087

---

**Exercises**

For exercises 1 to 6, use only the 8086 instructions.

1. Write a procedure DSUB that will perform a double-precision subtraction of CX:BX from DX:AX and return the difference in DX:AX. DSUB should set the flags correctly.
2. Write a procedure DCMP that will perform a double-precision compare of CX:BX from DX:AX. The registers should not be changed, and the flags should be set correctly.
3. Write the instructions that will perform the following double-precision operations. Assume that the number is in DX:AX. Do single shifts and rotates.
  - a. SHR
  - b. SAR
  - c. ROR
  - d. ROL
  - e. RCR
  - f. RCL
4. A triple-precision number is a three-word (48-bit) number. Write instructions that will perform the following operations on the two triple-precision numbers stored in A+4:A+2:A and B+4:B+2:B.
  - a. Add the second number to the first.
  - b. Subtract the second number from the first.
5. Write Instructions that will perform an arithmetic right shift on a triple-precision number stored in BX:DX:AX.
6. Suppose two unpacked 3-digit BCD numbers are stored in A+2:A+1:A and B+2:B+1:B. Write instructions that will
  - a. add the second number to the first; assume the result is only three digits.
  - b. subtract the second number from the first; assume that the first number is larger.
7. Represent the number -0.0014 as an 8087 short real.
8. Represent the number -2954683 as an 8087 packed BCD.
9. Write the floating-point instructions that will
  - a. add an integer variable X to the top of the stack.
  - b. divide a short real number Y into the top of the stack.
  - c. store and pop the stack to a BCD number Z.

***Programming Exercises***

10. Write a program to read in two decimal numbers from the keyboard and output their sum. The numbers may be negative and have up to 20 digits. Do not use the 8087 instructions.
11. Write a program to read in two real numbers, with up to four decimal digits after the decimal point, and output their sum, difference, product, and quotient.

# 19

## Disk and File Operations

---

### Overview

Up till now, we have used disk storage exclusively as a repository for system and user program files. Disk files can also be used to store input and output data of a program. Common examples are databases and spreadsheets. In this chapter, we study disk organization, disk operations, and file handling.

---

### 19.1 Kinds of Disks

There are two kinds of disks, *floppy disks* and *hard disks*. Floppy disks are made of mylar and are flexible, hence the name. Hard disks are made of metal and are rigid. The surface of a disk is coated with a metallic oxide, and information is stored as magnetized spots.

Floppy and hard disk operations are similar. A disk drive unit reads and writes data on the disk with a *read/write head*, which moves radially in and out over the disk surface while the disk spins. Each head position traces a circular path called a **track** on the disk surface. The movement of the read/write head allows it to access different tracks.

#### *Floppy Disks*

A floppy disk is contained in a protective jacket and comes in 3½-inch or 5¼-inch diameter sizes. The jacket for a 5¼-inch disk is made of flexible plastic and has four cutouts (see Figure 19.1): (1) a center cutout so that the disk drive can clamp down on the disk and spin it; (2) an oval-shaped cutout that allows the read/write head to access the disk surface; (3) a small circular hole that aligns with an index hole on the disk used by the disk drive to identify the beginning of a track; and (4) a

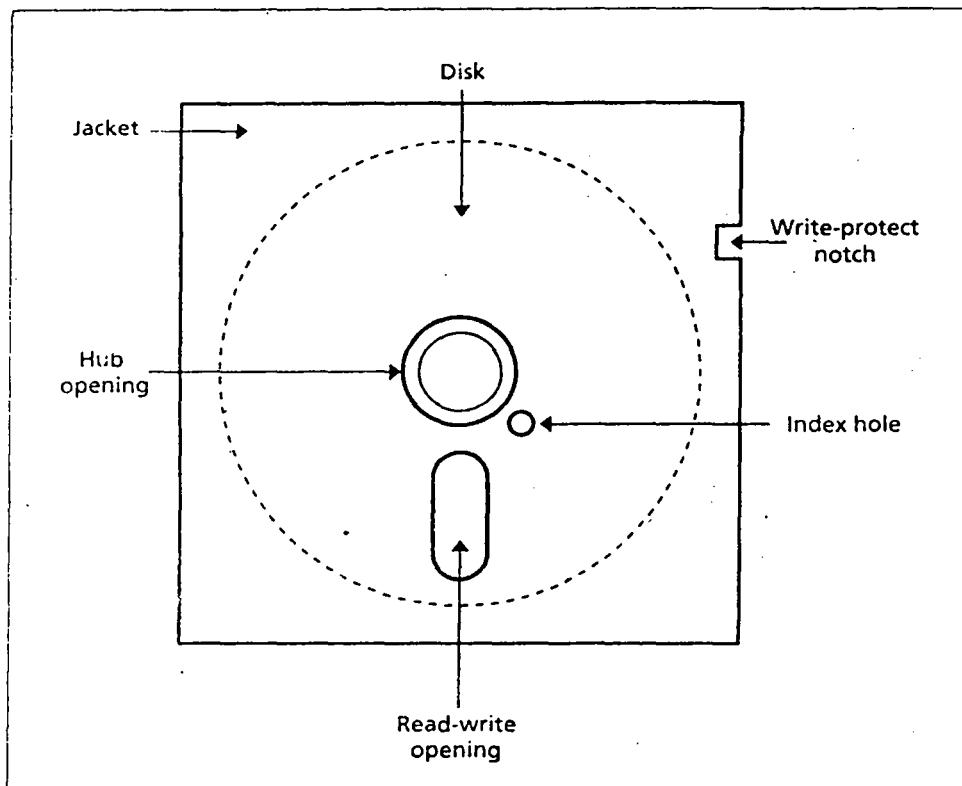


Figure 19.1 A 5 1/4-inch Floppy Disk

write-protect notch—if open, the disk can be read or written; if taped over, the disk can only be read.

The 3 1/2-inch disk has a more sturdy construction. Its jacket is made of hard plastic, which makes it more rigid; it has a metal-reinforced hub for longer use and a metal sliding cover that protects the read/write head access opening. The write-protection hole operates differently from that of the 5 1/4-inch disk; the disk is write-protected when the hole is open. There is no index hole. Figure 19.2 shows a 3 1/2-inch disk.

### Hard Disks

A hard disk consists of one or more platters mounted on a common spindle. Both sides of a platter are used for recording, and there is one read/write head for each side of a platter. All the heads are connected to a common moving unit. See Figure 19.3.

The read/write head hovers just above the disk surface, never actually touching it during operations (unlike a floppy disk). The space between the head and the disk surface is so small that any dust particle would cause the head to crash onto the disk surface, so hard disks and their disk drives come in hermetically sealed cases.

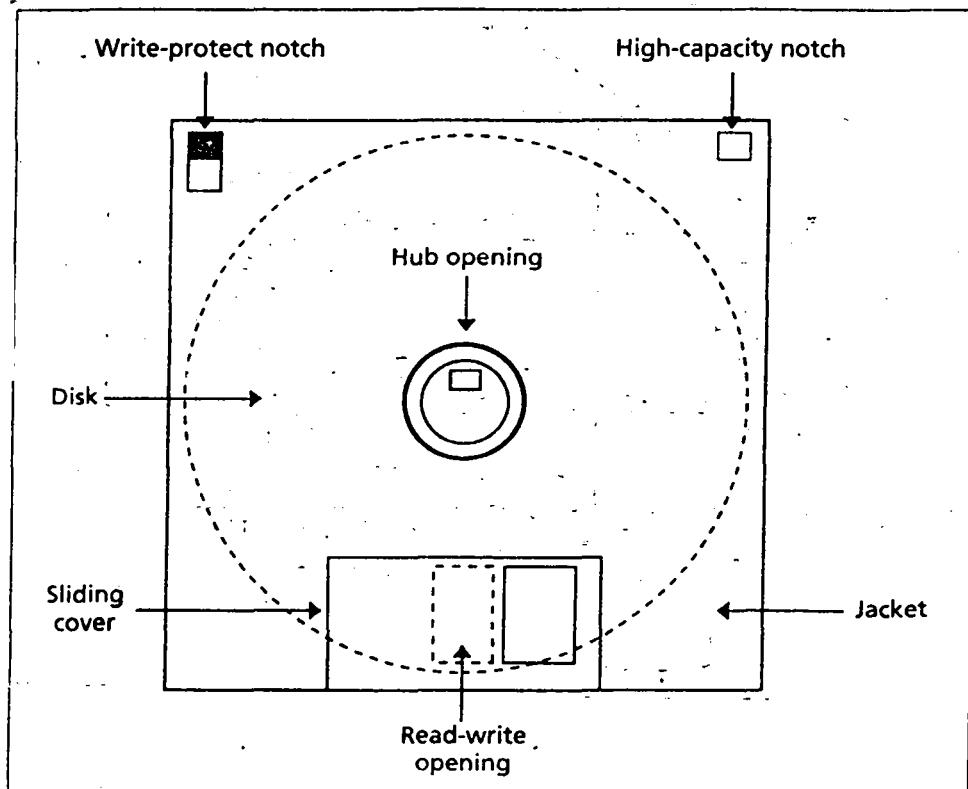


Figure 19.2 A 3½-inch Floppy Disk

Hard disk access is much faster than for a floppy disk for several reasons: (1) a hard disk is always rotating, so no time is lost in starting up the disk, (2) hard disks rotate at a much faster rate (usually about 3600 rpm, or revolutions per minute, versus 300 rpm for a floppy disk), and (3) because of its rigid surface and dust-free environment, the recording density is much greater.

## 19.2 Disk Structure

Information on a disk is stored in the tracks. When a disk is formatted, tracks are partitioned into 512-byte areas called **sectors**. DOS numbers tracks, starting with 0. Within a track, sectors are also numbered, starting with 1. The number of tracks and sectors per track depends on the kind of disk.

A **cylinder** is the collection of tracks that have the same number. For example, cylinder 0 for a floppy disk consists of track 0 on each side of the disk; for a hard disk, cylinder 0 consists of the tracks numbered 0 on both sides of each platter. Cylinders are so named because the tracks that make up a cylinder line up vertically and seem to form a physical cylinder.

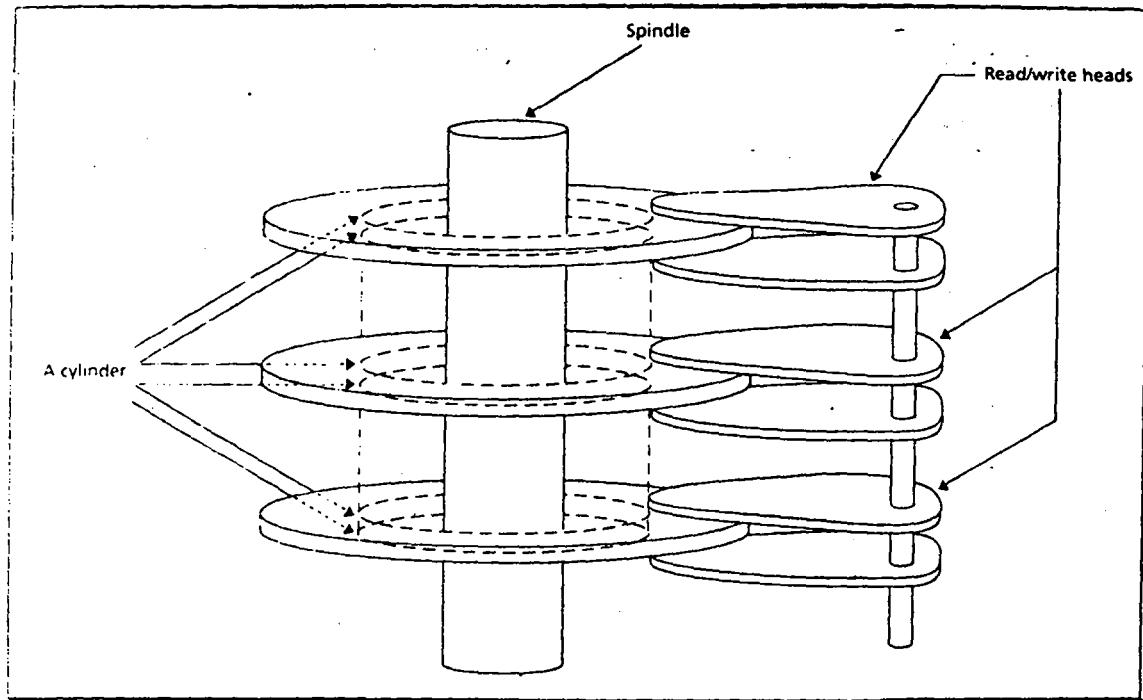


Figure 19.3 A Hard Disk

(see Figure 19.3). The number of cylinders a disk has is equal to the number of tracks on each surface.

DOS also numbers the surfaces that make up a disk, beginning with 0. A floppy disk has surfaces 0 and 1. A hard disk can have more surface numbers, because it may consist of several platters.

### 19.2.1

#### Disk Capacity

The capacity in bytes that can be stored on a disk can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{capacity in bytes} = \text{surfaces} \times \text{tracks/surface} \times \text{sectors/track} \times 512 \text{ bytes/sector}$$

For example, a 5 1/4-inch floppy disk has this capacity:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{capacity in bytes} &= 2 \text{ surfaces} \times 40 \text{ tracks/surface} \times 9 \text{ sectors/track} \\ &\quad \times 512 \text{ bytes/sector} = 368,640 \text{ bytes} \end{aligned}$$

Tables 19.1A and 19.1B give the number of cylinders, sectors/track, surfaces, and capacity for some of the floppy and hard disks in use today.

The density of information on a floppy disk depends on the recording technique. Two common recording techniques are *double density* and *high density*. A high-density drive uses a narrow head and it can read double-density disks; however, a double-density drive cannot read a high-density disk.

**Table 19.1A Floppy Disk Capacity**

| <i>Kind of Disk</i>      | <i>Cylinders</i> | <i>Sectors/Track</i> | <i>Capacity</i> |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 5½ in.<br>double density | 40               | 9                    | 368,640 bytes   |
| 5½ in.<br>high density   | 80               | 15                   | 1,228,800 bytes |
| 3½ in.<br>double density | 80               | 9                    | 737,280 bytes   |
| 3½ in.<br>high density   | 80               | 18                   | 1,474,560 bytes |

**Table 19.1B Hard Disk Capacity**

| <i>Kind of Disk</i> | <i>Cylinders</i> | <i>Sectors/Track</i> | <i>Sides</i> | <i>Capacity</i>  |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------|------------------|
| 10 MB               | 306              | 17                   | 4            | 10,653,696 bytes |
| 20 MB               | 615              | 17                   | 4            | 21,411,840 bytes |
| 30 MB               | 615              | 17                   | 6            | 32,117,760 bytes |
| 60 MB               | 940              | 17                   | 8            | 65,454,080 bytes |

**19.2.2****Disk Access**

The method of accessing information for both floppy and hard disks is similar. The disk drive is under the control of the disk controller circuit, which is responsible for moving the heads and reading and writing data. Data are always accessed one sector at a time.

The first step in accessing data is to position the head at the right track. This may involve moving the head assembly—a slow operation. Once the head is positioned on the right track, it waits for the desired sector to come by; this takes additional time. Because all the tracks in a cylinder can be accessed without moving the head assembly, when DOS is writing data to a disk it fills a cylinder before going on to the next cylinder.

**19.2.3****File Allocation**

To keep track of the data stored on a disk, DOS uses a directory structure. The first tracks and sectors of a disk contain information about the disk's file structure. We'll concentrate on the structure of the 5½-inch double-density floppy disk, which is organized as follows:

| <i>Surface</i> | <i>Track</i> | <i>Sectors</i> | <i>Information</i>             |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| 0              | 0            | 1              | boot record (used in start-up) |
| 0              | 0            | 2–5            | file allocation table (FAT)    |
| 0              | 0            | 6–9            | file directory                 |
| 1              | 0            | 1–3            | file directory                 |
| 1              | 0            | 4–9            | data (as needed)               |
| 0              | 1            | 1–9            | data (as needed)               |

### The File Directory

DOS creates a 32-byte directory entry for each file. The format of an entry is as follows:

| Byte  | Function                                                |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 0-7   | filename (byte 0 is also used as a <i>status byte</i> ) |
| 8-10  | extension                                               |
| 11    | attribute (see below)                                   |
| 12-21 | reserved by DOS                                         |
| 22-23 | creation hour:minute:second                             |
| 24-25 | creation year:month:day                                 |
| 26-27 | starting cluster number (see discussion of the FAT)     |
| 28-31 | file size in bytes                                      |

There are seven sectors in the directory area, each with 512 bytes. Each file entry contains 32 bytes, so there is room for  $7 \times 512/32 = 112$  entries. However, file entries also may be contained in subdirectories.

The directory is organized as a tree, with the main directory (a.k.a. *root directory*) as root, and the subdirectories as branches.

In a file directory entry, byte 0 is the **file status byte**. The FORMAT program assigns 0 to this byte; it means the entry has never been used. E8h means the file has been deleted. 2Eh indicates a subdirectory. Otherwise, byte 0 contains the first character of the filename.

When a new file is created, DOS uses the first available directory field to store information about the file.

Byte 11 is the **attribute byte**. Each bit specifies a file attribute (see Figure 19.4).

A **hidden file** is a file whose name doesn't appear in the directory search; that is, the DIR command. Hiding a file provides a measure of security in situations where several people use the same machine. A hidden file may not be run under DOS version 2 (it may be run under DOS version 3). However, the attribute may be changed (see section 19.2.8) and then it can be run.

The **archive bit** (bit 5) is set when a file is created. It is used by the BACKUP command that saves files. When a file is saved by BACKUP, this bit is cleared but changing the file will cause the archive bit to be set again. This way the BACKUP program knows which file has been saved.

The attribute byte is specified when the file is created, but as mentioned earlier, it may be changed. Normally when a file is created it has attribute 20h (all bits 0 except the archive bit).

An example of a file directory entry is given in section 19.3.

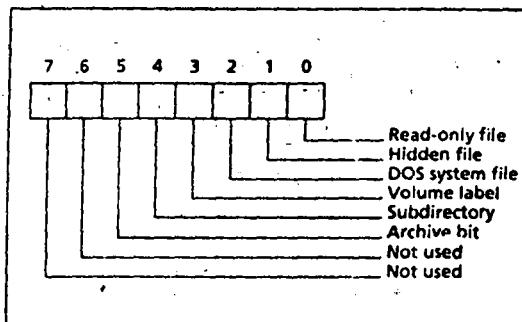
### Clusters

DOS sets aside space for a file in **clusters**. For a particular kind of disk, a cluster is a fixed number of sectors (2 for a 5 1/4 in. double-density disk); in any case, the number of sectors in a cluster is always a power of 2.

Clusters are numbered, with cluster 0 being the last two sectors of the directory. Bytes 26 and 27 of the file's directory entry contain the starting cluster number of the file. The first data file on the disk begins at cluster 2.

Even if a file is smaller than a cluster (1024 bytes for a 5 1/4 in. double-density disk), DOS still sets aside a whole cluster for it. This means the disk is likely to have space that is not being used, even if DOS says it is full.

Figure 19.4 Attribute Byte



### The FAT

The purpose of the **file allocation table (FAT)** is to provide a map of how files are stored on a disk. For floppy disks and 10-MB hard disks, FAT entries are 12 bits in length; for larger hard disks, FAT entries are 16 bits long. The first byte of the FAT is used to indicate the kind of disk (Table 19.2). For 12-bit FAT entries, the next two bytes contain FFh.

### How DOS Reads a File

To see how the FAT is organized, let's take an example of how DOS uses the FAT to read a file (refer to Figure 19.5):

1. DOS gets the starting cluster number from the directory; let's suppose it is 2.
2. DOS reads cluster 2 from the disk and stores it in an area of memory called the **data transfer area (DTA)**. The program that initiated the read retrieves data from the DTA as needed.
3. Since entry 2 contains 4, the next cluster in the file is cluster 4. If the program needs more data, DOS reads cluster 4 into the DTA.
4. Entry 4 in the FAT contains FFFh, which indicates the last cluster in the file. In general, the process of obtaining cluster numbers from the FAT and reading data into the DTA continues until a FAT entry contains FFFh.

Table 19.2 The First Byte of the FAT for Some Disks

| <i>Kind of Disk</i>      | <i>First Byte (hex)</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 5 1/4-in. double density | FD                      |
| 5 1/4-in. high density   | F9                      |
| 3 1/2-in. double density | F9                      |
| 3 1/2-in. high density   | F0                      |
| Hard disk                | F8                      |

**Figure 19.5 Example of a FAT**

| Entry | 0   | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|       | FDF | FFF | 004 | 005 | FFF | 006 | 007 | 008 | FFF | 000 |

As another example, the FAT in Figure 19.5 shows a file that occupies clusters 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8.

### How DOS Stores a File

To store a disk file, DOS does the following:

1. DOS locates an unused directory entry and stores the filename, attribute, creation time, and date.
2. DOS searches the FAT for the first entry indicating an unused cluster (000 means unused) and stores the starting cluster number in the directory. Let's suppose it finds 000 in entry 9.
3. If the data will fit in a cluster, DOS stores them in cluster 9 and places FFFh in FAT entry 9. If there are more data, DOS looks for the next available entry in the FAT; for example, Ah. DOS stores more data in cluster Ah, and places 00Ah in FAT entry 9. This process of finding unused clusters from the FAT, storing data in those clusters, making each FAT entry point to the next cluster continues until all the data have been stored. The last FAT entry for the file contains FFFh.

## 19.3

### File Processing

In this section, we discuss a group of INT 21h functions called the *file handle functions*. These functions were introduced with DOS version 2.0 and make file operations much easier than the previous file control block (FCB) method. In the latter, the programmer was responsible for setting up a table that contained information about open files. With the file handle functions, DOS keeps track of open file data in its own internal tables, thus relieving the programmer of this responsibility. Another advantage of the file handle functions is that a user may specify file path names; this was not possible with the FCB functions.

In the following discussion, **reading** a file means copying all or part of an existing file into memory; **writing** a file means copying data from memory to a file; **rewriting** a file means replacing a file's content with other data.

#### 19.3.1

##### File Handle

When a file is opened or created in a program, DOS assigns it a unique number called the **file handle**. This number is used to identify the file, so the program must save it.

There are five predefined file handles. They are

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 0 | keyboard            |
| 1 | screen              |
| 2 | error output screen |
| 3 | auxiliary device    |
| 4 | printer             |

In addition to these files, DOS allows three additional user-defined files to be open (it is possible to raise the limit of open user files. See the DOS manual).

### 19.3.2 File Errors

There are many opportunities for errors in INT 21h file handling; DOS identifies each error by a code number. In the functions we describe here, if an error occurs then CF is set and the code number appears in AX. The following list contains the more common file-handling errors.

| Hex Error Code | Meaning                             |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1              | invalid function number             |
| 2              | file not found                      |
| 3              | path not found                      |
| 4              | all available handles in use        |
| 5              | access denied                       |
| 6              | invalid file handle                 |
| C              | invalid access code                 |
| F              | invalid drive specified             |
| 10             | attempt to remove current directory |
| 11             | not the same device                 |
| 12             | no more files to be found           |

In the following sections, we describe the DOS file handle functions. As with the DOS I/O functions we have been using, put a function number in AH and execute INT 21h.

### 19.3.3 Opening and Closing a File

Before a file can be used, it must be opened. To create a new file or rewrite an existing file, the user provides a filename and an attribute; DOS returns a file handle.

|                                                                         |                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INT 21h, Function 3CH:</b><br><b>-Open a New File/Rewrite a File</b> |                                                                                                      |
| <b>Input:</b>                                                           | AH = 3Ch<br>DS:DX = address of filename, which is an ASCII string<br>(a string ending with a 0 byte) |
| <b>Output:</b>                                                          | CL = attribute<br>If successful, AX = file handle<br>Error if CF = 1, error code in AX (3, 4, or 5)  |

The filename may include a path; for example, A:\PROGS\PROG1.ASM. Possible errors for this function are 3 (path doesn't exist), 4 (all file handles in use), or 5 (access denied, which means either that the directory is full or the file is a read-only file).

**Example 19.1** Write instructions to open a new read-only file called FILE1.

**Solution:** Suppose the filename is stored as follows

```
FNAME DB 'FILE1',0
HANDLE DW ?
```

The string FNAME containing the filename must end with a 0 byte. HANDLE will contain the file handle.

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX ; initialize DS
MCV AH, 3CH ; open file function
LEA DX, FNAME ; DX has filename address
MOV CL, 1 ; read_only attribute
INT 21H ; open file
MOV HANDLE, AX ; save handle or error code
JC OPEN_ERROR ; jump if error
```

If there were an error, the program would jump to OPEN\_ERROR where we could print an error message.

To open an existing file, there is another function:

**INT 21h, Function 3Dh:  
Open an Existing File**

**Input:** AH = 3Dh  
 DS:DX = address of filename which is an ASCII string  
 AL = access code: 0 means open for reading  
       1 means open for writing  
       2 means open for both

**Output:** If successful, AX = file handle  
 Error if CF = 1, error code in AX (2,4,5,12)

After a file has been processed, it should be closed. This frees the file handle for use with another file. If the file is being written, closing causes any data remaining in memory to be written to the file, and the file's time, date, and size to be updated in the directory.

**INT 21H, Function 3Eh:  
Close a File**

**Input:** BX = file handle

**Output:** If CF = 1, error code in AX (6)

**Example 19.2** Write some code to close a file. Suppose variable HANDLE contains the file handle.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH, 3EH ;close file function
MOV BX, HANDLE ;get handle
INT 21H ;close file
JC CLOSE_ERROR ;jump if error
```

The only thing that could go wrong is that there might be no file corresponding to the file handle (error 6).

### 19.3.4

#### Reading a File

The following function reads a specified number of bytes from a file and stores them in memory.

**INT 21H, Function 3FH:  
Read a File**

|                |                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Input:</b>  | AH = 3FH<br>BX = file handle<br>CX = number of bytes to read<br>DS:DX = memory buffer address                              |
| <b>Output:</b> | AX = number of bytes actually read.<br>If AX = 0 or AX < CX, end of file encountered.<br>If CF = 1, error code in AX (5,6) |

**Example 19.3** Write some code to read a 512-byte sector from a file.

**Solution:** First we must set up a memory block (buffer) to receive the data:

```
.DATA
HANDLE DW ?
BUFFER DB 512 DUP (?)
```

The instructions are

```
MOV AX, CDATA
MOV DS, AX ;initialize DS
MOV AH, 3FH ;read file function
MOV BX, HANDLE ;get handle
MOV CX, 512 ;read 512 bytes
INT 21H ;read file. AX = bytes read
JC READ_ERROR ;jump if error
```

In some applications, we may want to read and process sectors until end of file (EOF) is encountered. The program can check for EOF by comparing AX and CX:

```
CMP AX, CX ;EOF? (yes)
JL EXIT ;yes, terminate program
JMP READ_LOOP ;no, keep reading
```

**19.3.5****Writing a File**

Function 40h writes a specified number of bytes to a file or device.

**INT 21H, Function 40h:  
Write File**

|                |                                                                                        |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Input:</b>  | AH = 40h<br>BX = file handle<br>CX = number of bytes to write<br>DS:DX = data address  |
| <b>Output:</b> | AX = bytes written. If AX < CX, error (full disk)<br>If CF = 1, error code in AX (5,6) |

It is possible that there is not enough room on the disk to accept the data; DOS doesn't regard this as an error, so the program has to check for it by comparing AX and CX.

Function 40h writes data to a file, but it can also be used to send data to the screen or printer (handles 1 and 4, respectively).

**Example 19.4** Use function 40h to display a message on the screen.

**Solution:** Let's suppose the message is stored as follows:

```
.DATA
MSG DB 'DISPLAY THIS MESSAGE'
```

The instructions are

```
MOV AX, @DATA
MOV DS, AX ;initialize DS
MOV AH, 40H ;write file function
MOV BX, 1 ;'screen file' handle
MOV CX, 20 ;length of message
LEA DX, MSG ;get address of MSG
INT 21H ;display MSG
```

**19.3.6****A Program to Read and Display a File**

To show how the file handle functions work, we will write a program that lets the user enter a filename, then reads and displays the file on the screen.

**Algorithm for displaying a file**

```
Get filename from user
Open file
IF open error
THEN
 display error code and exit
ELSE
REPEAT
 Read a sector into buffer
```

```

 Display buffer
UNTIL end of file
Close file
ENDIF

```

### Program Listing PGM19\_1.ASM

```

0: TITLE PGM19_1: DISPLAY FILE
1: .MODEL SMALL
2:
3: .STACK 100H
4:
5: .DATA
6: PROMPT DB 'FILENAME:$'
7: FILENAME DB 30 DUP (0)
8: BUFFER DB 512 DUP (0)
9: HANDLE DW ?
10: OPENERR DB 0DH,0AH,'OPEN ERROR - CODE'
11: ERRCODE DB 30H,'$'
12:
13: .CODE
14: MAIN PROC
15: MOV AX,@DATA :
16: MOV DS,AX ; initialize DS
17: MOV ES,AX ; and ES
18: CALL GET_NAME ; read filename
19: LEA DX,FILENAME ; DX has filename offset
20: MOV AL,0 ; access code 0 for reading
21: CALL OPEN ; open file
22: JC OPEN_ERROR ; exit if error
23: MOV HANDLE,AX ; save handle
24: READ_LOOP:
25: LEA DX,BUFFER ; DX pts to buffer
26: MOV BX,HANDLE ; get handle
27: CALL READ ; read file. AX = bytes read
28: OR AX,AX ; end of file?
29: JE EXIT ; yes, exit
30: MOV CX,AX ; CX gets no. of bytes read
31: CALL DISPLAY ; display file
32: JMP READ_LOOP ; exit
33: OPEN_ERROR:
34: LEA DX,OPENERR ; get error message
35: ADD ERRCODE,AL ; convert error code to ASCII
36: MOV AH,9
37: INT 21H ; display error message
38: EXIT:
39: MOV VCBX,HANDLE ; get handle
40: CALL CLOSE ; close file
41: XMOV ECX,AH,4CH
42: INT T=21H ; dos exit
43: MAIN ENDP
44:
45: GET_NAME: PROC NEAR
46: ; reads and stores filename
47: ; input::none
48: ; output::filename stored as ASCII string

```

```

49: PUSH AX ;save registers used
50: PUSH DX
51: PUSH DI
52: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
53: LEA DX,PROMPT
54: INT 21H ;display data prompt
55: CLD
56: LEA DI,FILENAME ;DI pts to filename
57: MOV AH,1 ;read char fcn
58: READ_NAME:
59: INT 21H ;get a char
60: CMP AL,0DH ;CR?
61: JE DONE ;yes, exit
62: STOSB ;no, store in string
63: JMP READ_NAME ;keep reading
64: DONE:
65: MOV AL,0
66: STOSB ;store 0 byte
67: POP DI ;restore registers
68: POP DX
69: POP AX
70: RET
71: GET_NAME ENDP
72:
73: OPEN PROC NEAR
74: ;opens file
75: ;input: DS:DX filename
76: ; AL access code
77: ;output: if successful, AX handle
78: ; if unsuccessful, CF = 1, AX = error code
79: MOV AH,3DH ;open file fcn
80: MOV AL,0 ;input only
81: INT 21H ;open file
82: RET
83: OPEN ENDP
84:
85: READ PROC NEAR
86: ;reads a file sector
87: ;input: BX file handle
88: ; CX bytes to read (512)
89: ; DS:DX buffer
90: ;output: if successful, sector in buffer
91: ; AX number of bytes read
92: ; if unsuccessful, CF= 1
93: PUSH CX
94: MOV AH,3FH ;read file fcn
95: MOV CX,512 ;512 bytes
96: INT 21H ;read file into buffer
97: POP CX
98: RET
99: READ ENDP
100:
101:DISPLAY PROC NEAR
102:;displays memory on screen
103:;input: BX = handle (1)
104:; CX = bytes to display

```

```

105: DS:DX = data address
106: ;output: AX = bytes displayed
107: PUSH BX
108: MOV AH,40H ;write file fcn
109: MOV BX,1 ;handle for screen
110: INT 21H ;display file
111: POP BX
112: RET
113:DISPLAY ENDP
114:
115:CLOSE PROC NEAR
116:;closes a file
117:;input: BX-= handle
118:;output: if CF = 1, error code in AX
119: MOV AH,3EH ;close file fcn
120: INT 21H ;close file
121: RET
122:CLOSE ENDP
123:
124: END MAIN

```

At line 18, procedure GET\_NAME is called to receive the filename from the user and store it in array FILENAME as an ASCII string. After FILENAME's offset is moved to DX, procedure OPEN is called at line 21 to open the file. The most likely errors are nonexistent file or path. If either happens, OPEN returns with CF set and the error code 2 or 3 in AL. The program converts the code to an ASCII character by adding it to the 30h in variable ERRCODE (line 35), and prints an error message with the appropriate code number.

*Note:* typing mistakes will be treated as errors.

If the file opens successfully, AX will contain 5, the first available handle after the predefined handles.

At line 24, the program enters the main processing loop. First, procedure READ is called to read a sector into array BUFFER. CF is set if an error occurred, but the conceivable errors (access denied, illegal file handle) are not possible in this program, so AX will have the actual number of bytes read. If this is zero, EOF was encountered on the previous call to READ, and the program calls procedure CLOSE to close the file.

If AX is not 0, the number of bytes read is moved to CX (line 30) and procedure DISPLAY is called to display the bytes on the screen.

#### Sample Executions:

```

C>PGM19_1
FILENAME: A:A.TXT
THIS IS A SMALL TEST FILE

C>PGM19_1
FILENAME: A:B.TXT
OPEN ERROR - CODE 2 (nonexistent file)

C>PGM19_1
FILENAME: A:\PROGS\A.TXT
OPEN ERROR - CODE 3 (illegal path)

```

## 19.3.7

**The File Pointer**

The **file pointer** is used to locate a position in a file. When the file is opened, the file pointer is positioned at the beginning of the file. After a read operation, the file pointer indicates the next byte to be read; after writing a new file, the file pointer is at EOF (end of file).

The following function can be used to move the file pointer.

**INT 21H, Function 42h:  
Move File Pointer**

**Input:** AH = 42h  
 AL = movement code: 0 means move relative to beginning of file  
 1 means move relative to the current file pointer location  
 2 means move relative to the end of the file  
 BX = file handle  
 CX:DX = number of bytes to move (signed)  
**Output:** DX:AX = new pointer location in bytes from the beginning of the file  
 If CF = 1, error code in AX (1,6)

CX:DX contains the number of bytes to move the pointer, expressed as a signed number (positive means forward, negative means backward). If AL = 0, movement is from the beginning of the file; if AL = 1, movement is from the current pointer position. If AL = 2, movement is from the end of the file.

If CX:DX is too large, the pointer could be moved past the beginning or end of the file. This is not an error in itself, but it will cause an error when the next file read or write is executed.

The following code moves the pointer to the end of the file and determines the file size:

```

MOV AH, 42H ;move file ptr function
MOV BX, HANDLE ;get handle
XOR CX, CX ;0 bytes to move
XOR DX, DX ;relative to end of file
MOV AL, 2 ;move pointer to end.
INT 21H ;DX:AX = file size
JC MOVE_ERROR ;error IF CF = 1

```

**Application: Appending Records to a File**

The following program creates a file of names. It prompts the user to enter names of up to 20 characters, one name per line. After each name is entered, the program appends it to the file and blanks the input line on the screen. The user indicates end of data by typing a CRTL-Z.

**Algorithm for Main Program**

```

Open NAMES file
Move file pointer to EOF
Print data prompt

```

```

:WHILE a <CTRL-Z> has not been typed DO
: Get a name from the user and store in byte
: array NAMEFLD
: Write name to NAMES file
ENDWHILE
?Close('NAMES\file')
The program calls procedure GET_NAME to get a name from the user.

```

#### Algorithm for GET\_NAME Procedure

```

: Put blanks in first 20 bytes of NAMEFLD (last
: 2 bytes are <CR><LF>)
:REPEAT
: Read a character
: IF character is <CTRL-Z> (1Ah)
: THFN
: set CF and exit
: ELSEIF character is not <CR>
: THEN
: store character in NAMEFLD
: ENDIF
:UNTIL character is <CR>
:Blank input line on screen

```

#### Program Listing PGM19\_2.ASM

```

1: TITLE PGM19_2: APPEND RECORDS
2: .MODEL SMALL
3:
4: .STACK 100
5:
6: .DATA
7: PROMPT DB 'NAMES:',0DH,0AH,'$'
8: NAMEFLD DB 20 DUP('0'),0DH,0AH
9: FILE DB 'NAMES',0 ;?
10: HNDL DW ?
11: OPENR DB 0DH,0AH,'OPEN ERROR $'
12: WRITER DB 0DH,0AH,'WRITE ERROR $'
13: .CODE
14: MAIN PROC
15: MOV AX,@DATA
16: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
17: MOV ES,AX ;and ES
18: ;open NAMES file
19: LEA DX,FILE ;get addr of filename
20: INT 21H CALL OPEN ;open file
21: JNC OPEN_ERROR ;exit if error
22: MOV HNDL,AX ;save handle
23: ;move file pointer to eof
24: MOV BX,HNDL ;get handle
25: CALL 'MOVE_PTR' ;move pointer
26: ;print prompt
27: MOV AH,9 ;display string fcn
28: LEA TIDX,PROMPT ;;"NAMES:"
29: INT 21H ;display prompt

```

```

30: READ_LOOP: ;read names
31: LEA DI,NAMEFLD ;DI pts to name
32: CALL GET_NAME ;read name
33: JC EXIT ;CF = 1 if end of data
34: ;append name to NAMES file
35: MOV BX,HANDLE ;get handle
36: MOV CX,22 ;22 bytes for name, CR, LF
37: LEA DX,NAMEFLD ;get addr of name
38: CALL WRITE ;write to file
39: JC WRITE_ERROR;exit if error
40: JMP READ_LOOP ;get next name
41: OPEN_ERROR:
42: LEA DX,OPENERR ;get error message
43: MOV AH,9
44: INT 21H ;display error message
45: JMP EXIT
46: WRITE_ERROR:
47: LEA DX,WRITERR ;get error message
48: MOV AH,9
49: INT 21H ;display error message
50: EXIT:
51: MOV BX,HANDLE ;get handle
52: CALL CLOSE ;close NAMES file
53: MOV AH,4CH
54: INT 21H ;dos exit
55: MAIN ENDP
56:
57: GET_NAME PROC NEAR
58: ;reads and stores a name
59: ;input: DI = offset address of NAMEFLD
60: ;output: name stored at NAMEFLD
61: CLD
62: MOV AH,1 ;read char function
63: ;clear NAMEFLD
64: PUSH DI ;save ptr to NAMEFLD
65: MOV CX,20 ;name can have up to 20 chars
66: MOV AL,' '
67: REP STOSB ;store blanks
68: POP DI ;restore ptr
69: READ_NAME:
70: INT 21H ;read a char
71: CMP AL,1AH ;end of data?
72: JNE NO ;no, continue
73: STC
74: RET
75: NO:
76: CMP AL,ODH ;end of name?
77: JE DONE ;yes, exit
78: STOSB
79: JMP READ_NAME ;keep reading
80: ;clear input line
81: DONE:
82: MOV AH,2 ;print char fcn
83: MOV DL,ODH
84: INT 21H ;execute CR
85: MOV DL,' '

```

```
86: MOV CX,20
87: CLEAR: INT 21H
88: ~LOOP: CLEAR ;clear input line
89: MOV DL,0DH
90: INT 21H ;reset cursor to start of line
91: RET
92: GET_NAME ENDP
93:
94:
95: OPEN PROC NEAR
96: ;opens file.
97: ;input: DS:DX filename
98: ; AL access code
99: ;output: if successful, AX handle
100: ; if unsuccessful, CF = 1, AX = error code
101: MOV AH,3DH ;open file fcn
102: MOV AL,1 ;write only
103: INT 21H ;open file
104: RET
105:OPEN ENDP
106:
107:WRITE PROC NEAR
108:;writes a file
109:;input: BX = handle
110:; CX = bytes to write
111:; DS:DX = data address
112:;output: AX = bytes written.
113:; If unsuccessful, CF = 1, AX = error code
114: MOV AH,40H ;write file fcn
115: INT 21H ;write file
116: RET
117:WRITE ENDP
118:
119:CLOSE PROC NEAR
120:;closes a file
121:;input: BX = handle
122:;output: if CF = 1, error code in AX
123: MOV AH,3EH ;close file fcn
124: INT 21H ;close file
125: RET
126:CLOSE ENDP
127:
128:MOVE_PTR PROC NEAR
129:;moves file pointer to eof
130:;input: BX = file handle
131:;output: DX:AX = pointer position from beginning
132: MOV AH,42H ;move ptr function
133: XOR CX,CX ;0 bytes
134: XOR DX,DX ;from end of file
135: MOV AL,2 ;movement code
136: INT 21H ;move ptr
137: RET
138:MOVE_PTR ENDP
139:
140:END MAIN
```

The program begins by using INT 21h, function 3Dh, to open the NAMES file. Since this function may only be used to open a file that already exists, a blank file NAMES must be created before the program is run the first time. To create such a file, enter DEBUG and follow these steps:

1. Use the N command to name the file (type N NAMES).
2. Put 0 in BX and CX (specify 0 file length).
3. Write file to disk (type W).

After the program has been run, the DOS TYPE command may be used to view it.

*Sample execution:* (The input names are actually entered on the same line, but will be shown on separate lines.)

```

C>PGM19_2
NAMES: ...
GEORGE WASHINGTON
JOHN ADAMS
<CTRL-Z>

C>TYPE NAMES
GEORGE WASHINGTON
JOHN ADAMS

C>PGM19_2
NAMES: ...
THOMAS JEFFERSON
HARRY TRUMAN
SUSAN B. ANTHONY
<CTRL-Z>

C>TYPE NAMES
GEORGE WASHINGTON
JOHN ADAMS
THOMAS JEFFERSON
HARRY TRUMAN
SUSAN B. ANTHONY

```

### 19.3.8

#### Changing a File's Attribute

In section 19.1.2, we saw that a file's attribute is specified when it is created (function 3Ch). The following function provides a way to get or change the attribute.

**INT 21H, Function 43h:  
Get/Change File Attribute**

**Input:** AH = 43h  
 DS:DX = address of file pathname as ASCII string  
 AL = 0 to get attribute  
 = 1 to change attribute  
 CX = new file attribute (if AL = 1)

**Output:** If successful, CX = current file attribute (if AL = 0)  
 Error if CF = 1, error code in AX (2,3, or 5)

This function may not be used to change the volume label or subdirectory bits of the file attribute (bits 3 and 4).

**Example 19.5** Change a file's attribute to hidden.

**Solution:**

```
MOV AH, 43H ;get/change attribute fcn
MOV AL, 1 ;change attribute option
LEA DX, FNAME ;get path
MOV CX, 1 ;";hidden attribute
INT 21H ;change attribute
JC ATTR_ERROR ;exit if error. AX = error code
```

## 19.4 **Direct Disk Operations**

Up to now, we have been talking about operations on files using the DOS INT 21h file handle functions. There are two other DOS interrupts for reading and writing disk sectors directly.

### 19.4.1 **INT 25h and INT 26h**

The DOS interrupts for reading and writing sectors are INT 25h and INT 26h, respectively. Before invoking these interrupts, the following registers must be initialized:

AL = drive number (0 = drive A, 1 = drive B, etc.)  
 DS:BX = segment:offset of memory buffer  
 CX = number of sectors to read or write  
 DX = starting logical sector number (see following section)

Unlike INT 21h, there is no function number to put in AH. The interrupt routines place the contents of the FLAGS register on the stack, and it should be popped before the program continues. If CF = 1, an error has occurred and AX gets the error code.

**Table 19.3 Logical Sectors**

| <i>Surface</i> | <i>Track</i> | <i>Sectors</i> | <i>Logical Sectors</i> | <i>Information</i> |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 0              | 0            | 1              | 0                      | Boot record        |
| 0              | 0            | 2-5            | 1-4                    | FAT                |
| 0              | 0            | 6-9            | 5-8                    | File directory     |
| 1              | 0            | 1-3            | 9-11 (9h-Bh)           | File directory     |
| 1              | 0            | 4-9            | 12-17 (Ch-11h)         | Data (as needed)   |
| 0              | 1            | 1-9            | 18-26 (12h-1Ah)        | Data (as needed)   |

**Logical Sector Numbers**

In section 19.1.2, we identified positions on a disk by surface, track, and sector. DOS assigns a logical sector number to each sector, starting with 0. Logical sector numbers proceed along a track on surface 0, then continue on the same track on surface 1. Table 19.3 gives the correspondence between surface-track-sector and logical sector for the first part of a 5 1/4-inch floppy disk.

**Reading a Sector**

As an example of a direct disk operation, the following program reads the first sector of the directory (logical sector 5) of the disk in drive A.

**Program Listing PGM19\_3.ASM**

```

0: TITLE PGM19_3: READ SECTOR
1: .MODEL SMALL
2:
3: .STACK 10CH
4:
5: .DATA
6: BUFF DB 512 DUP (0)
7: ERROR_MSG DB 'ERRORS'
8:
9: .CODE
10: MAIN PROC
11: MOV AX,0DATA
12: MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
13: MOV AL,0 ;drive A
14: LEA BX,BUFF ;BX has buffer offset
15: MOV CX,1 ;read 1 sector
16: MOV DX,5 ;start at sector 5
17: INT 25H ;read sector
18: POP DX ;restore stack
19: JNC EXIT ;jump if no error
20: ;here if error
21: MOV AH,9
22: LEA DX,ERROR_MSG
23: INT 21H ;display error message
24: EXIT:
25: MOV AH,4CH ;dos exit
26: INT 21H
27: MAIN ENDP
28:
29: END MAIN

```

To demonstrate the program, a disk containing two files A.TXT and B.TXT is placed in drive A, and the program is executed inside DEBUG. In this environment, the program performs the same function as DEBUG's L (load) command.

```
C>DEBUG PGM19_3.EXE

-G13 (execute through line 18 above)
AX=0100 RX=0000 CX=0000 DX=0005 SP=0062 BP=7420 SI=01B6 DI=0001
DS=0F12 ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F33 IP=0013 NV UP EI PL ZR NA PE NC
OF33:0013 5A POP DX

-D0 (dump buffer)
0F12:0000 41 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 5A 54 20 00 00 00 00 A TXT
0F12:0010 00 00 00 00 00 00 BD 19-22 16 02 00 80 00 00 00=."
0F12:0020 42 20 20 20 20 20 20 20-54 58 54 20 00 00 00 00 B TXT
0F12:0030 00 00 00 00 00 00 23 24-8A 16 03 00 80 00 00 00#$.
0F12:0040 00 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6-F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 .vvvvvvvvvvvvvvvvv
0F12:0050 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6-F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 vvvvvvvvvvvvvvvv
0F12:0060 00 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6-F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 .vvvvvvvvvvvvvvv
0F12:0070 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6-F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 F6 vvvvvvvvvvvvvvv
```

From the display, we can pick out the relative fields of the directory entries.  
For file A,

| <i>Offset (hex)</i> | <i>Information</i> | <i>Bytes</i>           |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 0-7                 | filename           | 41 20 20 20 20 20 20 A |
| 8-A                 | extension          | 54 58 54 TXT           |
| B                   | attribute          | 20                     |
| C-15                | reserved by DOS    |                        |
| 16-17               | creation time      | BD 19                  |
| 18-19               | creation date      | 22 16                  |
| 1A-1B               | starting cluster   | 02                     |
| 1C-1D               | file size          | 80                     |

The format of the creation hour:minute:second is hhhhhmmmmmmssssss.  
For this file,

19BDh = 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1

= 3:13:29

The year:month:day has form yyyyymmdd where the year is relative to 1980 for this DOS version. We get

1622h = 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0

= 11:1:2 (actually 91:1:2)

### Examining a File Allocation Table

As another example, we can put a disk that contains several files in drive A and use the preceding program to display the first part of the FAT,

which begins at logical sector 1. If we change line 17 in the program to read MOV DX,1 and run the program inside DEBUG, the result is

```
-d0
OF12:0000 FD FF FF FF 4F 00 05 60-00 07 F0 FF 09 A0 00 0B
OF12:0010 C0 00 0D E0 00 0F 00 01-11 20 01 13 40 01 15 60
OF12:0020 01 17 80 C1 19 A0 01 1B-C0 01 1D E0 01 1F 00 02
OF12:0030 21 20 02 23 40 02 25 60-02 27 80 02 29 A0 .02 2B
OF12:0040 C0 02 2D E0 02 2F 00 03-31 20 03 33 40 03 35 60
OF12:0050 03 37 80 03 39 A0 03 3B-C0 03 3D E0 03 3F 00 04
OF12:0060 41 20 04 43 40 04 45 60-04 47 80 04 49 A0 04 4B
OF12:0070 C0 04 4D E0 04 4F 00 05-51 20 05 53 40 05 55 60
```

The FAT is hard to read in this form because FAT entries are 12 bits = 3 hex digits. To decipher the display, we need to form 3-digit numbers by alternately (1) taking two hex digits from a byte and the rightmost digit from the next byte, and (2) taking the remaining (leftmost) digit from that byte and the two digits from the next byte. Performing this operation on the preceding display, we get

| CLUSTER  | 0   | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | A   |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| CONTENTS | FFD | FFF | FFF | 004 | 005 | 006 | 007 | FFF | 009 | 00A | 00B |

The first data file begins in cluster 2. The entry there is FFFh, so the file also ends in this cluster. The next file begins in cluster 3 and ends in cluster 7. The next one starts in cluster 8, and so on.

### Summary

- The FORMAT program partitions each side of a disk into concentric circular areas called *tracks*. Each track is further subdivided into 512-byte sectors. The number of tracks and sectors depends on the kind of disk. A 5 1/4-inch double-density floppy disk has 40 tracks per surface and 9 sectors per track.
- In storing data, DOS fills a track on one side, then proceeds to a track on the other side.
- Data about files are contained in the file directory. A file entry includes name, extension, attribute, time, date, starting cluster, and file size.
- A file's attribute byte is assigned when it is opened. The attribute specifies whether a file is read-only, hidden, DOS system file, volume label, subdirectory, or has been modified. The usual file attribute is 20h.

- DOS sets aside space for a file in clusters. A cluster is a fixed number of sectors (2 for a double-density floppy disk). The first data file on the disk begins in cluster 2.
- The FAT (file allocation table) provides a map of how files are stored on the disk. Each FAT entry is 12 bytes. A file's directory entry contains the first cluster number  $N_1$  of the file. FAT entry  $N_1$  contains the cluster number  $N_2$  of the next cluster of the file if there is one; the last FAT entry for a file contains FFFh.
- The DOS INT 21h file handle functions provide a convenient way to do file operations. With them, a file is assigned a number called a *file handle* when it is opened, and a program may identify a file by this number.
- File handle functions are specified by putting a function number in AH and invoking INT 21h. The main functions are 3Ch for opening a new file, 3Dh for opening an existing file, 3Eh for closing a file, 3Fh for reading a file, 40h for writing a file, 42h for moving the file pointer, and 43h for changing the file attribute.
- DOS interrupts INT 25h and INT 26h may be used to read and write disk sectors.

### Glossary

|                                    |                                                                          |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>archive bit</b>                 | Used to indicate the most recently modified version of a file            |
| <b>attribute byte</b>              | Specifies a file's attribute                                             |
| <b>cluster</b>                     | A fixed number of sectors—depends on the kind of disk                    |
| <b>cylinder</b>                    | The collection of tracks on different surfaces that share a track number |
| <b>data transfer area (DTA)</b>    | Area of memory that DOS uses to store data from a file                   |
| <b>file allocation table (FAT)</b> | Provides a map of file storage on a disk                                 |
| <b>file handle</b>                 | A number used by INT 21h functions to identify a file                    |
| <b>file pointer</b>                | Used to locate a position in a file                                      |
| <b>hidden file</b>                 | A file whose name doesn't appear in a disk's directory search            |
| <b>read a file</b>                 | Copy all or part of the file to memory                                   |
| <b>rewrite a file</b>              | Replace a file's contents by other data                                  |
| <b>sector</b>                      | A 512-byte section of a track                                            |
| <b>status byte</b>                 | Byte 0 in a file directory entry                                         |
| <b>track</b>                       | A circular area on a disk                                                |
| <b>write a file</b>                | Copy data from memory to the file                                        |

---

### Exercises

1. Verify that 1,228,800 bytes can be stored on a 5½-inch floppy disk that has 80 cylinders and 15 sectors per track.
2. Suppose FAT entries for a disk are 12 bits = 3 hex digits in length. Suppose also that the disk contains three files: FILE1, FILE2, and FILE3, and the FAT begins like this:

| ENTRY<br>CLUSTER | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | A   | B   | C   | D   | E   | F   |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                  | 004 | 009 | 00B | FFF | 00A | FFF | FFF | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 |

- a. If FILE1, FILE2, and FILE3 begin in clusters 2, 3, and 7, respectively, tell which clusters each of the files are in.
- b. When a file is erased, all its FAT entries are set to 000. Show the contents of the FAT after each of the following operations are performed (assume the operations occur in the following order):
  - FILE1 is erased.
  - A 1500-byte file FILE4 is created.
  - FILE2 is erased.
  - A 500-byte file FILE5 is created.
  - A 1500-byte file FILE6 is created.
3. Write instructions to do the following operations. Assume that the file handle is contained in the word variable HANDLE.
  - a. Move the file pointer 100 bytes from the beginning of a file.
  - b. Move the file pointer backward 1 byte from the current location.
  - c. Put the file pointer location in DX:AX.
4. From the DEBUG display of the file directory in section 19.4.1, determine the creation time, date, and size for file B.TXT.

### Programming Exercises

5. Write a program that will copy a source text file into a destination file, and replace each lowercase letter by a capital letter. Use the DOS TYPE command to display the source and destination files.
6. Write a program that will take two text files, and display them side by side on the screen. You may suppose that the length of lines in each file is less than half the screen width.
7. Modify PGM19\_2.ASM in section 19.3.7 so that it prompts the user to enter a name, and determines whether or not the name appears in the NAMES file. If so, it outputs its position in hex.
8. Modify PGM19\_2.ASM in section 19.3.7 so that it prompts the user to enter a name. If the name is present in the NAMES file, the program makes a copy of the file with the name removed. Use the DOS TYPE command to display the original file and the changed file.

# 20

## ***Intel's Advanced Microprocessors***

---

### **Overview**

We have so far been concentrating on the 8086/8088 processors. In this chapter, we take a look at Intel's advanced microprocessors, which have become very popular. We'll show that they are compatible with the 8086 and can execute 8086 programs. In addition, they have features that support memory protection and multitasking.

In section 20.1 we discuss the 80286. The operating system software needed to use the protected mode of the 80286 is discussed in section 20.2. In section 20.3 we discuss the 80386 and 80486 processors.

---

### **20.1 The 80286 Microprocessor**

Like the 8086, the 80286 is also a 16-bit processor. It has all the 8086 registers and it can execute all the 8086 instructions. It was designed to be compatible with the 8086 and also support multitasking. This is achieved by having two modes of operation: **real address mode** (also called **real mode**), and **protected virtual address mode** (**protected mode**, for short).

In real address mode, the 80286 behaves like an 8086 and can execute programs written for the 8086 without modification. In addition to the 8086 instructions, it can execute some new instructions called the **extended instruction set**.

In protected mode, the 80286 supports multitasking and it can execute additional instructions needed for this purpose. There are also additional registers being used in this mode.

Let us start with the extended instruction set.

**20.1.1****Extended Instruction Set**

The extended instruction set contains some 8086 instructions with additional operand types as well as new instructions. They are push and pop, multiply, rotate and shift, string I/O, and high-level instructions.

**PUSH and POP**

The 80286 allows constants to be used in the PUSH instruction. The format is

```
PUSH immediate
```

With this instruction, we no longer have to put a constant into a register and then push the register. For example, we can use PUSH 25 instead of MOV AX,25 and PUSH AX.

There are also instructions for pushing and popping all general registers. The instruction **PUSHA** (push all) pushes all the general registers in the following order: AX, CX, DX, BX, SP, BP, SI, and DI. The instruction **POPA** (pop all) pops all the general registers in the reverse order: DI, SI, BP, SP, BX, DX, CX, and AX. These two instructions are useful in procedures that need to save and restore all the registers. The formats are

```
PUSHA
POPA
```

**Multiply**

The 80286 has three new formats for IMUL that permit multiple operands:

```
IMUL reg16, immed
IMUL reg16, reg16, immed
IMUL reg16, mem16, immed
```

where immed is a constant, reg16 is a 16-bit register, and mem16 is a memory word. The first format specifies an immediate operand as source and a general 16-bit register as destination. The second and third formats contain three operands: the first operand is a 16-bit register that stores the product, the multiplier and multiplicand are found in the second and third operands.

Here are some examples:

1. IMUL BX, 20 ;BX and 20 are multiplied and the ;product is in BX
2. IMUL AX, BX, 20 ;BX and 20 are multiplied and the ;result is stored in AX
3. IMUL AX, WDATA, 20 ;WDATA and 20 are multiplied and ;the result is stored in AX

Note that only the low 16 bits of the product are stored. The CF and OF are cleared if the product can be stored as a 16-bit signed number; otherwise, they are set. The other flags are undefined.

**Shifts and Rotates**

The 80286 allows multiple shifts and rotates using a byte constant. There is no need to use the CL register. For example, we may use SHR AX,4 instead of the two instructions MOV CL,4 and SHR AX,CL.

### String I/O

The 80286 allows multiple bytes for input and output operations. The input instructions are **INSB** (input string byte), and **INSW** (input string word). The instruction INSB (or INSW) transfers a byte (or a word) from the port addressed by DX into the memory location addressed by ES:DI. DI is then incremented or decremented according to the DF just like other string instructions. The REP prefix can be used to input multiple bytes or words.

The output instructions are **OUTSB** (output string byte), and **OUTSW** (output string word). The instruction OUTSB (or OUTSW) transfers a byte (or a word) from the memory location addressed by ES:SI to the port addressed by DX. SI is then incremented or decremented according to the DF just like other string instructions. The REP prefix can again be used to output multiple bytes or words.

### High-Level Instructions

The high-level instructions allow block-structured high-level languages to check array limits and to create memory space on the stack for local variables. The instructions are **BOUND**, **LEAVE**, and **ENTER**. Because they are primarily used by compilers, we shall not discuss them further.

---

## 20.1.2

### Real Address Mode

#### Address Generation

One of the major drawbacks of the 8086 lies in its use of a 20-bit address, which gives a memory space of only 1 megabyte. This 1-MB memory is further restricted by the structure of the PC, which reserves the addresses above 640 KB for video and other purposes. The 80286 uses a 24-bit address, so it has a memory address space of  $2^{24}$  or 16 MB.

On first glance, it appears that the 80286 may solve a lot of the memory limitation problems. On closer examination, however, we see that programs running under DOS cannot use the extra memory. DOS is designed for the 8086/8088, which corresponds to the real mode of the 80286. In order to be compatible with the 8086, the 80286 real address mode generates a physical address the same way as the 8086; that is, the 16-bit segment number is shifted left four bits and then the offset is added. The 20-bit number formed becomes the low 20 bits of the 24-bit physical address; the high four bits are cleared. This gives us a limit of 1 MB.

Actually, the 80286 can access slightly more than 1 MB in real mode. To illustrate, let us use a segment number of FFFFh and an offset of FFFFh, the computed address is FFFFh + FFFFh = 10FFEH. In the 8086, the extra bit is dropped, resulting in a physical address of 0FFEH. For the 80286, because there are 24 address lines, the memory location 10FFEH is addressed. It is simple to see that for the FFFFh segment, bytes with offset addresses 10h to FFFh have 21-bit addresses. Thus, in the real address mode, the 80286 can access almost 64 KB more than the 8086. This address space above 1 MB is used by DOS version 5.0 to load some of its routines, resulting in more memory for application programs. Note that on many PCs the twenty-first address bit must be activated by software before the higher memory can be accessed.

### **Programs Running Under DOS**

Under DOS, the 80286 must operate in real mode. Any program written for the 8086 will run on an 80286 machine under DOS. A program for the 80286 may also contain extended instructions. To assemble a program with extended instructions, we must use the .286 assembly directive to avoid assembly errors.

As an example of extended instructions, let's write a procedure to output the contents of BX in hex. The algorithm is given in Chapter 7.

```
.286
HEX_OUT PROC
;output contents of BX in hex
 PUSHAD ;save all registers
 MOV CX,4 ;CX counts # of hex digits
;repeat loop 4 times
REPEAT:
 MOV DL,BH ;get the high byte
 SHR DL,4 ;shift out low hex digit
 CMP DL,9 ;see if output digit or letter
 JG LETTER ;go to LETTER if > 9
 OR DL,30H ;<=9, change to ASCII
 JMP PRINT ;output
LETTER:
 ADD DL,37H ;>9, convert to letter
PRINT:
 MOV AH,2 ;output function
 INT 21H ;output hex digit
 SHL BX,4 ;shift next digit into first
;position
 LOPF REPEAT
 POPAD ;restore registers
 RET
HEX_OUT ENDP
```

#### **20.1.3**

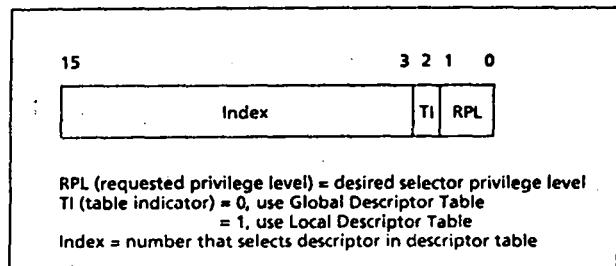
#### **Protected Mode**

To fully utilize the power of the 80286, we need to operate it in protected mode. When executing in protected mode, the 80286 supports **virtual addressing**, which allows programs to be much bigger than the machine's physical memory size. Another protected mode feature is the support for **multitasking**, which allows several programs to be running at the same time. The 80286 is designed to execute in real mode when it is powered up. Switching it into protected mode is normally the job of the operating system. In section 20.2 we look at some software that executes in protected mode.

#### **Virtual Addresses**

Application programs running in protected mode still use segment and offset to refer to memory locations. However, the segment number no longer corresponds to a specific memory segment. Instead, it is now called a **segment selector** and is used by the system to locate a physical segment that may be anywhere in memory. Figure 20.1 shows a **segment selector**.

To keep track of the physical segments used by each program, the operating system maintains a set of **segment descriptor tables**. Each application program is given a **local descriptor table**, which contains

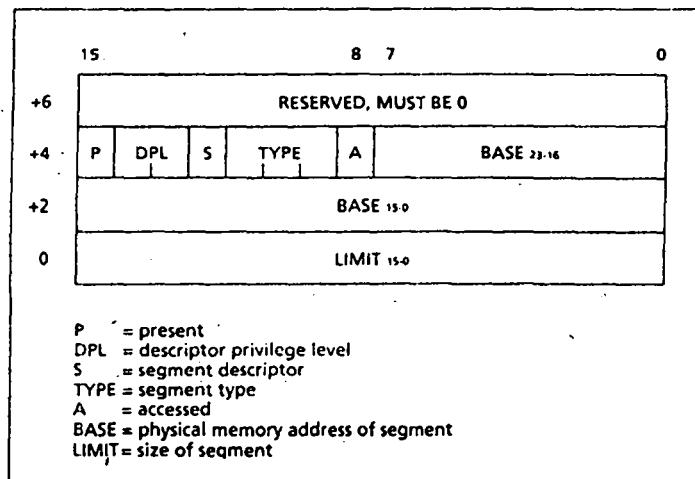
**Figure 20.1 Segment Selector**

information about the program's segments. In addition, there is a **global descriptor table**, which contains information on segments that can be accessed by all programs.

The segment selector is used to access a **segment descriptor** contained in a segment descriptor table. As we see in Figure 20.2, a segment descriptor describes the type and size of the segment, whether the segment is present, and a 24-bit base address of the segment in memory.

The process of translating the segment and offset used in an application program into a 24-bit physical address goes like this. First, the TI bit in the selector is used to select the descriptor table; TI = 1 means the local descriptor table and TI = 0 means the global descriptor table. The location of the global table is stored in the register GDTR (global descriptor table register) while another register, the LDTR (local descriptor table register), stores the local table of the current running program. Next, a segment descriptor specified by the 13-bit index is accessed from the selected table to obtain the 24-bit segment address. The offset is then added to the segment address to obtain the physical address of the memory location.

A descriptor table may have up to 64 KB. Since a descriptor is 8 bytes each descriptor table can have up to 8 K ( $2^{13}$ ) descriptors; each descriptor specifies one program segment. A program can choose either its local table or the global table, so it can specify up to 16 K segments. Since the maximum size of a segment is 64 KB, a program can use up to  $16 \text{ K} \times 64 \text{ KB} = 2^{30}$

**Figure 20.2 Segment Descriptor**

or 1 GB (gigabyte) of memory. This memory is known as **virtual memory**, because the 80286 only has 16 MB of physical memory.

The virtual segments of a program are maintained on the disk drive. The operating system may load the segments into memory as they are needed. It uses the P bit in a descriptor to keep track of whether the corresponding segment has been loaded into memory. If a virtual segment is not loaded, the P bit in the corresponding descriptor is cleared.

An example is a program that is bigger than the physical memory size. It must be loaded incrementally. When an instruction addresses a segment that is not loaded, the operating system is notified by the hardware in the form of an interrupt. The operating system then loads the segment and restarts the instruction. It may be necessary to save a memory segment to disk to make room for this new segment.

### Tasks

The basic unit of execution in protected mode is a **task**, which is similar to a program execution in real mode. Each task has its own local descriptor table. At any one time, only one task can be executing, but the operating system can switch between tasks using an interrupt. Also, one task may call another task.

Because one task cannot access another task's local descriptor table, the memory segments of one task are protected from other tasks. To provide further protection, each task is assigned a **privilege level**. There are four privilege levels, 0–3. Level 0 is the most privileged, and level 3 is the least. The operating system operates at level 0, and application programs operate at level 3. There are privileged instructions such as loading descriptor table registers that can be executed only by a task at level 0. A task operating at one level cannot access data at a more privileged level, and it cannot call a procedure at a less privileged level.

#### 20.1.4

### Extended Memory

As we have seen, the 80286 cannot access all its potential memory when operating in real mode; this is also true for the 80386 and 80486. The memory above 1 MB, called **extended memory**, is normally not available for DOS application programs. However, a program could access extended memory by using INT 15h. The two functions for dealing with extended memory are 87h and 88h. A program uses function 88h to determine the size of the extended memory available, and then uses function 87h to transfer data to and from the extended memory. A word of caution in using INT 15h to manipulate extended memory: parts of the extended memory may be used by other programs such as VDISK, and the memory may be corrupted by your program. A better method is for the program to call an extended-memory manager program for extended-memory access.

**INT 15h Function 87h:  
Move Extended Memory Block**

|         |                                                                                        |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input:  | AH = 87h<br>CX = number of words to move<br>ES:SI = address of Global Descriptor Table |
| Output: | AH = 0 if successful                                                                   |

When function 87h is called, the interrupt routine temporarily switches the processor to protected mode. After the data transfer, the processor is switched back to real mode. This is why a Global Descriptor Table is needed.

**INT 15h Function 88h:  
Get Extended Memory Size**

Input: AH = 88h

Output: AX = amount of extended memory (in KB)

Program PGM20\_1 copies the data from the array SOURCE to extended memory at 110000h and then copies back the information from extended memory at 110000h to the array DESTINATION. Since the program does not do any I/O, the memory can be examined in DEBUG.

**Program Listing PGM20\_1.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM20_1: COPY EXTENDED MEMORY
.MODEL SMALL
.286
.STACK
.DATA
SOURCE DB 'HI, THERE!'
DESTINATION DB 10 DUP(0)
GDT D8 48 DUP(?) ;global table
SRC_ADDR DB ?,?,? ;24-bit source address
DST_ADDR DB ?,?,? ;24-bit dest. address
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,@DATA
 MOV DS,AX
 MOV ES,AX
;put 24-bit source address in SRC_ADDR
 MOV WORD PTR SRC_ADDR,DS ;get segment address
 SHL WORD PTR SRC_ADDR,4 ;shift seg no. 4 places
 MOV AX,DS ;get highest 4 bits
 SHR AH,4
 MOV SRC_ADDR+2,AH
 LEA SI,SOURCE ;source offset address
 ADD WORD PTR SRC_ADDR,SI ;add offset to segment
 ADC SRC_ADDR+2,0 ;take care of carry
;put 24-bit destination address in DST_ADDR
 MOV DST_ADDR,0 ;destination address is
 MOV DST_ADDR+1,0 ;110000h
 MOV DST_ADDR+2,11H
;set up registers
 LEA SI,SRC_ADDR ;source address
 LEA DX,DST_ADDR ;destination address
 MOV CX,5 ;number of words
 LEA DI,GDT ;global table
;transfer data-
 CALL COPY_EMEM ;copy to extended memory
;set up source address
 MOV SRC_ADDR,0 ;source address is
 MOV SRC_ADDR+1,0 ;110000h
```

```

 MOV SRC_ADDR+2,11H
;set up destination address
 MOV WORD PTR DST_ADDR,DS ;get segment address
 SHL WORD PTR DST_ADDR,4 ;shift seg no. 4 places
 MOV AX,DS ;get highest 4 bits
 SHR AH,4
 MOV DST_ADDR+2,AH
 LEA SI,DESTINATION ;destination offset addr
 ADD WORD PTR DST_ADDR,SI ;add offset to segment
 ADC DST_ADDR+2,0 ;take care of carry
;set up registers
 LEA SI,SRC_ADDR ;source address
 LEA DX,DST_ADDR ;destination address
 MOV CX,5 ;number of words
 LEA DI,GDT ;global table
 CALL COPY_EMEM ;copy to DESTINATION
 MOV AH,4CH ;DOS exit
 INT 21H
MAIN ENDP
;
COPY_EMEM PROC
;move block to and from extended memory
;input: ES:DI = address of 48 byte buffer to be used as GDT
; CX = number of words to transfer
; SI = source address (24 bits)
; DX = destination address (24 bits)
;
;initialize global descriptor table by setting up six
;descriptors
 PUSHA ;save registers
;-first descriptor is null, i.e. 8 bytes of 0
 MOV AX,0 ;
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
;-second descriptor is set to 0, i.e. 8 bytes of 0
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
 STOSW ;
;-third descriptor is source segment
 SHL CX,1 ;convert to number of bytes
 DEC CX
 MOV AX,CX ;size of segment, in bytes
 STOSW ;
 MOVSB ;source address, 3 bytes
 MOVSB
 MOVSB
 MOV AL,93H ;access rights byte
 STOSB
 MOV AX,0 ;
 STOSW
;-fourth descriptor is destination segment
 MOV AX,CX ;size of segment, in bytes
 STOSW ;
 MOV SI,DX ;destination address, 3 bytes

```

```

MOVSB
MOVSB
MOVSB
MOV AL, 93H ;access rights byte
STOSB
MOV AX, 0 ;
STOSW
;fifth descriptor is set to 0
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
;sixth descriptor is set to 0
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
STOSW ;
;restore registers
POPA
;transfer data
MOV SI,DI ;ES:SI points to GDT
MOV AH,87H
INT 15H
RET
COPY_EMEM ENDP
;
END MAIN

```

The copying is done by procedure COPY\_EMEM. It receives in CX the number of words to transfer, in SI the location of a 24-bit source address, and in DI the location of a 24-bit destination address. The source and destination buffers can be anywhere in the 16-MB physical address space of the 80286. COPY\_EMEM first sets up the global descriptor table which contains the source and destination buffers as program segments. It then uses INT 15h, function 87h to perform the transfer.

## 20.2 Protected-Mode Systems

Now that we have some idea of how the hardware functions in protected mode, let's turn to the software. At present, there is no standard multitasking operating system for the PC. We'll look at Windows 3 and OS/2. First, let's consider the process of multitasking.

### Multitasking

In a single-task environment like DOS, one program controls the CPU and releases control only when it chooses to. An exception to this scenario is that of an interrupt. In a multitasking environment, however, such as Windows and OS/2, the operating system determines which program has control and several programs can be running at the same time. Actually, a program is given a small amount of time to execute, and when the time is up, another program is allowed to execute. By rotating quickly among several programs, the computer gives the impression that all the programs are executing at the same time.

## 20.2.1

### Windows and OS/2

#### Windows 3

Windows 3 is the most popular **graphical user interface (gui)** on the PC. Each executing task is shown in a box on the screen, called a **window**. A window may be enlarged to occupy the entire screen or shrunk to a single graphics element called an **icon**. A Windows 3 application program may provide services, identified by a **menu**, to the user. To select an item in the menu, a user simply positions a screen pointer with a **mouse** at the item and clicks it.

Windows 3 can operate in one of three modes: *real mode*, *standard mode*, and *386 enhanced mode*. When Windows 3 runs on an 8086 machine or in the real address modes of the advanced processors, it operates in *real mode*. An application program must end before another one can be executed.

The standard mode of Windows 3 corresponds to the protected mode of the 80286. Windows 3 uses the multitasking features of the 80286 to support multiple Windows 3 applications. It can also execute a program written for DOS. However, to run such a program it must switch the processor back to real address mode. In this case, other applications cannot execute in the background. Windows 3 requires at least 192 KB of extended memory to run in this mode; otherwise it can only run in real mode.

The 386 enhanced mode of Windows corresponds to the protected mode of the 386. In the next section, we'll see that the 386 can execute multiple 8086 applications in protected mode. So, in 386 enhanced mode Windows 3 can perform multitasking on Windows 3 applications as well as DOS applications. A machine must have a 386 or 486 processor chip and at least 1 MB of extended memory to run Windows 3 in this mode.

Windows 3 is not a complete operating system, because it still needs DOS for many file operations. To run Windows 3, we must start in DOS and then execute the Windows 3 program.

#### OS/2

Unlike Windows 3, OS/2 is a complete operating system. OS/2 version 1 was designed for the protected mode of the 80286. It requires at least 2 MB of extended memory. OS/2 version 2 supports the 80386 protected mode.

#### Threads and Processes

Under OS/2, it is possible for a program to be doing several things simultaneously. For example, a program may display one file on the screen while at the same time it is copying another file to disk. The program itself is called a **process**, and each of the two tasks here is known as a **thread**. A thread is the basic unit of execution in OS/2, and we can see that it corresponds to a task supported by the hardware. A thread can create another thread by calling a system service routine.

To summarize, a process consists of one or more threads together with a number of system resources, such as open files and devices, that are shared by all the threads in the process. The concept of a process is similar to the notion of a program execution in DOS.

**20.2.2****Programming**

We only show some simple OS/2 programs as an illustration. More complex OS/2 programs and Windows 3 application programs are beyond the scope of this book.

One noticeable difference between DOS and OS/2 for the programmer is that, to do I/O and system calls in OS/2, a program must do a far call to a system procedure, instead of using the INT instruction. Parameters are to be pushed onto the stack before the call is made. This is done to optimize high-level language interface. The system procedures can be linked to the application program by including the appropriate system library. Actually, the library only contains a reference to the procedure and not the code. The system procedure is contained in a .DLL file and is linked when the program is loaded. Linking modules at loading time is called *dynamic linking* and is used by OS/2. OS/2 function calls are known as *application program interface (API)*.

**"Hello" Program**

As a first example, we show a program that prints out 'Hello!'. The program is shown in program listing PGM20\_2.ASM.

**Program Listing PGM20\_2.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM20_2: PRINT HELLO
.286
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK
;
.DATA
MSG DB 'HELLO!'
NUM_BYTES DW 0
;
.CODE
 EXTRN DOSWRITE:FAR, DOSExit:FAR
MAIN PROC
;put arguments for DosWrite on stack
 PUSH 1 ;file handle for screen
 PUSH DS ;address of message: segment
 PUSH OFFSET MSG ;offset
 PUSH 5 ;length of message
 PUSH DS ;addr of number of bytes written: seg
 PUSH OFFSET NUM_BYTES ;offset
 CALL DOSWRITE ;write to screen
;put arguments for DosExit on stack
 PUSH 1 ;action code 1 = end all threads
 PUSH 0 ;return code 0
 CALL DOSExit ;exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

Notice that we do not have to initialize DS. When a program is loaded, OS/2 sets DS to the data segment and it does not create a PSP for the program; furthermore, OS/2 supports only .EXE files.

We have used two API functions, DosWrite to write to the screen, and DosExit to terminate the program. DosWrite writes to a file; the arguments are file handle, address of buffer, length of buffer, and address of bytes-out variable. The file handle for the screen is 1. The bytes-out variable

receives the number of bytes written to the file; the value can be used to check for errors. The arguments must be pushed on the stack in the order given before calling DOSWrite.

DosExit can be used to terminate a thread or all threads in a process. The arguments are (1) an action code to terminate a thread or all threads, and (2) a return code that is passed back to the system that created the process. The arguments for normal exit consist of an action code 1 to end all threads and a return code 0.

In OS/2, the called procedures are responsible for clearing the stack of arguments sent to them when they return. Thus there are no POP instructions in our program.

The API functions DosWrite and DosExit are defined in the library file called DOSCALLS.LIB. As a matter of fact, all API functions used in this book are contained there. To link the program, we use the following command:

```
LINK PGM20_2,,,DOSCALLS.
```

### *Echo Program*

As a second program, we write a program to echo a string typed at the keyboard.

#### **Program Listing PGM20\_3.ASM**

```
TITLE PGM20_3: ECHO PROGRAM
.286
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK
;
.DATA
BUFFER DB 20 DUP(0)
NUM_CHARS DW 0
NUM_BYTES DW 0
;
.CODE
 EXTRN DOSREAD:FAR, DOSWRITE:FAR, DOSExit:FAR
MAIN PROC
;put arguments for DosRead on stack
 PUSH 0 ;file handle for keyboard
 PUSH DS ;address of buffer: segment
 PUSH OFFSET BUFFER;offset
 PUSH 20 ;length of buffer
 PUSH DS ;addr of no. of chars read: segment
 PUSH OFFSET NUM_CHARS ;offset
 CALL DOSREAD ;read from keyboard
;put arguments for DosWrite on stack.
 PUSH 1 ;file handle for screen
 PUSH DS ;address of message: segment
 PUSH OFFSET BUFFER;offset
 PUSH NUM_CHARS ;length of message
 PUSH DS ;addr of no. of bytes written: segment
 PUSH OFFSET NUM_BYTES;offset
 CALL DOSWRITE ;write to screen
;put arguments for DosExit on stack
 PUSH 1 ;action code 1=end all threads
 PUSH 0 ;return code 0
 CALL DOSExit ;exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN
```

We use the API function DosRead to read from the keyboard. DosRead inputs from a file and it takes the arguments: file handle, buffer address, buffer length, and address of chars\_read variable. The file handle for the keyboard is 0. DosRead reads in the keys until the buffer is filled or a carriage return is typed. The number of characters read is returned in the chars\_read variable.

We have treated the screen and keyboard as files for DosWrite and DosRead. There are also Vio (video) and Kbd (keyboard) API functions that can perform more I/O operations.

The preceding two programs are only meant as an introduction to OS/2 programming. A full treatment requires a separate book.

## 20.3

### **80386 and 80486 Microprocessors**

The 80386 and 80486 are both 32-bit microprocessors. As noted in Chapter 3, they are very similar, with the exception that the 80486 contains the floating-point processor circuits. In the following treatment, we'll concentrate on the 80386, because the 80486 can be treated like a fast 80386 with a floating-point processor.

The 80386 has both a real address mode and a protected mode of operation, just like the 80286.

#### 20.3.1

##### **Real Address Mode**

The 80386 has eight 32-bit general registers: EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, ESI, EDI, EBP, ESP. Each register contains a 16-bit 8086 counterpart; for example, AX is the lower 16 bits of EAX. There are six 16-bit segment registers: CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS, with DS, ES, FS, and GS being data segment registers. The 32-bit EFLAGS register contains in it the 16-bit FLAGS register, and the 32-bit EIP register contains the 16-bit IP register. There are also debug registers, control registers, and test registers. In addition, there are registers for protected mode memory management and protection.

In real address mode, the 80386 can execute all of the 80286 real address mode instructions. Hence, to the programmer the 80386 real address mode is similar to the 8086 with extensions to the instruction set and registers.

The 80386 uses 32-bit addresses; but in real address mode it generates an address like an 8086, so it can address at most 1 MB plus 64 KB just like an 80286.

#### 20.3.2

##### **Protected Mode**

The 80386 in protected mode can execute all 80286 instructions. When an 80286 protected mode operating system is used on an 80386, a segment descriptor contains a 24-bit base address so only 16 MB of physical memory are available. Actually, because there is no wraparound it can access 16 MB plus 64 KB.

The 80386 in protected mode allows a segment descriptor to contain a 32-bit address and the offset can also have 32 bits, giving a segment size of  $2^{32}$  or 4 gigabytes; this is also the size of the physical memory address space. A program can still use  $2^{14}$  segments, so the virtual memory space is  $2^{32} \times 2^{14}$ , which is  $2^{46}$  or 64 terabytes. This should be sufficient for any application program in the foreseeable future.

### ***Page-Oriented Virtual Memory***

It is possible to organize the virtual memory into pages. The operating system can set a bit in a control register to indicate the use of page tables. When this happens, the 32-bit address in the segment descriptor is treated as a page selector that selects one of the 1-K page tables from a page directory, and a page number in the selected page table and an offset in the page. The page directory contains 1 K tables, and each table contains 1 K pages, and each page is 4 KB. Hence, the total address possible is  $2^{32}$  or the entire 4 gigabytes of physical space. Each page is 4 KB of contiguous addresses of physical memory.

### ***Virtual 8086 Mode***

The 80386 supports execution of one or more 8086 programs in an 80386 protected mode environment. The processor executes in virtual 8086 (V86) mode when the VM (virtual machine) bit in the EFLAGS register is set. In V86 mode, the segment registers are used in the same fashion as in real address mode; that is, an address is computed by adding the offset to the segment number shifted four bits. This linear address can be mapped to any physical address by the use of paging.

#### **20.3.3**

#### ***Programming the 80386***

##### ***Sixteen-Bit Programming***

The real mode 80386 instructions with only 16-bit operands are essentially 80286 instructions. There are some new instructions, and they are given in Appendix F.

##### ***Thirty-Two-Bit Programming***

In 32-bit programming, both operand size and offset address are 32 bits. The machine opcodes for 32-bit 386 instructions are actually the same as those for 16-bit instructions. It turns out that the 80386 has two modes of operations, 16-bit mode and 32-bit mode. Since the instruction opcodes for 32-bit and 16-bit are the same, the operand type must depend on the current mode of the 386. Byte-size operands are not affected by the operating mode.

When the 80386 is in protected mode, it can operate in either 16-bit or 32-bit mode; the operating mode is identified in the segment descriptor in each task. However, it can only operate in 16-bit mode when it is in real address mode.

##### ***Mixing 16- and 32-Bit Instructions***

It is possible to mix 16-bit and 32-bit instructions in the same program. An operand-size override prefix (66h) can be placed before an instruction to override the default operand size. In 16-bit mode, the prefix switches the operand size to 32 bits, and in 32-bit mode the same prefix switches the operand size to 16 bits. One prefix must be used for each instruction.

There is also an address size override prefix (67h), which overrides the offset address size. It is used in a similar manner as the operand size prefix, and they both can be used in the same instruction.

We demonstrate by writing a program for DOS (16-bit real mode) using 32-bit operands. The program given in program listing PGM20\_4.ASM reads in two unsigned double-precision numbers and outputs their sum. The addition is performed by 32-bit registers.

**Program Listing PGM20\_4.ASM**

```

TITLE PGM20_4: 32-BIT OPERATIONS
;input two 32-bit numbers and output their sum
;uses 386 32-bit operations
.386
.MODEL SMALL
S SEGMENT USE16 STACK
 DB 256 DUP (?)
S ENDS
;
D SEG SEGMENT USE16
FIRST DD 0 ;stores first 32-bit number
D SEG ENDS
;
NEW_LINE MACRO
;go to next line
 MOV AH,2
 MOV DL,0AH
 INT 21H
 MOV DL,0DH
 INT 21H
ENDM

PROMPT MACRO
;output prompt
 MOV DL,'?'
 MOV AH,2
 INT 21H
ENDM

C SEG SEGMENT USE16
ASSUME CS:C SEG,DS:D SEG,SS:S SEG
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,D SEG
 MOV DS,AX..;initialize DS
;output prompt
 PROMPT
;clear EBX
 MOV EBX,0
;read character
L1: MOV AH,1
 INT 21H
;check for CR
 CMP AL,0DH
 JE NEXT;CR, get next number
;place digit in EBX
 AND AL,0FH;convert to binary
 IMUL EBX,10;;multiply EBX by 10
 MOVZX ECX,AL;;move AL to ECX and extend with 0's
 ADD EBX,ECX;;add digit
;repeat
 JMP L1
;save first number
NEXT: MOV FIRST,EBX
;next line

```

```

 NEW_LINE
;output prompt
 PROMPT
;clear EBX
 MOV EBX,0
;read character
L2: MOV AH,1
 INT 21H
;check for CR
 CMP AL,0DH
 JE SUMUP ;CR, sum up
;place digit in EBX
 AND AL,0FH
 IMUL EBX,10
 MOVZX ECX,AL
 ADD EBX,ECX ;convert to binary
;multiply EBX by 10
;move AL to EBX and extend with '0's
;add digit
;repeat
 JMP L2
;sum up
SUMUP:ADD EBX,FIRST ;EBX has sum
;convert to decimal
 MOV EAX,EBX
 MOV EBX,10
 MOV CX,0 ;initialize counter
L3: MOV EDX,0
 DIV EBX
 PUSH DX ;DX is remainder, EAX is quotient
 INC CX ;increment count
 CMP EAX,0
 JG L3 ;done?
 JG L3 ;no, repeat
;next line
 NEW_LINE
 MOV AH,2 ;output function
;output
L4: POP DX ;get digit
 OR DL,30H
 INT 21H
 LOOP L4 ;convert to ASCII
;output
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21H ;return
 TO DOS
MAIN ENDP
C_SEG ENDS
END MAIN

```

We have used an 80386 instruction **MOVZX** which moves a source operand into a bigger size register and zero extends the leading bits. To assemble 386 instructions, we need to use the **.386** directive. However, when the **.386** directive is used, the assembler assumes that the operating mode is 32-bit mode. When we are running programs under the real address mode of the 386, we have to specify a default mode of 16 bits. This can only be done with the full segment directives. A segment can be specified with a **use** type. For example, to specify a 16-bit use type we wrote **D\_SEG SEGMENT** **USE16** in the program. The use type, **USE16** specifies both operand size and offset address size are 16 bits; and all our segments have the use type **USE16**.

### Summary

- The 80286 can operate in either real address mode or protected mode.
- In real address mode, the 80286 operates like an 8086.
- The 80286 uses 24-bit addresses, allowing it a total memory space of 16 MB. However, in real address mode, it can only access 1 MB.
- In protected mode, the 80286 can use 1 gigabytes (GB) of virtual memory.
- Windows 3 has three modes of operations: real mode, standard mode, and 386 enhanced mode.
- OS/2 version 1 supports the 80286 protected mode and version 2 supports the 80386 protected mode.
- System services OS/2 are coded as far calls.
- The 80486 is like an 80386 with a floating-point unit.
- The 80386/80486 operates as an 80286 in real address mode.
- In protected mode, the 80386/80486 supports paging and a virtual 8086 mode. It can also execute all 80286 instructions.

---

### Glossary

|                                               |                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dynamic linking</b>                        | Linking modules at the time of loading                                                                                               |
| <b>extended instruction set</b>               | Set of new instructions first used by the 80186 and 80188 processors, can also be executed by the 80286, 80386, and 80486 processors |
| <b>extended memory</b>                        | Memory above 1 MB                                                                                                                    |
| <b>global descriptor table</b>                | A segment descriptor table that contains information about the segments that can be accessed by all tasks                            |
| <b>graphical user interface, gui</b>          | A user interface that uses pointers to commands, and special graphics symbols                                                        |
| <b>icon</b>                                   | A graphical element representing a command or program                                                                                |
| <b>local descriptor table register (LDTR)</b> | A register that holds the address of a local descriptor table                                                                        |
| <b>menu</b>                                   | A set of command selections displayed in a window                                                                                    |
| <b>mouse</b>                                  | A pointing device used to control cursor position on a display screen                                                                |
| <b>multitasking</b>                           | A technique that allows more than one program (task) to run concurrently                                                             |
| <b>privilege level</b>                        | A measure of a program's ability to execute special commands                                                                         |
| <b>process</b>                                | A program execution                                                                                                                  |
| <b>protected (address) mode</b>               | A mode of operation by the advanced processors that protects the memory used by                                                      |

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>real (address) mode</b>      | one program from other concurrent programs                                                                                                      |
| <b>segment descriptor</b>       | The mode of operation in which an address contained in an instruction corresponds to a physical address                                         |
| <b>segment descriptor table</b> | An entry in a descriptor table that describes a program segment                                                                                 |
| <b>segment selector</b>         | A table that contains segment descriptors, there are two kinds of segment descriptor tables, global descriptor table and local descriptor table |
| <b>task</b>                     | The value of a segment register when the processor is running under protected mode, it identifies a segment in a descriptor table               |
| <b>thread</b>                   | A program unit with its own segments                                                                                                            |
| <b>virtual address</b>          | A subtask of a process                                                                                                                          |
| <b>virtual memory</b>           | An address contained in an instruction that does not correspond to any particular physical address                                              |
| <b>window</b>                   | Disk memory used by the operating system to store segments of a task that are not needed currently                                              |
|                                 | A rectangular area on the screen                                                                                                                |

---

### New Instructions

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| BOUND | INSW  | OUTSB |
| ENTER | LEAVE | OUTSW |
| INS   | MOVZX | POPA  |
| INSB  | OUTS  | PUSHA |

---

### New Pseudo-ops

.286                            .386

---

### Exercises

1. Write a procedure for OS/2 that will input a string, and then echoes the string ten times on 10 different lines.
2. Use 80386 instructions to multiply two 32-bit numbers.
3. Use the 386 instructions given in Appendix F to write a procedure that outputs the position of the leftmost set bit in the register BX.

### Programming Exercises

4. Modify program PGM20\_4.ASM so that it will output the sum of two signed double-precision numbers.

## **Part Three**

# ***Appendices***

# A

## **IBM Display Codes**

The IBM PC uses an extended set of ASCII characters for its screen display. Table A.1 shows the ASCII characters. The control characters BS (backspace), HT (tab), CR (carriage return), ESC (escape), SP (space) correspond to the keys Backspace, Tab, Enter, Esc, and space bar; LF (line feed) advances the cursor to the next line, BEL (bell) sounds the beeper, and FF (form feed) advances the printer to the next page.

Table A.2 shows the extended set of 256 display characters. When a display code is written to the active page of the display memory, the corresponding character shows up on the screen. To write to the display memory, we can use INT 10h functions 9h, 0Ah, 0Eh, and 13h. The functions 9h and 0Ah write all values to the display memory. The functions 0Eh and 13h recognize the control character codes 07h (bell), 08h (backspace), 0Ah (line feed), and 0Dh (carriage return) and perform the control functions instead of writing these codes to the display memory.

**Table A.1**  
**ASCII Code**

| DEC | HEX | CHAR  | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR |
|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|
| 0   | 00  |       | 32  | 20  | (SP) | 64  | 40  | Ø    | 96  | 60  | '    |
| 1   | 01  |       | 33  | 21  | !    | 65  | 41  | A    | 97  | 61  | a    |
| 2   | 02  |       | 34  | 22  | "    | 66  | 42  | B    | 98  | 62  | b    |
| 3   | 03  |       | 35  | 23  | #    | 67  | 43  | C    | 99  | 63  | c    |
| 4   | 04  |       | 36  | 24  | \$   | 68  | 44  | D    | 100 | 64  | d    |
| 5   | 05  |       | 37  | 25  | %    | 69  | 45  | E    | 101 | 65  | e    |
| 6   | 06  |       | 38  | 26  | &    | 70  | 46  | F    | 102 | 66  | f    |
| 7   | 07  | (BEL) | 39  | 27  | '    | 71  | 47  | G    | 103 | 67  | g    |
| 8   | 08  | (BS)  | 40  | 28  | (    | 72  | 48  | H    | 104 | 68  | h    |
| 9   | 09  | (HT)  | 41  | 29  | )    | 73  | 49  | I    | 105 | 69  | i    |
| 10  | 0A  | (LF)  | 42  | 2A  | *    | 74  | 4A  | J    | 106 | 6A  | j    |
| 11  | 0B  |       | 43  | 2B  | +    | 75  | 4B  | K    | 107 | 6B  | k    |
| 12  | 0C  | (FF)  | 44  | 2C  | ,    | 76  | 4C  | L    | 108 | 6C  | l    |
| 13  | 0D  | (CR)  | 45  | 2D  | -    | 77  | 4D  | M    | 109 | 6D  | m    |
| 14  | 0E  |       | 46  | 2E  | .    | 78  | 4E  | N    | 110 | 6E  | n    |
| 15  | 0F  |       | 47  | 2F  | /    | 79  | 4F  | O    | 111 | 6F  | o    |
| 16  | 10  |       | 48  | 30  | 0    | 80  | 50  | P    | 112 | 70  | p    |
| 17  | 11  |       | 49  | 31  | 1    | 81  | 51  | Q    | 113 | 71  | q    |
| 18  | 12  |       | 50  | 32  | 2    | 82  | 52  | R    | 114 | 72  | r    |
| 19  | 13  |       | 51  | 33  | 3    | 83  | 53  | S    | 115 | 73  | s    |
| 20  | 14  |       | 52  | 34  | 4    | 84  | 54  | T    | 116 | 74  | t    |
| 21  | 15  |       | 53  | 35  | 5    | 85  | 55  | U    | 117 | 75  | u    |
| 22  | 16  |       | 54  | 36  | 6    | 86  | 56  | V    | 118 | 76  | v    |
| 23  | 17  |       | 55  | 37  | 7    | 87  | 57  | W    | 119 | 77  | w    |
| 24  | 18  |       | 56  | 38  | 8    | 88  | 58  | X    | 120 | 78  | x    |
| 25  | 19  |       | 57  | 39  | 9    | 89  | 59  | Y    | 121 | 79  | y    |
| 26  | 1A  |       | 58  | 3A  | :    | 90  | 5A  | Z    | 122 | 7A  | z    |
| 27  | 1B  | (ESC) | 59  | 3B  | ;    | 91  | 5B  | [    | 123 | 7B  | {    |
| 28  | 1C  |       | 60  | 3C  | <    | 92  | 5C  | \    | 124 | 7C  |      |
| 29  | 1D  |       | 61  | 3D  | =    | 93  | 5D  | ]    | 125 | 7D  | }    |
| 30  | 1E  |       | 62  | 3E  | >    | 94  | 5E  | ^    | 126 | 7E  | -    |
| 31  | 1F  |       | 63  | 3F  | ?    | 95  | 5F  | -    | 127 | 7F  |      |

Blank spaces indicate control characters that are not used on the IBM PC.

**Table A.2**  
**IBM Extended Character Set**

| DEC | HEX | CHAR  | DEC | HEX | CHAR            | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR |
|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----------------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|
| 000 | 00  | BLANK | 026 | 1A  | →               | 052 | 34  | 4    | 078 | 4E  | N    | 104 | 68  | h    |
| 001 | 01  | ☺     | 027 | 1B  | ←               | 053 | 35  | 5    | 079 | 4F  | O    | 105 | 69  | i    |
| 002 | 02  | ●     | 028 | 1C  | ↔               | 054 | 36  | 6    | 080 | 50  | P    | 106 | 6A  | j    |
| 003 | 03  | ♥     | 029 | 1D  | ↔               | 055 | 37  | 7    | 081 | 51  | Q    | 107 | 6B  | k    |
| 004 | 04  | ♦     | 030 | 1E  | ▲               | 056 | 38  | 8    | 082 | 52  | R    | 108 | 6C  | l    |
| 005 | 05  | ♣     | 031 | 1F  | ▼               | 057 | 39  | 9    | 083 | 53  | S    | 109 | 6D  | m    |
| 006 | 06  | ♠     | 032 | 20  | (SPACE)<br>(SP) | 058 | 3A  | :    | 084 | 54  | T    | 110 | 6E  | n    |
| 007 | 07  | •     | 033 | 21  | !               | 059 | 3B  | ;    | 085 | 55  | U    | 111 | 6F  | o    |
| 008 | 08  | ■     | 034 | 22  | -               | 060 | 3C  | <    | 086 | 56  | V    | 112 | 70  | p    |
| 009 | 09  | ○     | 035 | 23  | #               | 061 | 3D  | =    | 087 | 57  | W    | 113 | 71  | q    |
| 010 | 0A  | ■     | 036 | 24  | \$              | 062 | 3E  | >    | 088 | 58  | X    | 114 | 72  | r    |
| 011 | 0B  | δ     | 037 | 25  | %               | 063 | 3F  | ?    | 089 | 59  | Y    | 115 | 73  | s    |
| 012 | 0C  | ♀     | 038 | 26  | &               | 064 | 40  | @    | 090 | 5A  | Z    | 116 | 74  | t    |
| 013 | 0D  | ♪     | 039 | 27  | '               | 065 | 41  | A    | 091 | 5B  | l    | 117 | 75  | u    |
| 014 | 0E  | ♪     | 040 | 28  | (               | 066 | 42  | B    | 092 | 5C  | \    | 118 | 76  | v    |
| 015 | 0F  | ☼     | 041 | 29  | )               | 067 | 43  | C    | 093 | 5D  | ]    | 119 | 77  | w    |
| 016 | 10  | ▶     | 042 | 2A  | *               | 068 | 44  | D    | 094 | 5E  | ^    | 120 | 78  | x    |
| 017 | 11  | ◀     | 043 | 2B  | +               | 069 | 45  | E    | 095 | 5F  | —    | 121 | 79  | y    |
| 018 | 12  | ↓     | 044 | 2C  | ,               | 070 | 46  | F    | 096 | 60  | '    | 122 | 7A  | z    |
| 019 | 13  | !!    | 045 | 2D  | —               | 071 | 47  | G    | 097 | 61  | a    | 123 | 7B  | {    |
| 020 | 14  | !`    | 046 | 2E  | ~               | 072 | 48  | H    | 098 | 62  | b    | 124 | 7C  |      |
| 021 | 15  | §     | 047 | 2F  | /               | 073 | 49  | I    | 099 | 63  | c    | 125 | 7D  | )    |
| 022 | 16  | ---   | 048 | 30  | 0               | 074 | 4A  | J    | 100 | 64  | d    | 126 | 7E  | -    |
| 023 | 17  | ↑     | 049 | 31  | —               | 075 | 4B  | K    | 101 | 65  | e    | 127 | 7F  | △    |
| 024 | 18  | ↑     | 050 | 32  | 2               | 076 | 4C  | L    | 102 | 66  | f    | 128 | 80  | ¢    |
| 025 | 19  | ↓     | 051 | 33  | 3               | 077 | 4D  | M    | 103 | 67  | g    | 129 | 81  | ü    |

**Table A.2**  
**IBM Extended Character Set**

| DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR   | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR | DEC | HEX | CHAR            |
|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|--------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----------------|
| 130 | 82  | €    | 156 | 9C  | £      | 182 | B6  |      | 208 | D0  | ▀    | 234 | E4  | Ω               |
| 131 | 83  | à    | 157 | 9D  | ♪      | 183 | B7  |      | 209 | D1  | █    | 235 | E5  | δ               |
| 132 | 84  | ã    | 158 | 9E  | Pt     | 184 | B8  |      | 210 | D2  | █    | 236 | E6  | ∞               |
| 133 | 85  | à    | 159 | 9F  | f      | 185 | B9  |      | 211 | D3  | ▀▀   | 237 | E7  | Ø               |
| 134 | 86  | å    | 160 | A0  | å      | 186 | BA  |      | 212 | D4  | ▀▀   | 238 | E8  | ε               |
| 135 | 87  | ç    | 161 | A1  | ı      | 187 | BB  |      | 213 | D5  | ▀▀   | 239 | E9  | ∩               |
| 136 | 88  | è    | 162 | A2  | ó      | 188 | BC  |      | 214 | D6  | ▀▀   | 240 | F0  | ■               |
| 137 | 89  | ë    | 163 | A3  | ú      | 189 | BD  |      | 215 | D7  | +†   | 241 | F1  | ±               |
| 138 | 8A  | è    | 164 | A4  | ñ      | 190 | BE  |      | 216 | D8  | +†   | 242 | F2  | ≥               |
| 139 | 8B  | í    | 165 | A5  | ñ      | 191 | BF  |      | 217 | D9  | —    | 243 | F3  | ≤               |
| 140 | 8C  | î    | 166 | A6  | ²      | 192 | CO  | └    | 218 | DA  | Γ    | 244 | F4  | /               |
| 141 | 8D  | í    | 167 | A7  | º      | 193 | C1  | ⊥    | 219 | DB  | □    | 245 | F5  | J               |
| 142 | 8E  | Ä    | 168 | A8  | ℓ      | 194 | C2  | █    | 220 | DC  | ▬▬   | 246 | F6  | +               |
| 143 | 8F  | Å    | 169 | A9  | Γ      | 195 | C3  | ─    | 221 | DD  | ▀▀   | 247 | F7  | -               |
| 144 | 90  | É    | 170 | AA  | ¬      | 196 | C4  | —    | 222 | DE  | □    | 248 | F8  | •               |
| 145 | 91  | æ    | 171 | AB  | ½      | 197 | C5  | +    | 223 | DF  | ▬▬   | 249 | F9  | •               |
| 146 | 92  | Æ    | 172 | AC  | ¼      | 198 | C6  |      | 224 | E0  | Q    | 250 | FA  | •               |
| 147 | 93  | ö    | 173 | AD  | ı      | 199 | C7  |      | 225 | E1  | β    | 251 | FB  | √               |
| 148 | 94  | ö    | 174 | AE  | *      | 200 | C8  | ▀▀   | 226 | E2  | Γ    | 252 | FC  | n               |
| 149 | 95  | ö    | 175 | AF  | *      | 201 | C9  | ▀▀   | 227 | E3  | π    | 253 | FD  | z               |
| 150 | 96  | ú    | 176 | B0  |        | 202 | CA  | ▀▀   | 228 | E4  | Σ    | 254 | FE  | □               |
| 151 | 97  | ú    | 177 | B1  | ██████ | 203 | CB  | ▀▀   | 229 | E5  | σ    | 255 | FF  | (SPACE)<br>(SP) |
| 152 | 98  | ÿ    | 178 | B2  | ██████ | 204 | CC  |      | 230 | E6  | μ    |     |     |                 |
| 153 | 99  | ö    | 179 | B3  |        | 205 | CD  |      | 231 | E7  | τ    |     |     |                 |
| 154 | 9A  | ü    | 180 | B4  | —      | 206 | CE  |      | 232 | E8  | ◊    |     |     |                 |
| 155 | 9B  | €    | 181 | B5  | =      | 207 | CF  | —    | 233 | E9  | ⊖    |     |     |                 |

SP means space.

# B

## DOS Commands

In this appendix, we give some common DOS commands.

Note: in the following, two special characters can be used within a file name or extension. The ? character used in any position indicates that any character can occupy that position in the file name or extension; The \* character used in any position indicates that any character can occupy that position and *all remaining positions* in the file name or extension.

### BACKUP

Creates a backup of disk files.

Example: BACKUP C: A:

Copies the files in the current C directory to a backup in disk A.

### CLS (Clear Screen)

Clears the display screen and moves the cursor to the upper left corner.

Example: CLS

### COPY

Copies files from one disk and directory to another.

Example 1: COPY A:FILE1.TXT B:

Copies the file FILE1.TXT from drive A to drive B. The current drive need not be specified in the command. It is also possible to give the copy a different name.

Example 2: COPY FILE1.TXT B:FILE2.TXT

Copies FILE1.TXT from the disk in the current drive to FILE2.TXT on the disk in drive B.

Example 3: COPY A:.\* B:

Copies all files from drive A to drive B.

**DATE**

Changes the date known to the system. The date is recorded as a directory entry on any files you create. The format is *mm-dd-yy*.

*Example:* DATE 07-14-90

**DIR (Directory)**

Lists the directory entries.

*Example 1:* DIR

Lists all directory entries in the current drive. Each entry has a file name, size, and date. The entries in a different directory or different drive can also be listed by specifying the name of the drive or directory.

*Example 2:* DIR C\*.\*

Lists all directory entries of files that begin with C and have any extension.

**ERASE (or DEL)**

Erases a file.

*Example 1:* ERASE FILE1.TXT

Erases the file called FILE1.TXT from the current drive and directory.

*Example 2:* ERASE \*.OBJ

Erases all files with an .OBJ extension in the current drive.

**FORMAT**

Initializes a disk.

*Example:* FORMAT A:

Formats the disk in drive A. *Caution:* formatting a disk destroys any previous contents of the disk. A new disk must be formatted before it can be used.

**PRINT**

Prints files on the printer.

*Example:* PRINT A:MYFILE.TXT

Prints the file called MYFILE.TXT in drive A.

**RENAME (or REN)**

Changes the name of a file.

*Example:* REN FILE1.TXT MYFILE.TXT

Renames the file FILE1.TXT to MYFILE.TXT.

**RESTORE**

Restores files from a backup disk.

*Example:* RESTORE A: C:

Copies the backup files from disk A to disk C.

**TIME**

Changes the time known to the system. The time is recorded as a directory entry on any files you create. The format is *hh:mm:ss*. The range of hours is 0-23.

*Example:* TIME 16:47:00

**TYPE**

Displays the contents of a file on the display screen.

*Example:* TYPE MYFILE.TXT

Displays the file called MYFILE.TXT.

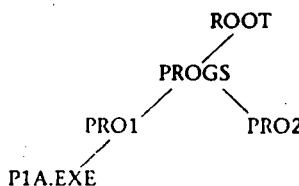
**B.1****Tree-Structured Directories**

DOS versions 2.1 and later provide the capability of placing related disk files in their own directories.

When a disk is formatted, a single directory called the *root directory* is created. It can hold up to 112 files for a double-sided, double-density 5 1/4 inch floppy disk.

The root directory can contain the names of other directories called *subdirectories*. These subdirectories are treated just like ordinary files; they have names of 1-8 characters and an optional one- to three-character extension.

To illustrate the following commands, we'll use the following tree-structured directory as an example.



Here, PROGS is a subdirectory of the root directory. PRO1 and PRO2 are subdirectories of PROGS. P1A.EXE is a file in PRO1.

A *path* to a file consists of a sequence of subdirectory names separated by backslashes (\), and ending with the file name. If the sequence begins with a \; then the path begins at the ROOT DIRECTORY If not, it begins with the current directory.

**CHDIR (or CD)**

Changes the current directory.

*Example 1:* CD\

Makes the root directory the current directory of the logged drive.

*Example 2:* CD\PROGS

Makes PROGS the current directory of the logged drive.

*Example 3:* CD PRO1

After example 2, makes PRO1 the current directory.

*Example 4:* CD\PRO1

DOS would reply "invalid directory" because PRO1 is not a subdirectory of the root directory.

*Example 5:* CD

This command causes the path to the current directory to be displayed so after example 3, if C is the logged drive, DOS would respond with C:\PROGS\PRO1.

**MKDIR (or MD)**

Creates a subdirectory on the specified disk.

As examples, we'll create the preceding tree structure on the disk in drive C:

```
C>CD\
C>MD\PROGS
C>MD\PROGS\PRO1
C>MD\PROGS\PRO2
```

**RMDIR (or RD)**

Removes a subdirectory from a disk. The subdirectory must be empty. The last directory in a specified path is the one removed.

As examples, we'll erase file P1A.EXE and remove all the preceding directories from the disk in drive C:

```
C>ERASE\PROGS\PRO1\P1A.EXE
C>RM\PROGS\PRO1
C>RM\PROGS\PRO2
C>RM\PROGS
```



# ***BIOS and DOS Interrupts***

---

## **C.1 *Introduction***

In this appendix, we show some of the common BIOS and DOS interrupt calls. We begin with interrupt 10h; interrupts 0 to Fh are not normally used by application programs, their names are given in Table C.1.

---

## **C.2 *BIOS Interrupts***

### ***Interrupt 10: Video***

#### **Function 0h:**

##### **Select Display Mode**

Selects video display mode.

Input: AH = 0h

AL = video mode

Output: none

#### **Function 1h:**

##### **Change Cursor Size**

Selects the start and ending lines for the cursor.

Input: AH = 1h

CH (bits 0-4) = starting line for cursor

CL (bits 0-4) = ending line for cursor

Output: none

**Table C.1 Interrupts 0 to 0Fh**

| <b>Interrupt Type</b> | <b>Usage</b>                 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 0h                    | Divide by zero               |
| 1h                    | Single step                  |
| 2h                    | NMI                          |
| 3h                    | Breakpoint                   |
| 4h                    | Overflow                     |
| 5h                    | PrintScreen                  |
| 6h                    | Reserved                     |
| 7h                    | Reserved                     |
| 8h                    | Timer tick                   |
| 9h                    | Keyboard                     |
| 0Ah                   | Reserved                     |
| 0Bh                   | Serial communications (COM2) |
| 0Ch                   | Serial communications (COM1) |
| 0Dh                   | Fixed disk                   |
| 0Eh                   | Floppy disk                  |
| 0Fh                   | Parallel printer             |

**Function 2h:****Move Cursor**

Positions the cursor.

Input:      AH = 2h  
               BH = page  
               DH = row  
               DL = column  
 Output:     none

**Function 3h:****Get Cursor Position and Size**

Obtains the current position and size of the cursor.

Input:      AH = 3h  
               BH = page  
 Output:     CH = starting line for cursor  
               CL = ending line for cursor  
               DH = row  
               DL = column

**Function 5h:****Select Active Display Page**

Input:      AH = 5h  
               AL = page  
               DH = row  
               DL = column  
 Output:     none

**Function 6h:****Scroll Window Up**

Scrolls the entire screen or a window up by a specified number of lines.

Input:      AH = 6h  
               AL = number of lines to scroll  
                   (if zero, entire window is blanked)  
               BH = attribute for blanked lines

Output: none  
 CH,CL = row, column of upper left corner of windows  
 DH,DL = row, column of lower right corner of windows

**Function 7h:  
Scroll Window Down**

Scrolls the entire screen or a window down by a specified number of lines

Input: AH = 7h  
 AL = number of lines to scroll  
 (if zero, entire window is blanked)  
 BH = attribute for blanked lines  
 CH,CL = row, column of upper left corner of window  
 DH,DL = row, column of lower right corner of window

Output: none

**Function 8h:  
Read Character and Attribute at Cursor**

Obtains the ASCII character and its attribute at the cursor position.

Input: AH = 8h  
 BH = page  
 Output: AH = attribute  
 AL = character

**Function 9h:  
Write Character and Attribute at Cursor**

Writes an ASCII character and its attribute at the cursor position.

Input: AH = 9h  
 AL = character  
 BH = page  
 BL = attribute (text mode) or color (graphics mode)  
 CX = count of characters to write

Output: none

**Function 0Ah:  
Write Character at Cursor**

Writes an ASCII character at the cursor position. The character receives the attribute of the previous character at that position.

Input: AH = 0Ah  
 AL = character  
 BH = page  
 CX = count of characters to write

Output: none

**Function 0Bh:  
Set Palette, Background, or Border**

Selects a palette, background color, or border color.

Input: To select the background color and border color  
 AH = 0Bh  
 BH = 0  
 BL = color

To select palette (320 x 200 four-color mode)

AH = 0Bh  
 BH = 1  
 BL = palette

Output: none

**Function 0Ch:**  
**Write Graphics Pixel**

Input:      AH = 0Ch  
               AL = pixel value  
               BH = page  
               CX = column  
               DX = row  
 Output:     none

**Function 0Dh:**  
**Read Graphics Pixel**

Obtains a pixel value.

Input:      AH = 0Dh  
               BH = page  
               CX = column  
               DX = row  
 Output:     AL = pixel value

**Function 0Eh:**

**Write Character in Teletype Mode**

Writes an ASCII character at the cursor position, then increments cursor position.

Input:      AH = 0Eh  
               AL = character  
               BH = page  
               BL = color (graphics mode)

Output:     none

Note: the attribute of the character cannot be specified.

**Function 0Fh:**  
**Get Video Mode**

Obtains current display mode.

Input:      AH = 0Fh  
 Output:     AH = number of character columns  
               AL = display mode  
               BH = active display page

**Function 10h, Subfunction 10h:**  
**Set Color Register**

Sets individual VGA color register.

Input:      AH = 10h  
               AL = 10h  
               BX = color register  
               CH = green value  
               CL = blue value  
               DH = red value  
 Output:     none

**Function 10h, Subfunction 12h:**  
**Set Block of Color Registers**

Sets a group of VGA color registers.

Input:      AH = 10h  
               AL = 12h  
               BX = firstcolor register  
               CX = number of color registers  
               ES:DX = segment:offset of color table  
 Output:     none

**Note:** the table consists of a group of three-byte entries corresponding to red, green, and blue values for each color register.

#### **Function 10h, Subfunction 15h:**

##### **Get Color Register**

Obtains the red, green, and blue values of a VGA color register.

**Input:**      AH = 10h  
                   AL = 15h  
                   BX = color register  
**Output:**     CH = green value  
                   CL = blue value  
                   DH = red value

#### **Function 10h, Subfunction 17h:**

##### **Get Block of Color Registers**

Obtains the red, green, and blue values of a group of VGA color registers.

**Input:**      AH = 10h  
                   AL = 17h  
                   BX = first color register  
                   CX = number of color registers  
                   ES:DX = segment:offset of buffer to receive color list  
**Output:**     ES:DX = segment:offset of buffer  

**Note:** the color list consists of a group of three-byte entries corresponding to red, green, and blue values for each color register.

#### **Interrupt 11h: Get Equipment Configuration**

##### **Obtains the equipment list code word.**

**Input:**      none  
**Output:**     AX = equipment list code word  
                   (bits 14–15 = number of printers installed,  
                   13 = internal modem,  
                   12 = game adapter,  
                   9–11 = number of serial ports,  
                   8 is reserved;  
                   6–7 = number of floppy disk drives,  
                   4–5 = initial video mode,  
                   2–3 = system board RAM size, original PC  
                   2 used by PS/2;  
                   1 = math coprocessor;  
                   0 = floppy disk installed)

#### **Interrupt 12h: Get Conventional Memory Size**

##### **Returns the amount of conventional memory.**

**Input:**      none  
**Output:**     AX = memory size (in KB)

#### **Interrupt 13h: Disk I/O**

##### **Function 2h:**

##### **Read Sector**

Reads one or more sectors.

**Input:**      AH = 2h  
                   CX = number of sectors

**CH** = cylinder  
**CL** = sector  
**DH** = head  
**DL** = drive (0-7Fh = floppy disk, 80h-FFh = fixed disk)  
**ES:BX** = segment:offset of buffer

**Output:**

If function successful

**CF** = clear

**AH** = 0

**AL** = number of sectors transferred

If function unsuccessful

**CF** = set

**AH** = error status

**Function 3h:****Write Sector**

Writes one or more sectors.

**Input:** **AH** = 3h

**AL** = number of sectors

**BX** = firstcolor register

**CH** = cylinder

**CL** = sector

**DH** = head

**DL** = drive (0-7Fh = floppy disk, 80h-FFh = fixed disk)

**ES:BX** = segment:offset of buffer

**Output:** If function successful

**CF** = clear

**AH** = 0

**AL** = number of sectors transferred

If function unsuccessful

**CF** = set

**AH** = error status

**Interrupt 15h; Cassette I/O and Advanced Features for AT, PS/2****Function 87h:****Move Extended Memory Block**

Transfers data between conventional memory and extended memory.

**Input:** **AH** = 87h

**CX** = number of words to move

**ES:SI** = segment:offset of Global Descriptor Table

**Output:** If function successful

**CF** = clear

**AH** = 0

**AL** = number of sectors transferred

If function unsuccessful

**CF** = set

**AH** = error status

**Function 88h:****Get Extended Memory Size**

Obtains amount of extended memory

**Input:** **AH** = 88h

**Output:** **AX** = extended memory size (in KB)

**Interrupt 16h: Keyboard****Function 0h:****Read Character from Keyboard**

Input: AH = 0h

Output: AH = keyboard scan code

AL = ASCII character

**Function 2h:****Get Keyboard Flags**

Obtains key flags that describe the status of the function keys.

Input: AH = 2h

Output: AL = flags

**Bit      If Set**

|   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 7 | Insert on               |
| 6 | Caps Lock on            |
| 5 | Nurn Lock on            |
| 4 | Scroll Lock on          |
| 3 | Alt key is down         |
| 2 | Ctrl key is down        |
| 1 | left shift key is down  |
| 0 | right shift key is down |

**Function 10h:****Read Character from Enhanced Keyboard**

Input: AH = 0h

Output: AH = keyboard scan code

AL = ASCII character

*Note:* this function can be used to return scan codes for control keys such as F11 and F12.**Interrupt 17h: Printer****Function 0h:****Write Character to Printer**

Input: AH = 0

AL = character

DX = printer number

Output: AH = status

**Bit      If Set**

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 7 | printer not busy    |
| 6 | printer acknowledge |
| 5 | out of paper        |
| 4 | printer selected    |
| 3 | I/O error           |
| 2 | unused              |
| 1 | unused              |
| 0 | printer timed out   |

**C.3****DOS Interrupts****Interrupt 21h****Function 0h:****Program Terminate**

Terminates the execution of a program.

Input: AH = 0h

CS = segment of PSP

Output: none

**Function 1h:****Keyboard Input**

Waits for a character to be read at the standard input device (unless one is ready), then echoes the character to the standard output device and returns the ASCII code in AL.

Input: AH = 01h

Output: AL = character from the standard input device

**Function 2h:****Display Output**

Outputs the character in DL to the standard output device.

Input: AH = 02h

DL = character

Output: none

**Function 5h:****Printer Output**

Outputs the character in DL to the standard printer device.

Input: AH = 05h

DL = character

Output: none

**Function 09h:****Print String**

Outputs the characters in the print string to the standard output device.

Input: AH = 09h

DS:DX = pointer to the character string ending with '\$'

Output: none

**Function 2Ah:****Get Date**

Returns the day of the week, year, month and date.

Input: AH = 2ah

Output: AL = Day of the week (0=SUN, 6=SAT)

CX = Year (1980-2099)

DH = Month (1-12)

DL = Day (1-31)

**Function 2Bh:****Set Date**

Sets the date.

Input: AH = 2Bh

CX = year (1980-2099)

DH = month (1-12)

DL = day (1-31)

**Output:** AL = 00h, if the date is valid  
FFh, if the date is not valid

#### **Function 2Ch:**

##### **Get Time**

Returns the time: hours, minutes, seconds and hundredths of seconds.

**Input:** AH = 2Ch

**Output:** CH = hours (0-23)

CL = minutes (0-59)

DH = seconds (0-59)

DL = hundredths (0-99)

#### **Function 2Dh:**

##### **Set Time**

Sets the time.

**Input:** AH = 2Dh

CH = Hours (0-23)

DH = Seconds (0-59)

CL = Minutes (0-59)

DL = Hundredths (0-99)

**Output:** AL = 00h if the time is valid

FFh if the time is not valid

#### **Function 30h:**

##### **Get DOS Version Number**

Returns the DOS version number.

**Input:** AH = 30h

**Output:** BX = 0000H

CX = 0000H

AL = major version number

AH = minor version number

#### **Function 31h:**

##### **Terminate Process and Remain Resident**

Terminates the current process and attempts to set the initial allocation block to the memory size in paragraphs.

**Input:** AH = 31h

AL = return code

DX = memory size in paragraphs

**Output:** none

#### **Function 33h:**

##### **Ctrl-break Check**

Set or get the state of CRLAF (Ctrl-break Locking).

**Input:** AH = 33h

AL = 00h, to request current state

01h, to set the current state

DL = 00h, to set current state OFF

01h, to set current state ON

**Output:** DL = The current state (00h=OFF, 01h=ON)

#### **Function 35h:**

##### **Get Vector**

Obtains the address in an interrupt vector.

**Input:** AH = 35h

Output:      AL = interrupt number  
                 ES:BX = pointer to the interrupt handling routine.

**Function 36h:****Get Disk Free Space**

Returns the disk free space (available clusters, clusters/drive, bytes/sector).

Input:      AH = 36h  
                 DL = drive (0=default, 1=A)  
                 Output: BX = Available clusters  
                   DX = clusters/drive  
                   CX = bytes/sector  
                   AX = FFFFh if the drive in DL is invalid,  
                   otherwise the number of sectors per cluster

**Function 39h:****Create Subdirectory (MKDIR)**

Creates the specified directory.

Input:      AH = 39h  
                 DS:DX = pointer to an ASCII string  
                 Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set

**Function 3Ah:****Remove Subdirectory (RMDIR)**

Removes the specified directory.

Input:      AH = 3Ah  
                 DS:DX = pointer to an ASCII string  
                 Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set

**Function 3Bh:****Change the Current Directory (CHDIR)**

Changes the current directory to the specified directory.

Input:      AH = 3Bh  
                 DS:DX = pointer to an ASCII string  
                 Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set

**Function 3Ch:****Create a File (CREAT)**

Creates a new file or truncates an old file to zero length in preparation for writing.

Input:      AH = 3Ch  
                 DS:DX = pointer to an ASCII string  
                 CX = attribute of the file  
                 Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set  
                   16-bit handle if carry flag not set

**Function 3Dh:****Open a File**

Opens the specified file.

Input:      AH = 3Dh  
                 DS:DX = pointer to an ASCII path name  
                 AL = access Code  
                 Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set  
                   16-bit handle if carry flag not set

**Function 3Eh:****Close a File Handle**

Closes the specified file handle.

Input: AH = 3Eh

BX = file handle returned by open or create

Output: AX = error codes if carry flag is set

none if carry flag not set

**Function 3Fh:****Read from a File or Device**

Transfers the specified number of bytes from a file into a buffer location.

Input: AH = 3Fh

BX = file handle

DS:DX = buffer address

CX = number of bytes to be read

Output: AX = number of bytes read  
error codes if carry flag set

**Function 40h:****Write to a File or Device**

Transfers the specified number of bytes from a buffer into a specified file.

Input: AH = 40h

BX = file handle

DS:DX = address of the data to write

CX = number of bytes to be write

Output: AX = number of bytes written  
error codes if carry flag set

**Function 41h:****Delete a File from a Specified Directory (UNLINK)**

Removes a directory entry associated with a file name.

Input: AH = 41h

DS:DX = address of an ASCII string

Output: AX = error codes if carry flag set  
none if carry flag not set

**Function 42h:****Move File Read Write Pointer (LSEEK)**

Moves the read/write pointer according to the method specified.

Input: AH = 42h

CS:DX = distance (offset) to move in bytes

AL = method of moving (0,1,2)

BX = file handle

Output: AX = error codes if carry flag set

DX:AX = new pointer location if carry flag not set

**Function 47h:****Get Current Directory**

Places the full path name (starting from the root directory) of the current directory for the specified drive in the area pointed to by DS:SI.

Input: AH = 47h

DS:SI = pointer to a 64-byte-user memory area

DL = drive number (0=default, 1=A, etc.)

error codes if carry flag set

Output: DS:SI = filled out with full path name from the root if  
           carry is not set  
           AX = error codes if carry flag is set

**Function 48h:  
     Allocate Memory**

Allocates the requested number of paragraphs of memory.

Input:     AH = 48h  
           BX = number of paragraphs of memory requested

Output:    AX:0 = points to the allocated memory block  
           AX = error codes if carry flag set  
           BX = size of the largest block of memory available (in  
               paragraphs) if the allocation fails

**Function 49h:  
     Free Allocated Memory**

Frees the specified allocated memory.

Input:     AH = 49h  
           ES = segment of the block to be returned

Output:    AX = error codes if carry flag set  
           none if carry flag not set

**Function 4Ch:  
     Terminate a Process (EXIT)**

Terminates the current process and transfers control to the invoking process.

Input:     AH = 4Ch  
           AL = return code

Output:    none

***Interrupt 25h: Absolute Disk Read***

Input:     AL = drive number  
           CX = number of sectors to read  
           DX = beginning logical sector number  
           DS:BX = transfer address

Output:    If successful CF = 0  
           If unsuccessful CF = 1 and AX contains error code

***Interrupt 26h: Absolute Disk Write***

Input:     AL = drive number  
           CX = number of sectors to read  
           DX = beginning logical sector number  
           DS:BX = transfer address

Output:    If successful CF = 0  
           If unsuccessful CF = 1 and AX contains error code

***Interrupt 27h: Terminate but Stay Resident***

Input:     DX = offset of beginning of free space,  
           segment is with respect to PSP.

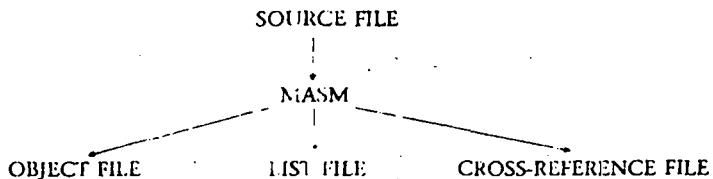
Output:    none

# **MASM and LINK Options**

---

## **D.1 MASM**

The MASM assembler translates an assembly language source file into a machine language object file. It generates three files, as shown:



The *object file* contains the machine language translation of the assembly language source code, plus other information needed to produce an executable file.

The *list file* is a text file that gives assembly language code and the corresponding machine code, a list of names used in the program, error messages, and other statistics. It is helpful in debugging.

The *cross-reference file* lists names used in the program and line numbers where they appear. It makes large programs easier to follow. As generated, it is not readable; the CREF utility program may be used to convert it to a legible form.

### MASM Command Line

For MASM version 5.0, the most general command line is

```
MASM options source_file,object_file,list_file,cross-
ref_file
```

MASM 4.0 has the same command line, except that the options appear last.

The default extension for the object file is .OBJ, for the listing file it is .LST, and for the cross-reference file it is .CRF.

For example, suppose MASM is on a disk in drive C, source file FIRST.ASM is on a disk in drive A, and C is the logged drive. To create object file FIRST.OBJ, listing file FIRST.LST, and cross-reference file FIRST.CRF on drive A, we could type

```
C>MASM A:FIRST.ASM,A:FIRST.OBJ,A:FIRST.LST,A:FIRST.CRF
```

A simpler way to get the same result is

```
C>MASM A:FIRST,A:,A:,A:
```

A semicolon instead of a comma on the MASM command line tells the assembler not to generate any more files. For example, if we type

```
C>MASM A:FIRST,A:;
```

Then MASM will generate only FIRST.OBJ. If we type

```
C>MASM A:FIRST,A:,A:;
```

Then we get FIRST.OBJ, FIRST.LST, but not FIRST.CRF.

It's also possible to let MASM prompt you for the files you want. For example, suppose we want .OBJ and .CRF files only.

```
C>MASM A:FIRST
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

Object filename [FIRST.OBJ]: A:<Enter>
Source listing [NUL.LST]: <Enter>
Cross-reference [NUL.CRF]: A:FIRST <Enter>

50140 + 234323 Bytes symbol space free
 0 Warning Errors
 0 Severe Errors
```

The first response just given means that we accept the name FIRST.OBJ for the object file. The second one means that we don't want a listing file (NUL means no file). The third one means we want a cross-reference file called FIRST.CRF.

### *Options*

The MASM options control the operations of the assembler and the format of the output files. Table D.1 gives a list of some commonly used ones. For a complete list, see the Microsoft Programmer's Guide.

Several options may be specified on a command line. For example,

```
C>MASM /D /W2 /Z /ZI FIRST;
```

**Table D.1 Some MASM Options**

| <b>Option</b> | <b>Action</b>                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /A            | Arrange source segments in alphabetical order.                                                                                                                    |
| /C            | Create a cross-reference file.                                                                                                                                    |
| /D            | Create pass 1 listing (see below).                                                                                                                                |
| /ML           | Make names case sensitive.                                                                                                                                        |
| /R            | Accept 8087 floating-point instructions.                                                                                                                          |
| /S            | Leave source segments in original order.                                                                                                                          |
| /W(0 1 2)     | Set error level display: (default = 1):<br>0 = illegal statements<br>1 = ambiguous or questionable statements<br>2 = statements that may produce inefficient code |
| /Z            | Display the lines containing errors.                                                                                                                              |
| /ZI           | Write symbolic information to the object file (use with CODEVIEW).                                                                                                |

### A MASM Demonstration

To show what the MASM output files look like, the following program SWAP.ASM will be assembled. It swaps the content of two memory words.

#### Program Listing PGMD\_1.ASM

```
TITLE PGMD_1: SWAP WORDS
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100H
.DATA
WORD1 DW 10
WORD2 DW 20
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS, AX
 MOV AX, WORD1
 XCHG AX, WORD2
 MOV WORD1, AX
 MOV AH, 4CH
 INT 21H
ENDP
END MAIN
```

```
C>MASM A:PGMD_1.A:,A:,A:

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

47358 + 390893 Bytes symbol space free
 0 Warning Errors
 0 Severe Errors
```

The listing file is shown in Figure D.1.

```
C>TYPE A:PGMD_1.LST
```

Down the left side of the listing are the line numbers. Next we have a column of offset addresses (in hex), relative to stack, data, and code segments. After that comes the machine code translation (in hex) of the instructions.

#### *Two-Pass Assembly and the SYMBOL TABLE*

MASM makes two passes through the source file. On the first pass, MASM checks for syntax errors and creates a *symbol table* of names and their relative locations within a segment. To keep track of locations, it uses a *location counter*. The location counter is reset to 0 at the beginning of a

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10 9/6/91 00:43:35  
 PGMD\_1: SWAP WORDS

Page-1

```

 1 TITLE PGMD_1:SWAP WORDS
 2 MODEL SMALL
 3 .STACK 100H
 4 .DATA
 5 0000 000A WORD1 DW 10
 6 0002 0014 WORD2 DW 20
 7 .CODE
 8 0000 MAIN PROC
 9 0000 B8 — R MOV AX, @DATA
10 0003 8E D8 MOV DS, AX
11 0005 A1 0000 R MOV AX, WORD1
12 0008 87 06 0002 R XCHG AX, WORD2
13 000C A3 0000 R MOV WORD1, AX
14 000F B4 4C MOV AH, 4CH
15 0011 CD 21 INT 21H
16 0013 MAIN ENDP
17 END MAIN

```

Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10 9/6/91 00:43:35

PGMD\_1: SWAP WORDS

Segments and Groups:

| Name   | Length | Align | CombineClass  |
|--------|--------|-------|---------------|
| DGROUP |        |       | GROUP         |
| _DATA. | -0004  | WORD  | PUBLIC 'DATA' |
| STACK. | 0100   | PARA  | STACK 'STACK' |
| _TEXT  | 0013   | WORD  | PUBLIC 'CODE' |

Symbols:

| Name  | Type   | Value | Attr                |
|-------|--------|-------|---------------------|
| MAIN. | N PROC | 0000  | _TEXT Length = 0013 |
| WORD1 | L WORD | 0000  | _DATA               |
| WORD2 | L WORD | 0002  | _DATA               |

|           |      |        |
|-----------|------|--------|
| ECODE ..  | TEXT | TEXT   |
| ECODESIZE | TEXT | 0      |
| ECPU. ..  | TEXT | 0101h  |
| EDATASIZE | TEXT | 0      |
| EFILENAME | TEXT | PGMD_1 |
| EVERSION. | TEXT | 510    |

17 Source Lines  
 17 Total Lines  
 20 Symbols  
 47358 + 390893 Bytes symbol space free  
 0 Warning Errors  
 0 Severe Errors

segment. When an instruction is encountered, the location counter is increased by the number of bytes needed for the machine code of the instruction. When a name is encountered, it is entered in the symbol table along with the location counter's value. The symbol table appears near the bottom of the .LST file; in the preceding example, the symbols are MAIN, WORD1, and WORD2. The MASM /D option causes the .LST file to include pass 1 error messages. Whether these are actually errors is determined in pass 2.

On the second pass, MASM completes error checking and machine codes the instructions, except for those instructions that refer to names in other object modules. The .LST file is also created.

The reason MASM needs two passes to assemble a program is that some instructions may refer to names that appear later on in the source file. These instructions can be machine-coded only after their relative locations have been determined from the symbol table.

The object file (PGMD\_1.OBJ) that MASM creates is not executable. The final addresses of the variables need to be determined by the LINK program (see later description). In the .LST file, these addresses are marked by a "R" (relocatable) symbol (lines 9, 10, 11, 12, 13).

### ***The Cross-Reference File***

The cross-reference file (here PGMD\_1.CRF) contains information on names—where they are defined and the line numbers where they appear in the .LST file. The .CRF file is not printable; the CREF program, on the DOS disk, converts it to a .REF file that has an ASCII format:

| Microsoft Cross-Reference Version 5.10 Fri Sep 06 01:33:52 1991 |   |                                       |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|---------|
| PGMD_1: SWAP WORDS                                              |   |                                       |         |
| Symbol Cross Reference                                          |   | (# definition, + modification) Cref-1 |         |
| @CPU                                                            | . | 1#                                    |         |
| @VERSION                                                        | . | 1#                                    |         |
| CODE                                                            | . | 7                                     |         |
| DATA                                                            | . | 4                                     |         |
| DGROUP                                                          | . | 9                                     |         |
| MAIN                                                            | . | 8#                                    | 16 17   |
| STACK                                                           | . | 3                                     | #3      |
| WORD1                                                           | . | 5#                                    | 11      |
| WORD2                                                           | . | 6#                                    | 12+ 13+ |
| _DATA                                                           | . | 4#                                    |         |
| _TEXT                                                           | . | 7#                                    |         |
| 11 Symbols                                                      |   |                                       |         |

Figure D.2 PGMD\_1.REF

```
C>CREF A:PGMD_1;

Microsoft (R) Cross-Reference Utility Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981-1985, 1987. All rights reserved.

11 Symbols
```

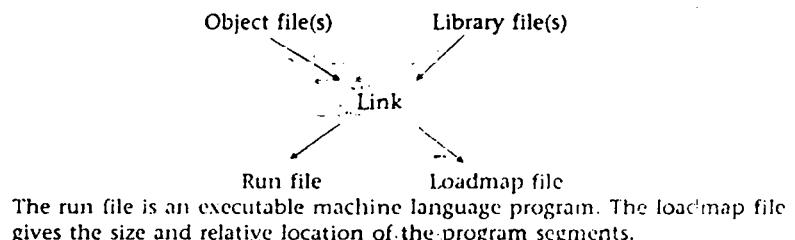
The output is the file PGMD\_1.REF, which can be printed by using the TYPE command (Figure D.2).

```
C>TYPE PGMD_1.REF
```

## D.2 LINK

The job of the LINK program is to link object files (and possibly library files) into a single executable file. To do this, it must resolve references to names used in one module but defined in another. The mechanism for doing this is explained in Chapter 14. LINK must be used even if there is only one object file.

The input to LINK is one or more object and library files, and the output is a run file and an optional loadmap file, as shown:



The run file is an executable machine language program. The loadmap file gives the size and relative location of the program segments.

### *LINK Command-Line*

For LINK version 5.0, the most general command line is

```
LINK options "object_file_list", run_file, loadmap_file, library_list
```

The only option you will be likely to use is /CO, which causes extra information for CODEVIEW to be included.

The *object\_file\_list* is a list of object files to be linked. It begins with the name of the object file containing the main program; the other object files usually contain procedures that are called by the main program and by each other. The file names are separated by blanks or "+".

The *run\_file* has an .EXE extension. It is an executable file unless the program is a .COM format program, in which case one more step is needed to produce an executable file...COM programs are discussed in Chapter 14.

The *library\_list* consists of library files, if any, separated by blanks or "+". Library files usually have a .LIB extension; and they often contain standard routines used by many programs, such as I/O routines. An example appears in Chapter 14.

For example, suppose LINK is on a disk in drive C and the files to be linked are in drive A. The main object file is FIRST.OBJ, other object files are SECOND.OBJ and THIRD.OBJ. To create a run file FIRST.EXE and a loadmap file FIRST.MAP, we could type

```
C>LINK A:FIRST+SECOND+THIRD,A:FIRST,A:FIRST;
```

or just

```
C>LINK A:FIRST+SECOND+THIRD,A:,A:;
```

The semicolon at the end means that there are no library files. As with MASM, it's possible to run LINK interactively:

```
C>LINK FIRST+SECOND+THIRD

Microsoft (R) Overlay Linker Version 3.64
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983-1988. All rights
reserved.

Run File [FIRST.EXE]: <Enter>
List File [NUL.MAP] A:FIRST <Enter>
Libraries: (.LIB) <Enter>
```

The first response means that we accept the name FIRST.EXE for the run file. The second response means we want to call the loadmap file FIRST.MAP. The third response means that there are no library files.

### **A LINK Demonstration**

Let's link PGMD\_1 above:

```
C>LINK A:PGMD_1,A:,A::
```

```
Microsoft (R) Overlay Linker Version 3.64
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983-1988. All rights
reserved.
```

```
C>
```

Here is the loadmap file:

```
C>TYPE A:PGMD_1\MAP
```

| Start  | Stop   | Length  | Name   | Class |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|-------|
| 00000H | 00012H | .00013H | _TEXT  | CODE  |
| 00014H | 00017H | 00004H  | _DATA  | DATA  |
| 00020H | 0011FH | 00100H  | STACK  | STACK |
| Origin |        |         | Group  |       |
| 0001:0 |        |         | DGROUP |       |

```
Program entry point at .0000:0000
```

The file gives the relative size and location of the program segments.

# **DEBUG and CODEVIEW**

---

## **E.1**

### ***Introduction***

This appendix covers the DEBUG and CODEVIEW debuggers. DEBUG is available on the DOS disk, and CODEVIEW comes with the Microsoft Macro Assembler, version 5.0 or later. DEBUG is a primitive but utilitarian program with a small, easy-to-learn command set. CODEVIEW is a much more sophisticated program that may be used to debug Pascal, BASIC, FORTRAN, C, or assembly language code. The user can simultaneously view source code, registers, flags, and selected variables.

---

## **E.2**

### ***DEBUG***

Since most of the DEBUG commands will work in CODEVIEW, you should read the sections on DEBUG even if you will ultimately be using CODEVIEW. Table E.1 summarizes the most useful DEBUG commands. For a complete list, see the DOS user's manual.

#### ***A Debug Demonstration***

To demonstrate the DEBUG commands, we'll use PGM4\_2.ASM, which displays "HELLO!" on the screen.

#### **Program Listing PGM4\_2.ASM:**

```
TITLE PGM4_2: PRINT STRING PROGRAM
.MODEL SMA1T
.STACK 100H
```

```

.DATA
MSG DB 'HELLO:$'
.CODE
MAIN PROC
;initialize DS
 MOV AX, @DATA
 MOV DS,AX ;initialize DS
;display message
 LEA DX,MSG ;get message
 MOV AH,9 ;display string function
 INT 21h ;display message
;return to DOS
 MOV AH,4CH
 INT 21h ;DOS exit
MAIN ENDP
END MAIN

```

After assembling and linking the program, we take it into DEBUG (the user's response appears in boldface).

C>DEBUG PGM4\_2.EXE

DEBUG comes back with its “-” command prompt. To view the registers, type “R”

-R  
AX=0000 BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=0000 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000  
DS=0EFB ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=0000 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC  
0F1C:0000 B81B0F MOV AX,0F1B

The display shows the contents of the registers in hex. The third line of the display gives the segment:offset address of the first instruction in the program, along with its machine code and assembly code. The letter pairs at the end of the second line are the current settings of some of the status and control flags. The flags displayed and the symbols DEBUG uses are the following:

| Flag                 | Clear (0) Symbol | Set (1) Symbol |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Overflow Flag        | NV               | OV             |
| Direction flag       | UP               | DN             |
| Interrupt flag       | DI               | EI             |
| Sign flag            | PL               | NG             |
| Zero flag            | NZ               | ZR             |
| Auxiliary carry flag | NA               | AC             |
| Parity flag          | PO               | PE             |
| Carry flag           | NC               | CY             |

**Table E.1 DEBUG Commands**

Optional parameters are enclosed in curly brackets. All constants are hexadecimal.

| <b>Command</b>                            | <b>Action</b>                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| D {start {end}} {range}                   | Dump bytes in hex format                                                                                             |
| <i>Examples:</i>                          |                                                                                                                      |
| D 100                                     | Dump 80h bytes starting at DS:100h                                                                                   |
| D CS:100 120                              | Dump bytes from CS:100h to CS:120h                                                                                   |
| D                                         | Dump 80h bytes starting at DS:last+1 where last is the last byte displayed                                           |
| E start {list}                            | Enter data in list beginning at start                                                                                |
| <i>Examples:</i>                          |                                                                                                                      |
| E DS:0 A B C                              | Enter Ah,Bh,Ch in bytes DS:0,DS:1,DS:2                                                                               |
| E ES:100 1 2 'ABC'                        | Enter 1 in ES:100h; 2 in ES:101h, 41h in ES:102, 42h in ES:103, 43h in ES:104h                                       |
| E 25                                      | Enter bytes interactively starting at DS:25. Space-bar moves to next byte, Return terminates                         |
| G {=start} {addr1 addr2 ... addrn}        | Go (execute) at start, with breakpoints at addr1, addr2, ... addrn                                                   |
| <i>Examples:</i>                          |                                                                                                                      |
| G                                         | Execute at CS:IP to completion                                                                                       |
| G =100                                    | Execute at CS:100h to completion                                                                                     |
| G 100 300 200                             | Execute at CS:IP, stop if first of breakpoints CS:100h, CS:300h, or CS:200h encountered                              |
| G =100 150                                | Execute at CS:100h, breakpoint at CS:150h                                                                            |
| L address {drive start_sector end_sector} | Load absolute disk sectors or named program (see N command)<br>Drive specified by number (0 = A, 1 = B, 2 = C, etc.) |
| <i>Examples:</i>                          |                                                                                                                      |
| L DS:100 0 C 18                           | Load sectors Ch to 18h from the disk in drive A at DS:100h                                                           |
| L 8FD0:0 1 2A 3B                          | Load sectors 2Ah to 3Bh from the disk in drive B at address 8FD0h                                                    |
| L DS:100                                  | Load named file at DS:100h                                                                                           |
| N filename                                | Set current filename for L and W commands                                                                            |
| <i>Example:</i>                           |                                                                                                                      |
| N myfile                                  | Set load/write name to myfile                                                                                        |
| Q                                         | Quit DEBUG and return to DOS                                                                                         |
| R {register}                              | Display/Change contents of register                                                                                  |
| <i>Examples:</i>                          |                                                                                                                      |
| R                                         | Display registers and flags                                                                                          |
| RAX                                       | Display AX and change contents if desired                                                                            |

T {start} {value}

Examples:

T

T =100

T =100 5

T 4

Trace "value" instructions from start

Trace the instruction at CS:IP

Trace the instruction at CS:100h

Trace 5 instructions starting at CS:100h

Trace 4 instructions starting at CS:IP

U {start {end}} {range}

Examples:

U 100

U CS:100 110

U 200 L 20

U

Unassemble data in instruction format

Unassemble about 32 bytes starting at CS:100h

Unassemble from CS:100h to CS:110h

Unassemble 20h instructions starting at CS:200h

Unassemble about 32 bytes starting at last+1, where last is the last byte unassembled

W {start}

Example:

W 100

Write the BX:CS bytes to file (see N command)

Write the BX:CX bytes stored at CS:100h

To change the contents of a register—for example, DX—to 1ABC<sub>h</sub>, type

```
-RDX
DX 0000
:1ABC
```

DEBUG responds by displaying the current content of DX, then displays a colon and waits for the user to enter the new content. We enter 1ABC and press the Enter key (DEBUG assumes that all numbers the user types are expressed in hex, so no "h" is needed). To retain the current content of DX, we would just hit the Enter key after the colon.

To verify the change, we can display the registers again.

```
-R
AX=0000 BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=1ABC SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0EEF ES=0EEFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=0000 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:0000 B81B0F MOV AX,0F1B
```

Now let's trace down to the INT 21h.

```

-T
AX=0F1B BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=1ABC SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0EFB ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=0003 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:0003 8ED8 MOV DS,AX

-T
AX=0F1B BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=0U02 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0F1B ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=0004 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:0009 B409 MOV AH,0

```

Note that DEBUG seemingly "skipped" the instruction LEA DX,MSG. Actually, that instruction was executed (we can tell because DX has new contents). DEBUG occasionally executes an instruction without pausing to display the registers.

```

-T
AX=091B BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=0002 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0F1B ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=000B NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:000B CD21 INT 21 A

```

If we were to hit "T" again, DEBUG would start to trace INT 21h, which is not what we want.

From the last register display, we see that INT 21h is a two-byte instruction. Since IP is currently 000Bh, the next instruction must be at 000Dh, and we can set up a breakpoint there:

```

-GD
HELLO!
AX=0914 BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=0002 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0F1B ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=000D NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:000D B4 4C MOV AH,4C

```

The INT 21h, function 9, displays "HELLO!" and execution stops at the breakpoint 000Dh. To finish execution, just type "G":

```

-G
Program terminated normally

```

This message indicates the program has run to completion. The program must be reloaded to be executed again. So let's leave DEBUG.

```
-Q
C>
```

To demonstrate the U command, let's reenter DEBUG and use it to list our program:

```
C>DEBUG PGM4_2.EXE
```

```
-U
0F1C:0000 B81B0F MOV AX,0F1B
0F1C:0003 8ED8 MOV DS,AX
0F1C:0005 8D160200 LEA DX,[0002]
0F1C:0009 B409 MOV AH,09
0F1C:000B CD21 INT 21
0F1C:000D B44C MOV AH,4C
0F1C:000F CD21 INT 21
0F1C:0011 015BE8 ADD [BP+DI-18],BX
0F1C:0014 3BEE CMP BP,SI
0F1C:0016 E88AF3 CALL F3A3
0F1C:0019 E97E08 JMP 089A
0F1C:001C 8D1E8E09 LEA BX,[098E]
```

DEBUG has unassembled about 32 bytes; that is, interpreted the contents of these bytes as instructions. The program ends at 000Fh, and the rest is DEBUG's interpretation of the garbage that follows as assembly code. To list just our program, we type

```
-U 0 F
```

```
0F1C:0000 B81B0F MOV AX,0F1B
0F1C:0003 8ED8 MOV DS,AX
0F1C:0005 8D160200 LEA DX,[0002]
0F1C:0009 B409 MOV AH,09
0F1C:000B CD21 INT 21
0F1C:000D B44C MOV AH,4C
0F1C:000F CD21 INT 21
```

In the unassembly listing, DEBUG replaces names by the segments or offsets assigned to those names. For example, instead of MOV AX,@DATA we have MOV AX,01FB. LEA DX,MSG becomes LEA DX,[0002] because 0002h is the offset in segment .DATA assigned to MSG.

To demonstrate the D command, let's dump that part of memory that contains the message "HELLO!". First, we execute the two statements that initialize DS:

**-G5**

```
AX=0F1B BX=0000 CX=0121 DX=0000 SP=0100 BP=0000 SI=0000 DI=0000
DS=0F1B ES=0EFB SS=0F0B CS=0F1C IP=0005 NV UP DI PL NZ NA PO NC
OF1C:0005 8D160000 LEA DX,[0000] DS:0000=4548
```

Now we dump memory starting at DS:0

**-D0**

```
0F1B:0000 21 00 48 45 4C 4C 4F 21-24 C4 02 8B 1E 46 43 D1 !.HELLO!$....FC.
0F1B:0010 E3 D1 E3 8B 87 BC 3D 8B-97 BE 3D 89 86 7C FF 89=...=...1..
0F1B:0020 96 7E FF 05 0C 00 52 50-E8 7D 6A 83 C4 04 50 E8 .~....RP.)]..P.
0F1B:0030 6C FB 83 C4 02 0A C0 75-03 E9 F6 FE C6 06 D9 37 1.....u.....7
0F1B:0040 FF 8B 1E 46 43 D1 E3 8B-87 A0 3C A3 60 3E 8B 1E ...FC....<.'>.
0F1B:0050 46 43 8A 87 E6 3C 2A E4-A3 5A 3C D1 E3 D1 E3 8B FC...<*.Z<.....
0F1B:0060 87 FC 31 0B 87 FE 31 75-03 E8 9E FD B8 FF FF 8B ..1...lu.....
0F1B:0070 E5 5D C3 90 55 8B EC 83-EC 08 56 C6 06 0C 42 FF .]..U.....V...B.
```

DEBUG has displayed 80h bytes of memory. The contents of each byte is shown as two hex digits. For example, the current content of byte 0000h is seen to be 48h. Across the first row, we have the contents of bytes 0-7h, then a dash, then bytes 8-Fh. The contents of bytes 10h through 1Fh are shown in the second row, and so on. To the right of the display, the content of memory is interpreted as characters (unprintable characters are indicated by a dot).

To display just the message "HELLO!\$", we type

**-D2 8**

```
0F1B:0000 48 45 4C 4C 4F 21 24 HELLO!$
```

Before moving on, let us take note of one peculiarity of memory dumps. We usually write the contents of a word in the order high byte, low byte. However, a DEBUG memory dump displays a word contents in the order low byte, high byte. For example, the word whose address is 0h contains 4548h, but DEBUG displays it as 48 45. This can be confusing when we are interpreting memory as words.

Now let's use the E command to change the message from "HELLO!" to "GOODBYE!"

**-E2 'GOODBYE!\$'**

To verify the change, we will dump memory

```
-D0 F
0F1B:0000 21 00 47 4F 4F 44 42 59-45 21 24 8B 1E 46 42 D1 !.GOODBYE!$..FC.
```

Now let's execute to completion.

```
-G
GOODBYE!
Program terminated normally
```

The E command can also be used to enter data interactively. Suppose, for example, we would like to change the contents of bytes 200h-204h. Before doing so, let's have a look at the current content:

```
-D 200 204
0F1B:0200 0C FF 5A E9 48 ..Z.H
```

Now let's put 1,2,3,4,5 in these bytes.

```
-E 200
0F1B:0200 0C.1 FF.2 5A.3 E9.4 48.5 F3.
```

DEBUG begins by displaying the current content of byte 0200h, namely 0Ch, and waits for us to enter the new content. We type 1 and hit the space bar. Next DEBUG displays the content of byte 0201, which is FFh, and again waits for us to enter the new content. We type 2 and hit the space bar to go on to the next byte. After 5 has been entered in byte 204h, DEBUG displays the content of byte 205h, which is F3. Since we don't want to enter any more data, just hit the Enter key to get back to the command prompt.

Now let's have a look at memory:

```
-D 200 204
0F1B:0200 01 02 03 04 05
```

In the process of entering data, if we had wanted to leave the contents of a byte unchanged, we would just hit the space bar to go on to the next byte, or hit return to get back to the command prompt.

## E.3 CODEVIEW

CODEVIEW is a powerful debugger that enables the user to view both high-level and assembly language source code during the debugging process. There are two operating modes: *window* and *sequential*. In sequential mode, CODEVIEW behaves more or less like DEBUG; sequential mode must be used if your machine is not an IBM compatible or the program is assembled and linked without options. In window mode, all the capabilities of CODEVIEW are available, and for that reason it is the only mode we will discuss. Because CODEVIEW is a large program with many features, we do not attempt to be comprehensive in the following discussion.

### *Program Preparation*

To debug in window mode, the code segment of the program must have class 'CODE', for example,

```
C_SEG SEGMENT 'CODE'
```

*Note:* the simplified segment directive .CODE generates a code segment with default class 'CODE'.

When the program is assembled and linked, the /ZI and /CO options should be specified; for example,

```
MASM /ZI MYPROG;
LINK /CO MYPROG;
```

These options cause symbolic information for CODEVIEW to be included in the .EXE file. Because this makes the file a lot bigger, the program should be assembled and linked in the ordinary way after it has been debugged.

### *Entering CODEVIEW*

The command line for entering CODEVIEW is

```
CV {options} filename
```

File name is the name of an executable file. The options control CODEVIEW'S start-up behavior. Here is a partial list (see the Microsoft manual for the complete set):

| <i>Option</i> | <i>Action</i>                                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /D            | You are using an IBM compatible that does not support certain IBM-specific trapping functions.                  |
| /I            | You are using a non-IBM-compatible computer and want to be able to use CTRL-C and CTRL-break to stop a program. |
| /M            | You have a mouse but don't want to use it.                                                                      |
| /P            | You have a non-IBM EGA and have problems running CODEVIEW.                                                      |
| /S            | You have a non-IBM compatible and want to be able to see the output screen.                                     |
| /W            | You have an IBM compatible and want to use window mode.                                                         |

More than one option may be specified. For example,

```
CV /D /M /W Myprog
```

Note that with CODEVIEW, unlike DEBUG, it is not necessary to use a file extension.

**Window Mode**

To demonstrate some of CODEVIEW's features, we will assemble and link the program we used to demonstrate DEBUG (PGM4\_2.ASM) and take it into CODEVIEW.

```
C>MASM /ZI A:PGM4_2;
Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 5.10
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1988. All rights reserved.

 50094 + 289327 Bytes symbol space free

 0 Warning Errors
 0 Severe Errors

C>LINK /CO A:PGM4_2;

Microsoft (R) Overlay Linker Version 3.64
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983-1988. All rights reserved.

C>CV A:PGM4_2
```

Figure E.1 shows window mode display. We see three windows: a *display window* at the top, a *dialog window* at the bottom, and a *register window* at the right side.

The screenshot shows the Microsoft CodeView interface in window mode. The main area displays assembly code for a program named pgm4\_2.ASM. The code includes directives (.MODEL SMALL, .STACK 100H, .DATA, .CODE), a MAIN PROC, and various DOS API calls (MOU AX,BDATA, MOU DS,AX, LEA DX,MSG, INT 21h). To the right of the assembly code is a register window showing CPU register values (AX=0000, BX=0000, CX=0000, DX=0000, SP=0100, BP=0000, SI=0000, DI=0000, DS=51AF, ES=51AF, SS=51C1, CS=51BF, IP=0000, MU UP, EI PL, NZ MA, PO NC). At the bottom of the screen, the Microsoft Copyright notice is visible: "Microsoft (R) CodeView (R) Version 2.2 (C) Copyright Microsoft Corp. 1986-1988. All rights reserved."

```

File View Search Run Watch Options Language Calls Help | FB=Trace FS=Go
pgm4_2.ASM
1: .MODEL SMALL
2: .STACK 100H
3: .DATA
4: MSG DB 'HELLO!$'
5: .CODE
6: MAIN PROC
7: ;Initialize DS
8: MOU AX,BDATA
9: MOU DS,AX :INITIALIZE DS
10: ;display message
11: LEA DX,MSG :GET MESSAGE
12: MOU AH,9 :DISPLAY STRING FUNCTION
13: INT 21h :DISPLAY MESSAGE
14: ;return to DOS
15: MOU AH,4CH
16: INT 21h :DOS EXIT
17: MAIN ENDP
18: END MAIN

```

Figure E.1 CODEVIEW Window Mode Display

The display window shows the source code, with the current instruction in reverse video or in a different color. Lines with previously set breakpoints are highlighted.

The dialog window is where you can enter commands, but as we will see, the function keys can be used for many commands.

The register window shows the contents of the registers and the flags. The flag symbols are the same as DEBUG's.

It is also possible to activate a *watch window*, which will display selected variables and conditions.

### **Controlling the Display**

The appearance of the display may be controlled with the keyboard or a mouse. Table E.2 shows the keys and key combinations. For mouse operations, see the Microsoft manual.

### **Controlling Program Execution**

Table E.3 shows the function keys that may be used to set and clear breakpoints, trace through a program, or execute to a breakpoint.

### **Selecting from the Menus**

The menu bar at the top of the screen has nine titles. The two commands at the end (TRACE and GO) are provided for mouse users.

1. To open a menu, press Alt and the first letter of the title. For example, Alt-F to open the File menu. This causes a menu box to be displayed.

**Table E.2 Display Commands**

| <b>Key</b> | <b>Function</b>                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1         | Displays initial on-line help screen.                                                                                                                                                  |
| F2         | Toggles the register window.                                                                                                                                                           |
| F3         | Switches between source, mixed, or assembly modes. Source mode shows source code in the display window, assembly mode shows assembly language instructions, and mixed mode shows both. |
| F4         | Switches to the output screen. The output screen shows output from the program. Press any key to return to the display screen.                                                         |
| F6         | Moves cursor between display and dialog windows.                                                                                                                                       |
| CTRL-G     | Increases size of the window the cursor is in.                                                                                                                                         |
| CTRL-T     | Decreases size of the window the cursor is in.                                                                                                                                         |
| Up arrow   | Moves cursor up one line.                                                                                                                                                              |
| Down arrow | Moves cursor down one line.                                                                                                                                                            |
| PgUp       | Scrolls up one page.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| PgDn       | Scrolls down one page. Stops at bottom of file if in source mode, behaves like DEBUG's U command in other modes.                                                                       |
| Home       | Scrolls to top of file if cursor is in display window, or to top of command buffer if in dialog window.                                                                                |

**Table E.3 Function Key Commands**

| <b>Key</b> | <b>Function</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F5         | Executes to the next breakpoint or to the end of the program if no breakpoint encountered.                                                                                                                 |
| F7         | Sets a temporary breakpoint on the line with the cursor and executes to that line, unless another breakpoint or end of program is encountered.                                                             |
| F8         | Traces the next source line, if in source mode, or the next instruction if in assembly mode. If the source line is a call, it enters the called routine. Note: it will execute through DOS function calls. |
| F9         | Sets or clears a breakpoint on the line with the cursor. If the line does not have a breakpoint, it sets one on the line. If it already has a breakpoint, the breakpoint is cleared.                       |
| F10        | Executes the next program step. Like F8 except that calls are executed rather than traced.                                                                                                                 |

2. Use the up and down arrow keys to make a selection. When the item you want is highlighted, press Enter.
3. For most menu selections, the choice is executed immediately, however, some selections require a response.
4. If a response is needed, a dialog box opens up and you type the needed information.

The escape key can be pressed to cancel a menu. When a menu is open, the left and right arrow keys may be used to move from one menu to another.

### *The RUN Menu*

This menu contains selections for running the program. Table E.4 gives the choices.

### *Watch Commands*

One of the most useful of CODEVIEW's features is the ability to monitor variables and expressions. The watch commands described hereafter specify the variables and expressions to be watched.

**Table E.4 RUN Menu Selections**

| <b>Selection</b>  | <b>Action</b>                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Start             | Runs the program from the beginning. Program will run to completion unless a breakpoint or watch statement (see below) is encountered. |
| Restart           | Restarts the program but doesn't begin to execute it. Any previously set breakpoints or watch statements will still be in effect.      |
| Execute           | Executes in slow motion from the current instruction. To stop execution, press a key or mouse button.                                  |
| Clear breakpoints | Clears all breakpoints. Doesn't affect watch statements.                                                                               |

The watch commands can be entered from the watch menu, but it's easier to enter them as dialog commands; also, with dialog watch commands a range of variables can be specified.

### **Watching Memory**

The watch command to monitor memory is

**W{type} range**

where range is either

**start\_address end\_address**

or

**L count**

and count is the number of values to be displayed.

Type is one of the following:

| <b>Type</b>  | <b>Meaning</b>        |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| <b>N</b> one | default               |
| <b>B</b>     | hex byte              |
| <b>A</b>     | ASCII                 |
| <b>I</b>     | signed decimal word   |
| <b>U</b>     | unsigned decimal word |
| <b>W</b>     | hex word              |
| <b>D</b>     | hex doubleword        |
| <b>S</b>     | short real            |
| <b>L</b>     | long real             |
| <b>T</b>     | 10-byte real          |

The default type is the last type specified by a DUMP, ENTER, WATCH, or TRACEPOINT command; otherwise it is B.

For example, suppose that array A has been declared as

**A DW 37,12,18,96,45,3**

and DS has been initialized to 4A7Dh, the segment number of the .DATA segment.

The dialog commands

```
>W A
>WI A
>WI A L6
>WW A L6
>WI A 4
>W 100 104
```

Create the following watch window:

|    |         |   |           |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----|---------|---|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 0) | A       | : | 4A7D:0000 | 25   | %    |      |      |      |      |
| 1) | A       | : | 4A7D:0000 | 37   |      |      |      |      |      |
| 2) | A L6    | : | 4A7D:0000 | 37   | 12   | 18   | 96   | 45   | 3    |
| 3) | A L6    | : | 471D:0000 | 0025 | 000C | 0012 | 0060 | 002D | 0003 |
| 4) | A 4     | : | 47AD:0000 | 37   | 12   | 18   |      |      |      |
| 5) | 100 104 | : | 47AD:0100 | 6400 | 8448 | 6912 |      |      |      |

In (0), CODEVIEW displays both hex and ASCII values of variable A. In (1), we ask for A to be displayed as a signed integer. In (2), we want to see the array A of six words, displayed as integers. In (3), we ask for array A to be displayed in hex. In (4), we ask for the following range to be displayed in decimal: start\_address = A = 0000h, end\_address = 0004h. In (5), we specify range DS:0100h to DS:0104h. The display is in decimal, because that was the type used in (4).

Now as the program is traced or executed, the values in the watch window will change as the program changes memory.

### Watching the Stack

We can monitor the stack as a special case of a memory range. For example, suppose SS:SP = 4A6C:000Ah and BP = 000Ch. To monitor six stack words as decimal integers, type

```
>WI SP L6
```

and the watch window shows

|    |        |   |           |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----|--------|---|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 0) | sp 1 6 | : | 4A6C:000A | 1813 | 5404 | 2009 | 5404 | 2741 | 5404 |
|----|--------|---|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

also BP may be used as a stack pointer; for example,

```
>WI BP L6
```

and the watch window shows

|    |        |   |           |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----|--------|---|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1) | bp 1 6 | : | 4A6C:000C | 5404 | 2009 | 5404 | 2741 | 5404 | 3085 |
|----|--------|---|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

### Watching Expressions

The watch window may also be used to monitor the value of a symbolic expression. The syntax is

**w? expression {,format}**

where expression can be a single variable or a complex expression involving several variables and constants. The optional format is a single letter that specifies how the expression will be displayed. Some possibilities are

| Format | Output Format            |
|--------|--------------------------|
| d      | signed decimal integer   |
| i      | signed decimal integer   |
| u      | unsigned decimal integer |
| x      | hexadecimal integer      |
| c      | single character         |

Here are some examples, using the array A defined earlier. Suppose that AX = 1 and BX = 4.

```
>W? A
>W? A,d
>W? AX + BX
>W? A + 2*AX
```

and the watch window is

```
0) A : 0x0025
1) A,d: 37
2) AX + BX : 0x0005
3) A + 2*AX : 0X0027
```

In (0), the expression to be displayed is just the variable A. It appears as 0x0025 (the notation Oxdigits is the C language notation for hexadecimal digits). In (1), we ask for A to be displayed with a decimal format. In (2), we get the sum of the contents of registers AX and BX. In (3), we ask for the the sum of A and 2 times the contents of AX.

### Register Indirection

Sometimes we would like to keep track of a byte or word that is being pointed to by a register; for example, [BX] or [BP + 4]. CODEVIEW does not allow the square bracket pointer notation, but uses the following symbols instead:

| Assembly Language Symbol | Codeview Symbol |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| BYTE PTR [register]      | BY register     |
| WORD PTR [register]      | WO register     |
| DWORD PTR [register]     | DW register     |

For example, suppose that BX contain 0100h, and memory looks like this:

| <b>Offset</b> | <b>Contents</b> |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 0100h         | ABh             |
| 0101h         | CDh             |
| 0102h         | EFh             |
| 0103h         | 00h             |

The following watch commands

```
>W? BY BX
>W? WO BX
>W? WO BX+2
```

produce this watch window:

|    |         |   |        |
|----|---------|---|--------|
| 0) | BY BX   | : | 0x00ab |
| 1) | WO BX   | : | 0xcdab |
| 2) | WO BX+2 | : | 0x00ef |

### ***Removing Lines from the WATCH WINDOW***

To remove a line from the watch window, the Y (yank) command can be used. Its syntax is

Y number

where number is the number of the line to be removed. The command Y causes all the lines to be removed.

### ***Tracepoints***

You can specify a variable or range of variables as a trace point. When the variable(s) change, the program will break execution. The syntax is

TP? expression [,format]

or

TP{type} range

where format, type, and range are the same as for the W command. CODEVIEW displays the expression, variable, or range of variables in the same format as the W command, except that the display is intense. For example, we could type

```
TPI A L6
```

and CODEVIEW would display

```
0) A[16]: 4A7D:0000 37 12 18 96 45 3
```

in the watch window. If any element of the array A changes, execution would break.

### *Watchpoints*

A watchpoint breaks execution when a specified expression becomes nonzero (true). The command line for setting a watchpoint is

WP? expression [,format]

where expression is a relational expression involving variables and possibly constants.

For example, suppose that A is defined as

```
A DW 25h
```

and the current values of AX and BX are 5 and 2, respectively. The dialog commands

```
>WP? AX>BX
>WP? AX - BX = 3
>WP? A > 25
>WP? A = 25
```

will create the following watch window

```
0) AX>BX : 0x0001
1) AX - BX = 3 : 0x0000
2) A > 25 : 0x0000
3) A = 25: 0x0025
```

The display following (0) indicates that execution will break if AX > BX is true. Because AX has 5 and BX has 2, this is currently true and execution would break immediately. CODEVIEW indicates true by the notation 0x0001.

In (1), execution will break if AX - BX - 3 is nonzero. Currently, AX - BX - 3 = 5 - 2 - 3 = 0, so this condition is false. CODEVIEW indicates false by the notation 0x0000.

In (2), execution will break if A > 25, which is currently false.

In (3), execution will break if A = 25. This is currently true, so execution would break immediately. CODEVIEW shows the current value of A as 0x0025.

**DEBUG Commands in CODEVIEW**

Most of the DEBUG commands can be used as dialog commands in CODEVIEW. When working in source mode, symbolic labels may be used in commands. For example, if BELOW is a label in a program, then

G BELOW

causes execution to break at this label if encountered. In the D and E commands, a type can be specified. The syntax for E is

E {type} address {list}

D has the same syntax. Type comes from the same list of one-letter specifiers that are used for the W command. For example,

EI A 17 -1 456 8900 -29

will let the user enter the preceding five decimal integers in array A.

# Assembly Instruction Set

In this appendix, we show the binary encoding of a typical 8086 instruction and give a summary of the common 8086, 8087, 80286, and 80386 instructions.

## Typical 8086 Instruction Format

A machine instruction for the 8086 occupies from one to six bytes. For most instructions, the first byte contains the opcode, the second byte contains the addressing modes of the operands, and the other bytes contain either address information or immediate data. A typical two-operand instruction has the format given in Figure F.1

In the first byte, we see a six-bit opcode that identifies the operation. The same opcode is used for both 8- and 16-bit operations. The size of the operands is given by the W bit: W = 0 means 8-bit data and W = 1 means 16-bit data.

For register-to-register, register-to-memory, and memory-to-register operations, the REG field in the second byte contains a register number and the D bit specifies whether the register in the REG field is a source or destination operand, D = 0 means source and D = 1 means destination. For other types of operations, the REG field contains a three-bit extension of the opcode.

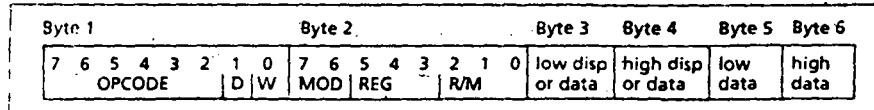


Figure F.1 Opcode Format

| MOD=11 |       |       | Effective Address Calculation |                |                  |                   |
|--------|-------|-------|-------------------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| R/M    | W = 0 | W = 1 | R/M                           | MOD = 00       | MOD = 01         | MOD = 10          |
| 000    | AL    | AX    | 000                           | (BX) + (SI)    | (BX) + (SI) + D8 | (BX) + (SI) + D16 |
| 001    | CL    | CX    | 001                           | (BX) + (DI)    | (BX) + (DI) + D8 | (BX) + (DI) + D16 |
| 010    | DL    | DX    | 010                           | (BP) + (SI)    | (BP) + (SI) + D8 | (BP) + (SI) + D16 |
| 011    | BL    | BX    | 011                           | (BP) + (DI)    | (BP) + (DI) + D8 | (BP) + (DI) + D16 |
| 100    | AH    | SP    | 100                           | (SI)           | (SI) + D8        | (SI) + D16        |
| 101    | CH    | BP    | 101                           | (DI)           | (DI) + D8        | (DI) + D16        |
| 110    | DH    | SI    | 110                           | DIRECT ADDRESS | (BP) + D8        | (BP) + D16        |
| 111    | BH    | DI    | 111                           | (BX)           | (BX) + D8        | (BX) + D16        |

MOD = 11 means register mode.

MOD = 00 means memory mode with no displacement, except when R/M = 110, then a 16-bit displacement follows.

MOD = 01 means memory, with 8-bit displacement following (D8).

MOD = 10 means memory mode with 16-bit displacement following (D16).

Figure F.2 MOD and R/M Fields

The combination of the W bit and the REG field can specify a total of 16 registers, see Table F.1.

The second operand is specified by the MOD and R/M fields. Figure F.2 shows the various modes.

For segment registers, the field is indicated by SEG. Table F.2 shows the segment register encodings.

## F.2

### 8086 Instructions

The following set of 8086 instructions appears in alphabetical order. In the set

- (register) stands for the contents of the register
- (EA) stands for the contents of the memory location given by the effective address EA
- flags affected means those flags that are modified by the instruction according to the result
- flags undefined means the values of those flags are unreliable
- disp means 8-bit displacement
- disp-low disp-hi means 16-bit displacement

**Table F.1 : Register Encoding**

| <b>REG</b> | <b>W = 0</b> | <b>W = 1</b> |
|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 000        | AL           | AX           |
| 001        | CL           | CX           |
| 010        | DL           | DX           |
| 011        | BL           | BX           |
| 100        | AH           | SP           |
| 101        | CH           | BP           |
| 110        | DH           | SI           |
| 111        | BH           | DI           |

**Table F.2 Segment Register Encoding**

| <b>SEG</b> | <b>Register</b> |
|------------|-----------------|
| 00         | ES              |
| 01         | CS              |
| 10         | SS              |
| 11         | DS              |

**AAA: ASCII Adjust for Addition**

Corrects the result in AL of adding two unpacked BCD digits or two ASCII digits.

Format: AAA

Operation: If the lower nibble of AL is greater than 9 or if AF is set to 1, then AL is incremented by 6, AH is incremented by 1, and AF is set to 1. This instruction always clears the upper nibble of AL and copies AF to CF.

Flags: Affected—AF, CF

Undefined—OF, PF, SF, ZF

Encoding: 00110111

37

**AAD: ASCII Adjust for Division**

Adjusts the unpacked BCD dividend in AX in preparation for division.

Format: AAD

Operation: The unpacked BCD operand in AX is converted into binary and stored in AL. This is achieved by multiplying AH by 10 and adding the result to AL. AH is then cleared.

Flags: Affected—PF, SF, ZF

Undefined—AF, CF, OF

Encoding: 11010101 . 000001010

DS OA

**AAM: ASCII Adjust for Multiplication**

Converts the result of multiplying two BCD digits into unpacked BCD format. Can be used in converting numbers lower than 100 into unpacked BCD format.

Format: AAM

Operation: The contents of AL are converted into two unpacked BCD digits and placed in AX. AL is divided by 10 and the quotient is placed in AH and the remainder in AL.

Flags: Affected—PF, SF, ZF  
 Undefined—AF, CF, OF  
 Encoding: 11010100 00001010  
               D4           0A

#### AAS: ASCII Adjust for Subtraction

Corrects the result in AL of subtracting two unpacked BCD numbers.

Format: AAS  
 Operation: If the lower nibble of AL is greater than 9 or if AF is set to 1, then AL is decremented by 6, AH is decremented by 1, and AF is set to 1. This instruction always clears the upper nibble of AL and copies AF to CF.  
 Flags: Affected—AF, CF  
 Undefined—OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Encoding: 00111111  
               3F

#### ADC: Add with Carry

The carry flag is added to the sum of the source and destination.

Format: ADC destination,source  
 Operation: If CF = 1, then (dest) = (source) + (dest) + 1  
               If CF = 0, then (dest) = (source) + (dest)  
 Flags: Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Encoding: Memory or register with register  
               000100dw mod reg r/m  
               Immediate to accumulator  
               0001010w data  
               Immediate to memory or register  
               100000sw mod 010 r/m data  
               (s is set if a byte of data is added to 16-bit memory or register.)

#### ADD: Addition

Format: ADD destination,source  
 Operation: (dest) = (source) + (dest)  
 Flags: Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Encoding: Memory or register with register  
               000000dw mod reg r/m  
               Immediate to accumulator  
               0000010w data  
               Immediate to memory or register  
               100000sw mod 000 r/m data  
               (s is set if a byte data is added to 16-bit memory or register.)

#### AND: Logical AND

Format: AND destination,source  
 Operation: Each bit of the source is ANDed with the corresponding bit in the destination, with the result stored in the destination. CF and OF are cleared.  
 Flags: Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Undefined: AF  
 Encoding: Memory or register with register  
               001000dw mod reg r/m  
               Immediate to accumulator  
               0010010w data

**Immediate to memory or register**  
1000000w mod 100 r/m data

#### **CALL: Procedure Call**

**Format:** CALL target

**Operation:** The offset address of the next sequential instruction is pushed onto the stack, and control is transferred to the target operand. The target address is computed as follows: (1) intrasegment direct, offset = IP + displacement, (2) intrasegment indirect, offset = (EA), (3) intersegment direct, segment:offset given in instruction, and (4) intersegment indirect, segment = (EA +2), offset = (EA).

**Flags:** Affected—none

**Encoding:** Intrasegment Direct

11101000 disp-low disp-high

Intra-segment Indirect

11111111 mod 010 r/m

Intersegment Direct

10011010 offset-low offset-high seg-low seg-high

Intersegment Indirect

11111111 mod 011 r/m

#### **CBW: Convert Byte to Word**

Converts the signed 8-bit number in AL into a signed 16-bit number in AX.

**Format:** CBW

**Operation:** If bit 7 of AL is set, then AH gets FFh.

If bit 7 of AL is clear, then AH is cleared.

**Flags:** Affected—none

**Encoding:** 10011000

98

#### **CLC: Clear Carry Flag**

**Format:** CLC

**Operation:** Clears CF

**Flags:** Affected—CF

**Encoding:** 11111000

F8

#### **CLD: Clear Direction Flag**

**Format:** CLD

**Operation:** Clears DF

**Flags:** Affected—DF

**Encoding:** 11111100

FC

#### **CLI: Clear Interrupt Flag**

Disables maskable external interrupts.

**Format:** CLI

**Operation:** Clears IF

**Flags:** Affected—IF

**Encoding:** 11111010

FA

**CMC: Complement Carry Flag**

Format: CMC  
 Operation: Complements CF  
 Flags: Affected—CF  
 Encoding: 11110100  
             F5

**CMP: Compare**

Compares two operands by subtraction. The flags are affected, but the result is not stored.

Format: CMP destination, source  
 Operation: The source operand is subtracted from the destination and the flags are set according to the result. The operands are not affected.  
 Flags: Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Encoding: Memory or register with register  
 001110dw mod reg r/m  
 Immediate with accumulator  
 0011110w data  
 Immediate with memory or register  
 100000sw mod 111 r/m data

**CMPS/CMPSB/CMPSW: Compare Byte or Word String**

Compares two memory operands. If preceded by a REP prefix, strings of arbitrary size can be compared.

Format: CMPS source-string dest-string  
 or  
 CMPSB  
 or  
 CMPSW  
 Operation: The dest-string indexed by ES:DI is subtracted from the source-string indexed by SI. The status flags are affected. If the control flag DF is 0, then SI and DI are incremented; otherwise, they are decremented. The increments are 1 for byte strings and 2 for word strings.  
 Flags: Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Encoding: 1010011w

**CWD: Convert Word to Double Word**

Converts the signed 16-bit number in AX into a signed 32-bit number in DX:AX.

Format: CWD  
 Operation: If bit 15 of AX is set, then DX gets FFFF.  
 If bit 15 of AX is clear, then DX is cleared.  
 Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding: 10011001  
             99

**DAA: Decimal Adjust for Addition**

Corrects the result in AL of adding two packed BCD operands.

Format: DAA  
 Operation: If the lower nibble of AL is greater than 9 or if AF is set to 1, then AL is incremented by 6, and AF is set to 1. If AL is

greater than 9Fh or if the CF is set, then 60h is added to AL and CF is set to 1.

Flags: Affected—AF, CF, PF, SF, ZF  
Undefined—OF

Encoding: 00100111  
27

#### DAS: Decimal Adjust for Subtraction

Corrects the result in AL of subtracting two packed BCD operands.

Format: DAS

Operation: If the lower nibble of AL is greater than 9 or if AF is set to 1, then 60h is subtracted from AL and CF is set to 1.

Flags: Affected—AF, CF, PF, SF, ZF  
Encoding: 00101111  
2F

#### DEC: Decrement

Format: DEC destination

Operation: Decrements the destination operand by 1.

Flags: Affected—AF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
Encoding: Register (word)

01001 reg  
Memory or register  
1111111w mod 001 r/m

#### DIV: Divide

Performs unsigned division.

Format: DIV source

Operation: The divisor is the source operand, which is either memory or register. For byte division (8-bit source) the dividend is AX, and for word division (16-bit source) the dividend is DX:AX. The quotient is returned to AL (AX for word division), and the remainder is returned to AH (DX for word division). If the quotient is greater than 8 bits (16 bits for word division), then an INT 0 is generated.

Flags: Undefined—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
Encoding: 1111011w mod 110 r/m

#### ESC: Escape

Allows other processors, such as the 8087 coprocessor, to access instructions. The 8086 processor performs no operation except to fetch a memory operand for the other processor.

Format: ESC external-opcode,source  
Flags: none  
Encoding: 11011xxx mod xxx r/m  
(The xxx sequence indicates an opcode for the coprocessor.)

#### HLT: Halt

Causes the processor to enter its halt state to wait for an external interrupt.

Format: HLT

Flags: none

Encoding: 11110100  
F4

**Performs signed division.**

**Format:** IDIV source

**Operation:** The divisor is the source operand, which is either memory or register. For byte division (8-bit source) the dividend is AX, and for word division (16-bit source) the dividend is DX:AX. The quotient is returned to AL (AX for word division), and the remainder is returned to AH (DX for word division). If the quotient is greater than 8 bits (16 bits for word division), then an INT 0 is generated.

**Flags:** Undefined—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF

**Encoding:** 1111011w mod 111 r/m

### **IMUL: Integer Multiply**

**Performs signed multiplication.**

**Format:** IMUL source

**Operation:** The multiplier is the source operand, which is either memory or register. For byte multiplication (8-bit source) the multiplicand is AL, and for word multiplication (16-bit source) the multiplicand is AX. The product is returned to AX (DX:AX for word multiplication). The flags CF and OF are set if the upper half of the product is not the sign-extension of the lower half.

**Flags:** Affected—CF, OF

Undefined—AF, PF, SF, ZF

**Encoding:** 1111011w mod 101 r/m

### **IN: Input Byte or Word**

**Format:** IN accumulator, port

**Operation:** The contents of the accumulator are replaced by the contents of the designated I/O port. The port operand is either a constant (for fixed port), or DX (for variable port).

**Flags:** Affected —none

**Encoding:** Fixed port

1110010w port

Variable port

1110110w

### **INC: Increment**

**Format:** INC destination

**Operation:** Increments the destination operand by 1.

**Flags:** Affected—AF, OF, PF, SF, ZF

**Encoding:** Register (word)

01000 reg

Memory or register

1111111w mod 000 r/m

### **INT: Interrupt**

**Transfers control to one of 256 interrupt routines.**

**Format:** INT interrupt-type

**Operation:** The FLAGS register is pushed onto the stack, then TF and IF are cleared, CS is pushed onto the stack and then filled by the high-order word of the interrupt vector, IP is pushed

onto the stack and then filled by the low-order word of the interrupt vector.

Flags: Affected—IF,TF

Encoding: Type 3

11001100

Other types

11001101-type

### **INTO: Interrupt if Overflow**

Generates an INT-4 if OF is set.

Format: INTO

Operation: If OF = 1, then same operation as INT-4. If OF = 0, then no operation takes place.

Flags: If OF=1 then OF and TF are cleared  
If OF=0 then no flags are affected.

Encoding: 11001110

CE

### **IRET: Interrupt Return**

Provides a return from an interrupt routine.

Format: IRET

Operation: Pops the stack into the registers IP, CS, and FLAGS.

Flags: Affected—all

Encoding: 11001111

CE

### **J(condition): Jump Short, If Condition Is Met**

Format: J(condition) short-label

Operation: If the condition is true, then a short jump is made to the label. The label must be within -128 to +127 bytes of the next instruction.

Flags: Affected—none

| Instruction | Jump If            | Condition             | Encoding |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| JA          | above              | CF = 0 and ZF = 0     | 77 disp  |
| JAE         | above or equal     | CF = 0                | 73 disp  |
| JB          | below              | CF = 1                | 72 disp  |
| JBE         | below or equal     | CF ≠ 1 or ZF = 1      | 76 disp  |
| JC          | carry              | CF ≠ 0                | 72 disp  |
| JCXZ        | CX is 0            | (CF or ZF) = 0        | E3 disp  |
| JE          | equal              | ZF = 1                | 74 disp  |
| JG          | greater            | ZF = 0 and SF = OF    | 7F disp  |
| JGE         | greater or equal   | ZF = OF               | 7D disp  |
| JL          | less               | (SF xor OF) = 1       | 7C disp  |
| JLE         | less or equal      | (SF xor OF) or ZF = 1 | 7E disp  |
| JNA         | not above          | CF = 1 or ZF = 1      | 76 disp  |
| JNAE        | not above or equal | CF = 1                | 72 disp  |
| JNB         | not below          | CF = 0                | 73 disp  |
| JNBE        | not below or equal | CF = 0 and ZF = 0     | 77 disp  |
| JNC         | not carry          | CF = 0                | 73 disp  |
| JNE         | not equal          | ZF ≠ 0                | 75 disp  |

|      |                                          |                       |         |
|------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| JNG  | not greater                              | (SF xor OF) or ZF = 1 | 7E disp |
| JNGE | not greater nor equal<br>(SF xor OF) = 1 | 7C disp               |         |
| JNL  | not less                                 | SF = OF               | 7D disp |
| JNLE | not less nor equal                       | ZF = 0 and SF = OF    | 7F disp |
| JNO  | not overflow                             | OF = 0                | 71 disp |
| JNP  | not parity                               | PF = 0                | 7B disp |
| JNS  | not sign                                 | SF = 0                | 79 disp |
| JNZ  | not zero                                 | ZF = 0                | 75 disp |
| JO   | overflow                                 | OF = 1                | 70 disp |
| JP   | parity                                   | PF = 1                | 7A disp |
| JPE  | parity even                              | PF = 1                | 7A disp |
| JPO  | parity odd                               | PF = 0                | 7B disp |
| JS   | sign                                     | SF = 1                | 78 disp |
| JZ   | zero                                     | ZF = 1                | 74 disp |

**JMP: Jump**

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format:    | JMP target                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Operation: | Control is transferred to target label.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Flags:     | Affected—none                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Encoding:  | Intrasegment direct<br>11101001 disp-low disp-hi<br>Intrasegment direct short<br>11101011 disp<br>Intersegment direct<br>11101010<br>Intersegment indirect<br>11111111 mod 101 r/m<br>Intrasegment indirect<br>11111111 mod 100 r/m |

**LAHF: Load AH from Flags**

|            |                                                                 |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format:    | LAHF                                                            |
| Operation: | The low eight bits of the FLAGS register are transferred to AH. |
| Flags:     | Affected—none                                                   |
| Encoding:  | 10011111<br>9F                                                  |

**LDS: Load Data Segment Register**

|                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Loads the DS register with a segment address and a general register with an offset so that data at the segment:offset may be accessed. |                                                                                                                                    |
| Format:                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                    |
| Operation:                                                                                                                             | The source is a doubleword memory operand. The lower word is placed in the destination register, and the upperword is placed in DS |
| Flags:                                                                                                                                 | Affected—none                                                                                                                      |
| Encoding:                                                                                                                              | 11001101 mod reg r/m                                                                                                               |

**LEA: Load Effective Address**

Loads an offset memory address to a register.

**Format:** LEA destination,source  
**Operation:** The offset address of the source memory operand is placed in the destination, which is a general register.  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** 10001101 mod reg r/m

#### **LES: Load Extra Segment Register**

Loads the ES register with a segment address and a general register with an offset so that data at the segment:offset may be accessed.

**Format:** LES destination,source  
**Operation:** The source is a doubleword memory operand. The lower word is placed in the destination register, and the upperword is placed in ES.  
**Flags:** none  
**Encoding:** 11000100 mod reg r/m

#### **LOCK: Lock Bus**

In a multiprocessor environment, locks the bus.

**Format:** LOCK  
**Operation:** LOCK is used as a prefix that can precede any instruction. The bus is locked for the duration of the execution of the instruction to prevent other processors from accessing memory.  
**Flags:** none  
**Encoding:** 11110000  
 F0

#### **LODS/LODSB/LODSW: Load Byte or Word String**

Transfers a memory byte or word indexed by SI to the accumulator.

**Format:** LODS source-string  
 or  
 LODSB  
 or  
 LODSW

**Operation:** The source byte (word) is loaded into AL (or AX). SI is incremented by 1 (or 2) if DF is clear; otherwise SI is decremented by 1 (or 2).  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** 1010110w

#### **LOOP**

Loop until count is complete.

**Format:** LOOP short-label  
**Operation:** CX is decremented by 1, and if the result is not zero then control is transferred to the labeled instruction; otherwise control flows to the next instruction.  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** 11100010 disp  
 E2

#### **LOOPE/LOOPZ: Loop if Equal/Loop If zero**

A loop is controlled by the counter and the ZF.

**Format:** LOOPE short-label  
 or

**LOOPZ short-label**  
 Operation: CX is decremented by 1, if the result is not zero and ZF = 1, then control is transferred to the labeled instruction; otherwise, control flows to the next instruction.  
 Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding: 11100001 disp  
 E1

#### **LOOPNE/LOOPNZ: Loop If Not Equal/Loop If Not Zero**

A loop is controlled by the counter and the ZF.

Format: LOOPNE short-label

or

LOOPNZ short-label

Operation: CX is decremented by 1, if the result is not zero and ZF = 0, then control is transferred to the labeled instruction; otherwise, control flows to the next instruction.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 11100000 disp  
 E0

#### **MOV: Move**

Move data.

Format: MOV destination,source

Operation: Copies the source operand to the destination operand.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: To memory from accumulator  
 1010001w addr-low addr-high  
 To accumulator from memory  
 1010000w addr-low addr-high  
 To segment register from memory or register  
 10001110 mod 0 seg r/m  
 To memory or register from segment register  
 10001100 mod 0 seg r/m  
 To register from memory or register/ To memory from reg  
 100010di mod reg r/m (addr-low addr-high)  
 To register from immediate-data  
 1011w reg data (data-high)  
 To memory or register from immediate-data  
 1100011w mod 000 r/m data (data-high)

#### **MOVS/MOVSB/MOVSW: Move Byte or Word String**

Transfers memory data addressed by SI to memory location addressed by ES:DI. Multiple bytes (or words) can be transferred if the prefix REP is used.

Format: MOVS dest-string,source-string

or

MOVSB

or

MOVSW

Operation: The source string byte (or word) is transferred to the destination operand. Both SI and DI are then incremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings) if DF = 0; otherwise, both decremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings).

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 1010010w

**MUL: Multiply**

Unsigned multiplication.

Format: MUL source

Operation: The multiplier is the source operand which is either memory or register. For byte multiplication (8-bit source) the multiplicand is AL and for word multiplication (16-bit source) the multiplicand is AX. The product is returned to AX (DX:AX for word multiplication). The flags CF and OF are set if the upper half of the product is not zero.

Flags: Affected—CF, OF

Undefined—AF, PF, SF, ZF

Encoding: 1111011w mod 100 r/m

**NEG: Negate**

Forms two's complement.

Format: NEG destination

Operation: The destination operand is subtracted from all 1's (0FFh for bytes and 0FFFFh for words). Then a 1 is added and the result placed in the destination.

Flags: Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF

Encoding: 1111011w mod 011 r/m

**NOP: No Operation**

Format: NOP

Operation: No operation is performed.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 10010000

90

**NOT: Logical Not**

Format: NOT destination

Operation: Forms the one's complement of the destination.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 1111011w mod 010 r/m

**OR: Logical Inclusive Or**

Format: OR destination,source

Operation: Performs logical OR operation on each bit position of the operands and places the result in the destination.

Flags: Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF

Undefined—AF

Encoding: Memory or register with register

000010dw mod reg r/m

Immediate to accumulator

0000110w data

Immediate to memory or register

1000000w mod 001 r/m

**OUT: Output Byte or Word**

Format: OUT accumulator,port

Operation: The contents of the designated I/O port are replaced by the contents of the accumulator. The port is either a constant (for fixed port) or DX (for variable port).

Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding: Fixed Port  
           1110011w port  
           Variable port  
           1110111w

**POP: Pop Word Off Stack to Destination**

Format: POP destination  
 Operation: The contents of the destination are replaced by the word at the top of the stack. The stack pointer is incremented by 2.  
 Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding: General register  
           01011 reg  
           Segment register  
           000 seg 111  
           Memory or register  
           10001111 mod 000 r/m

**POPF: Pop Flags Off Stack**

Format: POPF  
 Operation: Transfers flag bits from the top of the stack to the FLAGS register and then increments SP by 2.  
 Flags: Affected—all  
 Encoding: 10011101  
           9D

**PUSH: Push Word onto Stack**

Format: PUSH source  
 Operation: Decrements the SP register by 2 and then transfers a word from the source operand to the new top of stack.  
 Flags: none  
 Encoding: General register  
           01010reg  
           Segment register  
           000 seg 110  
           Memory or register  
           11111111 mod 110 r/m

**PUSHF: Push Flags onto Stack**

Format: PUSHF  
 Operation: Decrements SP by 2 and transfers flag bits to the top of the stack.  
 Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding: 10011100  
           9C

**RCL: Rotate Left Through Carry**

Rotates destination left through the CF flag one or more times.

Format: RCL destination,1  
           or  
           RCL destination,CL

Operation: The first format rotates the destination once through CF resulting in the msb being placed in CF and the old CF ended in the lsb. To rotate more than once, the count must be

placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the leftmost two bits of the old destination are equal, then OF is cleared; if they are unequal, OF is set to 1. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

Flags: Affected—CF,OF  
 Encoding: 110100vw mod .010 r/m  
 If v=0, count=1  
 If v=1, count=(CL)

### RCR: Rotate Right Through Carry

Rotates destination right through the CF flag one or more times.

Format: RCR destination,1  
 or  
 RCR destination,CL

Operation: The first format rotates the destination once through CF resulting in the lsb being placed in CF and the old CF ended in the msb. To rotate more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the leftmost two bits of the new destination are equal, then OF is cleared; if they are unequal, OF is set to 1. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

Flags: Affected—CF,OF  
 Encoding: 110100vw mod .011 r/m  
 If v = 0, count = 1  
 If v = 1, count = (CL)

### REP/REPZ/REPE/REPNE/REPNZ: Repeat String Operation

The string operation that follows is repeated while (CX) is not zero.

Format: REP/REPZ/REPE/REPNE/REPNZ string-instruction

Operation: The string operation is carried out until (CX) is decremented to 0. For CMPS and SCAS operations, the ZF is also used in terminating the iteration. For REP/REPZ/REPE the CMPS and SCAS operations are repeated if (CX) is not zero and ZF is 1. For REPNE/REPNZ, the CMPS and SCAS operations are repeated if (CX) is not zero and ZF is 0.

Flags: See the associated string instruction.  
 Encoding: REP/REPZ/REPE 11110011  
 REPNE/REPNZ 11110010

### RET: Return from Procedure

Returns control after a called procedure has been executed.

Format: RET [pop-value]

Operation: If RET is within a NEAR procedure, it is translated into an intrasegment return, which updates the IP by popping one word from the stack. If RET is within a FAR procedure, it is translated into an intersegment return that updates both the IP and CS. The optional pop value specifies a number of bytes in the stack to be discarded. These are parameters passed to the procedure.

Flags: Affected—none  
 Encoding:  
 Intrasegment  
 11000011  
 Intrasegment with pop value  
 11000010

Intersegment

11001011

Intersegment with pop value

11001010

### **ROL: Rotate Left**

Rotates destination left one or more times.

Format: ROL destination,1

or

ROL destination,CL

Operation: The first format rotates the destination once; CF also gets the msb. To rotate more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the new CF is not the same as the msb, then the OF is set, otherwise, OF is cleared. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

Flags: Affected—CF, OF

Encoding: 110100vw mod 000 r/m

If v = 0, count = 1

If v = 1, count = (CL)

### **ROR: Rotate Right**

Rotates destination right one or more times.

Format: ROR destination,1

or

ROR destination,CL

Operation: The first format rotates the destination once; CF also gets the lsb. To rotate more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the leftmost two bits of the new destination are equal, then OF is cleared; if they are unequal, OF is set to 1. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

Flags: Affected—CF, OF

Encoding: 110100vw mod 001 r/m

If v = 0, count = 1

If v = 1, count = (CL)

### **SAHF: Store AH in FLAGS Register**

Format: SAHF

Operation: Stores five bits of AH into the lower byte of the FLAGS register. Only the bits corresponding to the flags are transferred. The flags in the lower byte of FLAGS register are SF = bit 7, ZF = bit 6, AF = bit 4, PF = bit 2, and CF = bit 0.

Flags: Affected—AF, CF, PF, SF, ZF

Encoding: 10011110

9E

### **SAL/SHL: Shift Arithmetic Left/Shift Logical Left**

Format: SAL/SHL destination,1

or

SAL/SHL destination,CL

Operation: The first format shifts the destination once; CF gets the msb and a 0 is shifted into the lsb. To shift more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the

new CF is not the same as the msb, then the OF is set; otherwise, OF is cleared. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

**Flags:** Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
Undefined—AF  
**Encoding:** 110100vw mod 100 r/m  
If v = 0, count = 1  
If v = 1, count = (CL)

### SAR: Shift Arithmetic Right

**Format:** SAR destination,1  
or  
SAR destination,CL  
**Operation:** The first format shifts the destination once; CF gets the lsb and the msb is repeated (sign is retained). To shift more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 OF is cleared. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.  
**Flags:** Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
Undefined—AF  
**Encoding:** 110100vw mod 111 r/m  
If v = 0, count = 1  
If v = 1, count = (CL)

### SBB: Subtract with Borrow

**Format:** SBB destination,source  
**Operation:** Subtracts source from destination; and if CF is 1 then subtract 1 from the result. The result is placed in the destination.  
**Flags:** Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
**Encoding:** Memory or register with register  
000110dw mod reg r/m  
Immediate from accumulator  
0001110w data  
Immediate from memory or register  
100000sw mod 011 r/m data  
(s is set if an immediate-data-byte is subtracted from 16-bit memory or register.)

### SCAS/SCASB/SCASW: Scan Byte or Word String

Compares memory against the accumulator. Used with REP, it can scan multiple memory locations for a particular value.

**Format:** SCAS dest-string  
or  
SCASB  
or  
SCASW  
**Operation:** Subtracts the destination byte (or word) addressed by DI from AL (or AX). The flags are affected but the result is not saved. DI is incremented (if DF = 1), or decremented (if DF = 0) by 1 (byte strings) or 2 (word strings).  
**Flags:** Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
**Encoding:** 1010111w

**SHR: Shift Logical Right**

Format:      SHR destination,1  
               or  
               SHR destination,CL

Operation: The first format shifts the destination once; CF gets the lsb and a 0 is shifted into the msb. To shift more than once, the count must be placed in CL. When the count is 1 and the leftmost two bits are equal, then OF is cleared; otherwise, OF is set to 1. When the count is not 1, then OF is undefined. CL is not changed.

Flags:      Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
               Undefined—AF

Encoding:     110100vw mod 101 r/m  
               If v = 0, count = 1  
               If v = 1, count = (CL)

**STC: Set Carry Flag**

Format:      STC  
 Operation: CF is set to 1.  
 Flags:       Affected—CF  
 Encoding:    11111001  
               F9

**STD: Set Direction Flag**

Format:      STD  
 Operation: DF is set to 1.  
 Flags:       Affected—DF  
 Encoding:    11111101  
               FD

**STI: Set Interrupt Flag**

Format:      STI  
 Operation: IF is set to 1, thus enabling external interrupts.  
 Flags:       Affected—IF  
 Encoding:    11111011  
               FB

**STOS/STOSB/STOSW: Store Byte or Word String**

Stores the accumulator into memory. When used with REP, it can store multiple memory locations with the same value.

Format:      STOS dest-string  
               or  
               STOSB  
               or  
               STOSW

Operation: Stores AL (or AX) into the destination byte (or word) addressed by DI. DI is incremented (DF = 1), or decremented (DF = 0) by 1 (byte strings) or 2 (word strings).

Flags:       Affected—none  
 Encoding:    1010101w

**SUB: Subtract**

**Format:** SUB destination, source  
**Operation:** Subtracts source from destination. The result is placed in the destination.  
**Flags:** Affected—AF, CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
**Encoding:** Memory or register with register  
 001010dw mod reg r/m  
 immediate from accumulator  
 0010110w data  
 Immediate from memory or register  
 100000sw mod 101 r/m data  
 (s is set if an immediate-data-byte is subtracted from 16-bit memory or register.)

**TEST: Test (Logical Compare)**

**Format:** TEST destination, source  
**Operation:** The two operands are ANDed to affect the flags. The operands are not affected.  
**Flags:** Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Undefined—AF  
**Encoding:** Memory or register with register  
 1000010w mod reg r/m  
 Immediate with accumulator  
 1010100w data  
 Immediate with memory or register  
 1111011w mod 000 r/m data

**WAIT**

**Format:** WAIT  
**Operation:** The processor is placed in a wait state until activated by an external interrupt.  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** 10011011  
 9B

**XCHG: Exchange**

**Format:** XCHG destination, source  
**Operation:** The source operand and the destination operand are interchanged.  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** Register with accumulator  
 10010reg  
 Memory or register with register  
 1000011w mod reg r/m

**XLAT: Translate**

Performs a table lookup translation.  
**Format:** XLAT source-table  
**Operation:** BX must contain the offset address of the source table, which is at most 256 bytes. AL should contain the index of the table element. The operation replaces AL by the contents of the table element addressed by BX and AL.  
**Flags:** Affected—none  
**Encoding:** 11010111  
 D7

**XOR: Exclusive OR**

Format: XOR destination, source  
 Operation: The exclusive OR operation is performed bit-wise with the source and destination operands; the result is stored in the destination. CF and OF are cleared.  
 Flags: Affected—CF, OF, PF, SF, ZF  
 Undefined: AF  
 Encoding: Memory or register with register  
 001100dw mod reg r/m  
 Immediate to accumulator  
 0011010w data  
 Immediate to memory or register  
 1000000w mod 110 r/m data

---

**F.3****8087 Instructions**

The 8087 uses several data types, when transferring data to or from memory, the memory data definition determines the data type format. Table F.3 shows the association between the 8087 data types and the memory data definitions. In this section we only give 8087 instructions for simple arithmetic operations. Check the 8087 manual for other instructions.

**FADD: Add Real**

Format: FADD  
 or  
 FADD source  
 or  
 FADD destination, source  
 Operation: Adds a source operand to the destination. For the first form, the source operand is the top of the stack and the destination is ST(1). The top of the stack is popped, and its value is added to the new top. For the second form, the source is either short real or long real in memory; the destination is the top of the stack. For the third form, one of the operands is the top of the stack and the other is another stack register; the stack is not popped.

**Table F.3 8087 Data Types**

| <b>Data Type</b> | <b>Size (bits)</b> | <b>Memory Definition</b> | <b>Pointer Type</b> |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Word integer     | 16                 | DW                       | WORD PTR            |
| Short integer    | 32                 | DD                       | DWORD PTR           |
| Long integer     | 64                 | DQ                       | QWORD PTR           |
| Packed decimal   | 80                 | DT                       | TBYTE PTR           |
| Short real       | 32                 | DD                       | DWORD PTR           |
| Long real        | 64                 | DQ                       | QWORD PTR           |
| Temporary real   | 80                 | DT                       | TBYTE PTR           |

**FBLD: Packed Decimal Load**

Format: FBLD source

Operation: Loads a packed decimal number to the top of the stack. The source operand is of type DT (10 bytes).

**FBSTP: Packed BCD Store and Pop**

Format: FBSTP destination

Operation: Converts the top of the stack to a packed BCD format and stores the result in the memory destination. Then the stack is popped.

**FDIV: Divide Real**

Format: FDIV

or

FDIV source

or

FDIV destination, source

Operation: Divides the destination by the source. For the first form, the source operand is the top of the stack and the destination is ST(1). The top of the stack is popped and its value is used to divide into the new top. For the second form, the source is either short real or long real in memory; the destination is the top of the stack. For the third form, one of the operands is the top of the stack and the other is another stack register; the stack is not popped.

**FIADD: Integer Add**

Format: FIADD source

Operation: Adds the source operand to the top of the stack. The source operand can be either a short integer or a word integer.

**FIDIV: Integer Divide**

Format: FIDIV source

Operation: Divides the top of the stack by the source. The source operand can be either a short integer or a word integer.

**FILD: Integer Load**

Format: FILD source

Operation: Loads a memory integer operand onto the top of the stack. The source operand is either word integer, short integer, or long integer.

**FIMUL: Integer Multiply**

Format: FIMUL source

Operation: Multiplies the source operand to the top of the stack. The source operand can be either a short integer or a word integer.

**FIST: Integer Store**

Format: FIST destination

Operation: Rounds the top of the stack to an integer value and stores to a memory location. The destination may be word integer or short integer. The stack is not popped.

**FISTP: Integer Store and Pop**

Format: FISTP destination

Operation: Rounds the top of the stack to an integer value and stores to a memory location. Then the stack is popped. The destination may be word integer, short integer, or long integer.

**FISUB: Integer Subtract**

Format: FISUB source

Operation: Subtracts the source operand from the top of the stack. The source operand can be either a short integer or a word integer.

**FLD: Load Real**

Format: FLD source

Operation: Loads a real operand onto the top of the stack. The source may be a stack register ST(i), or a memory location. For a memory operand, the data type may be any of the real formats.

**FMUL: Multiply Real**

Format: FMUL

or

FMUL source

or

FMUL destination,source

Operation: Multiplies a source operand to the destination. For the first form, the source operand is the top of the stack and the destination is ST(1). The top of the stack is popped and its value is multiplied to the new top. For the second form, the source is either short real or long real in memory; the destination is the top of the stack. For the third form, one of the operands is the top of the stack and the other is another stack register; the stack is not popped.

**FST: Store Real**

Format: FST destination

Operation: Stores the top of the stack to a memory location or another stack register. The memory destination may be short real (doubleword) or long real (quadword). The stack is not popped.

**FSTP: Store Real and Pop**

Format: FSTP destination

Operation: Stores the top of the stack to a memory location or another stack register. Then the stack is popped. The memory destination may be short real (doubleword), long real (quadword), or temporary real (10 bytes).

**FSUB: Subtract Real**

Format: FSUB

or

FSUB source

or

FSUB destination,source

**Operation:** Subtracts a source operand from the destination. For the first form, the source operand is the top of the stack and the destination is ST(1). The top of the stack is popped and its value is subtracted from the new top. For the second form, the source is either short real or long real in memory; the destination is the top of the stack. For the third form, one of the operands is the top of the stack and the other is another stack register; the stack is not popped.

## F.4 80286 Instructions

The real-mode 80286 instruction set includes all 8086 instructions plus the extended instruction set. The extended instruction set contains five groups of instructions, (1) multiply with immediate values (IMUL), (2) input and output strings (INS and OUTS), (3) stack operations (POPA, PUSH immediate, PUSH), and (4) shifts and rotates with immediate count values, and (5) instructions for translating high-level language constructs (BOUND and ENTER). We only give the instructions in groups 1-4.

### IMUL: Integer Immediate Multiply

**Format:** IMUL destination, immediate  
or

IMUL destination, source, immediate

**Operation:** For the first format, the immediate operand, which must be a byte, is multiplied with the destination, which must be a 16-bit register. The lower 16-bit of the result is stored in the register. For the second format, the 8- or 16-bit immediate operand is multiplied with the source operand, which may be a 16-bit register or a memory word. The lower 16-bit of the result is stored in the destination, which must be a 16-bit register. The flags CF and OF are set if the upper half of the product is not the sign-extension of the lower half.

**Flags:** Affected—CF, OF

Undefined—AF, PF, SF, ZF

**Encoding:** 011010s1 mod reg r/m data [data if s=0]

### INS/INSB/INSW: Input from Port to String

Transfers a byte or word string element from a port to memory. Multiple bytes or words can be transferred if the prefix REP is used.

**Format:** INS destination-string, port

or

INSB

or

INSW

**Operation:** A byte or word is transferred from the port designated by DX to the location ES:DI. DI is then incremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings) if DF = 0; otherwise, DI is decremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings).

**Flags:** Affected—none

**Encoding:** 0110110w

**OUTS/OUTSB/OUTSW: Output String to Port**

Transfers a byte or word string element from memory to a port. Multiple bytes or words can be transferred if the prefix REP is used.

Format: OUTS destination-string, port  
or  
OUTSB  
or  
OUTSW

Operation: A byte or word is transferred from memory located at DS:SI to the port designated by DX. SI is then incremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings) if DF = 0; otherwise, SI is decremented by 1 (or 2 for word strings).

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 0110111w

**POPA: Pop All General Registers**

Format: POPA

Operation: The registers are popped in the order DI, SI, BP, SP, BX, DX, CX, and AX.

Encoding: 01100001  
61

**PUSH: Push Immediate**

Format: PUSH data

Operation: The data may be 8 or 16 bits. A data byte is signed extended into 16 bits before pushing onto the stack.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 011010s0 data [data if s = 0]

**PUSHA: Push All General Registers**

Format: PUSHA

Operation: The registers are pushed in the order AX, CX, DX, BX, original SP, BP, SI, and DI.

Flags: Affected—none

Encoding: 01100000  
60

The general format of shifts and rotates with immediate count values is  
Opcode destination, immediate

where opcode is any one of RCL, RCR, ROL, ROR, SAL, SHL, SAR, and SHR. If the immediate value is 1, then the instruction is the same as an 8086 instruction. For an immediate value of 2-31, the instruction operates like an 8086 instruction in which CL contains the value. The 80286 does not allow a constant count value to be greater than 31.

The encodings for immediate values of 2-31 are

|                      |
|----------------------|
| RCL                  |
| 1100000w mod 010 r/m |
| RCR                  |
| 1100000w mod 011 r/m |
| ROL                  |
| 1100000w mod 000 r/m |
| ROR                  |
| 1100000w mod 001 r/m |

```

SAL/SHL
1100000w mod 100 r/m
SAR
1100000w mod 111 r/m
SHR
1100000w mod 101 r/m

```

**F.5****80386 Instructions**

The real-mode 80386 instruction set includes all real-mode 80286 instructions plus their 32-bit extensions, together with six groups of new instructions, (1) bit scans, (2) bit tests, (3) move with extensions, (4) set byte on condition, (5) double-precision shifts, and (6) move to or from special registers. We only give instructions in groups 1-5.

**Bit Scan Instructions**

The bit scan instructions are BSF (bit scan forward) and BSR (bit scan reverse). They are used to scan an operand to find the first set bit, and they differ only in the direction of the scan.

**Formats:**   BSF destination,source  
              or  
              BSR destination,source

**Operation:** The destination must be a register, the source is either a register or a memory location. They must be both words or both doublewords. The source is scanned for the first set bit. If the bits are all 0, then ZF is cleared; otherwise, ZF is set and the destination register is loaded with the bit position of the first set bit. For BSF the scanning is from bit 0 to the msb, and for BSR the scanning is from the msb to bit 0.

**Flags:**      Affected—ZF

**Encoding:**

```

00001111 10111101 mod reg r/m
BSR
00001111 10111101 mod reg r/m

```

**Bit Test Instructions**

The bit test instructions are BT (bit test), BTC (bit test and complement), BTR (bit test and reset), and BTS (bit test and set). They are used to copy a bit from the destination operand to the CF so that the bit can be tested by a JC or JNC instruction.

**Format:**   BT destination,source  
              or  
              BTC destination,source  
              or  
              BTR destination,source  
              or  
              BTS destination,source

**Operation:** The source specifies a bit position in the destination to be copied to the CF. BT simply copies the bit to CF, BTC copies the bit and complements it in the destination, BTR copies the bit and resets it in the destination, and BTS copies the

bit and sets it in the destination. The source is either a 16-bit register, 32-bit register, or an 8-bit constant. The destination may be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or memory. If the source is a register, then the source and destination must have the same size.

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flags:    | Affected—CF                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Encoding: | Source is 8-bit immediate data:<br>BT<br>00001111 10111010 mod 100 r/m<br>BTC<br>00001111 10111010 mod 111 r/m<br>BTR<br>00001111 10111010 mod 110 r/m<br>BTS<br>00001111 10111010 mod 101 r/m |
|           | Source is register:<br>BT<br>00001111 10100011 mod reg r/m<br>BTC<br>00001111 10111011 mod reg r/m<br>BTR<br>00001111 10110011 mod reg r/m<br>BTS<br>00001111 10101011 mod reg r/m             |

### ***Move with Extension Instructions***

The move with extension instructions are MOVsx (move with sign-extend) and MOVzx (move with zero-extend). These instructions move a small source into a bigger destination and extend to the upper half with the sign or a zero.

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format:    | MOVsx destination,source<br>or<br>MOVzx destination,source                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Operation: | The destination must be a register, the source is either a register or memory. If the source is a byte (or word) the destination is a word (or doubleword). MOVsx copies and sign extends the source into the destination. MOVzx copies and zero extends the source into the destination. |
| Flags:     | Affected—none                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Encoding:  | MOVsx<br>00001111 1011111w mod reg r/m<br>MOVzx<br>00001111 1011011w mod reg r/m                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

### ***Set Byte on Condition Instructions***

The set byte on condition instructions set the destination byte to 1 if the condition is true and clear it if the condition is false.

|            |                                                                                                                            |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format:    | SET(condition) destination                                                                                                 |
| Operation: | The destination is either an 8-bit register or memory. It is set to 1 if condition is true and to 0 if condition is false. |
| Flags:     | Affected—none                                                                                                              |
| Encoding:  | 00001111 opcode mod 000 r/m<br>(the opcode byte is given in the following in hex)                                          |

| <b>Instruction</b> | <b>Set If</b>         | <b>Condition</b>      | <b>Opcode</b> |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| SETA               | above                 | CF = 0 and ZF = 0     | 97            |
| SETAE              | above or equal        | CF = 0                | 93            |
| SETB               | below                 | CF = 1                | 92            |
| SETBE              | below or equal        | CF = 1 or ZF = 1      | 96            |
| SETC               | carry                 | CF = 0                | 92            |
| SETE               | equal                 | ZF = 1                | 94            |
| SETGG              | greater               | ZF = 0 and SF = OF    | 9F            |
| SETGE              | greater or equal      | ZF = OF               | 9D            |
| SETL               | less                  | (SF xor OF) = 1       | 9C            |
| SETLE              | less or equal         | (SF xor OF) or ZF = 1 | 9E            |
| SETNA              | not above             | CF = 1 or ZF = 1      | 96            |
| SETNAE             | not above or equal    | CF = 1                | 92            |
| SETNB              | not below             | CF = 0                | 93            |
| SETNBE             | not below or equal    | CF = 0 and ZF = 0     | 97            |
| SETNC              | not carry             | CF = 0                | 93            |
| SETNE              | not equal             | ZF = 0                | 95            |
| SETNG              | not greater           | (SF xor OF) or ZF = 1 | 9E            |
| SETNGE             | not greater nor equal | (SF xor OF) = 1       | 9C            |
| SETNL              | not less              | SF = OF               | 9D            |
| SETNLE             | not less nor equal    | ZF = 0 and SF = OF    | 9F            |
| SETNO              | not overflow          | OF = 0                | 91            |
| SETNP              | not parity            | PF = 0                | 9B            |
| SETNS              | not sign              | SF = 0                | 99            |
| SETNZ              | not zero              | ZF = 0                | 95            |
| SETO               | overflow              | OF = 1                | 90            |
| SETP               | parity                | PF = 1                | 9A            |
| SETPE              | parity even           | PF = 1                | 9A            |
| SETPO              | parity odd            | PF = 0                | 9B            |
| SETS               | sign                  | SF = 1                | 98            |
| SETZ               | zero                  | ZF = 1                | 94            |

### **Double-Precision Shift Instructions**

The double-precision shift instructions are SHLD (double-precision shift left) and SHRD (double-precision shift right).

**Format:**     SHLD destination,source,count  
               or  
               SHRD destination,source,count

**Operation:** The destination is either register or memory, the source is a register, and both must be of the same size (either 16 or 32 bits). Count is either an 8-bit constant or CL. The count specifies the number of shifts for the destination. Instead of shifting in zeros as in the case of the single-precision shifts, the bits shifted into the destination are from the source. However, the source is not altered. The SF, ZF, and PF flags are set according to the result; CF is set to the last bit shifted out; OF and AF are undefined.

Flags: Affected—SF, ZF, PF, CF  
Undefined—OF, AF  
Encoding: Count is immediate data:  
SHLD  
00001111 10100100 mod reg r/m [disp] data  
SHRD  
00001111 10101100 mod reg r/m [disp] data  
Count is CL:  
SHLD  
00001111 10100101 mod reg r/m [disp]  
SHRD  
00001111 10101101 mod reg r/m [disp]



# Assembler Directives

This appendix describes the most important assembler directives. To explain the syntax, we will use the following notation:

- | separates choices
- { } enclosed items are optional
- [ ] repeat the enclosed items 0 or more times

If syntax is not given, the directive has no required or optional arguments.

## .ALPHA

Tells the assembler to arrange segments in alphabetical order. Placed before segment definitions.

## ASSUME

*Syntax:*      ASSUME segment\_register:name [,segment\_register: name]

Tells the assembler to associate a segment register with a segment name.

*Example:*    ASSUME CS:C\_SEG, DS:D\_SEG, SS:S\_SEG, ES:D\_SEG

Note: the name NOTHING cancels the current segment register association. In particular, ASSUME NOTHING cancels segment register associations made by previous ASSUME statements.

## .CODE

*Syntax:*      .CODE (name)

A simplified segment directive (MASM 5.0) for defining a code segment.

## .COMM

*Syntax:*      .COMM definition [,definition]

where definition has the syntax NEARFAR label:size[:count]

label is a variable name

size is BYTE, WORD, DWORD, QWORD, or TBYTE

count is the number of elements contained in the variable  
(default = 1)

Defines a communal variable; such a variable has both PUBLIC and EXTRN attributes, so it can be used in different assembly modules.

*Examples:*    COMM     NEAR WORD1:WORD  
                   COMM     FAR ARR1:BYTE:10, ARR2:BYTE:20

### COMMENT

*Syntax:*    COMMENT delimiter {text}  
                   {text}  
                   delimiter {text}

where delimiter is the first nonblank character after the COMMENT directive. Used to define a comment. Causes the assembler to ignore all text between the first and second delimiters. Any text on the same line as the second delimiter is ignored as well.

*Examples:*

```
COMMENT * Uses an asterisk as the delimiter. All this
text is ignored *
COMMENT + This text and the following instruction is ig-
nored too +
 MOV AX,BX
```

### .CONST

A simplified segment directive for defining a segment containing data that will not be changed by the program. Used mostly in assembly language routines to be called by a high-level language.

### .CREF and .XCREF

*Syntax:*    .CREF {name [,name]}  
                   .XCREF {name [,name]}

In the generation of the cross-reference (.CRF) file, .CREF directs the generation of cross-referencing of names in a program. .CREF with no arguments causes cross-referencing of all names. This is the default directive.

.XCREF turns off cross-referencing in general, or just for the specified names.

*Example:*

```
.XCREF ;turns off cross-referencing
.
.
.
.CREF ;turns cross-referencing back
.
.
.
.XCREF NAME1,NAME2 ;turns off cross-referencing
 ;of NAME1 and NAME2
```

### .DATA and .DATA?

Simplified segment directives for defining data segments. .DATA defines an initialized data segment and .DATA? defines an uninitialized data segment. Uninitialized data consist of variables defined with "?". .DATA? is used mostly with assembly language routines to be called from a high-level language. For stand-alone assembly language programs, the .DATA segment may contain uninitialized data.

**Data-Defining Directives****Directive      Meaning**

|    |                                                          |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------|
| DB | define byte                                              |
| DD | define doubleword (4 bytes)                              |
| DF | define farword (6 bytes); used only with 80386 processor |
| DQ | define quadword (8 bytes)                                |
| DT | define tenbyte (10 bytes)                                |
| DW | define word (2 bytes)                                    |

Syntax: {name} directive initializer [,initializer]

where name is a variable name. If name is missing, memory is allocated but no name is associated with it. Initializer is a constant, constant expression, or ?. Multiple values may be defined by using the DUP operator. See Chapter 10.

**DOSSEG**

Tells the assembler to adopt the DOS segment-ordering convention. For a SMALL model program, the order is code, data, stack. This directive should appear before any segment definitions.

**ELSE**

Used in a conditional block. The syntax is

```
Condition
 statements1
ELSE
 statements2
ENDIF
```

If Condition is true, statements1 are assembled; if Condition is false, statements2 are assembled. See Chapter 13 for the form of Condition.

**END**

Syntax: END {start\_address}

Ends a source program. Start\_address is a name where execution is to begin when the program is loaded. For a program with only one source module, start\_address would ordinarily be the name of the main procedure or a label indicating the first instruction. For a program with several modules, each module must have an END but only one of them can specify a start\_address.

**ENDIF**

Ends a conditional block. See Chapter 13.

**ENDM**

Ends a macro or repeat block. See MACRO and REPT.

**ENDP**

Ends a procedure. See PROC.

**ENDS**

Ends a segment or structure. See SEGMENT and STRUC.

**EQU**

**Syntax:** There are two forms, numeric equates and string equates. A numeric equate has the form

```
name EQU numeric_expression
```

A string equate has the form

```
name EQU <string>
```

The EQU directive assigns the expression following EQU to the constant symbol name. Numeric\_expression must evaluate to a number. The assembler replaces each occurrence of name in a program by numeric\_expression or string. No memory is allocated for name. Name may not be redefined.

**Examples:**

|        |                                |
|--------|--------------------------------|
| MAX    | EQU 32767                      |
| MIN    | EQU MAX - 10                   |
| PROMPT | EQU '<type a line of text:\$>' |
| ARG    | EQU <[DI + 2]>                 |

Use in a program:

```
.DATA
 MSG DB PROMPT
.CODE
MAIN PROC
 MOV AX,MIN ;equivalent to MOV AX,32757
 MOV BX,ARG ;equivalent to MOV BX,[DI+2]
```

= (equal)

**Syntax:** name = expression

where expression is an integer, constant expression, or a one or two-character string constant.

The directive = works like EQU, except that names defined with = can be redefined later in a program.

**Examples:**

```
CTR = 1
 MOV AX,CTR ;translates to MOV AX,1
CTR = CTR + 5
 MOV BX,CTR ;translates to MOV BX,6
```

The = directive is often used in macros. See Chapter 13.

**.ERR Directives**

These are conditional error directives that can be used to force the assembler to display an error message during assembly, for debugging purposes. The assembler displays the message "Forced error", with an identifying number. See Chapter 13.

| Directive        | Number | Forced error if                    |
|------------------|--------|------------------------------------|
| .ERR1            | 87     | encountered during assembly pass 1 |
| .ERR2            | 88     | encountered during assembly pass 2 |
| .ERR             | 89     | encountered                        |
| .ERRE expression | 90     | expression is false (0)            |

|                       |    |                              |
|-----------------------|----|------------------------------|
| .ERRNZ expression     | 91 | expression is true (nonzero) |
| .ERRNDEF name         | 92 | name has not been defined.   |
| .ERRDEF name          | 93 | name has been defined.       |
| .ERRB <argument>      | 94 | argument is blank            |
| .ERRNB <argument>     | 95 | argument is not blank        |
| .ERRDN <arg1>,<arg2>  | 96 | arg1 and arg2 are identical  |
| .ERRDIF <arg1>,<arg2> | 97 | arg1 and arg2 are different  |

**EVEN**

Advances the location counter to the next even address.

**EXITM**

Used in a macro or repeat block. Tells the assembler to terminate the macro or repeat block expansion.

**EXTRN**

*Syntax:* EXTRN .name:type [,name:type].

Informs the assembler of an external name; that is, a name defined in another module. Type must match the type declared for the name in the other module. Type can be NEAR, FAR, PROC, BYTE, WORD, DWORD, FWORD, QWORD, TBYTE, or ABS. See Chapter 14..

**.FARADATA and .FARDATA?**

*Syntax:* .FARDATA {name}  
.FARDATA? {name}

Used primarily with compilers for defining extra data segments.

**GROUP**

*Syntax:* name GROUP segment [,segment]

A group is a collection of segments that are associated with the same starting address. Variables and labels defined in the segments of the group are assigned addresses relative to the start of the group, rather than relative to the beginning of the segments in which they are defined. This makes it possible to refer to all the data in the group by initializing a single segment register. Note: the same result can be obtained by giving the same name and a PUBLIC attribute to all the segments.

**IF directives**

These directives are used to grant the assembler permission to assemble the statements following the directives, depending on conditions. A list may be found in Chapter 13.

**INCLUDE**

*Syntax:* INCLUDE filespec

where filespec specifies a file containing valid assembly language statements. In addition to a file name, filespec may include a drive and path. The directive causes the assembler to insert the contents of the file at the position of the INCLUDE in the source file, and to begin processing the file's statements.

*Examples:*

```
INCLUDE MACLIB
INCLUDE C:\BIN\PROG1.ASM
```

#### LABEL

*Syntax:* name LABEL type

where type is BYTE, WORD, DWORD, FWORD, QWORD, TBYTE, or the name of a previously-defined structure.

This directive provides a way to define or redefine the type associated with a name.

*Example:*

```
WORD_ARR LABEL WORD
BYTE_ARR DB 100 DUP (0)
```

Here WORD\_ARR defines a 50-word array, and BYTE\_ARR defines a 100-byte array. The same address is assigned to both variables.

#### .LALL

Causes the assembler to list all statements in a macro expansion, except those preceded by a double semicolon.

#### .LIST and .XLIST

.LIST causes the assembler to include the statements following the .LIST directive in the source program listing. .XLIST causes the listing of the statements following the .XLIST directive to be suppressed.

#### LOCAL

*Syntax:* LOCAL name [,name]

Used inside a macro. Each time the assembler encounters a LOCAL name during macro expansion, it replaces it by a unique name of form ??number. In this way duplicate names are avoided if the macro is called several times in a program. See Chapter 13.

#### MACRO and ENDM

*Syntax:* name MACRO [parameter [,parameter]]

These directives are used to define a macro.

*Example:*

```
EXCHANGE MACRO WORD1,WORD2
 PUSH WORD1
 PUSH WORD2
 POP WORD1
 POP WORD2
 ENDM
```

See Chapter 13.

#### .MODEL

*Syntax:* .MODEL memory\_model

A simplified segment directive for defining a memory model. Memory model can be any of the following:

| <b>Model</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TINY         | code and data in one segment                                                                      |
| SMALL        | code in one segment<br>data in one segment                                                        |
| MEDIUM       | code in more than one segment<br>data in one segment                                              |
| COMPACT      | code in one segment<br>data in more than one segment                                              |
| LARGE        | code in more than one segment<br>data in more than one segment<br>no array larger than 64 KB      |
| HUGE         | code in more than one segment<br>data in more than one segment<br>arrays may be larger than 64 KB |

**ORG****Syntax:** ORG expression

where expression must resolve to a 2-byte number.

Sets the location counter to the value of expression. For example, in a .COM program, the directive ORG 100h sets the location counter to 100h, so that variables will be assigned addresses relative to the start of the program, rather than in the 100h-byte program segment prefix, which precedes the program in memory. Another use of ORG is to define a data area that can be shared by several variables. For example,

```
.DATA
WORD1_ARR DW 100 DUP (?)
ORG 0
WORD2_ARR DW 50 DUP (?)
WORD3_ARR DW 50 DUP (?)
```

This definition causes WORD2\_ARR and the first 50 words in WORD1\_ARR to occupy the same memory space. Similarly, WORD3\_ARR and the last 50 words of WORD1\_ARR occupy the same space.

**%OUT****Syntax:** %OUT text

where text is a line of ASCII characters.

Used to display a message at a specified place in an assembly listing. Often used during conditional assembly.

*Example:*

```
IFNDEF SUM
 SUM DW ?
%OUT SUM is defined here
ENDIF
```

If SUM had not been previously defined, it would be defined here and the message would be displayed.

**PAGE**

**Syntax:** PAGE {(length),width}

where length is 10-255 and width is 60-132. Default values are length = 50 and width = 80.

Used to create a page break or to specify the maximum number of lines per page and the maximum number of characters per line in a program listing.

**Examples:**

|            |                                 |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| PAGE       | ;creates a page break           |
| PAGE 50,70 | ;sets maximum page length to 50 |
| PAGE ,132  | ;and maximum page width to 70   |
|            | ;sets maximum page width to 132 |

**PROC and ENDP**

**Syntax:** name PROC distance  
name ENDP

where distance is NEAR or FAR. Default is NEAR.

Used to begin and end a procedure definition. See Chapter 8.

**Processor and Coprocessor Directives**

The following directives define the instruction set recognized by MASM. These directives must be placed outside segment declarations. In the following, 8086 includes 8088, 8087, 80287, and 80387 are coprocessors.

| <b>Directive</b> | <b>Enables assembly of instructions for processors and coprocessors</b> |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|       |                                                              |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8086  | 8086, 8087                                                   |
| .186  | 8086, 8087, and 80186 additional instructions                |
| .286  | 8086, 80287, and additional 80286 nonprivileged instructions |
| .286P | same as .286 plus 80286 privileged instructions              |
| .386  | 8086, 80387 and 80286 and 80386 nonprivileged instructions   |
| .386P | same as .386 plus 80386 privileged instructions              |
| .8087 | 8087; disables instructions unique to the 80287 and 80387    |
| .287  | 8087, and 80287 additional instructions                      |
| .387  | 8087, 80287, and 80387 additional instructions               |

**PUBLIC**

**Syntax:** PUBLIC name [,name]

where name is a variable, label, or numeric equate defined in the module containing the directive.

Used to make names in this module available for use in other modules. Not to be confused with the PUBLIC combine-type, which is used to combine segments. See Chapter 14.

**PURGE**

**Syntax:** PURGE macroname [,macroname]

where macroname is the name of a macro.

Used to delete macros from memory during assembly. This might be necessary if the system does not have enough memory to keep all the macros a program needs in memory at the same time.

*Example:*

```
MAC1 ;expand macro MAC1
PURGE MAC1 ;don't need it anymore
```

#### .RADIX

*Syntax:* .RADIX base

where base is a decimal number in the range 2-16.

Specifies the default radix for representation of integer constants. This means that in the absence of a "b", "d", or "h" as the last character in the representation of an integer, the assembler will assume the number is represented in the base specified by the directive. The default is 10 (decimal).

*Examples:*

```
.DATA
.RADIX 16 ;hexadecimal
A DW 1101 ;interpreted as 1101h
.RADIX 2
B DW 1101 ;interpreted as 1101b
```

#### RECORD

Used to define a record variable. This is a byte or word variable in which specific bit fields can be accessed symbolically. See the Microsoft Macro Assembler Programmer's Guide.

#### REPT and ENDM

*Syntax:* REPT expression  
statements  
ENDM

where expression must evaluate to a 16-bit unsigned number.

Defines a repeat block. REPT causes the statements in the block to be assembled the number of times equal to the value of expression. A repeat block can be placed at the position where the statements are to be repeated, or it can be put inside a macro. See Chapter 13.

#### SALL

Causes the assembler to suppress the listing of macro expansions.

#### SEGMENT and ENDS

*Syntax:* name SEGMENT (align) {combine} ('class')
statements
name ENDS

*where* align is PARA, BYTE, WORD, or PAGE  
combine is PUBLIC, COMMON, STACK, or AT  
class is a name enclosed in single quotes

These directive define a program segment. Align, combine, and class specify how the segment will be aligned in memory, combined with other segments, and ordered with respect to other segments. See Chapter 14.

**.SEQ**

Directs the assembler to leave the segments in their original order. Has the same effect as .ALPHA.

**.STACK**

*Syntax:*      .STACK {size}

where size is a positive integer.

A simplified segment directive which defines a stack segment of size bytes. Default size is 1 kilobyte.

**STRUC and ENDS**

Used to declare a structure. This is a collection of data objects that can be accessed symbolically as a single data object. See the *Microsoft Macro Assembler Programmer's Guide*.

**SUBTTL**

*Syntax:*      .SUBTTL {text}

Causes a subtitle of up to 60 characters to be placed on the third line of each page in an assembly listing. May be used more than once.

**TITLE**

*Syntax:*      .TITLE {text}

Causes a title to be placed on each page of an assembly listing. May be used only once.

**.XALL**

Causes the assembler to list all statements in a macro expansion that produce code. Comments are suppressed.

**.XREF**

See .CREF.

**.XLIST**

See .LIST.

## **Keyboard Scan Codes**

The keyboard communicates with the processor by scan codes assigned to the keys. When a key is pressed, the keyboard sends a make code to the computer, and when a key is released a break code is sent. Table H.1 shows the make codes of the original 83-key IBM keyboard; a break code can be obtained from the make codes by ORing it with 80h.

The INT 9 routine is responsible for getting the scan codes from the I/O port and placing an ASCII code and the scan code in the keyboard buffer. We can classify the keys into ASCII keys, function keys, and shift keys. The ASCII keys include the character keys, the space bar, and the control keys Esc, Enter, Backspace, and Tab; these keys have corresponding ASCII codes. The function keys include F1 to F10, the arrow keys, Pg Up, Pg Dn, Home, End, Ins, and Del. These keys do not have ASCII codes, and a 0 is used to indicate a function key in the keyboard buffer. The shift keys include left and right shifts, Caps Lock, Ctrl, Alt, Num Lock, and Scroll Lock. The scan codes of the shift keys are not placed in the keyboard buffer. Instead, the INT 9 routine uses the keyboard flags byte (address 0000:0417) to keep track of the shift keys. The keyboard flags can be retrieved by using INT 16h, function 2.

When certain shift keys are down, the INT 9 routine places different scan codes in the keyboard buffer to indicate key combinations. Table H.2 shows the scan codes for key combinations.

The 101-key enhanced keyboard uses a different set of make and break codes. However, except for the new keys F11 and F12, the INT 9 routine still generates the 83-key scan codes for the keyboard buffer to maintain compatibility. Table H.3 shows the new scan codes generated by the INT 9 routine for the enhanced keyboard. There are also some new combination scan codes. These new scan codes can only be retrieved by INT 16h functions 10h and 11h.

When the Ctrl key is down, INT 9 will generate different ASCII codes for letter keys. Table H.4 shows the scan code and ASCII for the key combinations.

**Table H.1 83-Key Keyboard Scan Codes**

| <b>Hex Scan Code</b> | <b>Key</b> | <b>Hex Scan Code</b> | <b>Key</b>  | <b>Hex Scan Code</b> | <b>Key</b>    |
|----------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------|
| 01                   | Esc        | 1D                   | Ctrl        | 39                   | Space bar     |
| 02                   | 1          | 1E                   | A           | 3A                   | Caps Lock     |
| 03                   | 2          | 1F                   | S           | 3B                   | F1            |
| 04                   | 3          | 20                   | D           | 3C                   | F2            |
| 05                   | 4          | 21                   | F           | 3D                   | F3            |
| 06                   | 5          | 22                   | G           | 3E                   | F4            |
| 07                   | 6          | 23                   | H           | 3F                   | F5            |
| 08                   | 7          | 24                   | J           | 40                   | F6            |
| 09                   | 8          | 25                   | K           | 41                   | F7            |
| 0A                   | 9          | 26                   | L           | 42                   | F8            |
| 0B                   | 0          | 27                   | ;           | 43                   | F9            |
| 0C                   | -          | 28                   | "           | 44                   | F10           |
| 0D                   | = +        | 29                   | ' -         | 45                   | Num Lock      |
| 0E                   | Back Space | 2A                   | Left Shift  | 46                   | Scroll Lock   |
| 0F                   | Tab        | 2B                   | \ \         | 47                   | 7 Home        |
| 10                   | Q          | 2C                   | Z           | 48                   | 8 Up Arrow    |
| 11                   | W          | 2D                   | X           | 49                   | 9 Pg Up       |
| 12                   | E          | 2E                   | C           | 4A                   | - (num)       |
| 13                   | R          | 2F                   | V           | 4B                   | 4 Left Arrow  |
| 14                   | T          | 30                   | B           | 4C                   | 5 (num)       |
| 15                   | Y          | 31                   | N           | 4D                   | 6 Right Arrow |
| 16                   | U          | 32                   | M           | 4E                   | + (num)       |
| 17                   | I          | 33                   | , <         | 4F                   | 1 End         |
| 18                   | O          | 34                   | , >         | 50                   | 2 Down Arrow  |
| 19                   | P          | 35                   | / ?         | 51                   | 3 Pg Dn       |
| 1A                   | [ {        | 36                   | Right Shift | 52                   | 0 Ins         |
| 1B                   | ] }        | 37                   | Prt Sc      | 53                   | Del .         |
| 1C                   | Enter      | 38                   | Alt         |                      |               |

**Table H.2 Scan Codes for Combination Keys**

| <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b> | <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b>      | <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b> |
|------------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------|
| 54               | Shift F1    | 65               | Ctrl F8          | 75               | Ctrl End    |
| 55               | Shift F2    | 66               | Ctrl F9          | 76               | Ctrl PgDn   |
| 56               | Shift F3    | 67               | Alt F10          | 77               | Ctrl Home   |
| 57               | Shift F4    | 68               | Alt F1           | 78               | Alt 1       |
| 58               | Shift F5    | 69               | Alt F2           | 79               | Alt 2       |
| 59               | Shift F6    | 6A               | Alt F3           | 7A               | Alt 3       |
| 5A               | Shift F7    | 6B               | Alt F4           | 7B               | Alt 4       |
| 5B               | Shift F8    | 6C               | Alt F5           | 7C               | Alt 5       |
| 5C               | Shift F9    | 6D               | Alt F6           | 7D               | Alt 6       |
| 5D               | Shift F10   | 6E               | Alt F7           | 7E               | Alt 7       |
| 5E               | Ctrl F1     | 6F               | Alt F8           | 7F               | Alt 8       |
| 5F               | Ctrl F2     | 70               | Alt F9           | 80               | Alt 9       |
| 60               | Ctrl F3     | 71               | Alt F10          | 81               | Alt 0       |
| 61               | Ctrl F4     | 72               | Ctrl PrtSc       | 82               | Alt -       |
| 62               | Ctrl F5     | 73               | Ctrl Left Arrow  | 83               | Alt =       |
| 63               | Ctrl F6     | 74               | Ctrl Right Arrow | 84               | Ctrl PgUp   |
| 64               | Ctrl F7     |                  |                  |                  |             |

**Table H.3 Scan Codes for Enhanced Keyboard**

| <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b>   | <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b>   | <b>Scan Code</b> | <b>Keys</b>     |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 85               | F11           | 90               | Ctrl + (num)  | 98               | Alt Left Arrow  |
| 86               | F12           | 91               | Ctrl Dn Arrow | 9D               | Alt Right Arrow |
| 87               | Shift F11     | 92               | Ctrl Ins      | 9F               | Alt End         |
| 88               | Shift F12     | 93               | Ctrl Del      | A0               | Alt Down Arrow  |
| 89               | Ctrl F11      | 94               | Ctrl Tab      | A1               | Alt PgDn        |
| 8A               | Ctrl F12      | 95               | Ctrl / (num)  | A2               | Alt Ins         |
| 8B               | Alt F11       | 96               | Ctrl * (num)  | A3               | Alt Del         |
| 8C               | Alt F12       | 97               | Alt Homé      | A4               | Alt / (num)     |
| 8D               | Ctrl Up Arrow | 98               | Alt Up Arrow  | A5               | Alt Tab         |
| 8E               | Ctrl - (num)  | 99               | Alt PgUp      | A6               | Alt Enter (num) |
| 8F               | Ctrl 5 (num)  |                  |               |                  |                 |

(num) means numeric keypad keys.

**Table H.4 ASCII Codes for Combination Keys**

| <b>Keys</b> | <b>ASCII<br/>Code</b> | <b>Scan<br/>Code</b> | <b>Keys</b> | <b>ASCII<br/>Code</b> | <b>Scan<br/>Code</b> |
|-------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Ctrl A      | 1                     | 1E                   | Ctrl N      | E                     | 31                   |
| Ctrl B      | 2                     | 30                   | Ctrl O      | F                     | 18                   |
| Ctrl C      | 3                     | 2E                   | Ctrl P      | 10                    | 19                   |
| Ctrl D      | 4                     | 20                   | Ctrl Q      | 11                    | 10                   |
| Ctrl E      | 5                     | 12                   | Ctrl R      | 12                    | 13                   |
| Ctrl F      | 6                     | 21                   | Ctrl S      | 13                    | 1F                   |
| Ctrl G      | 7                     | 22                   | Ctrl T      | 14                    | 14                   |
| Ctrl H      | 8                     | 23                   | Ctrl U      | 15                    | 16                   |
| Ctrl I      | 9                     | 17                   | Ctrl V      | 16                    | 2F                   |
| Ctrl J      | A                     | 24                   | Ctrl W      | 17                    | 11                   |
| Ctrl K      | B                     | 25                   | Ctrl X      | 18                    | 2D                   |
| Ctrl L      | C                     | 26                   | Ctrl Y      | 19                    | 15                   |
| Ctrl M      | D                     | 32                   | Ctrl Z      | 1A                    | 2C                   |

# Index

\$ (end of string), 73  
%OUT assembler directive  
\* (asterisk), as DOS special character, 445  
; (semicolon), in assembly language program, 14, 55  
= (equal) pseudo-op, in REPT macro, 268  
? (question mark), as DOS special character, 445

## A

AAA instruction (ASCII adjust for addition), 376-377, 491  
AAD instruction (ASCII adjust for division), 378-379, 491  
AAM instruction (ASCII adjust for multiply), 378, 491-492  
AAS instruction (ASCII adjust for subtraction), 377-378, 492  
Absolute disk read/write, DOS interrupts for, 460  
Accumulator register (AX), 40-41  
Activation records, 361-363  
Active display page, 235  
selecting, 240, 450  
ADC instruction (add with carry), 372, 492  
ADD instruction, 62-63, 492  
flags and, 85, 88-89  
overflow, 83-84, 85-86  
Add-in boards or cards, 4  
Addition  
BCD, 376-377, 494-495  
with carry flag, 372, 492  
with decimal adjust, 494-495  
double-precision, 372-373

with 8087 processor, 384  
instructions, 62-63, 376-377, 491, 492, 494-495  
number systems and, 24-25  
overflow and, 83-85  
Address, 4-5  
base address of an array, 180  
in call by reference, 302-303  
contents vs., 5-6  
display modes, CGA, 337  
in instruction pointer (IP), 9  
loading (LEA instruction), 74, 498-499  
logical, 42  
of memory word, 6  
physical, 41  
Address bus, 7  
in fetch-execute cycle, 10  
Address register, 39  
base register (BX) as, 41  
Addressing modes, 181-189  
*See also Real address mode*  
arrays and, 179  
based, 184-186  
based indexed, 194-196  
indexed, 185-186  
register indirect, 182-183  
    *string instructions vs.*, 205  
AF (auxiliary carry flag), 82, 83  
Align type of segment declaration, 292-293  
All points addressable (APA) graphics mode, 332  
.ALPHA directive, 517  
ALU (arithmetic and logic unit), 8  
American Standard Code for Information Exchange. *See ASCII character codes*  
Analog monitor, for VGA, 340

AND conditions, high-level vs. assembly languages, 103  
AND instructions, 119-121, 492-493  
    TEST instruction and, 122  
AND truth table, 118  
Animation, 340, 341-347  
APA (all points addressable) graphics mode, 332  
Appending records to file, 410-414  
Application program interface (API), In OS/2, 431, 433  
Application programs, memory segments for, 47  
Archivé bit, 400  
Arithmetic and logic unit (ALU), 8  
Arithmetic operations  
    *See also specific operations*  
    accumulator register (AX) for, 40-41  
    advanced, 371-394  
        *binary-coded decimal numbers*, 374-379  
        *double-precision numbers*, 371-374  
        *8087 instructions*, 384  
        *floating-point numbers*, 379-381  
        *multiple-precision number I/O*, 384-388  
        *with real numbers*, 389-391  
    in arithmetic and logic unit (ALU), 8  
    overflow and, 83-85  
    pointer and index registers for, 44  
    shift instructions for, 117, 122-127, 504-505  
Array elements  
    *See also Arrays*  
    adding, 183  
    reversing order of, 183-184  
    specifying addresses for, 181  
Arrays, 58-59

- See also* Array elements  
 addressing modes for, 181–189  
 application example, averaging test scores, 195–197  
 one-dimensional, 179–181  
 processing, string instructions for, 205–228  
 role of, 179  
 sorting, *selectsort* method, 189–192  
 two-dimensional, 179, 192–194  
*based indexed addressing mode for, 194–195*  
*locating elements in, 193–194*  
*storage order for, 192–193*
- Arrow keys, programming, 247–252
- ASCII adjust instructions  
 for addition (AAA), 376–377, 491  
 for division (AAD), 378–379, 491  
 for multiply (AAM), 378, 491–492  
 for subtraction (AAS), 377–378, 492
- ASCII character codes, 30–31, 441–444  
 in arrays, 58–59  
 for combination keys, 530  
 converting case of, 120–121  
 converting to numbers, AND instructions for, 120  
 display characters and, 234  
 extended character set, 443–444  
 in INT 21h instructions, 68  
 jump instructions and, 97  
 translating to EBCDIC code, 197–200
- ASCII digits, converting to packed BCD, 385–386
- ASCII keys, 244
- .ASM files, assembly modules, 285
- Assembler  
*See also* Microsoft Macro Assembler  
 assembly language syntax for, 54  
 creating object file with, 70, 71–72  
 object modules produced by, 285  
 role of, 13
- Assembler directives, 54, 517–526  
*See also specific directives*  
 arrays, 58–59  
 byte variables, 56  
 operand fields in, 55  
 pseudo-ops, 55  
 word variables, 56–57
- Assembly language  
*See also* Assembly language programs  
 advantages of, 13–14  
 described, 12–13  
 high-level language translation to, 64–65  
 sample, stack use, 144–145
- Assembly language programs, 53–80  
 appending records to a file, 410–414  
 averaging test scores, 195–197  
 ball bounce, 344–347  
 ball display, 342–344  
 basic instructions, 60–64  
 case conversion, 120–121, 287–289  
 coding and decoding secret message, 198–200  
 combined 8087/8086 instructions, 387–388  
 converting ASCII digits to packed BCD, 385–386  
 counting vowels and consonants, 215–217  
 creating and running, 70–73  
 designing, top-down method, 108–112  
 echo, 432–433  
 extended memory management, 427–429  
 “Hello” messages, 431–432  
*.EXE vs. .COM format, 283–284*  
 INT 10h example, 243–244  
 jump instruction example, 93–94  
 macro expansions in .LST file, 259–261  
 macro library use in, 266–267  
 named constants, 59  
 OS/2, 431–433  
 printing packed BCD integers, 386–387  
 printing real numbers, 390–391  
 procedures in, 146–147  
 program data, 56–57  
 reading and displaying a file, 406–409  
 reading real numbers, 389–390  
 reading and storing a character string, 209–211  
 recursive procedures in, 363–369  
 sample, 14–15, 69–70, 75–76  
*with high-level structures, 108–112*  
*multiplication procedure, 150–157*  
 stacks in, 139–145  
 structure of, 65–67  
 substring search, 220–222  
 syntax, 54–56  
 terminating, 70  
 for time display, 316–318  
 top-down design of, 108–112  
 variables, 57–59
- Assembly modules, 285  
 linking, 287–291
- Assembly time, macros vs. procedures and, 276
- ASSUME pseudo-op, 295, 517
- Asterisk (\*), as DOS special character, 445
- Attribute byte (display character), 235–237
- Attribute byte (file attribute), 400, 401
- Attributes of characters, 234  
 current, for character at cursor, 242
- Auxiliary carry flag (AF), 82, 83
- Averaging test scores, 195–197
- AX (accumulator register), 40–41
- B  
 Background color, 334, 451
- BACKUP (DOS program), 445  
 archive bit and, 400
- Ball display, 342–344
- Ball manipulation  
 for animation, 344–347  
 in interactive video game, 347, 349–350
- Base, in number systems, 20
- Base address of an array, 180
- Base pointer (BP) register, 45
- Base register (BX), 41
- Based addressing mode, 184–185  
 segment overrides in, 189
- Based indexed addressing mode, 194–196
- Basic Input/Output System routines  
*See* BIOS routines
- BASIC interrupt (Interrupt 18h), 31
- BCD. *See* Binary-coded decimal number system
- BEEP procedure, 348–349
- Bias, 380
- Binary digits (bits), 3
- Binary fractions, converting decimal fractions to, 379–380
- Binary number system, 19, 20  
 addition and subtraction in, 25  
 ASCII codes in, 31–32  
 decimal and hex conversions, 22–23  
 decimal and hex equivalents, 20, 21
- in program data, 56
- two’s complements, 26–28
- Binary-coded decimal number system (BCD), 374–379  
 addition (AAA instruction), 376–377  
 division (AAD instruction), 378–379  
 8087 numeric processor and, 381–382, 384–388  
 multiplication (AAM instruction), 378  
 packed vs. unpacked BCD form, 375  
 subtraction (AAS instruction), 377–378
- BIOS (Basic Input/Output System) routines, 46–47  
 interrupt routines, 67–69, 310–316, 449–455  
*ASCII code display and, 246*  
*keyboard functions, 246–247*  
*text mode display functions, 238–244*  
 in start-up operation, 49
- Bit patterns  
 masks, 119  
 modifying  
*applications for, 130–134*

- logic instructions for**, 117, 118-122, 492-493, 501, 508  
**rotate instructions for**, 117, 122, 127-130, 502-503, 504  
**shift instructions for** See *Shift instructions*
- Bit planes**  
 in EGA display memory, 339  
 in VGA display memory, 340
- Bit positions**, 6
- Bit scan instructions (80386)**, 513
- Bit strings**, 3  
 machine language, 7, 12.
- Bit test instructions**, 513-514
- Bits (binary digits)**, 3  
*See also Bit patterns; Bit strings flags*, 45  
 least significant (lsb), 26  
 manipulating, high-level vs. assembly language and, 117  
 mask, 119  
 most significant (msb), 26
- BIU**. *See Bus interface unit*
- Blinking bit**, 235, 236
- Boot program**, 49
- Bootstrap interrupt (Interrupt 19h)**, 315
- Border**, setting color for, 451
- Bouncing ball program**, 342-347  
 interactive video game from, 347-355
- BOUND instruction**, in 80286, 423
- BP (base pointer) register**, 45
- Branching structures**, high-level vs. assembly languages, 98-104
- BREAK**, checking status of, 457
- Break code**, 245
- Breakpoint interrupt (Interrupt 3)**, 313
- Buffer, keyboard**, 246
- Bus interface unit (BIU)**, 8, 9  
 connection to EU, 9  
 in fetch-execute cycle, 10
- Buses**, 7  
 locking, 499
- BX (base register)**, 41
- Byte arrays**. *See Character strings; Memory strings*
- Byte variables**, 57
- Bytes**, 4  
 bit positions in, 6  
 changing bit patterns in, 117  
 converting to words, 167, 493  
 disk capacity, 398-399  
 dividing, 165, 167  
 hex digits and, 20  
 integer storage in, 26-28  
 multiplying, 162
- CALC instructions**, 146, 147-149, 493  
 activation records of, 361-363  
 direct vs. indirect, 147  
 NEAR vs. FAR procedures and, 286
- in OS/2, 431  
 in program example, 151, 152, 153, 154  
 in recursive procedures, 357-369  
 using stack with, 303-305, 360-361
- Call by reference**, 302-303
- Call by value**, 302
- Carriage return-line feed**, macro for, 265
- Carry flag (CF)**, 82  
 clearing, (CLC instruction), 493  
 complementing (CMC instruction), 494  
 setting (STC instruction), 506
- Case**, for assembly language code, 54
- Case conversion program**, 75-76
- CASE structure**, high-level vs. assembly languages, 101-103
- Cassette interrupt (interrupt 15h)**, 314, 454
- CBW instruction** (convert byte to word), 167, 493
- Central processing unit (CPU)**, 4, 7-9  
 bus interface unit (BIU), 8, 9  
 execution unit (EU), 8  
 jump instructions and, 95, 97
- CF (carry flag)**, 82
- CGA**. *See Color graphics adapter*
- Character cell**, 233
- Character representation**, 30-33
- Character strings**  
 in arrays, 58-59  
 counting vowels and consonants in, 215-217  
 displaying, 73-75  
*DISP\_STR procedure for*, 212-214  
*macro for*, 265-266  
 reading and storing, 209-211
- Characters**  
 attribute bytes and, 235-237  
 attributes of, 234.  
 at cursor  
*displaying and advancing cursor*, 243  
*displaying with any attribute*, 242  
*displaying with current attribute*, 242
- in program data, 56  
 reading, 241  
 reading from keyboard, 455  
 writing to printer, 455
- CHDIR (CD)**, 447-448, 458
- CLC instruction** (clear carry flag), 493
- CLD instruction** (clear direction flag), 206, 493
- Clear (destination bit)**, AND instruction for, 119, 121
- Clear Screen (CLS)**, 445
- Clearing flags**, instructions for, 493
- CLI (clear interrupt flag)**, 493
- Clock circuit**  
 Interrupt 1Ah and, 315  
 tone generation and, 347
- Clock period**, 11
- Clock pulses**, 10-11
- Clock rate (clock speed)**, 11
- Closing a file**, 404-405, 459
- CLS (clear screen)**, 445
- Clusters**, 400
- CMC instruction** (complement carry flag), 494
- CMP instruction** (compare), 494  
 jump conditions and, 95, 97  
 OR instruction vs., 121
- CMPS instruction**, 223, 494
- CMPSB instruction** (compare string byte), 217-222, 223, 494
- CMPSW instruction** (compare string word), 217, 494
- .CODE assembler directive**, 66, 299, 517  
 in sample program, 76
- Code segment**, 15, 44  
 .COM programs and, 281  
 declaration syntax, 65
- CODEVIEW program**, 479-488  
 DEBUG commands in, 488
- Coding and decoding a secret message**, 198-200
- Color display**, 235, 236  
 BIOS interrupt routines, 451, 452-453
- Color graphics**, 331-356  
 display modes, 331-332  
*CGA*, 332, 333-339  
*EGA*, 332, 339-340  
 selecting, 332-333  
*VGA*, 332, 340-341
- Color graphics adapter (CGA)**, 232, 233  
 changing cursor size for, 238  
 graphics display modes, 332, 333-339  
 number of display pages for, 234  
 pixel size and, 332  
 port address, 48  
 selecting active display page for, 240  
 selecting display mode for, 238  
 writing directly to memory in, 337-338
- Color graphics adapter types**, 331. *See also specific types*
- Color monitor**, 232. *See also Color display*
- Color registers**  
 getting, 453  
 setting (VGA), 340, 341, 452-453
- Column-major order**, array storage in, 192, 193
- COM 1/COM 2**. *See Serial ports*
- COM programs**, 281-285  
 .EXE programs vs., 281, 282-285
- Combine type of segment declaration**, 293-294
- COMM assembler directive**, S17-S18
- COMMAND.COM**, 46
- Command line**  
*CODEVIEW*, 479

- LINK program, 467-448  
 Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM), 462-463  
**Commands**  
 DEBUG, 473-474  
 DOS, 445-448  
 internal vs. external, 46  
**Comments**  
 in assembly language programs, 14, 518  
*comment field syntax*, 54, 55-56  
 for documenting procedures, 147  
 using, 55-56  
**Communications interrupt (Interrupt 14h)**, 314  
**COMPACT memory model**, 299  
**Compare instruction.** See *CMP instruction*  
 Comparing memory strings, 217-222  
**Compiler**, role of, 13  
**Complement (destination bit)**, XOR instruction for, 119, 120  
**Complement carry-flag (CMC instruction)**, 494  
**Composite monitor**, 232  
**Computers.** See *IBM personal computers*  
**Conditional jump instructions**, 94-97, 497-498  
 high-level vs. assembly language structures, 98-104  
**Conditional loop instructions**  
 REPEAT loop, 107-108  
 WHILE loop, 106-107  
 WHILE vs. REPEAT, 108  
**Conditional macros**, 272-275  
**Conditional pseudo-ops**, 272-273  
 for macro library, 264-265  
**Consonants**, counting, 215-217  
**.CONST pseudo-op**, 299, 300, 518  
**Constants**, named, 59  
**Contents**, address vs., 5-6  
**Control bus**, 7  
 in fetch-execute cycle, 10  
**Control characters**, 31, 32  
 in INT 21h instructions, 68-69  
**Control flags**, 45, 81, 82, 205  
 DEBUG example, 88, 89  
 direction flag (DF), 205-206  
 in interrupt routine, 312  
**Control keys**, 244  
**Conventional memory**, Interrupt 12h and, 313-314, 453  
**COPY (DOS command)**, 445  
**Count register (CX)**, 41  
**CPU.** See *Central processing unit*  
**CREI utility program**, 461, 466-467  
**Cross-reference (.CRF) file**, 72, 461, 466-467, 518  
**CS (instruction register)**, 45  
**Ctrl-Break (Interrupt 1Bh)**, 315  
**CTRL-BREAK check (Interrupt 21h)**, 457  
**CTRL-Z (end of data)**, 410  
**Cursor**  
 advancing to next position, 243  
 changing size of, 238-239, 449  
 displaying character with attribute at, 241, 242, 451  
 getting position and size of, 239-240, 450  
 moving on screen, 239, 450  
*programming arrow keys for*, 247-252  
 reading character at, 241  
 restoring position of, 320  
 writing character and attribute at, 451  
**CWD instruction (convert word to doubleword)**, 166-167, 494  
**CX (count register)**, 41  
**Cylinder**, 397-398
- D**
- DAA instruction**, 494-495  
**Daisy wheel printers**, 12  
**DAS instruction**, 494  
**Data calls**, by value and reference, 302-303. *See also CALL instructions*  
**Data bus**, 7  
 in fetch-execute cycle, 10  
 microprocessors and, 38, 39  
**.DATA directive**, 66, 299, 518-519  
 assembler and, 74-75  
 in sample program, 76  
**.DATA? pseudo-op**, 299, 300, 518-519  
**Data register (DX)**, in 8086, 39, 40-41  
**Data registers**, in 8087, 382  
**Data segment**, 15, 44  
 .COM programs and, 281  
 .DATA directive for, 66  
 declaration syntax, 66  
**Data segment register**, loading, 498  
**Data storage**, in registers, 8  
**Data transfer area (DTA)**, 401  
**Data transfer instructions**  
 accumulator register (AX), 40-41  
 MOV instruction, 60, 61  
**Data types**, 8087 numeric processor, 381-382, 508  
**Data-defining pseudo-ops**, variables and, 57-59  
**DATE (DOS command)**, 446  
**Date**, INT 21h functions and, 456-457  
**DEBUG program**, 87-90, 471-478  
 CODEVIEW and, 488  
 commands, 473-474  
 exiting, 90  
 flags shown in, 87-90, 472  
 interrupt routine and, 312  
 memory dumps, 477  
**Debuggers.** *See CODEVIEW program; DEBUG program*  
**Debugging**, source listing (.LST) file for, 72  
**DEC instruction (decrement)**, 62, 495  
**jump instruction and**, 97  
**overflow and**, 85  
**Decimal adjust for addition/subtraction**, 494-495  
**Decimal fractions**, converting to binary, 379-380  
**Decimal input**, INDEC procedure for, 170-175  
**Decimal number system**, 19-20  
 addition and subtraction in, 24, 25  
 ASCII codes in, 31-32  
 binary and hex conversions, 22-23  
 binary and hexadecimal equivalents, 21  
**binary-coded**, 374-379  
*8087 numeric processor and*, 381-382, 384-388  
**in program data**, 56  
**signed and unsigned integer representation**, 28-30  
**Decimal output**, OUTDEC procedure for, 167-170  
**Decision making**, flags and, 81  
**Decoder circuit**, in fetch-execute cycle, 10  
**Decoding program**, 198-200  
**Decrement instruction.** See *DEC instruction*  
**DEL (DOS command)**, 446  
**Deleting a file**, DOS interrupt for, 459  
**Destination index (DI) register**, 45  
**Destination operand**, 55  
**Devices**  
 I/O, 3, 11-12  
 peripheral, 3  
 serial vs. parallel port, 9  
**DF.** *See Direction flag*  
**DI (destination index) register**, 45  
**Digital circuits**, 3  
**DIR (directory list)**, 446  
**Direct mode**, 181, 182  
**Direct procedure call**, 147  
**Direction flag (DF)**, 205-206  
 clearing and setting, 206, 493, 506  
**Directives.** *See Pseudo-operation code; specific directives*  
**Directory**, getting, 459-460  
**Directory structure**, 399-402, 447-448  
**Disjoint memory segments**, 47  
**Disk controller circuit**, access controlled by, 399  
**Disk drives**, 11, 398  
**Disk I/O interrupt (Interrupt 13h)**, 314, 453-454  
**Disk operating system.** *See DOS*  
**Disk operations**, 395  
 DOS interrupts and, 415-418  
**Disk space**, checking, 458  
**Diskette error (Interrupt E)**, 313  
**Disks**  
*See also Floppy disks; Hard disks*  
 accessing information on, 399  
 capacity of, 398-399  
 clusters on, 400

- FAT location on, 401  
file allocation on, 399–402  
structure of, 397–398  
types of, 395–397
- DISP\_STR** procedure, 212–214
- Displacement**, 184
- Display**  
INT 10h functions and, 238–244, 449–455  
INT 21h functions and, 456  
screen positions, 234  
scrolling screen or window up/down, 240–241, 450–451
- Display memory** (video buffer), 232
- Display modes**, 232–233  
getting, 243, 452  
selecting, 238, 445
- Display monitor**. *See* **Monitor**
- Display pages**, 234  
active, 235  
selecting, 240, 450  
attribute bytes in, 235–237  
sample program, 237–238
- Displaying a file**, program for, 406–409
- DIV instruction** (divide), 165–167, 495
- Divide overflow**, 165–166
- BIOS interrupt routine (Interrupt 0), 312  
processor exception for, 310
- Division**  
ASCII adjust for (AAD) instruction, 378–379, 491  
BCD, 378–379  
data register (DX) for, 41  
DIV/IDIV instructions for, 161, 165–167, 495, 496  
double-precision, 374  
with 8087 processor, 384  
methods for, 127  
shift instructions for, 117, 122, 125–127
- Do\_FUNCTION** procedure, for programming arrow keys, 247–252
- Dollar sign (\$)**, for string display, 73
- DOS** (disk operating system), 46  
commands, listed, 445–448  
directory structure, 400–402, 447–448  
disk structure and, 397, 398  
file processing, 402–415  
**INT** (interrupt) instructions for. *See* **DOS interrupts**  
programs for 80286, 424  
returning to, 265, 316  
versions, 46, 457
- DOS interrupts**, 47–69, 316, 456–460  
*See also specific interrupts*  
file handle functions, 402–415  
for reading and writing sectors, 415–418
- DOS prompt (C)**, COMMAND.COM and, 46
- DOSEG directive**, 519
- Dot matrix printers**, 12
- Double-density drives and disks**, 398
- Double-precision numbers**, 371–374  
adding, subtracting, or negating, 372–373  
multiplying and dividing, 374  
shift instructions, 515–516
- Doublewords**, converting words to, 166–167, 494
- DTA** (data transfer area), 401
- DUP pseudo-op** (duplicate), 180–181
- DX** (data register), 41
- Dynamic linking**, in OS/2, 431
- E**
- EBCDIC code**, translating ASCII code to, 197–200
- ECD** (enhanced color display) monitor, 339
- EGA**. *See* Enhanced graphics adapter
- 8086 microprocessor**  
clock rate of, 11  
coordination with 8087 processor, 382–383, 387–388  
fetch-execute cycle in, 10  
flags and, 81  
hardware interrupts, 309–310  
IBM PC family and, 37, 38  
instruction format, 489–490  
instructions, listed, 490–508  
organization of, 7, 8–9, 39–45  
virtual 8086 mode, 434
- 8088 microprocessor**, 38
- 80186 microprocessor**, 38
- 80188 microprocessor**, 38
- 80286 microprocessor**, 38, 421–429  
instructions, 511–513  
OS/2 and, 430  
Windows 3 and, 430
- 80386/80386SX microprocessors**, 38–39, 433–436  
instructions, 513–516  
OS/2 and, 430  
programming, 434–436  
Windows 3 and, 430
- 80486/80486SX microprocessors**, 39, 433  
Windows 3 and, 430
- 80387 numeric processor**, 39
- 8087 numeric processor**, 381–391  
coordination with 8086 microprocessor, 382–383, 387–388  
data types, 381–382, 508  
instructions for, 382–384, 508–511  
registers, 382
- .8087 pseudo-op**, 387
- 8259 chip** (interrupt controller), 313
- ELSE pseudo-op**, in macros, 272, 273, 274, 275, 519
- Empty stack**, 140
- Encoding and decoding a message**, 198–200
- END directive**, 67, 519
- in sample program, 76
- ENDIF pseudo-op**, macro file and, 265, 520
- ENDM pseudo-op** (end macro definition), 257, 258, 520, 522, 525
- ENDP pseudo-op** (end procedure), 519, 524
- ENDS directive** (declare structure), 526
- ENDS pseudo-op** (end segment or structure), 519, 525
- Enhanced color display (ECD) monitor**, 339
- Enhanced graphics adapter (EGA)**, 232, 233, 339–340  
changing cursor size for, 238  
graphics display modes, 332, 339–340  
number of display pages for, 234  
port address, 48  
selecting active display page for, 240
- Enhanced keyboard**, scan codes for, 529
- ENTER instruction**, in 80286, 423
- EQU (equates) pseudo-op**, 59, 75, 520
- Equal (=) pseudo-op**, in REPT macro, 268
- Equipment check interrupt (Interrupt 11h)**, 313, 314, 453
- ERASE (DOS command)**, 446
- .ERR directives**, 520–521  
for incorrect macro, 275
- Errors**, in macro expansion, 262
- ESC instruction** (escape), 495
- EU**. *See* **Execution unit**
- EVEN directive**, 521
- Exchange instruction**. *See* **XCHG instruction**
- EXE2BIN (DOS utility)**, .EXE programs vs. .COM programs and, 284–285
- .EXE program**  
.COM program vs., 281, 282–285  
creating, 73  
from library file, 289–291  
from object modules, 287–289  
with full segment definitions, 295–298
- Execution of instructions**, 9–11
- Execution time**, macros vs. procedures and, 276
- Execution unit (EU)**, 8  
connection to BIU, 9
- EXIT (terminate process)**, Interrupt 21h for, 460
- Exiting DEBUG program**, 90
- EXITM assembler directive**, 521
- Expanding a macro**, 258
- Expansion slots**, 4
- Exponent**, 380
- Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code**. *See* **EBCDIC code**
- Extended character set**, 31, 443–444
- Extended instruction set**  
in 80286, 421, 422–423

microprocessors and, 38  
 Extended memory, 426–429  
 BIOS interrupts, 454  
 Extended-memory manager programs, 426  
 Extension instructions, 514  
 External commands, 46  
 ENTRV pseudo-op, 286, 521

**F**  
 FADD instruction (add real), 384, 508  
 FAR procedures, 146, 285–286  
 FARDATA/FARDATA? directives, 521  
 FAT. See File allocation table  
 FBLD instruction (packed BCD load), 383, 509  
 FBSTP instruction (packed BCD store and pop), 383, 509  
 FDIV instruction (divide real), 384, 509  
 Fetch-execute cycle, 9–10  
     machine language for, 12  
     timing of, 10–11  
 FADD instruction (integer add), 384, 509  
 FDIV instruction (integer divide), 384, 509  
 Fields, in assembly language syntax, 54–56  
 FLD instruction (integer load), 383, 509  
 File allocation table (FAT), 401–402  
     displaying, 417–418  
 File attribute, 400, 401, 403  
     changing, 414–415  
     specifying, 403  
 File errors, 403  
 File extension, 46  
     .ASM (assembly language source file), 70  
 File handles, 402–403  
     closing, 459  
 File name, 46  
     special characters with, 445  
 File pointer, 410  
     appending records to file with, 404–414  
     moving, 459  
 File size, cluster size and, 400  
 Files, 46  
     allocation of on disk, 399–402  
     appending records to, 410–414  
     changing attributes of, 414–415  
     creating, 457  
     directory structure, 400  
     opening and closing, 403–405, 458–459  
     processing of, file handle functions, 402–415. *See also specific functions*  
     program module, 285–291  
     reading, 402, 405  
     reading and displaying, 406–409

rewriting, 402, 403–404  
 writing, 402, 406  
 FIMUL instruction (integer multiply), 384, 509  
 Firmware, 7  
 FIST instruction (integer store), 383, 509  
 FISTP instruction (integer store and pop), 383, 510  
 FISUB instruction (integer subtract), 384, 510  
 Fixed disk. *See Hard disk*  
 Flags, 81  
     clearing, instructions for, 493  
     instructions and, 85–87  
         AND, OR, XOR, 119, 492–493, 501, 508  
         CMP example, 95, 97  
         DEBUG, 87–90, 472  
         jumps, 95  
         rotates, 129  
         shifts, 123, 125  
     in interrupt routine, 312  
     loading AH from (LAHF instruction), 498  
     overflow and, 83–85  
 FLAGS register, 39, 40, 45, 81–83  
     in interrupt routine, 310, 312  
     jump instructions and, 95  
     storing AH in (SAHF instruction), 504  
 FLD instruction (load real), 383, 510  
 Floating-point numbers, 379–381  
     8087 processor and, 381–391  
     80486 processor and, 39, 433  
     representation of, 380  
 Floppy disks, 11, 395–396, 397  
     *See also Disks*  
     capacity of, 398, 399  
     file allocation on, 399–402  
 Flow control instructions, 93–116  
     jump instructions, 93–98  
 FMUL instruction (multiply real), 384, 510  
 FOR loop, high-level vs. assembly language, 104–106  
 “Forced error” message, for incorrect macro, 275  
 FORMAT (DOS command), 446  
     status byte and, 400  
 Fractions. *See Real numbers*  
 FST instruction (store real), 383, 510  
 FSTP instruction (store real and pop), 383, 510  
 FSUB instruction (subtract real), 384, 510–511  
 Function key commands, CODEVIEW, 481–482  
 Function keys, 245  
     programming, for screen editor, 247–252  
     scan codes for, 245  
 Function requests. *See specific interrupts*

FWAIT instruction (suspend 8086 processor), 387

**G**  
 Game, interactive video, 347–355  
 Game controller, port address, 48  
 Global descriptor table, 425, 426, 427  
 Global descriptor table register (GDTR), 425  
 Global variables, 300–302  
 Graphical user interface (GUI), 46, 430  
 Graphics modes, 232–233, 331–333  
     animation techniques, 341–347  
     CGA, 332, 333–339  
     displaying text in, 338–339  
     EGA, 339–340  
     selecting, 332–333  
     VGA, 332, 340–341  
 Graphics pixels, reading or writing, 335, 452  
 Gray scale, 232  
 GROUP assembler directive, 521  
 GUI (graphical user interface), 46, 430

**H**  
 Halt instruction (HLT), 495  
 Hand-shaking, 310  
 Hard disks, 11, 395, 396–397, 398  
     *See also Disks*  
     capacity of, 398, 399  
     file allocation table (FAT) on, 401  
     port address, 48  
     structure of, 397–398  
 Hardcopy, 12  
 Hardware components  
     BIOS routines and, 46  
     microcomputers, 3–9  
     software vs., 45  
 Hardware interrupts, 309–310  
     IF (interrupt flag) and, 312  
     nonmaskable (NMI), 312  
 Hex error codes, file handling errors, 403  
 Hex numbers. *See Hexadecimal number system*  
 Hexadecimal number system, 19, 20–22  
     addition and subtraction in, 24–25  
     ASCII codes in, 31–32  
     decimal and binary conversions, 22–23  
     digital and binary equivalents, 19, 21  
     in program data, 56  
 HEX\_OUT macro, 270–272  
 Hidden, changing file attribute to, 415  
 Hidden files, 400  
 High resolution mode, CGA, 336  
 High-density drives and disks, 398  
 High-level instructions, in 80286, 423  
 High-level languages, 13  
     advantages of, 13

- bit pattern changes and, 117
- jump instructions and, 98–104
- loop structures and, 104–108
- program design with, 108–112
- translated to assembly language, 64–65
- HLT instruction (halt)**, 495
- Holding register**, in fetch-execute cycle, 10
- HUGE memory model**, 299
  
- IBM character set**, 441–444
  - displaying, sample program for, 93–94
- IBM mainframes**, EBCDIC code used by, 197
- IBM personal computers**
  - extended character set for, 31
  - keyboard, 244–247
    - scan codes*, 33, 245–246, 527–529
  - monitor for, 231–232
  - organization of, 37–52, 45–49
    - I/O port addresses*, 49
    - memory*, 47–48
    - operating system*, 46–47
  - start-up operation, 49
  - text mode programming for, 234–244
  - video adapters and display modes, 232–233
- Icons**, in Windows program, 430
- IDIV instruction (integer divide)**, 165–167, 496
- IF assembler directives**, 521
- IF (constant exp is nonzero)**, 273
- IF (interrupt flag)**, 45
  - in interrupt routine, 312
- IF1 (assembler making first pass)**, 273
  - macro file and, 264–265
- IF2 (assembler making second pass)**, 273
- IFB (arg is missing)**, 273
- IFDEF (symbol is defined or EXTRN)**, 273
- IFDIF (strings are not identical)**, 273
- IFE (exp is zero)**, 273
- IFIDN (strings are identical)**, 273
- IFN (arg is not missing)**, 273
  - macro using, 274
- IFNDEF (symbol is not defined or EXTRN)**, 273
- IF-THEN structure**, 98–99
- IF-THEN-ELSE structure**, 100–101
- Immediate mode**, 181, 182
- IMUL instruction (integer multiply)**, 161–164, 496
  - in 80286, 422, 511
- IN instruction (input byte or word)**, 496
  - for accessing timer circuit, 348
- INC (increment) instruction**, 63, 496
  
- flags and overflow with**, 85, 86, 89–90
- INCLUDE pseudo-op**, 169–170, 521–522
  - macro library and, 264
- INDEC procedure**, 170–175
- Indefinite repeat (IRP) macro**, 269–270
- Index registers**, 39, 40
  - direction flags and, 205–206
- Indexed addressing mode**, 185
  - segment overrides in, 189
- Indirect procedure call**, 147, 304
- Input overflow**, 174
- Input/output addresses**, 9
- Input/output (I/O) devices**, 3, 11–12.
  - See also* Interrupt routines
- Input/output operations**
  - accumulator register (AX) for, 41
  - data register (DX) for, 41
  - with 8087 processor, 384–391
  - with 80286 processor, 511–512
  - instruction syntax, 67–69
  - multiple-precision integer, 384–388
  - in OS/2, 431–433
  - real number, 389–391
  - shift and rotate instructions in, 130–134
- Input/output ports**, 9
  - port addresses, 48–49
- Ins (Insert) key**, 245–246
- INS instruction (input from port to string)**, 511
- INSB Instruction (input string byte)**, 423, 511
- Instruction pointer (IP)**, 9, 45
  - jump instructions and, 95
- Instruction prefetch**, 9
- Instruction queue**, 9
- Instruction set**, 8
- Instructions**, 54
  - See also specific instructions; specific types*
  - assembly language, 12–13, 14, 15
    - basic, 60–64
    - syntax, 54
  - creating, macros for, 258
  - 8086, 490–508
  - 8087 numeric processor, 382–384, 508–511
    - combining with 8086 instructions*, 387–388
  - 80286, 511–513
  - 80386, 513–516
  - execution of, 9–11
  - flags and, 85–87
    - DEBUG example*, 87–90
  - flow control, 93–116. *See also* Jump instructions
  - format for, 489–490
  - logic, 117, 118–122
  - machine language, 7, 12
  - rotate, 117, 127–130
    - in binary I/O*, 130–131
    - in hex I/O*, 131–134
  - shift, 117, 122–127
    - in binary I/O*, 130–131
    - in hex I/O*, 131–134
  - string, 205–228
  - INSW instruction (input string word)**, 423, 511
  - INT instruction (interrupt)**, 67–69, 310, 312, 496–497
  - Integer operands**, 8087 instructions, 384
  - Integers**, representation of, 26–28
  - Integrated-circuit (IC) chips**, 3
  - Intel 8259 chip (interrupt controller)**, 313
  - Intel microprocessors**, 37–39, 421–438
    - See also specific microprocessors*
  - Intensity bit**, 235, 236
  - Interactive video game**, 347–355
  - Internal commands**, 46
  - Interrupt 0 (divide overflow)**, 312
  - Interrupt 1 (single step)**, 312, 450
  - Interrupt 1Ah (time of day)**, 315
  - Interrupt 1Bh (Ctrl-Break)**, 315
  - Interrupt 1Ch (timer tick)**, 316
    - time updating program with, 318–322
  - Interrupt 1Dh-Interrupt 1Fh**, 316
  - Interrupt 2 (nonmaskable interrupt)**, 312
  - Interrupt 3 (breakpoint)**, 313
  - Interrupt 4 (overflow)**, 313
  - Interrupt 5 (print screen)**, 313
  - Interrupt 8 (timer)**, 313
    - timer tick interrupt and, 316
  - Interrupt 9 (keyboard)**, 313
    - Ctrl-Break interrupt and, 315
  - Interrupt 10h (video)**, 313, 332, 449–453
    - listed, 238–243
    - programming examples, 243–244
    - for palette or background color (CGA), 334
  - for reading/writing graphics pixels (CGA)**, 335
  - for selecting display page (EGA)**, 340
  - for setting color register (VGA)**, 341
  - in text mode**, 238–244
  - for time display**, 325, 326
  - Interrupt 11h (equipment check)**, 313, 314, 453
  - Interrupt 12h (memory size)**, 313, 453
  - Interrupt 13h (disk I/O)**, 314, 453–454
  - Interrupt 14h (communications)**, 314
  - Interrupt 15h (cassette)**, 314, 454
  - Interrupt 15h (extended memory)**, 426–429
  - Interrupt 16h (keyboard I/O)**, 314, 455
    - keyboard services with, 246–247
  - Interrupt 17h (printer I/O)**, 314–315, 455
  - Interrupt 18h (BASIC)**, 315
  - Interrupt 19h (bootstrap)**, 315
  - Interrupt 20h (program terminate)**, 316

- Interrupt 21h functions, 67–69, 316  
 ASCII Code display and, 246  
 for displaying a string, 73–75  
 file errors with, 403  
 file handle functions, 402–415  
   changing a file's attribute, 414–415  
   moving file pointer, 410–414  
   opening and closing files, 403–405  
   reading a file, 405  
   writing a file, 406  
 in sample program, 75, 76  
 for time-of-day display, 316–318
- Interrupt 22h - Interrupt 26h (DOS interrupts), 316
- Interrupt 25h (read sector), 415, 416
- Interrupt 26h (write sector), 415
- Interrupt 27h (terminate but stay resident), 316  
 time display program with, 322–329
- Interrupt acknowledge signal, 310
- Interrupt controller, 313  
 port address, 48
- Interrupt E (diskette error), 313
- Interrupt flag (IF), 45  
 clearing, 493  
 in interrupt routine, 312  
 setting (STI instruction), 506
- Interrupt instruction (INT), 67–69, 310, 312, 496–497
- Interrupt number, 310
- Interrupt request signal, 309
- Interrupt routines, 309  
 address calculation for, 310–311  
 returning from (IRET instruction), 312, 497  
 in time display programs, 316–329
- Interrupt vector table, 311
- Interrupt vectors, 47, 310–311  
 getting addresses of, 457–458  
 setting up, 319
- Interrupts  
 BIOS, 310, 312–16. *See also specific interrupts*  
 DOS, 316  
 hardware, 309–310  
 nonmaskable (NMI), 312  
 processor exception, 310  
 software, 310
- INTO instruction (interrupt if overflow), 497
- Invoking a macro, 258
- I/O. *See entries beginning with "Input/output"*
- IP (instruction pointer), 9, 45  
 jump instructions and, 95
- IRET instruction (interrupt return), 312, 497
- IRP macro (indefinite repeat), 269–270
- Jump instructions, 93–98, 497–498  
 CMP instruction and, 95, 97
- conditional, 94–97, 497–498  
 high-level vs. assembly language structures, 98–104  
 example, 93–94  
 high-level languages and, 98–104  
 JMP (unconditional jump), 98, 498  
 JNZ (jump if not zero), 94, 95  
 role of, 93
- K**
- KB (kilobyte), 11
- Keyboard, 11, 244–247  
 ASCII code and, 21, 22  
 hardware interrupts and, 309  
 INT 16h functions, 246–247, 455  
 INT 21h functions, 456, 457  
 operation of, 246  
 scan codes, 33, 245–246, 527–529
- Keyboard buffer, 246
- Keyboard controller, port address, 48
- Keyboard flags, 245–246
- Keyboard interrupt (interrupt 9), 313
- Keyboard I/O interrupt (interrupt 16h), 314
- Kilobyte (KB), 11
- L**
- LABEL pseudo-op (declare operand type), 187–188, 522
- Labels  
 cross-reference file and, 72  
 of macros, 262–263
- LAHF instruction (load AH from flags), 498
- .LALL (list all), 522  
 for macro expansions, 261, 262
- LARGE memory model, 299
- Laser printers, 12
- LDS instruction (load data segment register), 498
- LDTR (local descriptor table register), 425
- LEA instruction (load effective address), 74, 498–499  
 in sample program, 75, 76
- Least significant bit (lsb), 26
- LEAVE instruction, in 80286, 423
- LES instruction (load extra segment register), 499
- LIB utility, 289–291
- Library files  
 for macros, 264–266  
 for object modules, 289–291  
 in OS/2, 431
- Line feed/carriage return, macro for, 265
- LINK program, 73, 467–469  
 command line, 467–448  
 example, 468–469
- .EXE programs vs. .COM programs and, 284–285
- library files and, 289–291  
 object modules combined by, 285, 286–287, 467
- Linking, in OS/2, 431
- List file, as MASM output, 461
- .LIST assembler directives, 522
- Lists. *See Arrays*
- Load Effective Address. *See LEA instruction*
- Load instructions, for 8087, 383
- Loading memory strings, 211–214
- Local descriptor table, 424–425  
 multitasking and, 426
- Local descriptor table register (LDTR), 425
- Local labels, in macros, 262–263
- LOCAL pseudo-op, 262–263, 513
- Location counter (MASM), 464, 466  
 ORG 100h and, 282
- LOCK instruction (lock bus), 499
- LODS instruction, 223, 499
- LODSB instruction (load string byte), 211–214, 223, 499
- LODSW instruction (load string word), 211, 223, 499
- Logic instructions, 117, 118–122  
 accumulator register (AX) for, 40–41  
 AND, OR, XOR, 119–121, 492–493, 501, 508  
 role of, 117
- Logic operations, in arithmetic and logic unit (ALU), 8. *See also Logic instructions*
- Logical address, 42
- Logical sector numbers, 416
- Long real floating-point format, 381
- Loop, defined, 104
- Loop counter, count register (CX) as, 41
- LOOP instructions, 93, 94, 499–500  
 high-level vs. assembly languages, 104–108
- Lowercase letters, converting to uppercase, 120–121, 287–289
- LSEEK, 459
- .LST file (source listing file), 72, 259  
 macro expansion in, 259–261  
 options for, 261–262  
 macro library files and, 264
- M**
- Machine code, in source listing (.LST) file, 72
- Machine language, 12  
 defined, 7  
 instruction sets, 8
- MACRO pseudo-op, 258, 522
- Macros, 257–280  
 conditional, 272–275  
 conditional pseudo-ops in, 272–273  
 defined, 257  
 expanding, 258

- in .LST file*, 259–262
- assembly errors*, 262
- IF pseudo op *in*, 273
- IFND pseudo-op *in*, 274
- illegal invocations, 259
- incorrect, .ERR directive for, 275
- invoking, 258
- invoking other macros with, 263–264, 270–272
- library file *for*, 264–266
  - sample program using*, 266–267
- local labels *in*, 262–263
- optimum use of, 276
- output, 270–272
- procedures vs., 257, 276
- recursive, 264
- repetition, 268–270
- role of, 257
- syntax for, 257–258
- useful examples, 265–266
- Magnetic disks, 11
- Make code, 245
- Mantissa, 380
- Masks
  - for AND, OR, XOR instructions, 119, 120
  - for TEST instruction, 122
- MASM. *See* Microsoft Macro Assembler
- MB (megabyte), 6
- MCGA. *See* Multi-color graphics array
- MDA. *See* Monochrome display adapter
- MEDIUM memory model, 299
- Medium resolution mode, CGA, 333, 334–335
- Mega, defined, 6
- Megabyte (MB), 6
- Megahertz (MHz), 11
- Memory
  - allocating, 460
  - extended, 426–429
  - freeing, 460
  - physical, in 80386, 434, 435
  - virtual, 38, 426
    - in 80386*, 38, 433
- Memory (hardware), 4–7
  - access to, 80286 microprocessor and, 38
  - operations on, 6–7
- Memory byte circuits, 4
  - addresses of, 4–6
  - contents of, 5
  - RAM vs. ROM, 7
- Memory dumps, DEBUG, 477
- Memory errors, nonmaskable interrupts and, 312
- Memory location, 6
  - adding or subtracting contents of, 62–63
  - clearing, 121
  - exchanging contents of, 60, 61
  - IBM PC, 47–48
  - instruction pointer (IP), 45
  - for interrupt vectors, 311
  - logical addresses, 42
- negating contents of, 64
- physical addresses, 41
- registers and, 8
  - FLAGS register, 45
  - pointer and index registers, 44–45
  - segment register, 41–44
- reserved, 47
- transferring data to and from, 60, 61
- virtual addresses, 424–426
- Memory management, 281–308
  - .COM vs. .EXE programs and, 281, 282–285
  - in 80286, 423–424
  - program modules and, 285–291
- Memory manager programs, 426
- Memory map, 48
- Memory models, 65, 299
  - choosing, 299–300
  - declaration syntax, 65, 299
  - .MODEL directive for, 65
- Memory protection, protected mode and, 38
- Memory-resident programs. *See* Terminate-and-stay-resident programs
- Memory segments, 41–42
  - disjoint, 47
- Memory size interrupt (Interrupt 12h), 313, 453
- Memory strings
  - comparing, 217–222
  - defined, 205
  - finding substrings of, 219–222
  - loading, 211–214
  - moving, 206–209
  - scanning, 214–217
  - storing, 209–211
- Memory word, 6. *See also* Words
- Menus, in Windows program, 430
- Messages, inserting in programs, 75
- .Microcomputer system, components of, 3–9
- Microprocessors, 37–39, 421–438
  - See also specific microprocessors*
  - address size and, 5–6
  - data registers in, 39
  - defined, 4
  - fetch-execute cycle in, 9–10
  - organization of (8086), 7, 8–9, 39–45
  - shift or rotate instructions and, 122
  - speed of, 10–11
- Microsoft Library Manager, 289–291
- Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM), 461–467
  - command line, 462–463
  - creating machine language file with, 70, 71–73
  - example, 464–467
  - full segment definitions and, 291
- LINK program and, 286–289
- macros and, 257, 258
  - "forced error" message, 2, 5
  - invoking other macros, 264
- library files, 264
- local labels, 263
- options, 463
- segment definitions, 65
- syntax for, 54
- mkdir (MD), 448, 458
- Mode numbers, for video adapters, 233
  - selecting, 238
- .MODEL directive, 65, 299, 522–523
- Monitor, 12, 231–232
  - analog, for VGA, 340
  - display pages, 234
  - port addresses for, 48
  - video adapter and, 232, 233
- Monochrome display adapter (MDA), 232, 233
  - attribute bytes for, 235–236, 237
  - changing cursor size for, 238–239
  - display memory capacity, 234
- Monochrome monitor, 232. *See also* Monochrome display
- Most significant bit (msb), 26
- Motherboard, 4, 5
- Mouse, for Windows, 430
- MOV instruction, 60–61, 500
  - for clearing a register, AND instruction vs., 121
  - flags and, 85, 86
    - DEBUG example, 88
  - macro for, 258
  - in sample program, 75, 76
- Moving memory strings, 206–209
- MOVS instruction, 223, 224, 500
- MOVSB instruction (move string byte), 206–208, 223, 224, 500
- MOVSW instruction (move string word), 208–209, 223, 500
- MOVSX instruction (move with sign-extend), 514
- MOVZX instruction (move with zero-extend), 435, 436, 514
- MS DOS, 46. *See also* DOS
- MUL instruction (multiply), 161–164, 501
- Multi-color graphics array (MCGA), 232, 233
  - selecting active display page for, 240
- Multiple-precision numbers, with 8087 processor, 384–388
- Multiplication
  - ASCII adjust for (AAM) instruction, 378, 491–492
  - BCD, 378
  - data register (DX) for, 41
  - double-precision, 374
  - with 8087 processor, 384
  - in 80286, 422, 511
  - methods for, 127
  - MUL/IMUL instructions for, 161–164, 496, 501
  - procedure for, 150–157
  - shift instructions for, 117, 122
    - overflow and, 124
  - SAL (shift arithmetic left), 124

*SHL* (*shift left*), 123-124  
 signed vs. unsigned, 161-162  
**MULTIPLY** procedure, 150-157  
**Multitasking**, 429  
 80286 and, 421  
 protected (virtual address) mode  
 and, 38, 421  
 Windows and OS/2 for, 430

**N**

Name field, in assembly language syntax, 54-55  
 Named constants, 59  
 Natural language, high-level language and, 13  
**NEAR** procedures, 146, 285-286  
 RET instruction and, 1, 9  
**NEG** (negation) instruction, 64, 501  
 flags and, 85, 86-87, 89  
 Negation, double-precision, 373  
 Negative integers, 26-28  
 two's complement representation of, 27-28  
 Nibble, 18  
 Nonmaskable interrupt (NMI), 312  
**NO<sub>I</sub>** instruction (no operation), 501  
 Normal video, 235  
**NOT** instruction (logical not), 121, 501  
 NOT truth table, 118  
 Number systems, 19-22  
 addition and subtraction in, 24-25  
 in assembly language programs, 56  
 converting between, 22-23  
 Numbers, converting ASCII digits to, 120

**O**

Object (.OBJ) files, 285  
 creating, 70, 73  
 LINK program for, 73  
 as MASM output, 461, 466  
**Object modules**, 285  
 library files for, 289-291  
**OF** (overflow flag), 82, 83  
 Offset address of operand  
 in based indexing addressing mode, 194  
 obtaining, 184-187  
 Offset (of memory location), 42  
**OFFSET** pseudo-op, 321  
 One-dimensional arrays, 179-181  
 One's complement of binary number, 26  
 NOT instruction and, 121  
**OPCODE**, 9, 55  
 format for, 489-490  
 Opening a file, 403-404  
 Operand field, in assembly language syntax, 55  
 Operands, 9  
 of ADD instructions, 62

addressing modes for, 181-189  
 declaring types of, 187-188  
 destination vs. source, 55  
 of 8087 instructions, 384  
 in instruction format, 489, 490  
 of MOV instruction, 61, 64  
 obtaining offset address for, 184-187  
 overriding type of, 187, 188  
 of segment declaration, 291-295  
 of string instructions, 223-224  
 of SUB instructions, 62  
 type agreement of, 64, 186-187  
 overriding, 187-188  
 of XCHG instruction, 61

**Operating system**

IBM PC, 46-47  
 multitasking, 429-433  
 role of, 46  
 in start-up operation, 49

**Operation code**. See **Opcode**

**Operation field**, in assembly language syntax, 55

**Operations**, in assembly language syntax, 54

**OR** conditions, high-level vs. assembly languages, 103-104

**OR** instructions (logical inclusive or), 119-121, 501

**OR** truth table, 118

**ORG** 100h pseudo-op, in .COM program, 282, 523

**OS/2** operating system, 429, 430  
 programming in, 431-433

**OUT** instruction (output byte or word), for accessing timer circuit, 348, 501-502

**OUT** instruction (output string to port), 512

**OUTDEC** procedure, 167-170

**Output macros**, 270-272

**OUTSB** instruction (output string byte), 423, 512

**OUTSW** instruction (output string word), 423, 512

**Overflow**, 83-85

divide, 165-166, 310, 312

Input, 174

interrupt instruction for (INTO), 497

shift instructions and, 124

**Overflow flag (OF)**, 82, 83

**Overflow interrupt (Interrupt 4)**, 313

**P**

**Packed BCD form**, 375  
 converting ASCII digits to, 385-386  
 decimal adjust for addition/subtraction, 494-495  
 8087 numeric processor and, 381-382, 385-386, 508, 509  
 printing numbers in, 386-387

**Paddle**, adding to video game, 350-352

**PAGE assembler directive**, 524  
**Page-oriented virtual memory**, in 80386, 434

**Pages**, in EGA mode, 339

**Palette registers**, EGA, 339

**Palettes**, 334

setting, 451

**Paragraph**, 42

**Paragraph boundary**, 42

**Parallel port**, 9

port address, 48

**Parity errors, nonmaskable interrupts** and, 312

**Parity flag (PF)**, 82

**PC DOS**, 46. *See also DOS*

**%OUT assembler directive**, 523

**Peripheral devices (peripherals)**, 3

**Personal computers**. *See IBM personal computers*

**PF** (parity flag), 82

**Physical address**, 41

**Physical memory**, in 80386, 434, 435

**Pixels**, 233, 331-332

default color of (background color), 334

reading or writing, 335, 452

**Pointer registers**, 39, 40

register indirect mode and, 182

**POP** instructions, 142-143, 502  
 in 80286, 422

in program example, 151, 152, 156

**POPA** instruction, in 80286, 422, 512

**POPF** instructions, 142, 153, 502

**Ports**, I/O, 9

port addresses, 48-49

**Positional number system**, 19-20

**Power loss**, RAM vs. ROM and, 7

**Prefixes**, string instruction, REP (repeat), 207-208

**PRINT** (DOS command), 446

**Print Screen interrupt (Interrupt 5)**, 313

**Printer**, INT 21h functions and, 456

**Printer I/O interrupt (Interrupt 17h)**, 314-315, 455

**Printers**, 12

Printing packed BCD numbers, 386-387

Printing real numbers, with four-digit fractions, 390-391

**Privilege level**, 426

**PROC** pseudo-op (begin procedure), 524

**Procedures**, 15, 146

beginning and ending, 524

calling, 493. *See also CALL instructions*

communication between, 147, 300-305

for decimal I/O, 167-175

documenting, 147

macros vs., 257, 276

**NEAR** vs. FAR, 285-286

recursive, 357, 358-360

- a** activation records and, 361-363  
implementation of, 363-366  
with multiple calls, 367-369  
returning from, 146, 147, 148, 149,  
503-504  
separate files for (program modules), 285-291  
syntax of, 146-147, 285-286  
using stack with, 303-305, 360-361
- P** Process, in OS/2, 430  
Processor exception, 310  
Program data, 56-57  
Program execution, tasks vs., 426  
Program loop constructions, count register (CX) in, 41  
Program modules, 285-291  
Program segment prefix (PSP), 74  
Program segments, 44, 65-67  
.COM programs and, 281-282  
full definitions for, 291-298  
in protected mode, 424-426  
simplified definitions for, 299-300  
Program size, macros vs. procedures and, 276  
Program structure, 65-67, 281  
.COM programs, 281-285  
Program terminate interrupt (interrupt 20h), 316  
Programs  
See also Assembly language programs; Software  
.COM, 281-285  
CPU and, 7  
designing, top-down method, 108-112  
DOS  
for 80286, 424  
for 80386, 434-436  
firmware (ROM-based), 7  
jump example, 93-94  
stack segments of, 139  
terminating, 456  
testing. See CODEVIEW program;  
DEBUG program  
Protected (virtual address) mode, 38  
in 80286, 421, 424-426  
in 80386, 433-434  
multitasking and, 429  
OS/2 and, 430  
Windows 3 and, 430
- P** Pseudo-operation code (pseudo-ops), 55  
ASSUME, 295  
conditional, 272-273  
for macro library, 264-265  
data-defining, 57  
DUP (duplicate), 180-181  
.8087, 387  
ELSE, in macros, 272, 273, 274, 275  
ENDM (end macro definition), 258  
EQU (equates), 59, 75  
= (equal), in REPT macro, 268  
ENTRN, 286
- L** LABEL (declare operand type), 187-188  
LOCAL, for macros, 262-263  
MACRO, 258  
for named constants, 59  
OFFSET, 321  
ORG 100h, 282  
PTR (override operand type), 187, 188  
PUBLIC, 286  
SEG, 321  
SEGMENT, 291-298  
286, 424  
386, 435  
PSP (Program segment prefix), 74  
ORG 100h and, 282  
PTR pseudo-op (override operand type), 187, 188  
PUBLIC pseudo-op, 286, 524  
PURGE directive, 524-525  
PUSH instructions, 140, 141, 502  
in 80286, 422, 512  
in program example, 151, 152, 153  
PUSHA instruction, in 80286, 422, 512-513  
PUSHF instruction, 140, 141, 502
- Q**  
Question mark (?), as DOS special character, 445  
Quitting a program, Interrupt 20h for  
316
- R**  
.RADIX assembler directive, 525  
RAM (random access memory), 7  
RCL instruction, 128, 502-503  
RCR instruction, 129, 503  
application example, 130  
READ\_STR procedure, 209-211, 213-214  
Read operations, 6-7  
in fetch-execute cycle, 10  
Read sector  
INT 13h for, 453-454  
INT 25h for, 415, 416  
Read-only memory. See ROM  
Read/write head, 395  
Reading from disk, DOS interrupt for, 460  
Reading a file, 405  
defined, 402  
DOS interrupt for, 459  
program for, 406-409  
Reading graphics pixels, 335, 452  
Reading and storing a character string, 209-211  
Real address mode (real mode), 38  
in 80286, 421, 423-424  
in 80386, 433  
Real mode, Windows<sup>3</sup> in, 430
- R** Real numbers, 389  
8087 operations with, 389-391  
Rebooting the system, Interrupt 19h for, 315  
RECORD assembler directive, 525  
Records, appending to file, 410-414  
Recursion, 357-370  
Recursive macros, 264  
Recursive procedures, 357, 358-360  
activation records and, 361-363  
implementation of, 363-366  
with multiple calls, 367-369  
passing parameters on stack for, 360-361  
Recursive process, defined, 357-358  
Register indirect mode, 182-183  
segment register override in, 188-189  
string instructions vs., 203  
Register mode, 181, 182  
Registers, 8, 39  
adding or subtracting contents of, 62-63  
adding to, 63  
clearing, 121  
color, 340, 341  
double-precision numbers and, 371  
in 8086 microprocessor, 39-45. See also specific types  
in 8087 numeric processor, 382  
in 80286, 422, 425  
in 80386, 433  
exchanging contents of, 60, 61  
in instruction format, 489-490, 491  
in Interrupt routine, 310  
negating contents of, 64  
restoring after macro, 259  
stack use vs., 303-304  
in start-up operation, 49  
subtracting from, 63  
testing for zero, 121  
transferring data between, 60, 61  
RENAME (REN), 446  
REP instruction (repeat), count register (CX) for, 41, 50, 503  
REP prefix (repeat), 207-208  
in 80286, 423  
REPE prefix (repeat while equal), in string comparisons, 218, 219  
REPEAT loop  
high-level vs. assembly language, 107-108  
WHILE loop vs., 108  
Repetition macros, 268-270  
REPNE instruction (repeat while not equal), in string scanning, 215, 216, 217, 503  
REPNZ prefix (repeat while not zero), 215, 503  
REPT macro (repeat block of statements), 268-269, 525  
REPZ prefix (repeat while zero), in string comparisons, 218  
Resolution, 233, 331

- CGA, 333  
 EGA, 339  
 VGA, 340  
**RESTORE (DOS command)**, 446  
**RET instruction (return)**, 146, 147, 148, 149, 503–504  
 in program example, 151, 152, 156–157  
**Return address**, in interrupt routine, 310  
**Reverse video**, 235  
**Rewriting a file**, 402, 403–404  
**RGB monitor**, 232  
**RMDIR (RD)**, 448, 458  
**ROL instruction (rotate left)**, 126, 127, 128, 504  
**ROM (read-only memory)**, 7  
 BIOS interrupt routines in, 310, 312–316  
**ROM-based programs (firmware)**, 7  
 memory segment for, 48  
**ROM BASIC**, transferring control to, 315  
**Root directory**, 400  
**ROR instruction (rotate right)**, 127–128, 504  
**Rotate instructions**, 117, 122, 127–130, 502–503, 504  
 application examples, 130–134  
 applying, reversing bit pattern, 130 in 80286, 422  
 role of, 117  
**Row-major order**, array storage in, 192–193  
**Run file**, creating and executing, 70, 73
- S**
- SAHF instruction (store AH in FLAGS register)**, 505  
**SAL instruction (shift arithmetic left)**, 124, 504–505  
**SALL (suppress all)**, for macro expansions, 261; 262, 525  
**SAR instruction (shift arithmetic right)**, 125, 126, 505  
**SBB instruction (subtract with borrow)**, 372, 373, 505  
**Scan codes**  
 keyboard and, 33, 245–246, 527–529  
 keyboard buffer and, 246  
**Scan lines**, 331  
**Scanning memory strings**, 214–217  
**SCAS instruction**, 223, 505  
**SCASB instruction (scan string byte)**, 214–217, 223, 505  
**SCASW instruction (scan string word)**, 214, 505  
**Screen display**. *See Display; Monitor*  
**Screen editor**, sample program, 247–252
- Scrolling screen or window up/down**, 240–241, 450–451  
**Searching**, for substrings of strings, 219–222  
**Secret message, coding and decoding**, 198–200  
**Sectors**, 397  
 logical, 416  
 reading, program for, 416–417  
**SEG pseudo-op**, 321  
**Segment:offset form of address (logical address)**, 42–43  
**Segment definitions**  
 full form of, 291–298  
 simplified, 299–300  
**Segment descriptor**, 425, 426  
 in 80386, 433  
**Segment descriptor tables**, 424–425  
**Segment directive**, 291–292  
**Segment number**, 42  
**Segment overrides**, 188–189  
**SEGMENT pseudo-op**, 291–298, 525  
**Segment registers**, 39, 41–44, 499. *See also Program segments*  
**Segment selector**, in protected mode, 424, 425  
**Segments**. *See Program segments*  
**SELECT procedure**, for sorting an array, 190–191  
**Selectsort method**, 189–192  
**Semicolons**  
 in assembly language programs, 14, 55  
 in assembler instructions, 72  
**.SEQ assembler directive**, 526  
**Serial ports**, 9  
 port addresses, 48  
**Set (destination bit)**, OR instruction for, 119, 120  
**Set byte on condition instructions**, 514–515  
**SF (sign flag)**, 82, 83  
**Shift instructions**, 117, 122–127  
 application examples, 130–134  
 applying, reversing bit pattern, 130  
 division by, 117, 122, 125–127, 374  
 double-precision, 374, 515–516  
 in 80286, 422  
 multiplication by, 117, 122, 123–124, 374  
 overflow and, 124  
 role of, 117, 122  
**SAL (shift arithmetic right)**, 124, 504–505  
**SAR (shift arithmetic right)**, 125, 126, 505  
**SHL (shift logical left)**, 123–124, 504–505  
**SHR (shift logical right)**, 125, 126, 506  
**Shift keys**, 245  
 information stored on, 245–246  
 scan codes for, 245
- SHL instruction (shift left)**, 123–124, 504–505  
 application example, 130  
**Short real floating-point format**, 381  
**SHR instruction (shift right)**, 125, 126, 506  
**SI (source index) register**, 45  
**Sign flag (SF)**, 82, 83  
**Signed integers**, 26–28  
 decimal interpretation, 28–30  
 division by IDIV instruction, 165–167, 496  
 division by right shifts, 126  
 8087 support, 381  
 multiplication by IMUL instruction, 161–162, 496  
**Signed jumps**, 95, 96, 97  
**Signed overflow**, 83, 84, 85  
**Single step interrupt (Interrupt 1)**, 312  
**Single-flag jumps**, 95, 96  
**16-bit programming**, 434  
**16-color display**, attribute byte for, 235  
**.SMALL model**, 67, 299–300  
**Software**, 45  
 programming languages, 12–14  
**Software interrupts**, 310  
**Sorting arrays**, *selectsort* method, 189–192  
**Sound**, adding, 347–350  
**Source Index (SI) register**, 45  
**Source listing file**. *See .LST file*  
**Source operand**, 55  
**Source program file**, creating, 70–71  
**SP (stack pointer) register**, 44  
**Special characters**, with DOS commands, 445  
**Stack**, 44, 139  
 accessing or placing items on, 189, 303–305, 360–361  
 adding to (PUSH/PUSHF instructions), 140–141  
 application example, 144–145  
 in .COM vs. .EXE programs, 282–283  
 8087 data registers as, 382  
 empty, 140  
 removing items from (POP/POPF instructions), 142–143  
 top of, 139  
**.STACK directive**, 66, 299, 526  
 in sample program, 76  
**Stack pointer (SP) register**, 44  
**Stack segment**, 15, 44  
 .COM programs and, 281  
 declaring, 140  
*syntax for*, 66  
**Standard mode**, Windows 3 in, 430  
**Start-up operation**, IBM PC, 49  
**Statements**  
 in assembly language programs, 14  
*assembly language syntax*, 54  
**Status byte**, in file directory, 420  
**Status flags**, 45, 81, 82–83, 205  
*DBUG example*, 88, 89

- D**
- DIV/IDIV instructions and, 165
  - Jump Instructions and, 95
  - MUL/IMUL instructions and, 162
  - Status registers, 39
  - STC instruction (set carry flag), 506
  - STD instruction (set direction flag), 206, 506
  - STI instruction (set interrupt flag), 506
  - Storage, magnetic disks, 11
  - Storing memory strings, 209–211
  - STOS instruction, 223, 506
  - STOSB instruction (store string byte), 209–211, 223, 506
  - STOSW instruction (store string word), 209, 223, 506
  - String, defined, 205. *See also* Character strings; Memory strings
  - String instructions, 205–228
    - CMPS, 223, 494
    - CMPSB (compare string byte), 217–222, 494
    - CMPSW (compare string word), 217, 494
  - direction flags and, 205–206
  - in 80286, 423
  - general form of, 223–224
  - INSB (input string byte), 423
  - INSW (input string word), 423
  - LODS, 499
  - LODSB (load string byte), 211–214, 499
  - LODSW (load string word), 211, 499
  - MOVSB (move string byte), 206–208, 500
    - REP prefix and*, 207–208
  - MOVSW (move string word), 208–209, 500
  - OUTSB (output string byte), 423
  - OUTSW (output string word), 423
  - register indirect addressing mode vs., 205
  - REP prefix (repeat), 207–208
  - SCAS, 505
  - SCASB (scan string byte), 214–217, 505
  - SCASW (scan string word), 214, 505
  - STOS, 223, 506
  - STOSB (store string byte), 209–211, 506
  - STOSW (store string word), 209, 506
- S**
- String operations
    - count register (CX) for, 41
    - DI (destination index) and, 45
  - Strings, 205: *See* Character strings; Memory strings
  - STRUC assembler directive, 526
  - Structure, declaring (STRUC directive), 526
  - SUB instruction, 62–63, 507
    - for clearing a register, AND instruction vs., 121
    - flags and
    - DEBUG example*, 89
  - overflow, 84, 85, 86
  - in sample program, 75, 76
- T**
- Subdirectories, 400
    - managing, 448, 458
  - Substrings, searching for, 219–222
  - Subtraction
    - ASCII adjust for (AAS) instruction, 377–378, 492
    - BCD, 377–378, 495
    - by bit complementation and addition, 28
    - decimal adjust for (DAS instruction), 495
    - double-precision, 372, 373
    - with 8087 processor, 384
    - instructions, 62–63, 377–378, 492, 505, 507
    - number systems and, 24–25
    - overflow and, 84–85
    - real (FSUB instruction), 384, 510–511
  - SUBTTL instruction (subtitle display), 526
  - SWAP procedure, for sorting an array, 190–191
  - Symbol table (MASM), 464
  - Syntax
    - assembly language, 54–56
    - based and indexed addressing modes, 184
    - input/output instructions, 67–69
    - procedure declaration, 146–147
  - System board, 4
  - System reboot, Interrupt 19h for, 315
- T**
- Tasks, in protected mode, 426
  - Teletype mode, writing character in, 452
  - Temporary real floating-point format, 381
  - Terminate-and-stay-resident (TSR) programs, 322
    - for time display, 322–329
  - Terminate-but-stay-resident interrupt (Interrupt 27h), 316, 460
  - Terminating a process (EXIT), Interrupt 21h for, 460
  - Terminating a program, Interrupt 20h for, 316
  - TEST instruction, 122, 507
  - Test scores, averaging, 195–197
  - Text, displaying in graphics mode, CGA, 338–339
  - Text mode, 232
    - character generation in, 233
    - display pages in, 234
    - graphics mode vs., 338
    - mode numbers, 233
    - programming, 234–244
    - INT 10h functions*, 238–244
    - video adapter and, 233
- U**
- Unconditional (JMP) jump instructions, 98
  - Underline characters, 236, 237
  - UNLINK, DOS interrupt for, 459
  - Unpacked BCD form, 375
  - Unsigned integers, 26
    - decimal interpretation, 28–30
    - division by DIV instruction, 165–166, 495
    - division by right shifts, 126

- multiplication by MUL instruction, 161–162, 501
- Unsigned jumps, 95, 96, 97
- Unsigned overflow, 83, 84
- Uppercase letters, converting to lowercase, 120–121, 287–289
- User commands (DOS), 46
- User interrupt procedures, 318–329
  
- V**
- Variables, 57–59
  - arrays, 58–59
    - base address of, 180
    - one-dimensional, 179–181
  - byte, 57
  - cross-reference file and, 72
  - global, 300–302
  - word, 57–58
- VGA. *See* Video graphics array
- Video adapters, 12, 232, 233
  - graphics display modes, 332
  - scan lines and, 331
- Video buffer. *See* Display memory
- Video controller, 232
  - display modes and, 232–233
- Video display. *See* Display; specific types
- Video display memory, 47
  - segments for, 48
- Video game, interactive, 347–355
- Video graphics array (VGA), 232, 233
  - graphics display modes, 332, 340–341
  - number of display pages for, 234
  - selecting active display page for, 240
- Video interrupt (Interrupt 10h), 313, 332, 449–453
  - for palette or background color, CGA, 334
  - for reading/writing graphics pixels, CGA, 335
  
- W**
- WAIT instruction, 507
- Watch commands, in CODEVIEW, 482–487
- Watchpoints, in CODEVIEW, 487
- WHILE loop
  - high-level vs. assembly language, 106–107
  - REPEAT loop vs., 108
- Wildcard characters, with DOS commands, 445
- Window
  - defined, 430
  - scrolling up or down, 240–241, 450–451
- Window mode display, in CODEVIEW, 480–481
- Windows 3 environment, 429, 430
- Word arrays. *See* Strings
- Word variables, 57–58
  - high and low bytes of, 58
  - moving word into word, invoking macro for, 258
- Words
  - bit positions in, 6
  - changing bit patterns in, 117
  
- X**
- .XALL, for macro expansions, 261, 262, 526
- XCHG instruction (exchange), 60, 61, 507
  - flags and, 85
- .XCREF (cross-reference file), 518, 526
- XLAT instruction (translate), 179, 197–200, 507
- .XLIST assembler directives, 522, 526
- XOR instruction, 119–121, 508
- XOR truth table, 118
  
- Z**
- Zero, testing register for, 121
- Zero flag (ZF), 45, 82, 83

# **Assembly Language Programming and Organization of the IBM PC**

by Yu and Marut

Comprehensive and thorough coverage of the 8086 family of microprocessors used in IBM microcomputers and compatibles

Flexible instruction for a variety of backgrounds and levels of experience

Exercises and programming assignments graduated in level of difficulty

Numerous sample programs illustrating practical examples of structured programming

Current key topic coverage includes:

I/O control

BIOS and DOS interrupts

OS/2

Video and color graphics control

Text display

**ISBN 0-07-112896-4**



9 780071 128964